
This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google™ books

<https://books.google.com>



TX 475.2 .C525
Chesnutt, Helen M.
Road to Latin : a first-year Latin book

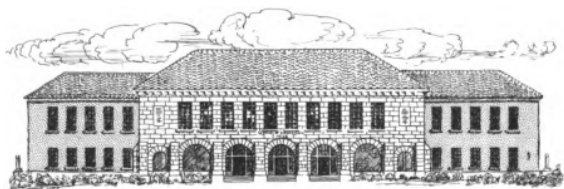
Stanford University Libraries



3 6105 04926 6351

ROAD TO LATIN





SCHOOL OF EDUCATION
LIBRARY

TEXTBOOK
COLLECTION



STANFORD UNIVERSITY
LIBRARIES

1.40 2.14

SCHOOL OF EDUCATION
RECEIVED

JUL 29 1933

STANFORD UNIVERSITY



PUELLA RÔMÂNĂ

Among the treasures recovered in the excavations at Pompeii and Herculaneum were various pictures painted on the walls of the long-buried houses. One of the most famous of these pictures, now in Naples, is the portrait of a Roman girl or young woman, reproduced above in its actual colors. Notebook in hand, pencil raised to her lips, she looks at us as if considering what to write. In spite of the fact that this portrait was painted nearly nineteen hundred years ago, it still shows unusual loveliness and charm, and its naturalness and lifelikeness indicate that portrait painting among the Romans must have reached a high degree of development

THE ROAD TO LATIN

A FIRST-YEAR LATIN BOOK

BY

HELEN M. GHESNUTT, A.M.

MARTHA WHITTIER OLIVENBAUM, A.M.

NELLIE PRICE ROSEBAUGH, A.B.

RECEIVED
JUL 29 1933

EDITED BY

E. B. de SAUZÉ, Ph.D.

Director of Foreign Languages
Cleveland Board of Education

THE JOHN C. WINSTON COMPANY

CHICAGO

PHILADELPHIA

TORONTO

ATLANTA

SAN FRANCISCO

DALLAS

597427
C

Copyright, 1932, by
THE JOHN C. WINSTON COMPANY

Copyright in Great Britain, and in the British Dominions and Possessions
Copyright in the Philippine Islands

All rights reserved



PRINTED IN THE U. S. A.
AT THE INTERNATIONAL PRESS

THE JOHN C. WINSTON COMPANY, PROPRIETORS, PHILADELPHIA

Road to Latin

P-7-32

PREFACE

The authors of *THE ROAD TO LATIN* have endeavored to present in this book a method of teaching Latin that is a golden mean between the old and formal method of teaching grammar, and the new and apparently haphazard method, recently developed, of teaching reading. The assumption that abundant reading with a superficial study of grammar, mainly for recognition, can ever result in a real power to read Latin has been proved to be unsound. For many teachers, in their effort to make Latin interesting to their pupils, have forgotten that the average pupil has to feel a power of achievement, a mastery of what he is doing, in order to be interested and to gain mental satisfaction.

The plan of *THE ROAD TO LATIN* is as follows:

1. Each chapter in the first half of the book presents for mastery one grammatical point. In later chapters several closely associated points are presented together. Each chapter is a unit requiring from three to five days of classroom work for mastery, according to the ability of the pupils.

2. Each chapter is headed by a picture which illustrates an accompanying piece of Latin text in story form.

3. In this story the grammatical principle or form to be mastered appears again and again in various relations, so that it is first met functionally rather than formally.

4. Following the story is a set of questions based upon it and so stated that the answers are almost automatic, and the new form or principle is used naturally and learned by repetition.

5. Discussion then follows, through which the pupil is led inductively to discover the new form and its function.

6. Following this there is a formal summary of the new principle in the chapter, which the pupil is required to memorize in the form of a rule.

7. After the summary there is a reading lesson of wider scope, containing the new forms and reviewing those previously mastered. The reading lessons treat of Roman life, or tell tales, in simple Latin, of mythology and history.

8. Then the vocabulary, which has already been used in two reading lessons and in oral drill, is presented in alphabetical order. The words which have been met in natural surroundings are assembled for a convenient review. The words in the vocabulary have been selected with two ends in view—to cover most of the words required by the College Entrance Examination Board and by the New York Syllabus, and to give the pupil a list of “atmosphere” words which are associated with the private life of the Romans and with his own daily life.

9. Following the vocabulary is an exercise in word study based upon it, called *Latin in Daily Life*.

10. Finally, sufficient drill in both vocabulary and grammatical principles is presented under various headings to enable the pupil to master the new words, forms, and principles thoroughly, by repeated use, before advancing to the next chapter.

The authors are especially indebted to Dr. E. B. deSauzé, Director of Foreign Languages, Cleveland Board of Education, under whose guidance and encouragement the book was planned and written.

Acknowledgments are due to the following for their valuable criticisms of the manuscript and the proof:

Professor George Depue Hadzsits, of the University of Pennsylvania; Professor H. J. Leon, of the University of Texas; Mr. Norton S. Pinney, Principal of the High School at Norfolk, New York; Mrs. Stella E. Prosser, of the Ada Merritt Junior High School, Miami, Florida; Professor Robert S. Rogers and Professor Kenneth Scott, of Western Reserve University; and Miss Katherine I. Smart, of the Shaw Junior High School, Philadelphia.

The authors wish to express their grateful appreciation of the valuable contributions of Professor Thomas K. Brown, Jr., of the University of Pennsylvania, and Mr. John Flagg Gummere, of the William Penn Charter School, Philadelphia, who have assisted in the making of the book at every stage,

PREFACE

v

from the checking and revision of the manuscript to the reading of the final proofs.

Cordial acknowledgment is made to the following organizations and individuals for assistance in securing illustrative material, or for courteous permission to use specific pictures:

The American Academy in Rome, for the drawing by Mr. Gorham P. Stevens of Hadrian's villa, the frontispiece of the *Memoirs* of the Academy for 1927, reproduced on page 49.

The American Numismatic Society, New York, for illustrations of coins, reproduced on pages 13, 41, 42, 214, 223, 255, 312, 316.

The Barnes Art Foundation, Merion, Pennsylvania, for illustration of an Etruscan soldier, reproduced on page 299.

Mr. J. D. Beazley, Lincoln Professor of Classical Archaeology in the University of Oxford, for pictures from *Der Berliner Maler*, Berlin-Wilmersdorf, 1930, reproduced on page 143.

George P. Brown & Co., Beverly, Mass., for a picture of the three Fates, reproduced on page 226.

The Corcoran Gallery of Art, Washington, D. C., for a picture of The Trojan Horse, by Henri Paul Motte, reproduced on page 135.

Mrs. Edith Hall Dohan, Associate Curator of the classical section of the University Museum, University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia, Miss Laurine Elizabeth Mack, Assistant Professor of Art in Wellesley College, Wellesley, Mass., and Miss E. Louise Lucas, Librarian, Fogg Art Museum, Cambridge, Mass., for helpful suggestions.

The Metropolitan Museum of Art, New York, for assistance and valuable suggestions; and, specifically, Mr. H. W. Kent, Secretary, and Mr. William Clifford, Librarian.

Miss Frances E. Sabin, Director, Service Bureau for Classical Teachers, The American Classical League, New York, for generous assistance and helpful suggestions.

Mr. Gorham P. Stevens, Director of the American Academy in Rome, for his drawing of Hadrian's villa, the frontispiece of the *Memoirs* of the American Academy in Rome for 1927, reproduced on page 49.

Miss Mary Hamilton Swindler, Professor of Classical Archaeology in Bryn Mawr College, for valuable assistance in obtaining pictures, and for permission to use three pictures (pages 144, 145, 244) and to use illustrations from her *Ancient Painting*, New Haven, 1929, reproduced on pages 14, 25, 26, 52, 60, 61, 121, 123, 136, 137, 234, 236, 237, 245, 274, 278, 279, 284, 294, 297, 335.

University Prints, Newton, Mass., for pictures reproduced on pages 40, 105, 427, 431.

Acknowledgment is made to the following for the use of pictures on the pages indicated:

Henry Holt and Co., New York, for an illustration from *Greece and Rome*, by Jakob von Falke, reproduced on page 126.

Yale University Press for illustrations from *Ancient Painting*, by Mary Hamilton Swindler, reproduced on pages 14, 25, 26, 52, 60, 61, 121, 123, 136, 137, 234, 236, 237, 245, 274, 278, 279, 284, 294, 297, 335.

Fratelli Alinari, Rome, Italy, pages 36, 309.

Brown Brothers, New York, pages 57, 93, 141, 149, 159, 160, 177, 199, 222, 249, 265, 321, 368, 369, 370, 375, 400, 408, 412.

Brown and Dawson, New York, page *319.

Ewing Galloway, New York, pages 71, 366, 390, 393, 403, 432.

Gramstorff Bros., Inc., Malden, Mass., pages 75, 82, 125, 150, 154, 356.

Burton Holmes and Ewing Galloway, New York, pages 373, 402.

Keystone View Co., Inc., New York, pages 59, *384.

Rudolf Lesch Fine Arts, Inc., New York, page 240.

Publishers' Photo Service, New York, pages 33, 76, 88, 166, 190, 212, 213, 397.

Remington Rand, Inc., New York, pages 16, 17.

Taber Prang Art Co., Springfield, Mass., pages 118, 203.

Underwood and Underwood, New York, page *167.

The authors are grateful to the teachers in the Cleveland High Schools who have used the manuscript in their classrooms, and to Mrs. Frieda Skolnik and Miss Vera Low for their assistance in typing the manuscript.

* Copyright picture.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER	PAGE
TO THE TEACHER	xiii
TO THE PUPIL: THE ROAD TO LATIN.....	xv
INTRODUCTION: Alphabet and Pronunciation ..	1
I. First Declension, Nominative Case. <i>Schola Americāna I and II</i>	7
II. First Declension, Accusative Case. <i>Schola Rōmāna I and II</i>	15
III. Review of Nominative and Accusative; Latin Questions with -ne, nōne, and num. <i>Villa Rōmāna</i>	23
IV. First Declension, Genitive Case. <i>Marcella. Puellae Laetae</i>	31
V. First Declension, Dative Case. <i>Galbae Taberna. Diāna</i>	36
VI. Dative with Adjectives. <i>Domina Benigna I and II</i>	43
VII. Ablative with ā (ab), ex (ē), in, cum. <i>Laeca Poëta I. Servae Claudiaë</i>	47
VIII. Accusative with ad and in. <i>Laeca Poëta II. Onerāriæ</i>	55
IX. Locative Case; Place Relations with Names of Cities and Towns, and with domus and rūs. <i>Agricolæ</i>	62
X. Summary of First Declension. <i>Tullia et Claudia</i>	69
XI. Present Tense of sum, and of Verbs of the First and Second Conjugations. <i>Tullia, Magistra Filiarum I and II. Claudia et Filiae Tulliaë</i> ..	77

CHAPTER	PAGE
XII. Masculine Nouns of the Second Declension, Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative. <i>Cornēlius, Dominus. Cornēlius et Fīlii</i>	88
XIII. Masculine Nouns of the Second Declension, Genitive, Dative, and Ablative. <i>In Hortō Cornēli. Discipulī</i>	96
XIV. Neuter Nouns of the Second Declension. <i>Templa Antīqua. In Britanniā</i>	104
XV. Adjectives of the First-and-second Declension. <i>Domicilium Urbānum</i>	112
XVI. Review of Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs.....	122
XVII. Present Tense of Verbs of Third and Fourth Conjugations. <i>In Peristylō. Dē Equō Ligneō</i> .	130
XVIII. Present Passive, Four Conjugations; Ablative of Personal Agent; Ablative of Means. <i>Fābula Orbilī I and II</i>	139
XIX. Imperfect Tense, Active and Passive, of Four Conjugations and the Verb <i>sum</i> . <i>Dē Templis Graecis. Tullia et Liberī</i>	148
XX. Future Tense, Active and Passive, of the First and Second Conjugations and <i>sum</i> . <i>Lūcius et Aulus</i>	155
XXI. Future Tense, Active and Passive, of the Third and Fourth Conjugations. <i>Pūblius et Servius. Crās</i>	161
XXII. Present, Imperfect, and Future of Verbs of the Third Conjugation in <i>-iō</i> ; Review of the Present System. <i>Lūdus Puerōrum</i>	169
XXIII. Nouns of the Third Declension: Nouns in <i>x, s</i> . <i>Dux et Milītēs. Milītēs Rōmānī</i>	175
XXIV. Nouns of the Third Declension: Nouns in <i>r, er, l, ō, s</i> ; Ablative of Time. <i>Dē Prīncipibus Rōmānīs. Dē Caesare et Legiōnibus</i>	182

CONTENTS

ix

CHAPTER	PAGE
XXV. Neuter Nouns of the Third Declension; Ablative of Manner. <i>Dē Certāminibus Rōmānīs.</i>	191
XXVI. Summary; Consonant Stems of the Third Declension. <i>Dē Certāmine Quadrigārum....</i>	198
XXVII. Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter i-stems of the Third Declension. <i>Dē Urbe Rōmā. Dē Potestāte Rōmānā.....</i>	205
XXVIII. Perfect Active, All Conjugations and <i>sum.</i> <i>Puerī et Pater. Dē Rōmae Prīncipiūs I.....</i>	215
XXIX. Accusative of Duration of Time; Pluperfect and Future Perfect Active of All Conjugations and <i>sum.</i> <i>Dē Rōmae Prīncipiūs II....</i>	224
XXX. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Passive of All Conjugations. <i>Dē Aenēā Piō. Aenēās in Italiā Venit.....</i>	231
XXXI. Personal and Reflexive Pronouns; Genitive of the Whole; Genitive with Adjectives; Possessive Adjectives. <i>In Lūdō.....</i>	238
XXXII. The Demonstrative <i>is</i> ; the Relative <i>quī.</i> <i>Dē Procae Filiīs I and II.....</i>	247
XXXIII. The Demonstratives <i>hic, ille, iste</i> ; the Intensive <i>ipse</i> ; Ablative of Cause; Predicate Accusative. <i>Dē Urbis Novae Locō I and II.</i>	257
XXXIV. Adjectives of the Third Declension; Genitive of Description. <i>Dē Factīs Fortibus. Dē Urbe Novā.....</i>	267
XXXV. Participles of All Conjugations. <i>Dē Filiābus Sabīnōrum. Dē Tarpeiā.....</i>	275
XXXVI. Cardinal and Ordinal Numerals; Nine Irregular Pronominal Adjectives; <i>Dē Numerīs Rōmānīs. Dē Bellō Sabīnō.....</i>	285
XXXVII. Comparison of Adjectives; Declension of the Comparative; Comparison with <i>quam</i> ; Ablative of Comparison. <i>Dē Horātiō I.....</i>	296

CHAPTER	PAGE
XXXVIII. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives; Ablative of Degree of Difference; Ablative of Separation. <i>Dē Horātiō II</i>	305
XXXIX. Complementary Infinitive; <i>possum</i> ; <i>volō</i> , <i>nōlō</i> , <i>mālō</i> . <i>Dē Daedalō et Īcarō I and II</i> ...	314
XL. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs; Ablative of Description. <i>Dē C. Muciō I and II</i> ...	327
XLI. Fourth Declension; Dative of Purpose; Dative of Interest; Ablative of Specification. <i>Dē Exercitibus Rōmānīs I and II</i>	339
XLII. Fifth Declension; Accusative of Extent of Space. <i>Dē Acīē Triplici et dē Agmine. Dē Proeliō Rōmānō</i>	348
XLIII. Irregular Verbs <i>eō</i> , <i>ferō</i> , <i>fiō</i> ; Subjective and Objective Infinitives; the Demonstrative <i>idem</i> . <i>Dē Galliā Omnī I and II</i>	359
XLIV. Indirect Discourse; All Infinitives Active and Passive. <i>Dē Orgetorīge I and II</i>	371
XLV. Deponent Verbs; Ablative with Deponents; Ablative Absolute. <i>Dē Helvētiōrum Profectionē</i>	382
XLVI. Subjunctive Mood, Present and Imperfect; Dative with Verbs of Special Meaning; Clauses of Purpose with <i>ut</i> , <i>nē</i> , <i>quō</i> , <i>quī</i> . <i>Dē Orgetorīgis Cōnsiliīs I and II</i>	392
XLVII. Subjunctive Mood; Clauses of Result. <i>Dē Helvētiōrum Cōnsiliīs. Dē Helvētiōrum Profectionē</i>	401
XLVIII. Subjunctive Mood, Perfect and Pluperfect; Indirect Questions. <i>Dē Fāmā Amīcōrum Caesaris</i>	409
XLIX. Temporal Clauses with <i>cum</i> ; <i>cum</i> Circumstantial, Causal, Concessive. <i>Dē Caesare et Helvētiīs</i>	416

CONTENTS

xi

CHAPTER	PAGE
<p>L. Gerund and Gerundive; Active and Passive Periphrastic; Dative of Agent. <i>Dē Helvētiōrum Itinere I and II</i>.....</p>	424
APPENDIX .	
SUMMARY OF FORMS.....	433
SUMMARY OF SYNTAX.	477
SUMMARY OF IDIOMS AND PHRASES.....	487
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.....	489
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.....	515
INDEXES	
INDEX TO TEXT.. . . .	535
INDEX TO ILLUSTRATIONS.. . . .	542

TO THE TEACHER

I. The material in each chapter takes from three to five class periods for mastery. Actual classroom use has shown that it takes a first-year high-school class two semesters to cover the first forty-five chapters of the book. A junior high-school class requires three semesters.

II. The work is so planned that the story involving the new grammatical principle may be read and dramatized by the teacher while the pupils' books are closed; or it may be read by the pupils and teacher together with open books. In the latter case the picture at the beginning of the chapter will help the pupil greatly in comprehending the story.

III. The section *Respondē Latinē* should not be omitted, but should rather be expanded by the addition of questions formed by the teacher; for by the use of questions and their answers the pupil becomes familiar with the new principle by repetition, a fundamental factor in learning a language.

IV. The *Discussion* should be carried on by the teacher and pupils together, with frequent use of the blackboard when possible. The rules at the end of the *Discussion* should be memorized.

V. The *Reading Lesson* gives the pupil an opportunity to apply the knowledge that he has just gained and to review principles previously learned. This lesson should be read aloud again and again by the pupils so that they may gain skill in reading Latin with intelligence and with proper emphasis and phrasing.

VI. Not all the words in the vocabularies need be memorized. Stress should be laid upon those included in the word

list issued by the College Entrance Examination Board. Such words are marked with an asterisk in the lesson vocabularies and in the general vocabulary at the end of the book. Actual use, however, has made it evident that the entire vocabulary in each lesson can easily be learned.

VII. The drill exercises give plenty of material for maximum and minimum requirements.

TO THE PUPIL: THE ROAD TO LATIN

When you begin the study of Latin you are starting out upon a long road over which you will travel, no doubt, for several years. Do you know why it is a very good thing for you to travel this road? When people ask you why you are taking Latin, can you give them a good answer? Can you prove to them that Latin is really a living language? Can you make them see that you are doing the best thing for yourself by studying Latin?

You can do this, very definitely, by telling them first that nearly two thirds of the words in our own language are either Latin or are derived from Latin. You can tell them that the languages spoken in France, Spain, and Italy have an even greater proportion of words derived from the Latin than the English language has, and that they are called *Romance* languages because they are derived directly from the language that the ancient Romans spoke when they conquered these countries many hundreds of years ago. It is very clear that the study of Latin will help you to understand these great languages of the modern world.

Someone may tell you that very few people are studying Latin today. As you travel along the road you will learn that this is a mistake, for you will find all sorts of people who are anxious to get the most out of life, and are finding that a knowledge of Latin is a great satisfaction to them, and makes a definite contribution to their happiness. Yes, millions of people today are either studying or have studied Latin.

Those who are interested in the sciences should study Latin because many of the terms of science are based on

Latin. Doctors, pharmacists, lawyers use many Latin terms in their work. Writers need Latin more than any other group because they must be able to express themselves clearly and exactly, and with a knowledge of Latin they have a clearer understanding of the meaning of each word and thus a mastery of their own language.

Then, as you continue the study of Latin, you will realize that you are gaining certain powers that will make living easier for you as you grow up. You will find that you have learned to concentrate, to judge, to decide quickly, and to persevere, to keep going until you have reached your goal, whatever that may be. These powers are very important to our complex civilization. You need every one of them when you face the ordinary situations of your daily life.

And finally, having learned to think and to judge, you will realize that you have also gained the tool that is most fundamental and important in your life, namely, a command of language by which you may express your thoughts clearly, adequately, and forcefully.

THE ROAD TO LATIN

INTRODUCTION

Alphabet and Pronunciation

1. The first thing to learn in starting the study of a language is its correct pronunciation. For language is mainly a matter of sound. The only way to learn to pronounce correctly in the beginning is by listening carefully to your teacher and imitating exactly every Latin word spoken. You will not be asked to pronounce anything yourself in the early lessons until you have heard it pronounced by your teacher. By this method you are learning to speak Latin just as babies learn their native tongue, for this is the natural method of learning any language. As you advance, however, you will not wish to be dependent upon your teacher. You will want to be able to pronounce by yourself any word that you see printed or written.

2. Alphabet

In Cicero's time the sounds of the Latin language were represented by twenty-three letters, or, more commonly, by twenty-one letters, since *y* and *z* were used only in Greek words. These letters were the same as those of the English alphabet, except that there was no *j* or *w*. The Romans used *i* both as a vowel and to represent the *y* sound heard in English in *onion*; and *u* both as a vowel and to represent the *w* sound heard in English in *penguin*. In modern textbooks it is customary to use *i* as the Romans did, but to use *u* only as a vowel, and *v* for the *w* sound; so that the alphabet now used for Latin contains twenty-four letters.

3. Vowels

In the Latin alphabet, as in English, the letters *a, e, i, o, u, y* are used to represent vowel sounds. Latin vowels may be either long or short; the time needed to pronounce a long vowel is twice as long as that needed for a short vowel. Moreover, all the vowels except *a* and *y* have a different quality or kind of sound when short from that which they have when long. The letter *y* occurs only in words borrowed from the Greek.

A B C D E F G H I K L M N O P Q R S T V X

Litterae Rōmānae

Scratched by some schoolboy or schoolgirl on a wall at Pompeii. The letters *y* and *z* are missing. Which other letters of our alphabet are missing?

The following table will give a good idea of the sounds of the Latin vowels:

Long Vowels

ā as the second *a* of *aha*: *māter*

ē as the *e* of *bake*: *rēx*

ī as the *i* of *machine*: *dīcō*

ō as the *o* of *note*: *nōmen*

ū as the *u* of *rule*: *lūna*

ȳ as German long *ü*: *peristȳlum*

Short Vowels

a as the first *a* of *aha*: *pater*

e as the *e* of *net*: *sella*

i as the *i* of *pin*: *iter*

o as the *o* of *obey*: *omnis*

u as the *u* of *full*: *dux*

y as German short *ü* or French *u*: *adytum*

4. Diphthongs

When two vowels are united to form a continuous sound, they are said to form a diphthong. The Latin diphthongs, with their pronunciations, are as follows:

ae as the *ai* of *aisle*: **paene**

au as the *ou* of *ouch*: **audiō**

oe as the *oi* of *boil*: **poena**

eu as the sound of Latin short *e* followed by the sound of Latin short *u*: **heu!**

ui as the sound of Latin short *u* followed by the sound of Latin short *i*: **cui**

5. Consonants

The consonants are pronounced approximately as in English, with the following differences:

b before *s* and *t* is pronounced like *p*: **urbs**, **obtinēt**

c is always hard as in *can*: **capit**, **Cicerō**

g is always hard as in *go*: **gentem**

i before a vowel in the same syllable is pronounced like *y* in *yes*: **iam**. When so used *i* is called a *semivowel*, or, sometimes, *i-consonant*.

n before *c*, *g*, or *x* is like *ng* in *hang*: **vincō**, **longus**, **phalanx**

r is rolled on the tip of the tongue: **Rōma**

s is always hissed as in *so*: **mēns**, **urbs**

Note that **mēns** does not rime with English *remains*, but more nearly with English *paints*. **Urbs** is pronounced as if it were spelled *urps*.

A	Λ
B	
C	
D	
E	II
F	I'
G	
H	
I	
K	
L	
M	M
N	N
O	
P	P
Q	
R	
S	
T	
V	
X	

Litterae
Rōmānae

t is always hard as in *tin*: **Titus**

v is like English *w*: **vivō**

x stands for **c** plus **s** and is pronounced like Latin **c** plus Latin **s**: **vixit**

z is like *dz* in *adze*: **gaza**

The combinations **ch**, **ph**, **th**, **rh** are found almost exclusively in words borrowed from the Greek. The **h** was probably pronounced by those who consciously imitated the original Greek pronunciation: **ch** like *kh* in English *workhorse*, **ph** as in *chophouse*, **th** as in *hothead*. Often, however, the **h** was altogether silent. In practice:

ch may be pronounced like **k**: **Achillēs**

ph may be pronounced like **p** or **f**: **Philippus**

th may be pronounced like **t** or like English *th* in *thin*:

Karthāgō

h in **rh** may be regarded as silent: **Rhēa**

6. Syllabification

A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs. There are no silent letters as in English. A syllable consists of a vowel, a diphthong, or a vowel or diphthong accompanied by one or more consonants. A single consonant between two vowels belongs with the second vowel; as, **fē-mi-na**.

Doubled consonants are always separated; as, **pu-el-la**.

In other combinations of two or more consonants the first consonant is usually placed with the first vowel and the others are joined to the second vowel; as, **mēn-sa**, **fe-nes-tra**, **por-ta**. There are, however, some exceptions to this rule. The combinations of **r** and **l** with certain other consonants, as **pl**, **bl**, **cl**, **pr**, **tr**, **cr**, **gr**, etc., are treated as single consonants, and are not separated as other combinations are. Note the following examples of syllabification: **a-gri-co-la**, **pa-tri-a**, **ā-cris**, **pro-pri-us**, **du-pli-cem**.



Rōma, urbs aeterna

Observe that there is a difference between a long *vowel* and a long *syllable*. In this book, a long *vowel* can be recognized by the macron over it; vowels not so marked are short. A *syllable* is long under the following conditions:

1. If it contains a long vowel: *dī-cō*.
2. If it contains a diphthong: *cau-sae*.
3. If its vowel, whether long or short is followed by *x* or *z* (which are really double consonants): *dux*.
4. If its vowel, whether long or short, is followed by any two consonants except the combinations of *r* and *l*, referred to above, which are treated as single consonants: *om-nis*, *sel-la*.

A syllable is *short* if it contains a short final vowel, or a short vowel followed by a vowel, by a single consonant, or by a consonant group treated as a single consonant: *bo-na*, *me-us*, *ca-pit*, *a-grum*.

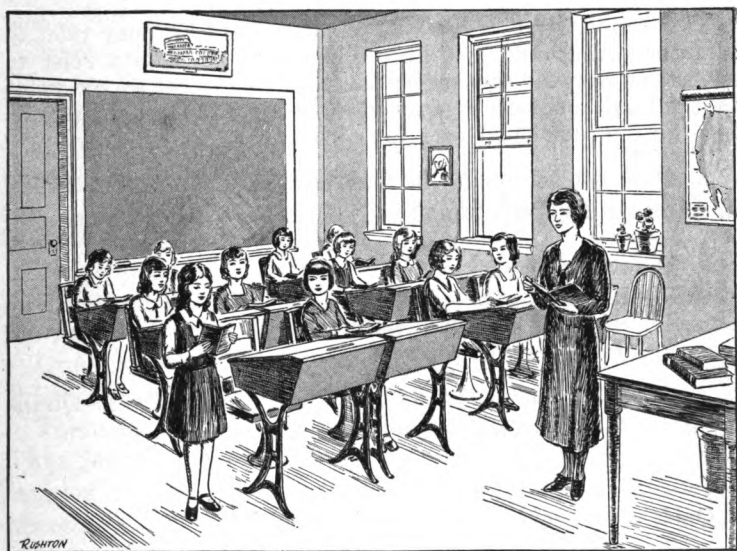
The last syllable of a Latin word is called the *ultima*, the next to the last is called the *penult*, and the third from the end is called the *antepenult*.

7. Accent

Words of two syllables are accented on the penult, that is, on the first syllable; as, *mēn'sa*, *a'mat*.

Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult if it is long; as, *pic-tū'ra*, *pu-el'la*; otherwise on the antepenult; as, *a-gri'co-la*.

CHAPTER I
FIRST DECLENSION, NOMINATIVE CASE
Nominative Singular



8. SCHOLA AMERICĀNA I

Schola est schola Americāna. Schola est magna. Iānua est clausa. Fenestra nōn est clausa. Fenestra est aperta. Mēnsa est magna. Sella nōn est magna. Sella est parva.

Fēmina est Americāna. Fēmina est magistra. Magistra stat. Puella est Americāna. Puella magistra nōn est. Puella est discipula. Puella quoque stat. Puella est Iūlia. Iūlia

discipula bona est. Cornēlia est discipula. Cornēlia quoque discipula bona est.

Sella nōn est magna. Sella est parva. Mēnsa nōn est parva. Mēnsa est magna. Fenestra clausa nōn est. Fenestra aperta est. Iānua nōn est aperta. Iānua est clausa.

9. Respondē Latīnē:

What

1. Quid est?

This means *What is this?* or *What is that?* It may refer to something that has just been spoken of; or it may refer to something that the speaker points to. The teacher should point to the various objects mentioned in the first paragraph, repeating the question *Quid est?* for each one.

Who

2. Quis est fēmina? 3. Quis stat? 4. Quis est Iūlia?
5. Quis est discipula bona?

Of what kind

6. Quālis est sella?

Quālis means *Of what kind?* or *Like what?* It is used when an adjective or some kind of description is expected in the answer. This question might be translated *What is the seat like?*

7. Quālis est mēnsa? 8. Quālis est fenestra? 9. Quālis est iānua? 10. Quālis est schola?

Nōtā bene

Quid, *what?* quis, *who?* quālis, *of what kind?*

DISCUSSION

10. Find the subject of each verb in the first paragraph of *Schola Americāna I*. In what letter does each of these subjects end?

A noun which is used as the subject of a verb is said to be in the nominative case. Observe that each of the nouns in the foregoing story, when used as the subject of a verb, ends in -a.

The words which describe the nouns are adjectives. What is the ending of each adjective? These adjectives, like the nouns, end in -a and are in the nominative case. They are said to *agree* with the nouns which they describe.

The verb *est* is often used merely to connect the subject with a noun or an adjective, as in *fēmina est magistra*, *the woman is the teacher*, or *sella est parva*, *the seat is small*. Such a noun or adjective is also in the nominative case, and is called a *predicate nominative* or *predicate adjective*.

Does each noun in the lesson refer to only one person or thing, or to more than one? Nouns that refer to one person or thing are in the singular number. We often say simply that they are singular, or in the singular. The ending of the nominative case singular is -a.

Nouns which end in -a in the nominative singular form a class called the *first declension*. There are nouns with other endings in the nominative; but for several lessons we shall study only nouns in -a, and the rules regarding endings are to be understood as applying to nouns of this class.

Quid, what? and *quis, who?* are also used as subjects. When so used they are in the nominative case.

There is no word in Latin corresponding to *a, an, the*. Thus *fēmina* means *woman, a woman, or the woman*. The articles may be freely supplied in English translation when necessary.

Nominative Plural

11.

SCHOLA AMERICĀNA II

Iūlia est discipula. Cornēlia est discipula. Discipulae
are sunt Iūlia et Cornēlia. The girls Puellae Americānae sunt discipulae.
Discipulae bonae sunt. Discipulae stant. Magistra quoque stat.
Scholae Americānae sunt magnae. Fenestrae magnae sunt
et iānuae parvae sunt. Iānuae sunt clausae sed fenestrae sunt
apertae.

12. Respondē Latinē:

1. Quis est Iūlia? 2. Quis est Cornēlia? 3. Quālēs discipulae sunt Iūlia et Cornēlia? 4. Quis stat?
 5. Quālēs sunt scholae Americānae? 6. Quālēs sunt fenestrae? 7. Quālēs sunt iānuae?

What kind of

Puella Rōmāna

An actual Roman painting discovered in Pompeii. This picture, like the one on the opposite page, was painted in colors, somewhat resembling those of the frontispiece

Nōtā bene

Quālēs, of what kind? *what kind of? what?* is used when referring to a plural noun.

DISCUSSION

13. In the sentence *Iūlia est discipula*, what is the subject? In the sentence *Puellae Americānae sunt discipulae*, what is the subject? If both *Iūlia* and *puellae* are used as subjects, in what case are they? Why are the endings different?

Nouns that refer to more than one person or thing are in the plural number. In the story find other words in the plural number that are used as subjects. What endings do these words have? The ending of the nominative case plural is -ae.



Puella Rōmāna

A noun used as a subject ends in -a in the singular, and in -ae in the plural. The verb ends in -t if the subject is singular, and in -nt if the subject is plural.

<p><i>Nominative singular, puella</i> <i>Nominative plural, puellae</i></p>

RULES

14. The subject of a verb is in the nominative case. A predicate noun or predicate adjective is in the nominative case.

VOCABULARY I

<i>Americāna, American</i>	<i>magistra, teacher</i> (referring to a woman); <i>mistress</i>
<i>aperta, open</i>	<i>*magna, large, big, great</i>
<i>*bona, good</i>	<i>mēnsa, table</i>
<i>clausa, closed</i>	<i>*nōn, adv., not</i>
<i>Cornēlia, Cornelia</i>	<i>*parva, small, little</i>
<i>discipula, pupil</i> (referring to a girl)	<i>puella, girl</i>
<i>*est, is; sunt, are</i> (see note below)	<i>*quoque, conj., also, too</i>
<i>*et, conj., and</i>	<i>schola, school</i>
<i>fēmina, woman</i>	<i>*sed, conj., but</i>
<i>fenestra, window</i>	<i>sella, chair, seat, bench</i>
<i>iānua, door</i>	<i>*stat, stands, stands up; stant, stand, stand up</i>
<i>Iūlia, Julia</i>	<i>sunt</i> (see <i>est</i>)

Est means *is* if the subject is expressed, or *he is* or *she is* or *it is* if no subject is expressed. Similarly *sunt* means *are*, or *they are*. In the lesson vocabularies, verbs will be defined as in this vocabulary; but the fuller definitions, in the form explained in this note, are always to be understood.

15. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. Pick out the Latin words in the vocabulary with which the following English words are associated:

<i>aperture</i>	<i>scholar</i>	<i>magnify</i>
<i>disciple</i>	<i>magistrate</i>	<i>station</i>
<i>feminine</i>	<i>bonanza</i>	

II. *January*. The word *iānua* comes from the same root (meaning *going*) as the word *iānus*, the name of the Roman god Janus. Janus was regarded as the god of doors and entrances, and also of beginnings. Since a beginning implies an ending, he was represented with two faces, one looking forward, one backward. His temple in Rome had doors facing east and west, for the beginning and ending of the day. Since Janus was the god of beginnings, the first month of

the year was dedicated to him. Our word *January* is derived from his name, and suggests that this month is like a door to the new year, facing both ways.



Iānus

Very appropriately, the Romans pictured the god of beginnings on their earliest coinage. This coin, called an *as*, was made of bronze, and weighed about twelve ounces (the Roman pound); it was worth about twelve cents

DRILL

Supply the proper case endings:

1. Mēnsa est magn....; sellae sunt parv....
2. Schol.... sunt magn....
3. Iānu.... sunt apert....
4. Fenestr.... est apert....
5. Discipul.... bon.... stat.
6. Quid est? Sell.... parv.... est.
7. Iūlia et Cornēlia sunt puell.... parv....
8. Quālis discipul.... Iūlia est? Iūlia bon.... discipul.... est.
9. Discipul.... est puell.... Americān....
10. Quis stat? Magistr.... stat; discipul.... nōn stant.

EXERCISE I

Write in Latin:

1. American schools are large.
2. The windows are open.
3. The doors are closed.
4. The chairs are small; the table also is small.
5. The teacher is an American woman.
6. The girls are not standing up.
7. A good pupil stands up.
8. Julia and Cornelia are good pupils.

In writing the Latin sentences, always be careful to mark the long vowels. Remember that there is as much difference between *e* and *ē* in Latin as there is between the vowel sounds of *met* and *fête* in English.

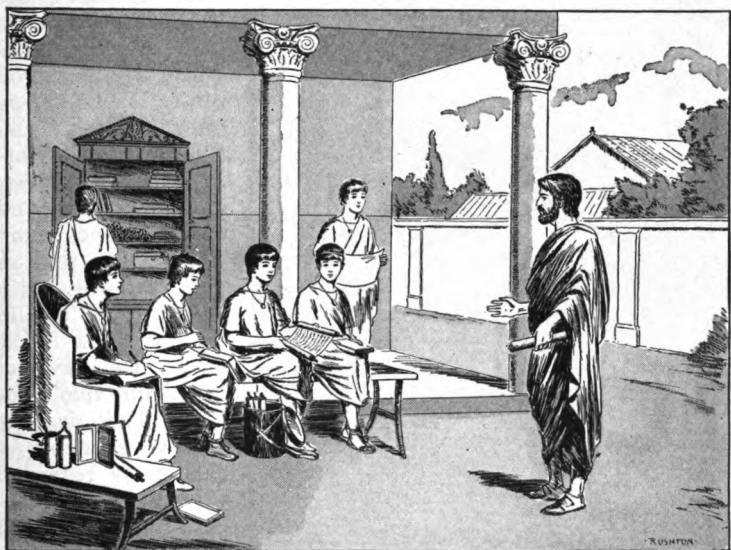
**Magister**

A humorous representation on a Greek vase, showing a school-teacher, stylus in hand

CHAPTER II

FIRST DECLENSION, ACCUSATIVE CASE

Accusative Singular



16.

SCHOLA RŌMĀNA I

This school

Schola est schola Rŏmāna. Parva est schola Rŏmāna
sed magna est schola Americāna. Schola Rŏmāna ^{door} iānuam
nŏn habet quod schola est aperta. Antiqua schola ^{window} fenestram
nŏn habet quod schola nŏn est tēcta. Antiqua schola mēn-

(15)

sam nōn habet. Schola Americāna mēnsam magnam habet. Schola antiqua magistrā Americanam dēlectat. Schola Rōmāna Iūliam et Cornēliam dēlectat. Cūr schola antiqua magistrā Americanam dēlectat? Schola antiqua magistrā Americanam dēlectat quod schola est aperta.



Libri Rōmāni

Books were made in ancient Greece and Rome by writing on parchment or papyrus, with a pen made of split reed, and ink made from a solution of gum and soot. The single pages were glued together into a long, unwieldy strip and rolled about a stick. The reader unrolled with his right hand as he read and rerolled with his left

translating it. In such a case, make enough of a translation to show you what the sentence means, and then read it over again

Note to the pupil

17. It is important that you learn from the start to use the passages of Latin text in the way which will teach you most. In preparing your lessons, you should read the Latin selections over, aloud if possible, and each sentence more than once; and as you read the Latin words, you should try to know what they mean *without translating into English*. That is, the Latin selections should be regarded principally as exercises for reading and speaking, and not as exercises in mere translation.

Sometimes you will find that you cannot make yourself understand a sentence without

in Latin, trying to understand it without thinking of the English words. The inflection of your voice as you read will generally tell anyone who is listening whether you are merely reading mechanically, or are understanding as you read. Remember that the Romans used this language in ordinary conversation with one another.

At first it will be hard for you to read in this way. But if you persevere, it will soon become easy and natural.

18. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Quālis est
schola Rŏmāna?

2. Quālis est schola

^{Why}
Americāna? 3. Cūr
schola Rŏmāna
iānuam nōn habet?

4. Cūr antīqua
schola fenestram
nōn habet? 5. Quid
schola Americāna
habet?

6. Quālem mēn-
sam schola Ameri-
cāna habet?

^{Whom}
7. Quem schola an-
tīqua dēlectat?

8. Quem schola
Rŏmāna dēlectat?

9. Cūr schola antīqua magistrā Americānam dēlectat?

10. Cūr schola antīqua puellam Rŏmānam dēlectat?



Tabellae

Letters and current records and accounts were written on tablets, which were usually made of wood covered with a layer of wax. The writing was done with a stylus, which was flattened at one end so that the writer, could erase mistakes by smoothing the wax. A raised wooden border kept the wax tablets from rubbing

Nōtā bene

Quem (accusative singular), *whom?* quid (accusative singular), *what?* quālem (accusative singular), *of what kind? what kind of?* cūr, *why?*

DISCUSSION

19. In the sentence *Schola Rōmāna iānuam nōn habet*, what is the subject? Are the words *schola* and *iānuam* in this sentence used in the same way? How is *iānuam* used?

In the English sentence *he strikes the ball*, *ball* is said to receive the action of the verb *strikes*. In the same way in the sentences *he has the ball*, *he admires the ball*, we say that *ball* receives the action of the verbs *has*, *admires*, though you may not think there is very much action in these verbs. In all these sentences, *he* is the subject of the verb, and *ball* is the *direct object*, often called simply the *object*, of the verb.

If we see an expression like *he strikes*, *he praises*, we think at once of asking, "*What* does he strike?" "*Whom* does he praise?" Such verbs, which need a direct object to make the sentence complete, are called *transitive* verbs. But not all verbs are transitive. Sentences like *he smiles* or *I agree* do not lead us to ask, "*What* does he smile?" or "*Whom* do I agree?" These verbs are complete without a direct object. Such verbs are called *intransitive* verbs.

In the Latin sentence quoted above, *Schola Rōmāna iānuam nōn habet*, the word *iānuam* is the direct object of *habet*. Find other words in the story used as direct object. What ending has each of these words? Does each represent one person or thing, or more than one?

The word that receives the action of a transitive verb is called the *direct object* of the verb, and is in the accusative case. In English grammar this case is called the *objective* case. Observe that, in these Latin words, the ending of the accusative singular is *-am*.



Discipulus tardus

A representation, in low relief, of a Roman school, found near Trier, Germany, an old Roman town. The boy coming late carries his tablets

Accusative Plural

20.

SCHOLA RŌMĀNA II

girls

Scholae magistram et *puellās* dēlectant. Antīqua schola Rōmāna est. Nova schola Americāna est. Schola antīqua

seats

longās *sellās* habet. Schola nova parvās *sellās* habet. Schola

*neither**nor*

Rōmāna neque iānuam neque fenestram habet. Schola

*both**and*

Americāna et iānuās et fenestrās habet. Antīquae scholae

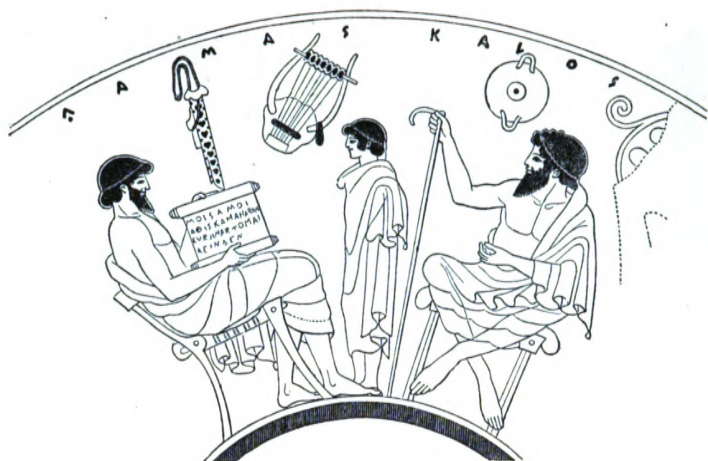
sunt apertae; sed novae scholae sunt tēctae. Schola

Rōmāna *puellās* Americānās dēlectat quod *puellae* Americānae *scholās* apertās amant.

21. The sentence Schola Rōmāna *puellās* Americānās dēlectat means literally *the Roman school pleases American girls*; but a better translation would be *American girls like the Roman school*. Expressions with dēlectat can often be translated by interchanging the object and the subject and using *likes* or *like*.

22. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Quās scholae dēlectant? 2. Quālis est schola Rōmāna
3. Quālēs *sellās* schola antīqua habet? 4. Quālēs *sellās*



Schola antiq̄ua

The Romans modeled much of their education on that of the Greeks. This picture and the one on the opposite page were painted on an old Greek vase, but they tell us much about Roman schools as well

schola nova habet? 5. Quid schola Americāna habet?
6. Quās schola Rōmāna dēlectat?

Nōtā bene

Quālēs (accusative plural), *of what kind? what kind of?* quās
(accusative plural), *whom?*

Neque . . . neque, *neither . . . nor*

Et . . . et, *both . . . and*

DISCUSSION

23. In the sentence *Scholae magistram et puellās dēlectant*, how is the word *magistram* used? In what case and number is it? How is the word *puellās* used? If both *magistram* and *puellās* are used as direct objects, in what case are they? Why are the endings different? Find other words in the plural number used as the direct object. What ending do they have? The ending of the accusative case plural is *-ās*.



Schola antiqua

In the scene shown above, a teacher is correcting a boy's exercise tablet with a stylus. Another boy is learning to play the flute. Notice the roll and tablets hanging on the wall. In the picture on the opposite page, the boy is reciting a poem to the teacher, while his attendant listens

Accusative singular, puellam

Accusative plural, puellās

RULE

24. The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative case.

VOCABULARY II

amat, loves, likes; amant,
love, like

*antiqua, old, ancient

*cūr, adv., why

dēlectat, pleases, delights;

dēlectant, please, delight

et . . . et, both . . . and

*habet, has; habent, have

*longa, long

*neque, conj., and not, nor,
neither; neque . . . neque,
neither . . . nor

**nova*, new, fresh, recent,
modern

Rōmāna, Roman; as a noun,
a Roman (woman)

**quod*, conj., because

tēcta, inclosed, covered

25.

LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. Pick out the Latin words with which the following English words are associated: *amateur*, *antique*, *novice*.

II. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:

1. David and William are *amateur* photographers.
2. *Antique* jewelry is precious.
3. All of you are *novices* in Latin.

DRILL

Supply the proper case endings:

1. *Puellae Americān*.... *scholam Rōmān*.... *amant*.
2. *Schol*... *aperta magistr*.... (*sing.*) *dēlectat*.
3. *Schol*.... *sellās parv*.... *habent*.
4. *Magistra est bon*....; *puellae sunt bon*....
5. *Antiqua schola et magistr*.... *et discipul*.... *dēlectat*.

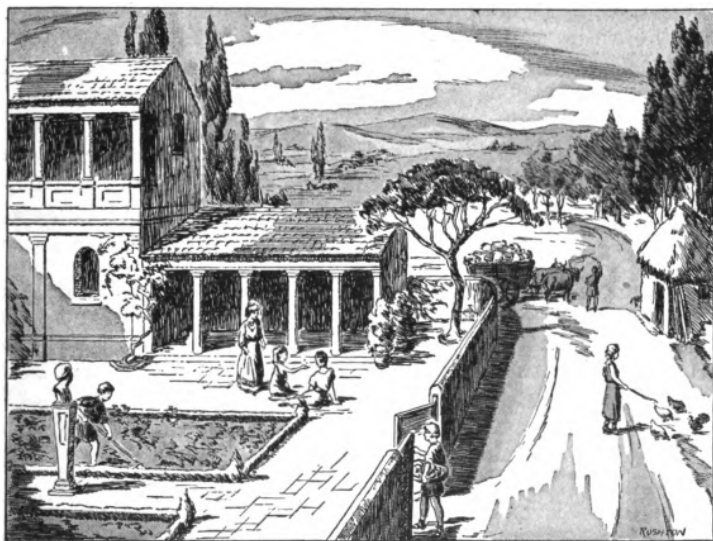
EXERCISE II

Write in Latin:

1. Modern schools are large but ancient schools are small. 2. The Roman school has neither doors nor windows because the school is open. 3. The ancient school has long benches. 4. Both the teacher and the pupils like the ancient school. (*Write: The ancient school pleases . . .*) 5. The American school is new. 6. Why are the windows open? 7. Cornelia and Julia are standing up. 8. The teacher is standing, too. 9. The teacher likes the good pupils; the pupils like a good teacher. 10. Both the woman and the girls are American.

CHAPTER III

REVIEW OF NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE LATIN QUESTIONS WITH -NE, NŌNNE, AND NUM



26.

VILLA RŌMĀNA

Is this (or Is that)

Estne villa Americāna? Villa nōn est Americāna.
Villa est Rōmāna. Villa Rōmāna casās parvās et multam
terram habet. Villa Rōmāna est villa Cornēliāna. Villa
Cornēliāna est longa et lāta. *Isn't Cornelius's country place*
large and beautiful? Nōnne villa Cornēliāna est
magna et pulchra? Villa Cornēliāna est magna et pulchra.

(23)

The little hut doesn't have columns, does it?
Villa columnās habet. Num casa parva columnās habet?
Casa parva columnās nōn habet.

Quis est fēmina? Tullia est fēmina. Nōne Tullia est Rōmāna? Certē Tullia est Rōmāna. Tullia domina est. Domina multās ancillās habet. Ancillae labōrant. Habetne Tullia filiās? Tullia filiās habet. Cornēlia et Secunda filiae sunt. Stantne Cornēlia et Secunda? Puellae nōn stant sed fēmina stat.

Labōrantne agricolae? Agricolae labōrant. Nōne terra agricolās dēlectat? Terra agricolās dēlectat. Agricolae et terram et silvam amant. Num terram nautae amant? Terram nautae nōn amant. Nautās nōn terra sed aqua dēlectat. Nōne villa Cornēliāna et Tulliam et filiās dēlectat? Villa Cornēliāna et Tulliam et puellās dēlectat.

Nōtā bene

I. The word *villa*, which may be translated *villa*, means *farm*, or *country place* or *estate*, referring either to the house or to the whole establishment. If applied to a house it suggests more pretentiousness than *casa*, which means rather *hut*, *cottage*, *shed*.

II. The *villa Cornēliāna* in the story is so called because it belongs to Cornelius. The expression may be translated *Cornelian villa* or, more simply, *Cornelius's villa*.

DISCUSSION

27. The form of the English question *Is this an American villa?* does not show whether "yes" or "no" is likely to be the answer. The Latin question *Estne villa Americāna?* is like the English question, in that the speaker cannot tell whether to expect an affirmative or a negative answer.

In Latin, such a question is indicated by the syllable *-ne*. This word is an *enclitic* — that is, it is not used except when joined to the end of another word. The enclitic *-ne* is attached to some emphatic word in the question, often the verb, and this emphatic word is placed first.



Villa antiqua

An ancient mosaic from a Roman province in Africa. Notice the different varieties of fowl kept at a villa

In the English question *Isn't this an American villa?* can you tell what answer is expected? The Latin question *Nōne villa Cornēliāna est magna et pulchra?* is a question of the same kind: the form shows that the answer "yes" is expected.

In English, when we wish to indicate that the answer "no" is expected, we are obliged to change the form of the question altogether. We say, for instance, *The little hut doesn't have columns, does it?* This question is equivalent to the Latin *Num casa parva columnās habet?* That is, the word *num* at the beginning of the sentence shows that a negative answer is expected. The way of showing this in Latin is thus simpler than in English.

28. Questions that begin with interrogative words like *quis*, *quālis*, *cūr* cannot ordinarily be answered by "yes" or "no."

There is no word in Latin exactly equivalent to "yes" or "no." To answer "yes," one or more emphatic words



Agricultūra

This old mosaic shows various scenes from life on a Roman farm in the question, or the whole question, may be repeated; as, **Habetne Tullia filiās?** **Habet** (or, **Filiās habet**), *Has Tullia any daughters?* Yes. To answer "no," the emphatic words may be repeated with the addition of **nōn**; as, **Estne villa Americāna?** **Nōn est**, or **Nōn est Americāna**, or **Villa nōn est Americāna**.

The teacher when reading the questions to the class, and the pupil when reading them aloud during his study or review, should be careful to give them the special inflection which they require. Thus questions with **-ne** and **nōnne** should be spoken with a steadily rising voice, as in English "Is it time to go home?" or "Isn't it time to go home?" and questions with **num** should have the peculiar rise and fall required in the question "It isn't time to go home, is it?" One who has not heard the first word of a question should be able to tell from the rise or fall of voice in the rest of it whether it began with **num**, or with **-ne** or **nōnne**.

Observe that in questions beginning with an interrogative word like **quis**, **quid**, **quālis**, **cūr**, etc., the voice falls at the end, as in "Who is there?"

29. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Estne villa Rōmāna? 2. Quālis villa Cornēliāna est?
 3. Habetne villa Rōmāna multam terram? 4. Nōnne villa
 Rōmāna columnās habet? 5. Num casa columnās habet?
 6. Quid villa Cornēliāna habet? 7. Nōnne villa Cornēliāna
 est magna? 8. Num est villa parva?

9. Habetne domina ancillās? 10. Nōnne ancillae labō-
 rant? 11. Nōnne Tullia
 filiās habet? 12. Num
 puellae stant?

13. Nōnne agricolae la-
 bōrant? 14. Quid agri-
 colae amant? 15. Quid
 nautae amant?

RULES

30. The enclitic *-ne* is used in questions intended to show by their form that the speaker cannot tell whether to expect "yes" or "no" as the answer.



Villa antiqua

This old Roman villa in Italy is still in use

The enclitic *-ne* is attached to the most important word of the question, usually the verb, and this important verb is placed first in the sentence, as in the following examples:

Labōratne agricola? *Does the farmer work? or, Is the farmer working?* Habetne domina ancillās? *Does the mistress have maid-servants? or, Has the mistress maidservants?*

31. The question word *nōnne* is used to introduce questions to which the speaker expects the answer "yes."

Nōnne agricola labōrat? *Doesn't the farmer work? or, Isn't the farmer working?* Nōnne villa Rōmāna columnās habet? *Doesn't the Roman villa have columns? or, Hasn't the Roman villa (any) columns?*

32. The question word *num* is used to introduce questions to which the speaker expects the answer "no."

Num agricola labōrat? The farmer isn't working, is he?

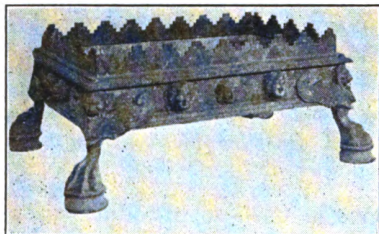
VOCABULARY III

<i>agricola, farmer</i>	<i>*labōrat, works; labōrant,</i>
<i>ancilla, maidservant, servant</i>	<i>work</i>
(referring to a woman),	<i>*lāta, wide, broad</i>
<i>maid</i>	<i>*multa, much; multae, many</i>
<i>*aqua, water</i>	<i>nauta, sailor</i>
<i>casa, cottage, hut, shed, little</i>	<i>pulchra, beautiful, pretty,</i>
<i>house</i>	<i>handsome</i>
<i>certē, adv., certainly, surely,</i>	<i>Secunda, Secunda, second</i>
<i>indeed</i>	<i>daughter of Cornelius</i>
<i>columna, column</i>	<i>*silva, forest, woods</i>
<i>Cornēliāna, of or belonging to</i>	<i>*terra, land, earth</i>
<i>Cornelius, Cornelius's, Cor-</i>	<i>Tullia, Tullia, wife of Cor-</i>
<i>nelian</i>	<i>nelius</i>
<i>domina, mistress, lady</i>	<i>villa, villa, farm, country</i>
<i>filia, daughter</i>	<i>place, country house</i>

33.

LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. Pick out the words in the vocabulary with which the following words are associated: *aquarium, domi-*
nate, multiply, nautical.



Courtesy of The Pennsylvania University Museum

Fociulus

Roman homes were heated by small charcoal braziers which could be carried from room to room

II. What is meant by the phrase *terra firma*?

34. *Cornelia.* In ancient Rome, a free man always had at least two names, corresponding roughly to Christian name (or given name) and surname (or family name). The latter was the

second name, and was called the *nōmen*; it showed the *gēns* or tribe to which the man belonged. Frequently he had a third name showing his family, which was placed not before the *nōmen*, as in modern usage, but after it. Thus Publius Cornelius Scipio would be the name of a man whom we should call Mr. Cornelius, whose first name was Publius, and who was also called Scipio because he belonged to the Scipio family of the Cornelian tribe.

If Cornelius had a daughter, her name would be *Cornēlia*, the feminine form of the *nōmen* of her father, *Cornēlius*. If he had other daughters, they would all bear the name *Cornēlia*, just as all the daughters of John Smith would be called Miss Smith; but they would be called by their own individual names also. These names would often be in the form *Cornēlia Secunda*, *Cornelia the Second*, *Cornēlia Tertia*, *Cornelia the Third*, etc.; or, more simply, *Secunda*, *Tertia*, etc.



Foculus

DRILL

Supply the proper case endings:

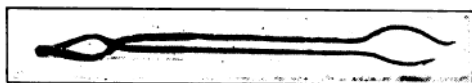
1. Tullia fili.... bon.... amat.
2. Silva pulchra domin.... Rōmān.... dēlectat.
3. Fēmin.... vill.... et ancill.... habet.
4. Ancill.... labōrant quod domin.... amant.
5. Vill.... magn.... est pulchr....
6. Agricolaе silv.... amant.
7. Terra et silva agricol.... dēlectant.
8. Dēlectatne aqua naut....?
9. Nōnne fenestra est apert....?
10. Num casae sunt pulchr....?

EXERCISE III

Write in Latin:

1. Cornelius's villa has many columns.
2. The beautiful villa is both long and wide.
3. The villa pleases the mistress because it is large.
4. Why does the woman love the

girls? 5. Tullia loves the girls because the girls are (her) daughters. 6. The girls are not working, are they? 7. Do not the maidservants work? Yes, indeed, they do (Certainly, they work). 8. Does the new cottage please the farmer? 9. Land delights farmers but water delights sailors. 10. Is the forest large? No; (it) is neither long nor wide.



Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art

Forceps ignifer

The Romans showed considerable skill in designing iron implements like these fire tongs

CHAPTER IV

FIRST DECLENSION, GENITIVE CASE



35. MARCELLA

Puella est Marcella. Marcella est filia ^{of Terentia} Terentiae.
^{of the house} Terentia est domina villae. Marcella est laeta quod novam
 tunicam habet. Tunica Marcellae est longa et alba. Mar-
 cella corbulam portat. Marcellae corbula est pulchra.

^{of the goddesses} Marcella statuās deārum amat. ^{full of statues} Villa est plēna statuārum
 deārum. Corbula Marcellae est rosārum albārum plēna.
 Marcella statuās deārum ōrnat; corōnae deās dēlectant.

36. Respondē Latinē:

Whose

1. Cuius filia est Marcella? 2. Cuius tunica est longa et alba? 3. Cuius corbula est pulchra?

4. Nōne Marcella statuās deārum amat? 5. Estne villa plēna statuārum? 6. Nōne corbula Marcellae est plēna rosārum? 7. Ōrnatne Marcella statuās? 8. Quārum statuās Marcella ōrnat? 9. Quās corōnae puellae dēlectant?

Nōtā bene

Cuius (interrogative pronoun in the genitive singular), *whose?*

Quārum (interrogative pronoun in the genitive plural), *whose?*

DISCUSSION

37. In the sentence **Marcella est filia Terentiae**, whose daughter is Marcella? In the sentence **Tunica Marcellae est longa et alba**, whose tunic is long and white? In the sentence **Marcellae corbula est pulchra**, whose basket is beautiful? What do the words **Terentiae** and **Marcellae** show? Does each word refer to one person, or to more than one person? What is the ending of these words? With what ending is possession indicated in English? In Latin, possession is indicated by a case having the ending *-ae*; this case is called the *genitive* case. In English grammar, this case is called the *possessive* case.

In the sentence **Marcella statuās deārum amat**, whose statues does Marcella like? How is the word **deārum** translated? In the sentence **Villa est plēna statuārum deārum**, which word tells what the villa is full of? How is this word translated? Does each of these words refer to one person or thing, or to more than one? Find other words with the same ending and give their meanings. The ending *-ārum* is the ending of the genitive plural.

The genitive case is used to answer the question *whose?* or *of whom?* or *of what?*

Genitive singular, puellae
Genitive plural, puellārum

RULE

38. The genitive case is usually equivalent, in English, to a prepositional phrase introduced by "of," or to the apostrophe and s as used in the English possessive. It often denotes possession.

READING LESSON

39. PUELLAE LAETAE

Cornēlia et Secunda sunt filiae Tulliae. Tullia et filiae villam pulchram et ancillās multās habent. Vita filiārum Tulliae est laeta quod Tullia filiās amat. Ancillae Tulliae sunt laetae quod Tullia est benigna domina. Vita Tulliae est laeta quod et filiae et ancillae sunt bonae. Ancillae nōn semper labōrant. Saepe puellae et ancillae ambulant. Tullia est magistra filiārum et ancillārum. Puellae sunt laetae; puellae Tulliam magistrā amant.



Puella Rōmāna

VOCABULARY IV

alba, white

ambulat, walks, takes a walk;

ambulant, walk, take a walk

benigna, kind

corbula, little basket

corōna, garland, wreath

dea, goddess

laeta, happy, cheerful

Marcella, Marcella, the
daughter of Terentia

ōrnat, decorates, adorns;

ōrnant, decorate, adorn

plēna, full

*portat, carries, brings; por-
tant, carry, bring

rosa, rose

*saepe, adv., often

*semper, adv., always
statua, statue

Terentia, Terentia: the
name of a Roman lady

tunica, tunic: a kind of
garment

*vita, life

40. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. Pick out the Latin words in the vocabulary with which the following are associated: *benign, vital, portable, ornate*.

II. *Ambulance*. This word comes from a French phrase *hôpital ambulant*, meaning literally *walking hospital*. The French phrase is derived from the Latin.



Courtesy of The Metropolitan
Museum of Art

Pupa Rōmāna

DRILL

Supply the proper case endings:

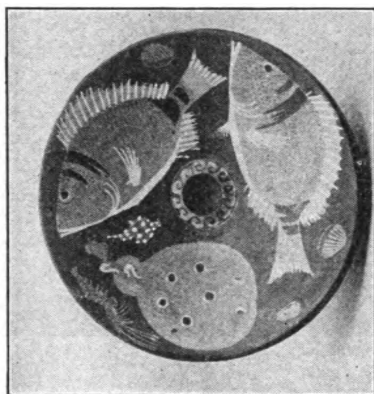
1. Filiae agricol.... (pl.) sunt laetae.
2. Villa Tulli.... est pulchra.
3. Statuā fēmin.... (sing.) Rōmān.... est magna.
4. Casa ancill.... (pl.) dominam dēlectat.
5. Ancilla corbulam Marcell.... portat.
6. Corbula est plēna ros....

EXERCISE IV

Write in Latin:

1. Marcella's tunic is new.
2. The little girl is taking a walk.
3. Marcella is not a farmer's daughter.
4. Marcella is the daughter of Terentia.
5. Terentia's maids are happy because she is a

kind mistress. 6. The life of a maidservant is not always happy. 7. Marcella and Terentia have baskets full of white roses. 8. The maids are carrying beautiful garlands. 9. Terentia and (her) daughter often decorate the statues of the goddesses. 10. Do the garlands please the goddesses? Yes, surely.



Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art

Patera Römāna

**The hole in the center was filled
with sauce for the fish**

CHAPTER V

FIRST DECLENSION, DATIVE CASE



41.

GALBAE TABERNA

Galba magnam tabernam habet. Taberna est plēna statuārum et amphorārum. Taberna fēminās Rōmānās dēlectat. Hodiē Tullia, Claudia, Camilla tabernam Galbae intrant. Galba fēminās videt. Quid ^{to Tullia} Tulliae dēmōnstrat? Tulliae parvam statuam dēmōnstrat, sed Tullia statuam nōn dēsīderat. Galba Claudiae statuam dēmōnstrat. Claudia statuam spectat et dēsīderat. Itaque fēmina Galbae pecūniam dat. Camilla quoque statuam deae dēsīderat. Galba Camillae rubram Diānae statuam dēmōnstrat. Statua Camillam dēlectat; Camilla Galbae pecūniam dat.

Tum Galba ^{to the Roman women} *fēminīs Rōmānīs* amphoram dēmōnstrat; amphora pulchra fēminās dēlectat. Tullia filiās vocat. Tum

^{to the daughters} Galba *filiabus* Tulliae amphoram dēmōnstrat. Amphora puellās quoque dēlectat. Cornēlia et Secunda tabernam Galbae amant. Interdum Galba filiabus Tulliae parvam statuam dat. Galba puellīs fābulās saepe nārrat. Cornēlia et Secunda fābulās amant. Itaque fēminae et puellae tabernam Galbae saepe intrant.

42. Respondē Latinē:

^{To whom}
1. Quid Galba habet? 2. Cui Galba parvam statuam dēmōnstrat? 3. Num dēsiderat Tullia statuam? 4. Cui fēmina pecūniam dat? 5. Cui Galba statuam Diānae dēmōnstrat? 6. Nōne Camilla Galbae pecūniam dat?

7. Quid Galba fēminīs dēmōnstrat? 8. Quās Tullia vocat? 9. Dēmōnstratne Galba filiabus Tulliae amphoram? 10. Quibus Galba parvam statuam dat? 11. Quibus Galba fābulās nārrat?

Nōtā bene

Cui (sing.), *to whom? to what?* quibus (pl.), *to whom? to what?*

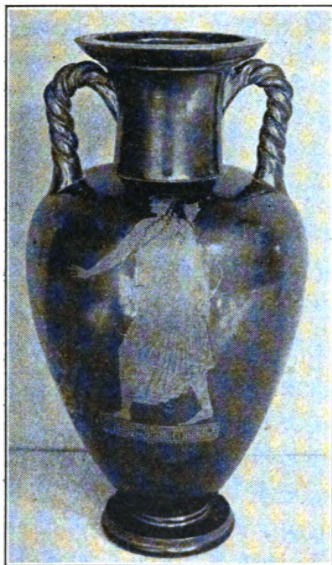
DISCUSSION

43. In the sentence Galba Tulliae parvam statuam dēmōnstrat, which word indicates to whom Galba shows the statue? In the sentence Fēmina Galbae pecūniam dat, which word indicates to whom the woman gives the money?

The word Tulliae tells to whom the statue is shown. The word Galbae tells to whom the money is given. The word in a sentence which shows to whom something is given, shown, or told is called the *indirect object* of the verb. Such a word is in the *dative* case.

How does each of these words end? Is Tulliae singular or plural? Observe that the word naming the indirect object ends in -ae, the ending of the dative in the singular.

Observe that the dative ending shown in *Tulliae* is the same as the genitive ending. Perhaps you wonder how the Romans knew which case was meant. Remember, however, that Latin was a spoken language as well as a written language, and that when a form could be interpreted in two ways, the hearer could usually



Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art

Amphora

The decoration on this jar of glazed terra cotta is a picture of Hercules. Jars like this were sold in shops like Galba's

tell what was meant from the inflection of the voice, and from the rest of the sentence. You probably do not realize how often you use forms in English that could be interpreted in more than one way. If you hear a sentence beginning "The boys . . ." you may find that these words turn out to be:

Nominative plural, as in *The boys came home*; or

Genitive plural, as in *The boys' game was spoiled*; or

Genitive singular, as in *The boy's dog is lost*; or

A contraction for "The boy is," as in *The boy's a runner*; or

A contraction for "The boy has," as in *The boy's gone*.

Even if you see the words "The boy's" written or printed, you cannot tell which of the last three forms is meant. But you are not confused by the uncertainty: the rest of the sentence makes the meaning clear. So also in a Latin sentence.

44. There are two ways in English of expressing the idea contained in the dative case. It may be expressed by using a phrase beginning with *to*; or *to* may not be used at all; as, *Galba shows the statue to Tullia*, or *Galba shows Tullia the statue*. In Latin the indirect object usually precedes the direct object.

In the sentence *Tum Galba fēminīs Rōmānīs amphoram dēmōnstrat*, to whom does Galba show the jar? How is *fēminīs* used? Is this word singular or plural? What ending does it have? The dative plural of nouns in the first



Taberna Rōmāna

In this shop of a Roman pork butcher, you may see the butcher at work with cleaver and chopping block. Various cuts of meat hang from the nails. The butcher's wife keeps the accounts

declension ends in *-is*. What other nouns in the story are in the dative plural? With what verbs are they used?

45. What is the dative plural of *filia*? *Filiābus* is an exceptional form and is used to distinguish the dative plural of *filia* from *filiīs*, the dative plural of the word for son. *Dea* also has the ending *-ābus* for the dative plural.

Dative singular, puellae

Dative plural, puellis

RULE

46. The indirect object of a transitive verb is in the dative case.

READING LESSON

47.

DIĀNA

Camilla filiabus rubram Diānae statuam dēmōnstrat. Puellae statuam spectant; tum Camilla filiabus fābulam nārrat:

"Diāna est dea silvārum et lūnae. Et agricolae et nautae Diānam laudant. Agricolae Diānae corōnās saepe dant quod dea silvās cūrat. Diāna, dea lūnae, nautās dēlectat quod lūna nautis viam dēmōnstrat. Itaque nautae quoque deae corōnās dant."

Filiae Camillae fābulam amant. Quod lūna et silvae filiās dēlectant, puellae deam laudant et statuam deae ōrnant.

VOCABULARY V

amphora, jar

*cūrat, cares for

*dat, gives, bestows

*dēmōnstrat, points out, shows

*dēsīderat, longs for, desires, wants

fābula, story

hodiē, today

interdum, sometimes

intrat, enters, goes into

itaque, and so, therefore

*laudat, praises

lūna, moon

nārrat, tells



Diāna

*pecūnia, money, wealth
rubra, red

*spectat, looks at, watches
taberna, shop

*tum, then, thereupon

*via, street, road, way

*videt, sees

*vocat, calls, summons

In this lesson proper names which have the same form in English as in the Latin nominative do not appear in the vocabulary. These names, and others like them occurring in later lessons, are given in the general vocabulary at the end of the book.

48. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. *Lunatic*. The word *lunatic* comes from the Latin word *lūna*, *moon*. It was formerly an adjective, accented



Pecūnia Rōmāna

One kind of cattle, a pig, on a piece of ancient Roman bronze money. Money shaped and stamped like this was probably not in circulation, but was used for some ceremonial purpose, such as an offering to the gods

on the second syllable, *lu-nat'ic*, like *dra-mat'ic*, and meant *moonstruck*. In ancient times continuous exposure to moonlight was supposed to cause insanity.

II. *Pecuniary*. The word *pecuniary* comes from the Latin word *pecūnia*, *money*, and means *pertaining to money*. *Pecūnia* comes from a Latin word meaning *cattle*. Cattle were used as a medium of exchange in ancient times, and also as a unit of value, very much as we use money.

DRILL

Supply the proper case endings:

1. Interdum domina Rōmāna fili.... fābulās longās nārrat.
2. Puellae fēmin.... (pl.) amphorās dant.
3. Ancillae Cornēli.... et Secund.... rosās dēmōnstrant.
4. Ancillae ros.... (pl.) aquam saepe dant.
5. Claudia de.... (pl.) corōnās dat.
6. Hodiē Galba puell.... bon.... (sing.) fābulam nārrat.
7. Ancilla domin.... (sing.) casam dēmōnstrat.
8. Domina ancill.... (sing.) pecūniam dat.

EXERCISE V

Write in Latin:

1. Camilla's story pleases (her) daughters. 2. The girls praise Diana and decorate the new statue. 3. Farmers praise Diana because she cares for the woods. 4. Sailors praise the goddess of the moon because the moon points out (their) way. 5. Today Tullia and (her) daughters go into Galba's shop. 6. Tullia looks at jars but the girls look at statues of Diana. 7. Cornelia and Secunda want a red statue; and so they call Tullia. 8. The girls show the statue to Tullia. 9. Then Tullia gives Galba money and Galba gives the statue to the girls. 10. Galba sometimes tells stories to Tullia's daughters.



Pecūnia Rōmāna

This Roman coin (shown in twice actual size) was a gold piece of sixty sesterces. It was probably issued during Rome's first war with Carthage. Hence it bears a head of Mars on one side

CHAPTER VI

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES



49. DOMINA BENIGNA I

Rosa, serva Secundae, nōn est Rōmāna. Patria Rosae est Graecia. Rosa est serva dominae Rōmānae quod Graecia est prōvincia Rōmāna. Graecia pulchra ^{to Rose} Rosae est cāra. Rosa patriam saepe dēsiderat; sed Rosa est laeta quod domina est servae amīca. Secunda, domina parva, servae est cāra.

Anna est serva Cornēliae. Crēta est patria Annae. Crēta est insula magna. Īnsula nōn est Italiae proxima.

Īnsula est Graeciae proxima. Anna Crētam amat et Crēta Annae est cāra. Sed Cornēlia quoque Annae est cāra et cotīdiē Anna Cornēliam cūrat.

Cornēlia et Secunda servīs sunt amīcae. Saepe puellae et servae parvās tabernās intrant. Tabernās paene cotīdiē intrant. Tabernae et *puellis* et *servīs* sunt grātae. Soleae et tunicae novae servīs sunt grātae. Statuae deārum puellis sunt grātae quod deae filiābus Tulliae sunt cārae.



Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art

**Monīle ex aurō et
amethystīs**

50. Respondē Latinē:

1. Estne Rosa domina Rōmāna?
2. Cui est Graecia cāra?
3. Cui est domina amīca?
4. Num Crēta est proxima Italiae?
5. Cui est Crēta cāra?
6. Cui est Cornēlia cāra?
7. Suntne Cornēlia et Secunda amīcae servīs?
8. Nōnne sunt tabernae puellis grātae?
9. Quibus sunt soleae novae grātae?
10. Quibus sunt statuae deārum grātae?

DISCUSSION

51. In the sentence *Graecia pulchra Rosae est cāra*, to whom is beautiful Greece dear? In the sentence *Domina est servae amīca*, to whom is the mistress kind? In the sentence *Īnsula est Graeciae proxima*, to what is the island nearest? In what case are *Rosae*, *servae*, and *Graeciae*?

RULE

52. The dative case is used with the Latin adjectives *cāra*, *amīca*, *grāta*, *proxima*.

READING LESSON

53. DOMINA BENIGNA II

Hodiē Tullia et filiae novam tabernam intrant. Taberna nova est proxima tabernae Galbae. Cornēlia et Secunda tunicās et soleās maximē dēsiderant. Tunicae rubrae sunt Cornēliae grātae sed tunicae albae Secundae sunt grātae. Puellae sunt Tulliae cārae. Itaque Tullia filiābus multās et novās tunicās dat. Hodiē Tullia Cornēliae tunicam rubram et Secundae tunicam albam dat. Soleae rubrae et Cornēliae et Secundae sunt grātae. Itaque Tullia puellis novās et rubrās soleās dat.

Interdum domina benigna Rosae et Annae novās tunicās dat, quod servae filiābus sunt cārae. Tunicae novae servīs sunt grātae quod servae novās tunicās rārō habent. Interdum Tullia servīs soleās novās quoque dat. Soleae novae Rosae et Annae sunt grātae quod paucae servae Rōmānae soleās habent.

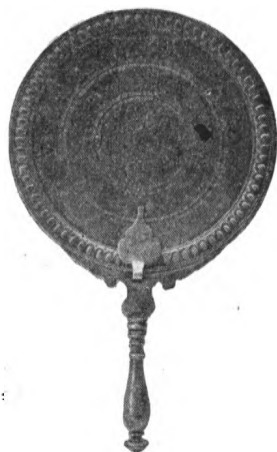
VOCABULARY VI

*amica, friendly, kind	*paene, adv. almost, nearly,
cāra, dear	hardly
*cotidiē, adv., daily, every day	patria, native land, country
Crēta, Crete	*paucae, few
Graecia, Greece	*prōvincia, province
*grāta, pleasing	proxima, next, very near,
*insula, island	near by
Italia, Italy	rārō, adv., seldom
*maximē, adv., especially,	serva, slave girl
very greatly	solea, sandal

54. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. *Persona grata*. This phrase, often used in English; consists of the two Latin words *persōna*, person and *grāta*, acceptable, and means one who is acceptable or pleasing to others.

II. *Peninsula*. This word comes from two Latin words *paene*, *almost* and *insula*, *island*. It therefore means *almost an island*. The first element of this word is seen also in *penult*, from *paene*, *almost*, and *ultima*, *last*. The *penult* is therefore *almost the last (syllable)*; that is, the *next to the last (syllable)*.



Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art

Speculum argenteum

The highly polished metal surface served to reflect the image, as does the silver on the glass of a modern mirror

DRILL

Supply the proper case endings:

1. Tabernae pulchrae fēmin....
Rōmān.... (*sing.*) sunt grātae.
2. Taberna vill.... Tulliae nōn est proxima.
3. Deae fēmin.... (*pl.*) semper sunt cārae.
4. Corōnae de.... (*pl.*) sunt grātae.
5. Italia Crēt.... nōn est proxima.
6. Īnsulae magnae Itali.... sunt proximae.
7. Italia fēmin.... Rōmān.... (*pl.*) est cāra.
8. Fēminae fili.... (*pl.*) semper sunt cārae.

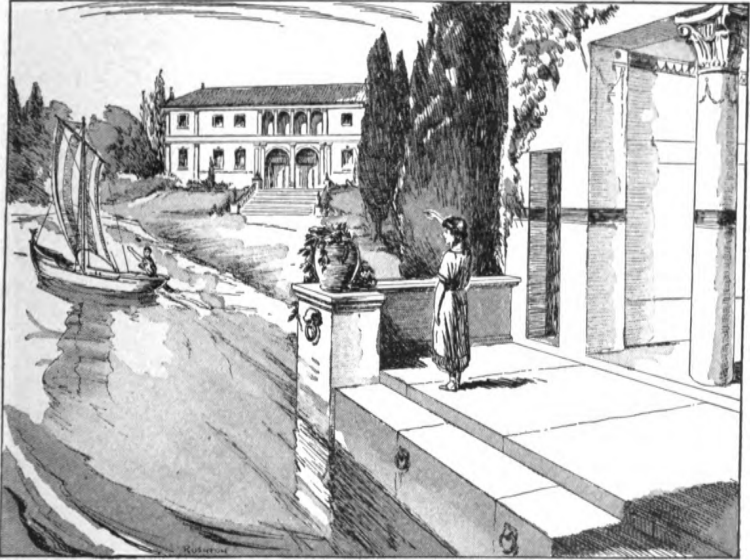
EXERCISE VI

Write in Latin:

1. There are a few large islands very near to Italy.
2. Greece is a province of Italy.
3. Crete is the slave girl's native land.
4. Anna longs for Crete almost every day.
5. The little mistress is friendly to Anna; and so Anna is happy.
6. Tullia is dear to her daughters because she is kind.
7. Tullia often gives the girls tunics and sandals.
8. The girls especially want red sandals.
9. The new sandals are pleasing to Cornelia and Secunda.
10. A Roman mistress seldom gives sandals to (her) slave girls.

CHAPTER VII

ABLATIVE WITH *Ā* (AB), *EX* (*Ē*), *IN*, *CUM*



55.

LAECA POËTA I

Laeca poëta villam pulchram *in Italiā* habet. *In villā* Laeca *cum filiā Iuliā* habitat. Aqua est proxima villae. *In aquā* poëta nāviculam rubram habet. Poëta *ex villā* saepe properat. Nunc *in nāviculā* est. Tum *ab ōrā* poëta nāvigat.

Silvae quoque sunt proximae villae. *In silvīs* Laeca saepe ambulat. Poëtae silvās et aquam maximē amant quod *in silvīs* et *in aquā* multās et pulchrās pictūrās poëtae vident. Poëtae ā silvīs et ab aquā properant et fābulās narrant.

Iūlia in villā labōrat. Fēminae et puellae Rōmānae in villis saepe labōrant. Noctū Iūlia ex villā properat. Tum Iūlia cum Laecā in silvīs ambulat. Interdum poēta et filia ex silvīs properant et in ōrā stant. Laeca et Iūlia stēllās et lūnam spectant. Tandem Laeca et Iūlia ab ōrā ambulant et in villā iterum sunt.

56. Respondē Latinē:

1. Ubi ^{Where} Laeca villam habet? 2. Ubi poēta cum Iūliā habitat? 3. Estne aqua proxima villae? 4. Ubi est nāvicula poētae? 5. Unde ^{Whence} poēta saepe properat? 6. Ubi poēta est? 7. Unde poēta nāvigat?

8. Nōne sunt silvae proximae villae? 9. Quid poētae in silvīs et in aquā vident? 10. Unde poētae properant?

11. Ubi Iūlia labōrat? 12. Unde Iūlia noctū properat? 13. Ubi Iūlia cum Laecā ambulat? 14. Unde poēta et filia ^{With whom} properant? 15. Quōcum poēta ambulat?

Nōtā bene

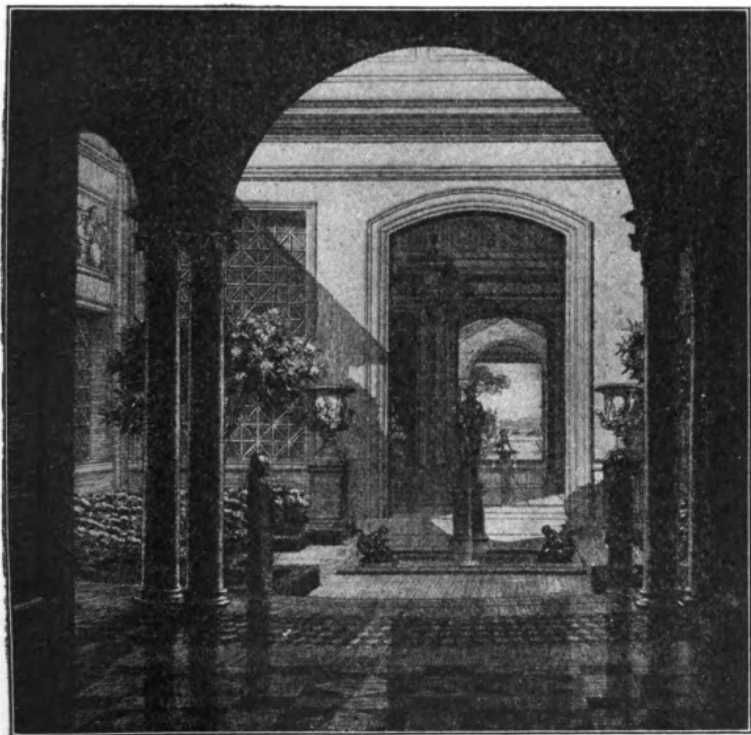
Ubi, *where? in what place?* unde, *whence? from what place?* quōcum, *with whom?*

DISCUSSION

57. In the sentence *Laeca villam pulchram in Italiā habet*, what words tell us where the villa is? In the sentence *In villā Laeca cum Iūliā habitat*, what words tell where Laeca lives? Of what do these phrases consist? What is the ending of each noun in the phrases? Do the nouns refer to one thing or to more than one? *Place in which* may be expressed by the preposition *in* and a noun with the ending *-ā*.

In the sentence *Poēta ex villā saepe properat*, what words tell out of what place the poet hurries? Of what does this phrase consist? What is the ending of the noun in this phrase? *Place out of which* may be expressed by the preposition *ex* and a noun ending in *-ā*.

In the sentence *Tum poëta ab ōrā nāvigat*, what words tell from what place the poet sails? What preposition is used? *Place from which* may be expressed by the preposition *ab* and a noun ending in *-ā*. The prepositions in mean-



Clāra villa Rōmāna

This picture shows an artist's reconstruction of the villa of the Emperor Hadrian at Tivoli. Roman architects often designed their buildings so that beautiful light effects, like that in the rooms shown, could be obtained

ing *in* or *on*, *ab* meaning *from*, and *ex* meaning *out of*, are used with nouns having the ending *-ā*. The *-ā* is the ending of the ablative case singular, and this case is used here to show *place in which*, *place out of which*, and *place from which*.

The phrases with *in* and the ablative case answer the question *where?* The Latin word for *where* is *ubi*. The phrases with *ex* and the ablative and *ab* and the ablative answer the question *whence?* or *where from?* or *from what place?* The Latin word for *whence* is *unde*.

In the sentence *In silvis Laeca saepe ambulat*, what phrase shows where Laeca often walks? In the sentence *Poetae a silvis properant*, what phrase tells from what place the poets hasten? In the sentence *Interdum poeta et filia ex silvis properant*, what phrase tells out of what place the poet and his daughter hasten? How do the nouns in these phrases differ in form from the nouns in the previous phrases? How do they differ in meaning? The ending of the ablative singular in the first declension is *-ā*; the ending in the plural is *-īs*.

In the sentence *Tum Iulia cum Laecā in silvis ambulat*, what phrase shows with whom Julia walks? The preposition *cum* governs the ablative case and shows accompaniment.

58. *Dea* and *filia*, however, have the ablative ending *-ābus* in the plural, just like the dative.

<i>Ablative singular, puellā</i> <i>Ablative plural, puellis</i>

RULES

59. *Place in which* is usually expressed by the ablative with the preposition *in*.

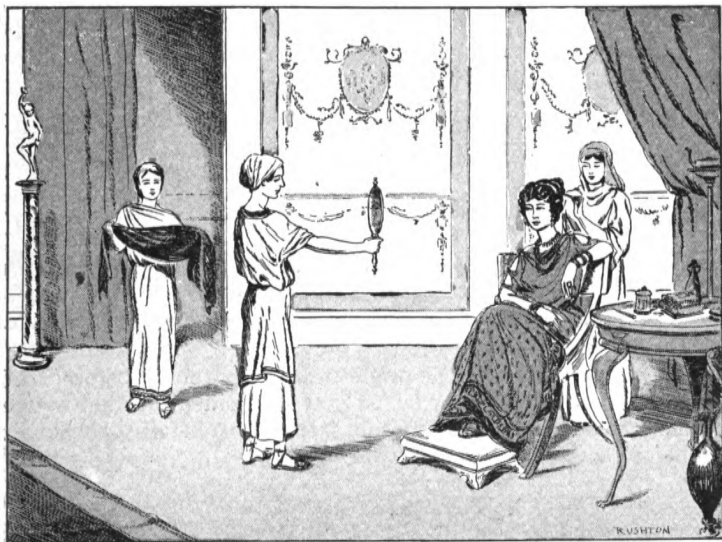
60. *Place from which* or *away from which* is usually expressed by the ablative with the preposition *a* (*ab*); *place out of which* by the ablative with the preposition *ex* (*e*).

61. *Accompaniment* is usually expressed by the ablative with the preposition *cum*.

Nōtā bene

For the names of cities, a slightly different rule is required for *place in which* and *place from which*, as explained in §76.

READING LESSON



62.

SERVAE CLAUDIAE

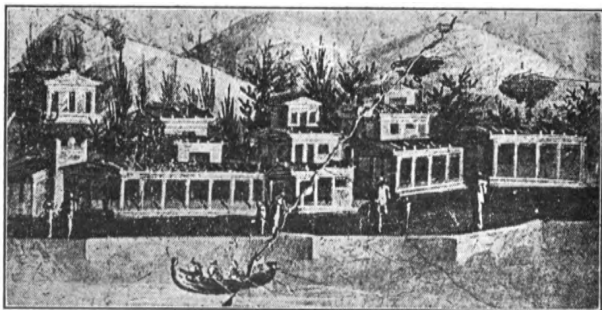
Claudia est domina multarum servarum. Servae Claudiae in terrā et in villā cotidiē labōrant. Claudia servis cāra est quod est domina benigna. Servae cēnam parant et villam ōrnant. Sed servae Claudiae nōn semper labōrant. Noctū servae ē casis properant et in ōrā et in silvis ambulant. Lūna clāra et stēllae pulchrae servis dēfessis sunt grātae. Tandem Claudia servās vocat. Tum ex silvis et ab ōrā servae properant.

VOCABULARY VII

- | | |
|---|--|
| * ā (ab), prep. (with abl.),
<i>from, away from</i> | * nāvigat , sails, goes sailing |
| cēna , dinner | * noctū , adv., at night |
| clāra , bright, famous | * nunc , adv., now |
| * cum , prep. (with abl.), with | ōra , coast, shore |
| * dēfessa , tired, exhausted | * parat , prepares |
| * ex (ē), prep. (with abl.),
<i>out of</i> | pictūra , picture |
| habitat , lives, dwells | poēta , poet |
| * in , prep. (with abl.), in, on | properat , hastens, hurries |
| iterum , adv., again, a second
<i>time</i> | stēlla , star |
| nāvicula , little boat, skiff | tandem , adv., finally, at
<i>length</i> |
| | * ubi , adv., where |
| | * unde , adv., whence |

Note that **in silvā** means *in the forest*; **in ōrā**, *on the shore*. The expression **in aquā**, as used in § 55, means *on the water*, as you can tell from the context; but in a different context it could mean *in the water*.

You will usually find the preposition **ā** written **ab** before words beginning with a vowel or *h*; **ex** you will sometimes find written **ē** before a consonant. A safe rule is to write **ā** before a consonant, **ab** before a vowel or *h*, and **ex** always.



Villa Rōmāna

A villa painted on the wall of a house at Pompeii

63. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. Pick out the Latin words in the vocabulary with which the following words are associated: *habitat*, *navigable*, *nocturnal*, *picturesque*, *stellar*.

II. Explain the meaning of these words in the following sentences:

1. Water is the *habitat* of some birds.
2. The lake is not *navigable* in midwinter.
3. A bat is a *nocturnal* animal.
4. The lighted tower is *picturesque*.
5. John had the *stellar* role in that play.

III. *Tandem* as an English word was originally applied jokingly to a team of two horses harnessed one behind the other; that is, arranged "at length" instead of side by side. Later it was applied to a bicycle for two or more riders, one behind the other.

DRILL

Supply case endings, singular or plural as you think proper:

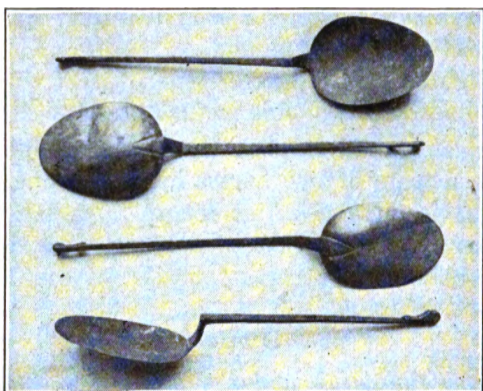
1. Iūlia, filia Laecae, in vill.... labōrat.
2. Laeca nāviculam in aqu.... videt.
3. Poēta cum fili.... ex silv.... properat.
4. Ab ōr.... servae properant.
5. Laeca et Iūlia ē vill.... saepe properant.
6. Poētae in silv.... et in aqu.... pictūrās vident.

EXERCISE VII

Write in Latin:

1. Tullia's maids are now preparing dinner in the villa.
2. At night Tullia walks out of the villa with (her) daughters, and stands on the shore.
3. Laeca sees Tullia and the girls and hurries from the woods.
4. The poet lives in a white villa.
5. Laeca sees beautiful pictures in the woods

and in the water. 6. The girls and Laeca look at the moon and the bright stars. 7. Cornelia and Secunda praise Laeca's boat. 8. Then Laeca goes sailing with the girls. 9. The poet tells the girls a story. 10. Finally the tired girls hurry out of the boat because Tullia is calling (them) again.



Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art
Cocleāria argentea

CHAPTER VIII
ACCUSATIVE WITH AD AND IN



64. LAECA POËTA II

Aqua Laecam maximē dēlectat; itaque poëta saepe nāvigat. Poëta ab Italiae ōris ^{to} *ad proximam insulam* libenter nāvigat. Multae insulae sunt Italiae proximae. Nāvicula *ad terrās extrēmās* nōn nāvigat quod nāvicula nōn est firma. Nāvicula, igitur, ad Graeciam et ad Asiam nōn nāvigat.

Hodiē poëta ^{into} *in villam* ambulat et Iūliam vocat. Tum poëta cum Iūliā ad ōram properat. Poëta et filia ad insulam

II. *Peninsula*. This word comes from two Latin words *paene*, *almost* and *insula*, *island*. It therefore means *almost an island*. The first element of this word is seen also in *penult*, from *paene*, *almost*, and *ultima*, *last*. The *penult* is therefore *almost the last (syllable)*; that is, the *next to the last (syllable)*.



Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art

Speculum argenteum

The highly polished metal surface served to reflect the image, as does the silver on the glass of a modern mirror

DRILL

Supply the proper case endings:

1. Tabernae pulchrae fēmin....
Rōmān.... (*sing.*) sunt grātae.
2. Taberna vill.... Tulliae nōn est proxima.
3. Deae fēmin.... (*pl.*) semper sunt cārae.
4. Corōnae de.... (*pl.*) sunt grātae.
5. Italia Crēt.... nōn est proxima.
6. Īnsulae magnae Itali.... sunt proximae.
7. Italia fēmin.... Rōmān.... (*pl.*) est cāra.
8. Fēminae fili.... (*pl.*) semper sunt cārae.

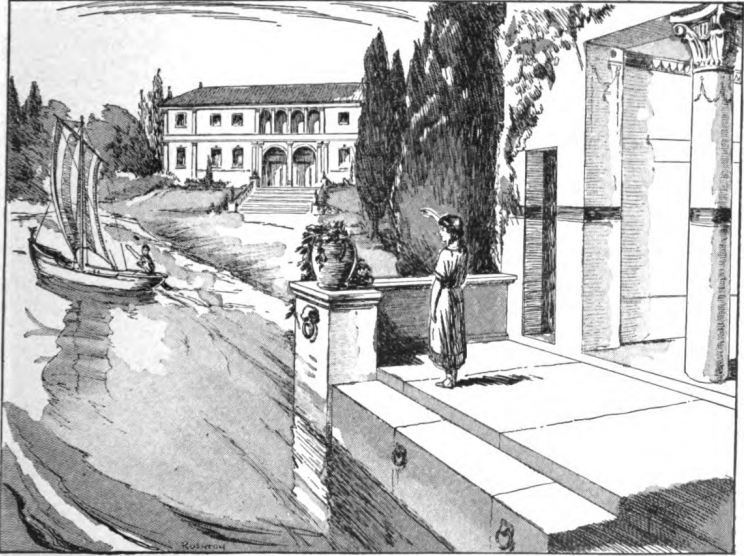
EXERCISE VI

Write in Latin:

1. There are a few large islands very near to Italy.
2. Greece is a province of Italy.
3. Crete is the slave girl's native land.
4. Anna longs for Crete almost every day.
5. The little mistress is friendly to Anna; and so Anna is happy.
6. Tullia is dear to her daughters because she is kind.
7. Tullia often gives the girls tunics and sandals.
8. The girls especially want red sandals.
9. The new sandals are pleasing to Cornelia and Secunda.
10. A Roman mistress seldom gives sandals to (her) slave girls.

CHAPTER VII

ABLATIVE WITH *Ā* (AB), *EX* (*Ē*), *IN*, *CUM*



55.

LAECA POËTA I

Laeca poëta villam pulchram *in Italiā* habet. In villā Laeca *cum filiā Iuliā* habitat. Aqua est proxima villae. In aquā poëta nāviculam rubram habet. Poëta *ex villā* saepe properat. Nunc in nāviculā est. Tum *ab ōrā* poëta nāvigat.

Silvae quoque sunt proximae villae. *In silvīs* Laeca saepe ambulat. Poëtae silvās et aquam maximē amant quod in silvīs et in aquā multās et pulchrās pictūrās poëtae vident. Poëtae ā silvīs et ab aquā properant et fābulās narrant.

magnam nāvigant. In magnā insulā nauta habitat. Tandem nāvicula ad ōram insulae nāvigat et Iūlia ē nāviculā in terram properat. Casa nautae est proxima aquae. Poēta et filia ad casam ambulant. Iūlia in casam properat et nautam salūtat. Postea nauta et Iūlia in ōrā ambulant et nauta Iūliae fābulās nārrat.

65. Respondē Latīnē:

- ^{Where}
 1. Quō nāvicula poētae nāvigat? 2. Cui multae insulae sunt proximae? 3. Cūr nāvicula ad terrās extrēmās nōn nāvigat? 4. Num nāvicula ad Graeciam nāvigat?
 5. Quō poēta ambulat? 6. Quō poēta cum filiā properat?
 7. Ubi nauta habitat? 8. Quō Iūlia properat? 9. Ubi Iūlia et nauta ambulant?

Nōtā bene

Quō, *where?* meaning *to what place?* *into what place?* (that is, *whither?*) Ubi, *where?* meaning *in what place?*

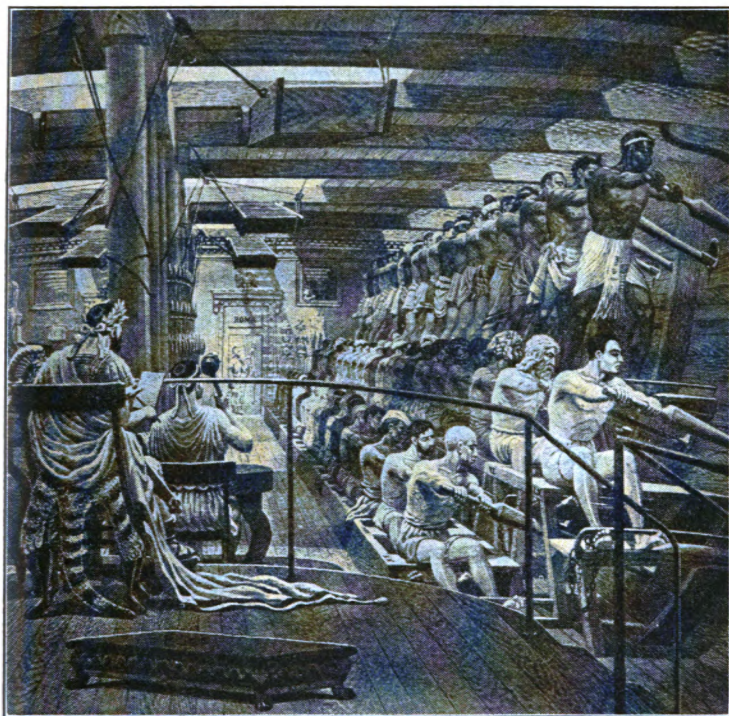
DISCUSSION

66. In the sentence *Nāvicula ad proximam insulam nāvigat*, what does the phrase *ad proximam insulam* tell? What does the preposition *ad* mean in this phrase? What case is used with *ad*? Find other phrases with *ad* in the first paragraph that answer the question *to what place?*

In the sentence *Poēta in vīllam ambulat*, what does the phrase *in vīllam* tell? What does *in* mean in this phrase? What case is used with *in* when it means *into*? Find other phrases with *in* that answer the question *into what place?*

67. In English some persons distinguish carefully between "in" or "on," and "into" or "upon." They say, "The book is *in* the room, *on* the table"; but, "Take it *into* the room, place it *upon* the table." In Latin the distinction between these two pairs of meanings of *in* is made by using the ablative after it

when it means *in* or *on* and the accusative when it means *into* or *upon*. The word *ad*, however, always takes the accusative.



Rēmigēs

Roman boats depended on oars as well as sails for propelling power. In the Roman warships or galleys, the rowers were slaves chained to their benches, who rowed in time with the beating of a hammer. We do not know certainly how the tiers of rowers were arranged; the picture suggests one possibility

68. The phrases with *ad* or *in* and the accusative answer the question *to what place?* or *into what place?* They are used with verbs of motion. The Latin word *quō* is used for *where?* meaning *to what place?* or *into what place?*

69. In English we now use "where" to mean either *in what place?* or *into what place?* We say "Where are you?" "Where are you going?" In old-fashioned language, however, we sometimes make the distinction between these two meanings by using "where" and "whither." *Ubi*, *where*, corresponds to *in* with the ablative; *quō*, *whither*, to *in* with the accusative. Thus: *Ubi est?* *In villā est*, *Where is he? He is in the villa*; *Quō ambulat?* *In villam ambulat*, *Where (Whither) is he walking? He is walking into the villa.*

RULE

70. *Place to which* is usually expressed by *ad* and the accusative; *place into which* by *in* and the accusative.

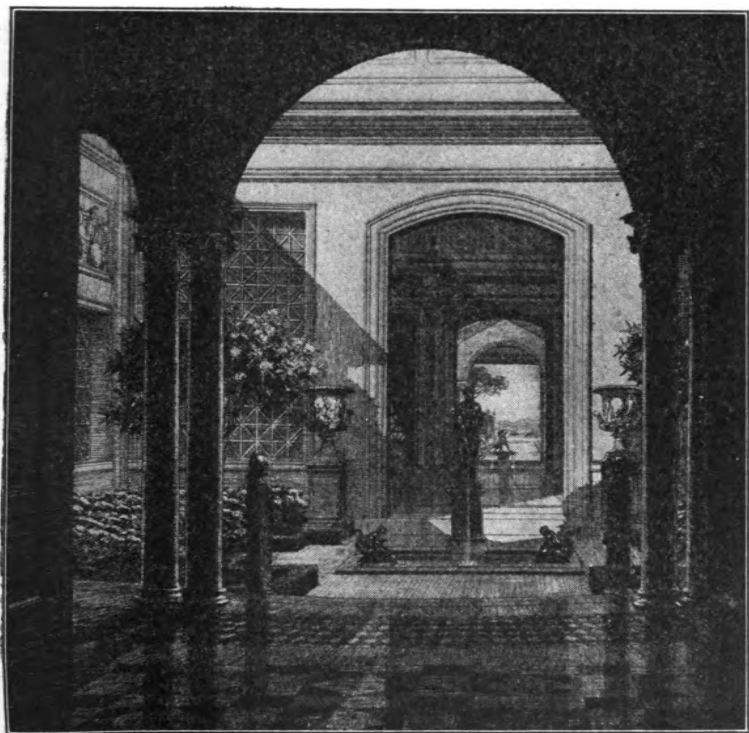
Nōtā bene

For the corresponding rule for the names of cities, see §76.



Onerāriae

In the sentence *Tum poēta ab ōrā nāvigat*, what words tell from what place the poet sails? What preposition is used? *Place from which* may be expressed by the preposition *ab* and a noun ending in *-ā*. The prepositions in mean-



Clāra villa Rōmāna

This picture shows an artist's reconstruction of the villa of the Emperor Hadrian at Tivoli. Roman architects often designed their buildings so that beautiful light effects, like that in the rooms shown, could be obtained

ing *in* or *on*, *ab* meaning *from*, and *ex* meaning *out of*, are used with nouns having the ending *-ā*. The *-ā* is the ending of the ablative case singular, and this case is used here to show *place in which*, *place out of which*, and *place from which*.

The phrases with **in** and the ablative case answer the question *where?* The Latin word for *where* is *ubi*. The phrases with **ex** and the ablative and **ab** and the ablative answer the question *whence?* or *where from?* or *from what place?* The Latin word for *whence* is **unde**.

In the sentence **In silvis Laeca saepe ambulat**, what phrase shows where Laeca often walks? In the sentence **Poëtae à silvis properant**, what phrase tells from what place the poets hasten? In the sentence **Interdum poëta et filia ex silvis properant**, what phrase tells out of what place the poet and his daughter hasten? How do the nouns in these phrases differ in form from the nouns in the previous phrases? How do they differ in meaning? The ending of the ablative singular in the first declension is **-ā**; the ending in the plural is **-īs**.

In the sentence **Tum Iulia cum Laecā in silvis ambulat**, what phrase shows with whom Julia walks? The preposition **cum** governs the ablative case and shows accompaniment.

58. **Dea** and **filia**, however, have the ablative ending **-ābus** in the plural, just like the dative.

<p><i>Ablative singular, puellā</i> <i>Ablative plural, puellis</i></p>

RULES

59. *Place in which* is usually expressed by the ablative with the preposition **in**.

60. *Place from which* or *away from which* is usually expressed by the ablative with the preposition **à** (**ab**); *place out of which* by the ablative with the preposition **ex** (**e**).



Pugna nāvālis

Another Pompeian painting of a naval battle

extremity, and is generally used of a person at the point of death or of a person or thing in extreme danger.

DRILL

Supply the proper case endings:

1. Servae ē vill.... in vi.... properant.
2. Serva ex vi.... in vill.... amphoram portat.
3. Fīlia poētae ad ōr.... properat.
4. Nāviculae ab ōr.... Italiae ad insul.... nāvigant.
5. Iūlia nautam ad nāvicul.... vocat.

EXERCISE VIII

Write in Latin:

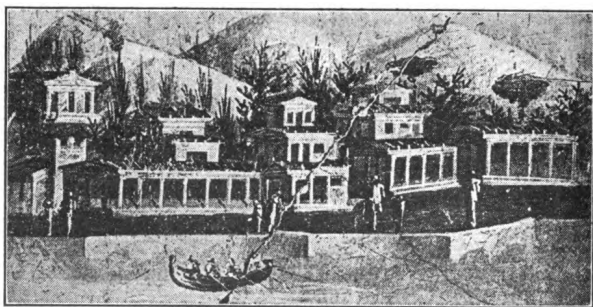
1. Sturdy merchant ships sail from the most distant lands to Italy. 2. The roomy ships bring jars, and urns, and cloaks to the inhabitants of Italy. 3. Now the sailors carry the cloaks and jars out of the ships into the shops. 4. Afterwards the Italian women enter the shops and look at the new cloaks. 5. Tullia likes to look at the jars. 6. The new jars are pleasing to Tullia. 7. There are many small shops in the streets. 8. The farmers are bringing olives and grapes to the shops. 9. The women meet the farmers. 10. The women want the grapes and therefore give the farmers money.

VOCABULARY VII

- ***ā** (ab), prep. (with abl.), *from, away from*
cēna, dinner
clāra, bright, famous
 ***cum**, prep. (with abl.), *with*
 ***dēfessa**, tired, exhausted
 ***ex** (ē), prep. (with abl.), *out of*
habitat, lives, dwells
 ***in**, prep. (with abl.), *in, on*
iterum, adv., *again, a second time*
nāvicula, little boat, skiff
 ***nāvigat**, sails, goes sailing
 ***noctū**, adv., *at night*
 ***nunc**, adv., *now*
ōra, coast, shore
 ***parat**, prepares
pictūra, picture
poēta, poet
properat, hastens, hurries
stēlla, star
tandem, adv., *finally, at length*
 ***ubi**, adv., *where*
 ***unde**, adv., *whence*

Note that in **silvā** means *in the forest*; in **ōrā**, *on the shore*. The expression in **aquā**, as used in § 55, means *on the water*, as you can tell from the context; but in a different context it could mean *in the water*.

You will usually find the preposition **ā** written **ab** before words beginning with a vowel or *h*; **ex** you will sometimes find written **ē** before a consonant. A safe rule is to write **ā** before a consonant, **ab** before a vowel or *h*, and **ex** always.



Villa Rōmāna

A villa painted on the wall of a house at Pompeii

63.

LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. Pick out the Latin words in the vocabulary with which the following words are associated: *habitat*, *navigable*, *nocturnal*, *picturesque*, *stellar*.

II. Explain the meaning of these words in the following sentences:

1. Water is the *habitat* of some birds.
2. The lake is not *navigable* in midwinter.
3. A bat is a *nocturnal* animal.
4. The lighted tower is *picturesque*.
5. John had the *stellar* role in that play.

III. *Tandem* as an English word was originally applied jokingly to a team of two horses harnessed one behind the other; that is, arranged "at length" instead of side by side. Later it was applied to a bicycle for two or more riders, one behind the other.

DRILL

Supply case endings, singular or plural as you think proper:

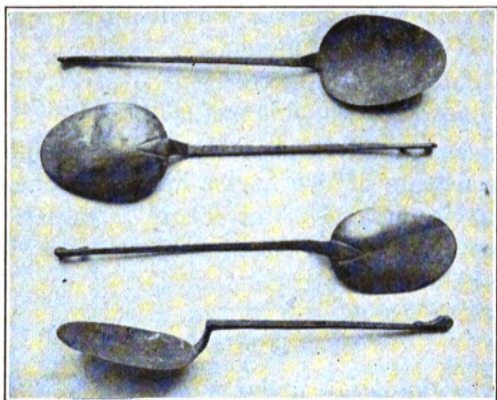
1. Iūlia, filia Laecae, in vill.... labōrat.
2. Laeca nāviculam in aqu.... videt.
3. Poēta cum fili.... ex silv.... properat.
4. Ab ōr.... servae properant.
5. Laeca et Iūlia ē vill.... saepe properant.
6. Poētae in silv.... et in aqu.... pictūrās vident.

EXERCISE VII

Write in Latin:

1. Tullia's maids are now preparing dinner in the villa.
2. At night Tullia walks out of the villa with (her) daughters, and stands on the shore.
3. Laeca sees Tullia and the girls and hurries from the woods.
4. The poet lives in a white villa.
5. Laeca sees beautiful pictures in the woods

and in the water. 6. The girls and Laeca look at the moon and the bright stars. 7. Cornelia and Secunda praise Laeca's boat. 8. Then Laeca goes sailing with the girls. 9. The poet tells the girls a story. 10. Finally the tired girls hurry out of the boat because Tullia is calling (them) again.



Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art

Cocleãria argentea

CHAPTER VIII
ACCUSATIVE WITH AD AND IN



64. LAECA POËTA II

Aqua Laecam maximē dēlectat; itaque poëta saepe nāvigat. Poëta ab Italiae ōris ^{to} *ad proximam insulam* libenter nāvigat. Multae insulae sunt Italiae proximae. Nāvicula *ad terrās extrēmās* nōn nāvigat quod nāvicula nōn est firma. Nāvicula, igitur, ad Graeciam et ad Asiam nōn nāvigat.

Hodiē poëta ^{into} *in villam* ambulat et Iūliam vocat. Tum poëta cum Iūliā ad ōram properat. Poëta et filia ad insulam

magnam nāvigant. In miāgnā insulā nauta habitat. Tandem nāvicula ad ōram insulae nāvigat et Iūlia ē nāviculā in terram properat. Casa nautae est proxima aquae. Poēta et filia ad casam ambulant. Iūlia in casam properat et nautam salūtat. Postea nauta et Iūlia in ōrā ambulant et nauta Iūliae fābulās nārrat.

65. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Quō nāvicula poētae nāvigat? 2. Cui multae insulae sunt proximae? 3. Cūr nāvicula ad terrās extrēmās nōn nāvigat? 4. Num nāvicula ad Graeciam nāvigat? 5. Quō poēta ambulat? 6. Quō poēta cum filiā properat? 7. Ubi nauta habitat? 8. Quō Iūlia properat? 9. Ubi Iūlia et nauta ambulant?

Nōtā bene

Quō, *where?* meaning *to what place?* *into what place?* (that is, *whither?*) Ubi, *where?* meaning *in what place?*

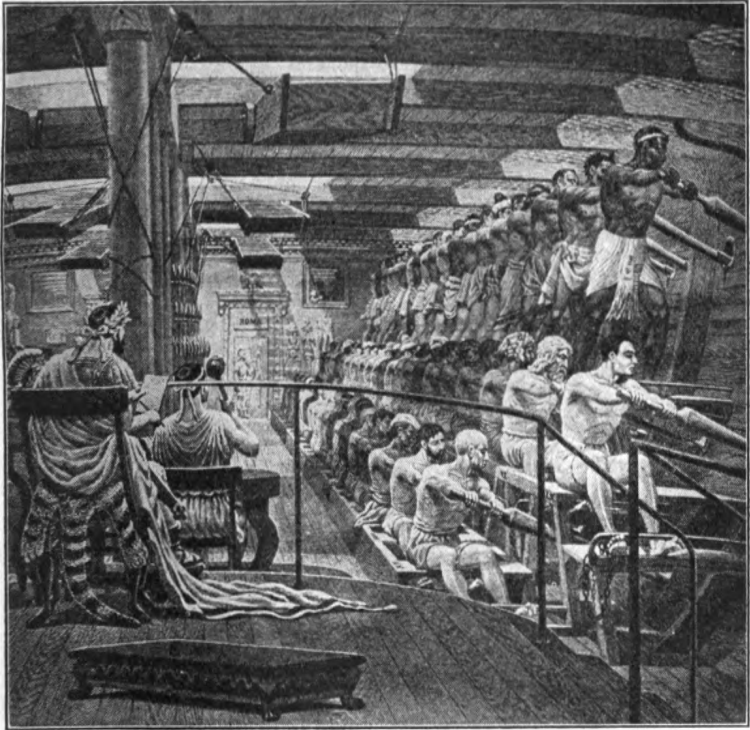
DISCUSSION

66. In the sentence *Nāvicula ad proximam insulam nāvigat*, what does the phrase *ad proximam insulam* tell? What does the preposition *ad* mean in this phrase? What case is used with *ad*? Find other phrases with *ad* in the first paragraph that answer the question *to what place?*

In the sentence *Poēta in villam ambulat*, what does the phrase *in villam* tell? What does *in* mean in this phrase? What case is used with *in* when it means *into*? Find other phrases with *in* that answer the question *into what place?*

67. In English some persons distinguish carefully between "in" or "on," and "into" or "upon." They say, "The book is *in* the room, *on* the table"; but, "Take it *into* the room, place it *upon* the table." In Latin the distinction between these two pairs of meanings of *in* is made by using the ablative after it

when it means *in* or *on* and the accusative when it means *into* or *upon*. The word *ad*, however, always takes the accusative.



Rēmigēs

Roman boats depended on oars as well as sails for propelling power. In the Roman warships or galleys, the rowers were slaves chained to their benches, who rowed in time with the beating of a hammer. We do not know certainly how the tiers of rowers were arranged; the picture suggests one possibility

68. The phrases with *ad* or *in* and the accusative answer the question *to what place?* or *into what place?* They are used with verbs of motion. The Latin word *quō* is used for *where?* meaning *to what place?* or *into what place?*

69. In English we now use "where" to mean either *in what place?* or *into what place?* We say "Where are you?" "Where are you going?" In old-fashioned language, however, we sometimes make the distinction between these two meanings by using "where" and "whither." *Ubi, where*, corresponds to *in* with the ablative; *quō, whither*, to *in* with the accusative. Thus: *Ubi est?* In *villā est*, *Where is he?* *He is in the villa*; *Quō ambulat?* In *villam ambulat*, *Where (Whither) is he walking?* *He is walking into the villa.*

RULE

70. *Place to which* is usually expressed by *ad* and the accusative; *place into which* by *in* and the accusative.

Nōtā bene

For the corresponding rule for the names of cities, see § 76.



Onerāriae

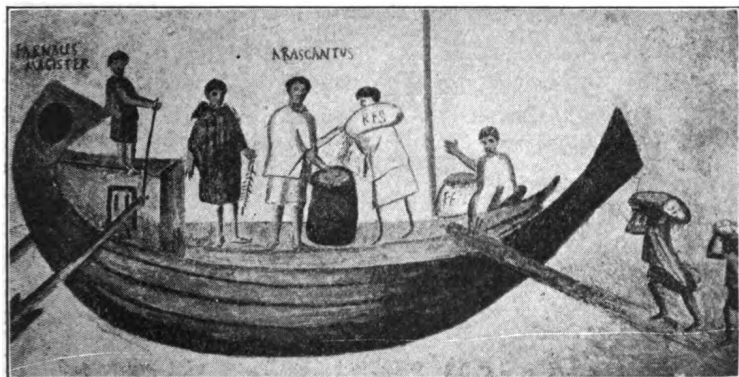
READING LESSON

71.

ONERĀRIAE

Onerāriae sunt amplae et firmae; ad terrās extrēmās nāvigant. Ab Italiā onerāriae ad Āfricam, ad Graeciam, ad Asiam nāvigant. Onerāriae ūvās et olīvās ad ōrās Asiae portant.

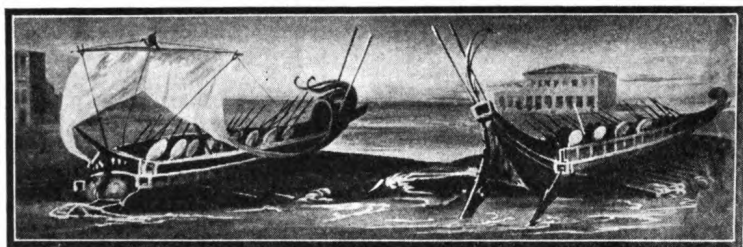
Nautae olīvās et ūvās ex onerāriis in viās portant. Incolae Asiae nautis pecūniam dant. Ab ōrīs Asiae nautae corbulās et pallās ad Italiam portant.



Onerāria et nautae

A fresco found in Ostia, the ancient port of Rome at the mouth of the Tiber. The captain of the boat (*Farnaces magister*) stands at the stern, while Arascantus, probably the owner, oversees the loading of the grain which the slaves are bringing on board.

Ā Graeciā nautae amphorās et ūrnās portant. Nautae corbulās, pallās, amphorās, ūrnās, in tabernās Italicās portant. Fēminae Italicæ in tabernās libenter properant et spectant. Fēminae albās pallās et pulchrās amphorās vident; ancillās vocant. Libenter ancillae properant in tabernās; ancillis quoque pallae et amphorae grātae sunt. Postēā fēminae cum ancillis ex tabernis ambulant.



Pugna nāvālis

A Pompeian painting of a battle in the harbor

VOCABULARY VIII

- | | |
|---|--|
| *ad, prep. (with acc.), <i>to,</i>
<i>toward</i> | libenter, <i>gladly</i> (see note) |
| *ampla, <i>roomy, spacious</i> | olīva, <i>olive</i> |
| *extrēma, <i>far distant</i> | *onerāria, <i>merchant ship,</i>
<i>transport</i> |
| *firma, <i>firm, sturdy</i> | palla, <i>cloak, mantle</i> |
| igitur, adv., <i>therefore</i> (see
note) | *posteā, adv., <i>afterwards,</i>
<i>later on</i> |
| *in, prep. (with acc.), <i>into,</i>
<i>upon</i> | *quō, <i>whither, where</i> |
| incola, <i>inhabitant</i> | salūtat, <i>greet, hails</i> |
| Italica, <i>of Italy, Italian</i> | ūrna, <i>water jar, urn</i> |
| | ūva, <i>grape</i> |

Igitur usually follows the first word of its sentence. It is therefore called *postpositive*.

Libenter means *gladly*. If one does something *gladly*, one usually *likes* to do it; and the idiomatic translation of expressions like libenter nāvigat or fābulās libenter nārrat is often in the form *he likes to sail, he likes to tell stories*.

72. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

In extremis. This phrase, frequently used in English, consists of the two Latin words *in*, *in*, and *extrēmīs*, an adjective in the ablative plural, used as a noun, and meaning *extreme* or *critical circumstances*. The phrase means *in*



Pugna nāvālis

Another Pompeian painting of a naval battle

extremity, and is generally used of a person at the point of death or of a person or thing in extreme danger.

DRILL

Supply the proper case endings:

1. Servae ē vill.... in vi.... properant.
2. Serva ex vi.... in vill.... amphoram portat.
3. Fīlia poētae ad ōr.... properat.
4. Nāviculae ab ōr.... Italiae ad insul.... nāvigant.
5. Iūlia nauta:n ad nāvicul.... vocat.

EXERCISE VIII

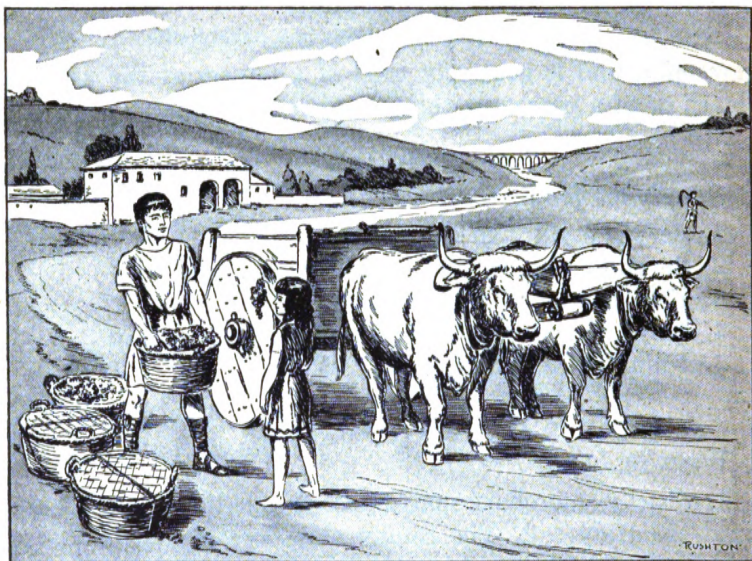
Write in Latin:

1. Sturdy merchant ships sail from the most distant lands to Italy.
2. The roomy ships bring jars, and urns, and cloaks to the inhabitants of Italy.
3. Now the sailors carry the cloaks and jars out of the ships into the shops.
4. Afterwards the Italian women enter the shops and look at the new cloaks.
5. Tullia likes to look at the jars.
6. The new jars are pleasing to Tullia.
7. There are many small shops in the streets.
8. The farmers are bringing olives and grapes to the shops.
9. The women greet the farmers.
10. The women want the grapes and therefore give the farmers money.

CHAPTER IX

LOCATIVE CASE

PLACE RELATIONS WITH NAMES OF CITIES AND
TOWNS, AND WITH *DOMUS* AND *RŪS*



73.

AGRICOLAE

Nāsica est agricola Italiae. Casa agricolae nōn est proxima Rōmae. Sed Nāsica ^{to Rome} Rōmam saepe ambulat. Nunc agricola ūvās Rōmam portat; nunc olīvās Rōmam portat. Incolae Rōmae ūvās et olīvās in tabernīs vident; ūvae et olivae incolās Rōmae dēlectant. Incolae Nāsicae pecūniam dant.

(62)

In Rome

Rōmae sunt multae tabernae. Nāsica tabernās libenter intrat. Statuae pulchrae et columnae albae quoque sunt Rōmae. Agricola in viīs ambulat et statuās et columnās

from Rome

libenter videt. Tandem Nāsica Rōmā ad casam parvam properat. Saepe agricola pallam novam et soleās novās Rōmā ad filiam portat quod Nāsica filiam maximē amat.

Agricolae Graeciae quoque olivās et ūvās habent. Quō

To Athens

agricolae olivās et ūvās portant? Athēnās olivās et ūvās portant. Interdum fēminae cum agricolis Athēnās ambulant

In Athens

et corbulās plēnās rosārum portant. Athēnīs sunt multae statuae. Fēminae statuās libenter ōrnant. Athēnīs est magna Minervae statua. Minerva est dea sapientiae. Fēminae statuam Minervae saepe ōrnant. Noctū agricolae

from Athens

et fēminae Athēnīs ad casās properant. Fēminae Athēnīs parvās Minervae statuās ad filiās portant.

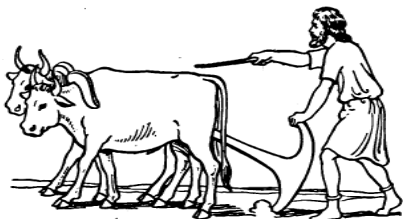
Nōtā bene

Athēnae, Athēnārum is used only in the plural and means the city of Athens.

74. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Ubi est casa agricolae? 2. Quō Nāsica saepe ambulat? 3. Quō agricola ūvās et olivās portat? 4. Ubi sunt multae tabernae? 5. Ubi sunt statuae pulchrae? 6. Unde Nāsica tandem properat? 7. Unde agricola pallam novam et soleās novās portat?

8. Quō Graeciae agricolae olivās et ūvās portant? 9. Quō fēminae corbulās rosārum portant? 10. Ubi sunt multae statuae?



Agricola et arātrum

11. Ubi est magna Minervae statua? 12. Unde agricolae et fēminae noctū properant? 13. Unde fēminae parvās Minervae statuās portant?



Statua Minervae

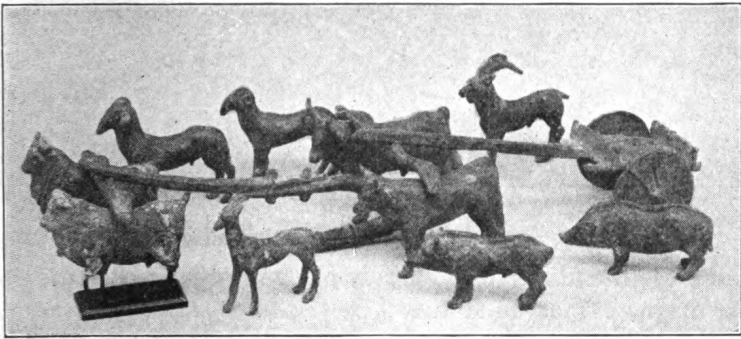
DISCUSSION

75. In the sentence *Nāsica Rōmam saepe ambulat*, which word tells to what place Nasica often goes? In the sentence *Agricolae olivās et ūvās Athēnās portant*, which word tells to what place the farmers carry their olives and grapes?

In what case are **Rōmam** and **Athēnās**? Is a preposition used with these names of cities?

With proper names of cities and towns *place to which* and *place into which* are regularly expressed by the accusative without a preposition.

In the sentence **Nāsica Rōmā ad casam parvam properat**, which word tells from what place Nasica hastens? In the sentence **Agricolae Athēnīs ad casās properant**, which word



Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art

Animālia

Notice the plow, the cart, and the two yokes. These bronze figures may have been children's toys, or perhaps were used as a votive offering

tells from what place the farmers hasten? In what case are **Rōmā** and **Athēnīs**? Is a preposition used?

With proper names of cities and towns, *place from which* is regularly expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

In the sentence **Rōmae sunt multae tabernae**, which word tells where there are many shops? What is the ending of **Rōmae**? Is a preposition used?

With proper names of cities and towns *place in which* is expressed by a special case. This case is called the *locative case*. The locative ending in the first declension singular is **-ae**. There are a few names of towns which are plural;



Tabernae

A busy shopping district in ancient Rome

these use the ablative to express place in which; as, *Athēnīs est magna Minervae statua*, *there is a large statue of Minerva at Athens* (or *in Athens*).

RULES

76. With the names of cities and towns —

Place to which is regularly expressed by the accusative without a preposition;

Place from which is regularly expressed by the ablative without a preposition;

Place in which is regularly expressed by the locative (or, in the plural, by the ablative).

These rules also apply to the names of small islands, and to the words *domus*, *home*, and *rūs*, *country*. For the appropriate forms of these words, see § 78.

VOCABULARY IX

Athēnae (pl.), *Athens*
Rōma, *Rome*

sapientia, *wisdom*, *prudence*,
intelligence

77. Memorize the following forms of the names of cities:

Rōmā, from Rome

Athēnīs, from Athens

Rōmam, to Rome

Athēnās, to Athens

Rōmae, at Rome

Athēnīs, at Athens

78. The nouns *domus, home*, and *rūs, country*, belong to declensions which we have not yet studied. For the present learn the forms and meanings given herewith:

domō, from home

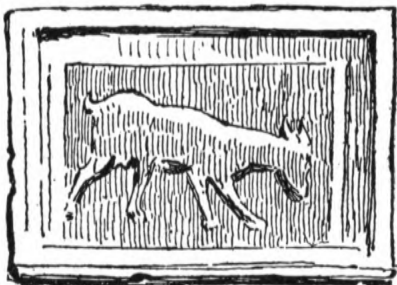
domum, (to) home

domī, at home

rūre, from the country

rūs, to the country

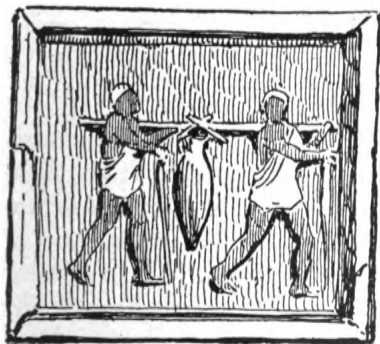
rūrī, in the country



A shopkeeper's sign

DRILL

I. Supply the proper case endings:



A shopkeeper's sign

1. Taberna Galbae est Rōm....

2. Galba multās amphorās in tabern.... habet.

3. Onerāriae amphorās et ūrnās Athēn.... Rōm.... (from Athens to Rome) portant.

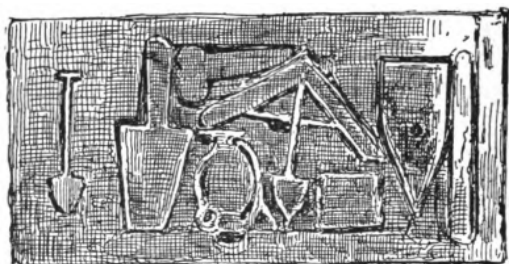
4. Onerāriae nāvigant Rōm.... Athēn.... (from Rome to Athens).

5. Athēn.... et Rōm.... (In Athens and Rome) nautae tabernās intrant.

6. Casa agricolae est rūr....; agricola ūvās rūr.... (from the country) portat.

II. *Write the Latin for the following phrases:*

- | | |
|-------------------|----------------------|
| 1. from Rome | 9. to the country |
| 2. from the shore | 10. home (homeward) |
| 3. from Athens | 11. in the cottage |
| 4. at Rome | 12. in Athens |
| 5. in the country | 13. at home |
| 6. to Rome | 14. into the streets |
| 7. to Athens | 15. from the country |
| 8. to the road | 16. from home |



A shopkeeper's sign

A milkman's sign, a wineseller's sign, and a mason's sign are shown on this page and the preceding one. Can you identify each?

EXERCISE IX

Write in Latin:

1. The little boats often sail from Rome to the islands near by.
2. Sometimes the little boats bring olives from the islands to Rome.
3. The sturdy merchant ships are sailing to Athens again.
4. Now the sailors hurry out of the merchant ships into the streets of Athens.
5. In Athens there are beautiful white columns and many statues of the goddess of wisdom.
6. At night the sailors hurry from Athens to the shore.
7. The sailors are on the merchant ships; the farmers are in the country.
8. Julia is preparing a good dinner today because the sailor is at home again.
9. The sailor walks to the door and greets the farmer.
10. The sailor likes to tell (his) little daughters stories.

CHAPTER X

SUMMARY OF FIRST DECLENSION

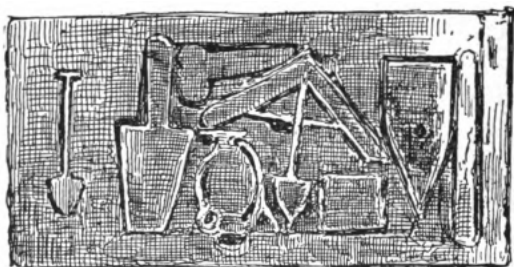


79. TULLIA ET CLAUDIA

Tullia et filiae, Cornēlia et Secunda, rūri sunt. Claudia Rōmae est. Tullia Claudiam amat; itaque Tullia cum filiabus Rōmam properat. Tullia in lecticā sedet sed filiae et servae, Rosa et Anna, ambulant. Ex villā in Viam Appiam Tullia et puellae properant. In Viā Appiā sunt nautae et agricolae. Nautae Rōmā ad ōram properant. Agricolae ā casis Rōmam properant. In viās Rōmae

II. *Write the Latin for the following phrases:*

- | | |
|-------------------|----------------------|
| 1. from Rome | 9. to the country |
| 2. from the shore | 10. home (homeward) |
| 3. from Athens | 11. in the cottage |
| 4. at Rome | 12. in Athens |
| 5. in the country | 13. at home |
| 6. to Rome | 14. into the streets |
| 7. to Athens | 15. from the country |
| 8. to the road | 16. from home |

**A shopkeeper's sign**

A milkman's sign, a wineseller's sign, and a mason's sign are shown on this page and the preceding one. Can you identify each?

EXERCISE IX*Write in Latin:*

1. The little boats often sail from Rome to the islands near by. 2. Sometimes the little boats bring olives from the islands to Rome. 3. The sturdy merchant ships are sailing to Athens again. 4. Now the sailors hurry out of the merchant ships into the streets of Athens. 5. In Athens there are beautiful white columns and many statues of the goddess of wisdom. 6. At night the sailors hurry from Athens to the shore. 7. The sailors are on the merchant ships; the farmers are in the country. 8. Julia is preparing a good dinner today because the sailor is at home again. 9. The sailor walks to the door and greets the farmer. 10. The sailor likes to tell (his) little daughters stories.

CHAPTER X

SUMMARY OF FIRST DECLENSION



79. TULLIA ET CLAUDIA

Tullia et filiae, Cornēlia et Secunda, rūri sunt. Claudia Rōmae est. Tullia Claudiam amat; itaque Tullia cum filiabus Rōmam properat. Tullia in lecticā sedet sed filiae et servae, Rosa et Anna, ambulant. Ex villā in Viam Appiam Tullia et puellae properant. In Viā Appiā sunt nautae et agricolae. Nautae Rōmā ad ōram properant. Agricolaē ā casīs Rōmam properant. In viās Rōmae

(69)

agricolae ūvās et olīvās portant. Tullia pulchrās ūvās videt et Annae pecūniam dat. Parvae puellae ūvās pulchrās, et corbulās plēnās rosārum rubrārum et albārum, ad Claudiam portant.

Claudia domī est et proximae Claudiae sunt ancillae.



Courtesy of The Pennsylvania University Museum

Fēmina Rōmāna

Ancillae Claudiae libenter labōrant. Saepe Claudia ancillis fābulās nārrat. Tullia et filiae Claudiam salūtant. Rosa et Anna ancillās Claudiae salūtant. Puellae Claudiae rosās et ūvās dant. Noctū Tullia cum filiabus et servis Rōmā domum properat.

80. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Ubi sunt Tullia et filiae?
2. Ubi est Claudia?
3. Quō Tullia properat?
4. Ubi sedet Tullia?
5. Quibuscum Tullia Rōmam properat?
6. Sedentne filiae et servae?
7. Unde properant Tullia et filiae?
8. Suntne nautae

- et agricolae in Viā Appiā?
9. Unde nautae properant?
10. Quō nautae properant?
11. Unde agricolae properant?
12. Quō agricolae properant?
13. Quid portant agricolae?
14. Cui Tullia pecūniam dat?
15. Quid portant parvae puellae?
16. Ubi est Claudia?
17. Cui sunt ancillae proximae?
18. Cuius servae libenter labōrant?
19. Quibus Claudia fābulās saepe nārrat?
20. Cuius ancillās salūtant Rosa et Anna?
21. Quid puellae Claudiae dant?
22. Quō Tullia et filiae noctū properant?

DISCUSSION

81. In the foregoing story can be found examples of all the cases of a Latin noun which we have studied. A noun is in different cases according to its use in a sentence. To *decline* a noun is to list its case forms in order, singular and plural. The locative is usually not listed, because very few nouns have a locative form. The listing of the case forms is called *declension*.

A set of inflectional forms arranged in the usual order is called a *paradigm*. A paradigm may be formed for any word that can be inflected. In speaking of a paradigm, it is often convenient to call the unchanging part, to which the endings are attached, the *base*. The base of a noun can always be ascertained by dropping the ending of the genitive singular; as, *puella*, genitive *puellae*, base *puell-*.



Fēmina Rōmāna

The paradigm of *puella* is as follows:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>puella</i>	<i>puellae</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>puellae</i>	<i>puellārum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>puellae</i>	<i>puellis</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>puellam</i>	<i>puellās</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>puellā</i>	<i>puellis</i>

82. The base is often slightly different from the *stem*, which may be thought of as the form to which the inflectional

endings were originally added, but which has sometimes undergone a change in the last syllable by weakening or by combination with the ending. Thus the *ā* of **puellā**-, the stem of **puella**, is shortened or changed in several cases, so that it is often convenient to refer to the base, **puell-**.



Museum of Fine Arts, Boston, Mass.

Īnfāns Rōmānus

83. The word *declension* is also used of a group or class of nouns all of which are declined in approximately the same way. Nearly all the nouns studied so far belong to the first declension. There are five declensions altogether.

84. The declension to which a noun belongs is indicated by the ending of the genitive singular, which, in the first declension, is *-ae*. Hereafter, the nominative singular and the genitive singular of every noun will be given in the vocabularies. For nouns like *Athēnae*, which is used only in the plural, the nominative and genitive plural will be given.

85. There is another case in Latin, called the *vocative*. A noun is in this case when used to designate a person who is being directly addressed, as in the English sentence, "*Boys*, come over here." The vocative is usually omitted in declining a noun, because it is always like the nominative, except in the singular of some nouns of the second declension.

A noun in the vocative is often placed after the first word in the sentence, or in a later place, but never at the beginning; as,

Suntne, Claudia, servae in silvā? Claudia, are the slaves out in the woods?

86. The following table will serve in a review of the uses of the five principal cases:

Case	Use
<i>Nominative:</i>	The case of the subject or the predicate nominative.
<i>Genitive:</i>	The case of the owner or possessor, like the English possessive: often expressing the same idea as an English prepositional phrase with <i>of</i> .
<i>Dative:</i>	The case of the indirect object, to whom or for whom something is done or given or said.
<i>Accusative:</i>	The case of the direct object of a verb, or of the object of certain prepositions.
<i>Ablative:</i>	A case of many uses, often showing place from which and place in which: used with prepositions meaning <i>in</i> , <i>on</i> , <i>from</i> , <i>out of</i> , <i>with</i> , etc.

87. Gender

The gender of a noun in English is determined entirely by sex. If a noun refers to a man or boy it is of masculine gender. If it refers to a woman or girl it is of feminine gender. If it refers to neither male nor female it is of neuter gender. The word *neuter* means *neither*.

The distinction by sex is not so marked in Latin. Nouns designating males are masculine; nouns designating females are feminine; but nouns designating objects that have no sex, or animals with no special reference to sex, may be masculine, feminine, or neuter.

88. Nouns of the first declension are nearly all feminine. A few, such as *poëta*, *agricola*, *nauta*, designate males, and are therefore masculine. There are no neuters in the first declension. Nouns like *sella*, *rosa*, *via* are all feminine because they are in the first declension.

VOCABULARY X

lectica, *litter*, *sedan*

sedet, *sits*

89.**LATIN IN DAILY LIFE**

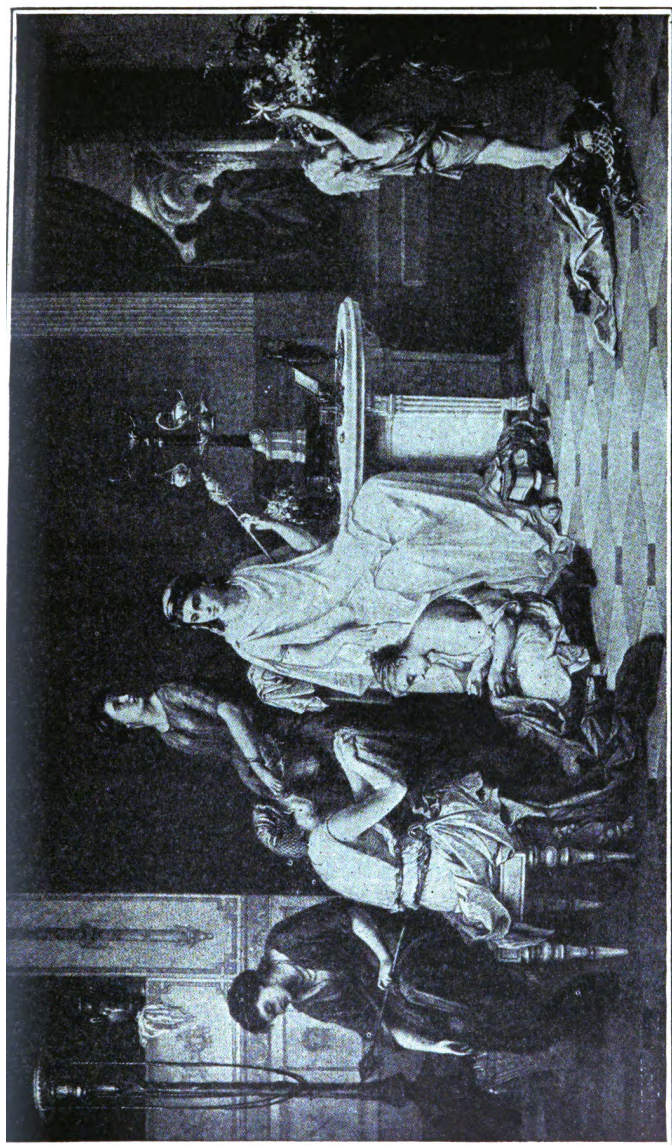
I. Explain the meaning of the word in italics in the following sentence: "Bookkeepers live a *sedentary* life."

II. *Appian Way*. In Italy today the ancient Via Appia still exists as a thoroughfare.

EXERCISE X

Write in Latin:

1. Rome has many provinces in far distant lands.
2. Crete and Greece are not very near to Rome.
3. Greece is the native land of Claudia's maidservants.
4. The maids live in Rome but are always longing for (their) native land.
5. The life of the maidservants is happy because Claudia is a kind mistress.
6. Claudia is friendly to the maids;



Domina et ancillae

and so they love Claudia very greatly. 7. Claudia hurries into the street; she sits in (her) beautiful litter. 8. Later on Claudia goes into Tullia's villa with (her) maids. 9. Tullia seldom sees Claudia because Claudia lives in Rome and Tullia is in the country. 10. Finally Claudia calls (her) maids and the women hurry out of the villa.



Via Appia

The Appian Way is still a busy Roman street. It enters Rome at the gate of San Sebastian, shown in the picture

CHAPTER XI

PRESENT TENSE OF *SUM*, AND OF VERBS OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS



90. TULLIA, MAGISTRA FĪLIĀRUM I

Tullia Cornēliam et Secundam linguam Latinam docet. Tullia sevēra magistra est; itaque puellae dīligenter student.

^I ^{am} ^{are} ^{You}
“*Ego sum fēmina. Ego sum mātṛōna Rōmāna. Tū, Cornēlia, es puella. Tū es filia mea. Secunda quoque est puella Rōmāna. Secunda est parva filia mea. Sum mātṛōna Rōmāna; es filia mea; Secunda est parva filia mea.*”

91. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Quis sum? 2. Quis es, Cornēlia? 3. Quis est Secunda?
4. Quis es, Secunda? 5. Quis est Cornēlia? 6. Quis est Tullia?

92. "Sum incola Rōmae. Tū, Cornēlia, quoque es incola Rōmae. Ego et tū ^{are} sumus incolae Rōmae. ^{We} Nōs sumus laetae. Tū, Cornēlia, es filia mea. Tū quoque, Secunda, es filia mea. ^{You} Vōs, puellae, ^{are} estis filiae meae. Estis puellae cārae. Lūcia est filia Camillae. Tertia est parva filia Camillae. Lūcia et Tertia sunt filiae Camillae."

93. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Quis sum? 2. Quis es? 3. Estisne incolae Rōmae?
4. Nōne sumus laetae, Tullia? 5. Cuius filiae sunt Lūcia et Tertia?

DISCUSSION

94. When *ego* is the subject, what verb form is used? When *tū* is the subject, what verb form is used? When *nōs* is the subject, what is the verb form? When *vōs* is the subject, what is the verb form?

A verb in Latin has different forms to indicate whether the subject is speaking, is spoken to, or is spoken of. The listing of these forms in order is called *conjugation*. Conjugation exists to some extent in English, as we say I *am*, you *are*, he *is*. In the plural, however, there is only one form in English, *are*; whereas you have seen in Tullia, *Magistra Fīliārum* I that in Latin there are three different endings in the plural, just as there are in the singular.

95. Memorize the following forms of the present tense of *sum*, and the translations. Remember that the form *est* can mean *she is* or *it is* in addition to the meanings given. (See note following Vocabulary I.)



Domina et dominus

*Present tense of sum*sum, *I am*sumus, *we are*es, *you are*estis, *you are*est, *he is, there is*sunt, *they are, there are*

96. TULLIA, MAGISTRA FĪLIĀRUM II

“Nōnne rosae sunt pulchrae, filiae meae? Māne ego in villam rosās *portō*. Tū, Cornēlia, aquam *portās*. Secunda quoque aquam *portat*. Tum nōs rosās ad statuās deārum *portāmus* et statuās ōrnāmus. Vōs puellae rubrās rosās amātis et vestrās rosās rubrās ad Diānae statuam *portātis*. Cotīdiē agricolae corbulās plēnās rosārum ad villam nostram *portant*. Ego rosās libenter cūrō.

“Nōnne corōnae rosārum pulchrae sunt, puellae? *Vidēsne* corōnam rosārum albārum, Cornēlia?” “Corōnam *videō*,



Līberī et paedagōgus

In the wealthier families, the children were often taught at home by a special tutor, usually a slave, instead of being sent to a public school

Tullia. Nōne est pulchra?" "Videtne dea Diāna corōnās,

Tullia?" "Certē, mea filia parva! Deae omnia ^{everything} *vident*."

"Sed nōs deās nōn *vidēmus*." "Vōs, puellae, deās nōn *vidētis* quod deae in terrā nōn habitant."

Nōtā bene

Omnia, *everything*; literally, *all (things)*.

97. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Quō māne rosās portō? 2. Quid portās, Cornēlia?
3. Quid Secunda quoque portat? 4. Quid ad statuās deārum portāmus?
5. Quālēs rosās ad Diānae statuam portātis?
6. Quid agricolae ad villam nostram portant?
7. Quid vidēs, Cornēlia? 8. Num corōnam rosārum rubrārum videō?
9. Nōne dea Diāna corōnās videt?

10. Videntne deae omnia? 11. Num deās vidēmus?
 12. Cūr vōs puellae deās nōn vidētis?

DISCUSSION

98. In the sentence *Māne ego rosās in villam portō*, what is the subject? What is the ending of the verb when *ego* is the subject? Find a sentence in the story in which *tū* is the subject. What is the ending of the verb in this sentence? When *nōs* is the subject, what is the ending of the verb? What is the ending of the verb when *vōs* is the subject? These endings show in what person the verb is, and they are called the *personal* endings. They should be memorized, as in the following paradigm of *portō*, *I carry*.

Singular

1st person	portō, <i>I carry, I am carrying, I do carry</i>
2d person	portās, <i>you carry, etc.</i>
3d person	portat, <i>he carries, etc.</i>

Plural

1st person	portāmus, <i>we carry, etc.</i>
2d person	portātis, <i>you carry, etc.</i>
3d person	portant, <i>they carry, etc.</i>

99. The subject of a verb is often not expressed by a separate word. When this occurs, the ending of the verb indicates the subject. Pronoun subjects are expressed only when they are needed for special emphasis.

100. Make a list of all verbs in the first paragraph of the story *Tullia, Magistra Fīliārum II*, and observe the various forms. All the verbs in this list, except *sunt*, belong to the same conjugation as *portō*. The base of the present tense of *portō* is *port-*; but the stem is *portā-*. Observe that the *ā* of the stem is changed in some of the forms, as *portō*, *portat*, *portant*.



Domina et filia

101. The word *conjugation* is used here to mean a group or class of verbs that are inflected alike. There are four such conjugations. The verb **portō** belongs to the *first conjugation*. The verb **sum** does not belong to any of the four: it is irregular.

102. The infinitive is made by adding *-re* to the present stem: *portāre*. Hence, if you know the infinitive you can determine the present stem by dropping the *-re*. It is customary to name a verb by giving the first person present, as *portō*; and to show its present stem (thus showing to which conjugation it belongs) by giving the present infinitive. These two forms are the first and second principal parts of a Latin verb: *portō, portāre*. In the vocabularies hereafter, these two forms will be given.

103. Now make a list of the verb forms in the second paragraph of *Tullia, Magistra Fīliarum II*. Most of the verbs in this list belong to the *second* conjugation; their stem ends in *-ē*. In three of these forms, also, the stem is changed to *-e* before the personal endings: *videō, videt, vident*. The infinitive form is *vidēre*; hereafter verbs of this kind will be given in the form *videō, vidēre*.

The infinitive of *sum* is *esse*.

104. The personal endings added to the present stem of a verb in any of the four conjugations form the present tense of the verb. Notice, however, that *sum* is irregular.

105. The present tense of *videō*, a verb of the second conjugation, is as follows. Compare this paradigm with that of *portō*, noting that the endings are the same, though the stem vowel is different.

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>videō</i>	<i>vidēmus</i>
<i>vidēs</i>	<i>vidētis</i>
<i>videt</i>	<i>vident</i>

Observe carefully the long vowels in these verbs, and remember the three possible translations of this tense.

RULE

106. A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.



In Viā Appiā antiqūā

READING LESSON

107. CLAUDIA ET FĪLIAE TULLIAE

Claudia. Cuius lectīcam, ancillae, in viā vidētis?

Ancilla. Tulliae lectīcam videō, domina.

Claudia. Sum laeta, quod Tullia est cāra amīca mea.
Suntne puellae cum Tulliā?

Ancilla secunda. Puellās videō, domina. Puellae ambulant.

Claudia. Salvē, Tullia cāra. Salvēte, Cornēlia et Secunda.
Estisne dēfessae?

Tullia. Ego nōn sum dēfessa. Fortasse puellae sunt
dēfessae.

Cornēlia. Nōn sum dēfessa, Claudia. Libenter ambulō.

Claudia. Quid portātis, puellae?

Cornēlia. Ego rosās albās habēō, Claudia. Rosās ad
Claudiam cāram portō.

Claudia. Rosās tuās amō, Cornēlia. Sunt pulchrae rosae.
Quid tū habēs, Secunda?

Secunda. Ego ūvās rubrās habeō, Claudia. Ūvās ad Claudiam cāram portō.

Claudia. Ūvās quoque amō. Estis puellae bonae. Fortasse ancillae meae fābulās dē patriūs nārrant. Amātisne fābulās dē Graeciā?

Cornēlia. Es bona, Claudia. Fābulās dē Graeciā maximē amāmus. Ubi sunt ancillae?

Nōtā bene

108. Salvē, the singular form of greeting, and salvēte, the plural form, are really the present imperative forms, singular and plural, of a verb meaning literally *be well, be in good health*. Translate "hail" or "how do you do?" The present imperative singular is the same as the present stem in verbs of the first and second conjugations; the plural is formed by adding -te to the singular form. Thus of salvēre, the form of the present stem and singular imperative is salvē, that of the plural imperative, salvēte. The first person singular form, salveō, is not used. Observe that although salvē, salvēte are used as greetings, the verb does not mean *greet*. The verb that has this meaning is salūtō, salūtāre.

VOCABULARY XI

amīca, -ae, f., friend	nōs, we
*dē, prep. (with abl.), about, concerning; down from	*nostra, our
diligenter, adv., diligently, carefully	(salveō), salvēre, be well, be in good health
*doceō, docēre, teach	sevēra, severe, stern
*ego, I	*studeō, studēre, be eager; study
fortāsse, adv., perhaps	*tū, you (sing.)
Latīna, Latin (adj.)	*tua, your (used when addressing one person)
lingua, -ae, f., tongue, language	*vestra, your (used when addressing two or more persons)
māne, adv., in the morning	vōs, you (pl.)
mātrōna, -ae, f., matron	
*mea, my	

109.

LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. Pick out the Latin words in the vocabulary with which the following are associated: *amicable, docile, severity, study.*

II. *Egotism* comes from the Latin word *ego*. *Egotism* is a strong confidence in oneself, a feeling of self-importance.

DRILL

I. *The following review list gives all the verbs which you have had. The forms given here are the first person singular present and the present infinitive. Give the meaning of each.*

ambulō, ambulāre	nāvigō, nāvigāre
amō, amāre	ōrnō, ōrnāre
cūrō, cūrāre	parō, parāre
dēlectō, dēlectāre	portō, portāre
dēmōnstrō, dēmōnstrāre	properō, properāre
dēsiderō, dēsiderāre	salūtō, salūtāre
dō, dare	(salveō), salvēre
doceō, docēre	sedeō, sedēre
habeō, habēre	spectō, spectāre
habitō, habitāre	stō, stāre
intrō, intrāre	studeō, studēre
labōrō, labōrāre	sum, esse
laudō, laudāre	videō, vidēre
nārrō, nārrāre	vocō, vocāre

II. *Conjugate the present tense of the Latin verbs with the following meanings:*

have	greet	see	call
teach	praise	study	walk
carry	sit	please	be

III. *Express in Latin:*

- | | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| 1. I show. | 6. You (<i>pl.</i>) call. |
| 2. They are walking. | 7. I am decorating. |
| 3. You (<i>sing.</i>) are preparing. | 8. We give. |
| 4. We do praise. | 9. You (<i>sing.</i>) do sail. |
| 5. He sees. | 10. They have. |

EXERCISE XI

Write in Latin:

1. Tullia, a Roman matron, likes to teach the Latin language.
2. We sit on our benches and work every day.
3. We always study diligently because our teacher is severe.
4. Do you sometimes praise your daughters, Tullia, and

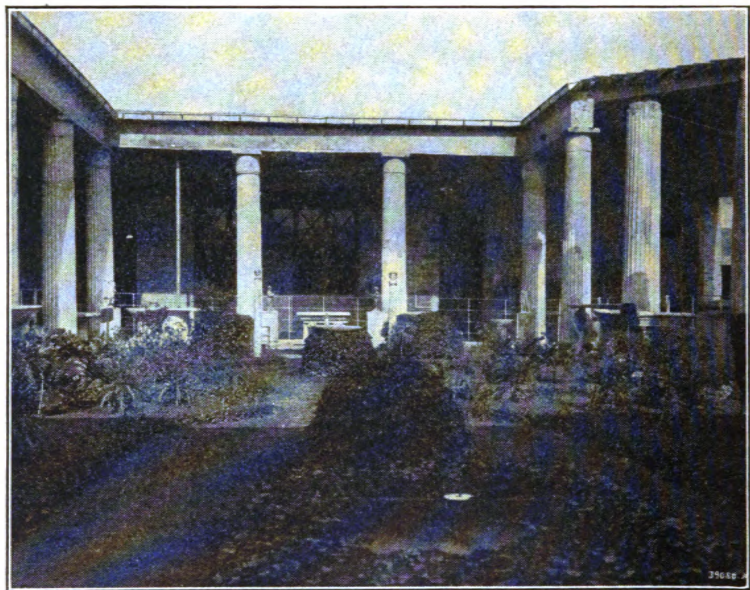
**Tāli**

A popular game among the Roman girls was played much like our jackstones. Five knucklebones (tāli) were thrown into the air at once, and as many as possible caught on the back of the hand

tell the girls stories about goddesses? 5. Why are you hurrying into the villa, Secunda? 6. I see Claudia's litter. Perhaps our friend is in the villa. 7. How do you do, girls! Are you studying diligently today? 8. We study in the morning; we are tired now. 9. Your roses are beautiful, girls. 10. Do you see my new jar, Claudia? It is full of white roses.

CHAPTER XII

MASCULINE NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION NOMINATIVE, ACCUSATIVE, AND VOCATIVE



Hortus

110. CORNĒLIUS, DOMINUS

Cornēlius est dominus villae; dominus Cornēlius est vir bonus. Dominus bonus servum laetum habet. Puer laetus dominum bonum amat. Dominus magnum hortum habet; dominus et domina in hortō ambulant. Hortus est longus et lātus. Servus laetus in hortum properat. Ferē

cotīdiē in hortō labōrat. Esne dēfessus, *serve bone*? Esne tū dēfessus, *puer*?

Cornēlius multōs filiōs habet. Filii sunt boni. Filii sunt Mārcus, Lūcius, Aulus, Pūblius, Servius. Filii parvi sunt Pūblius et Servius. Filius adultus est Mārcus. Estisne discipulī boni, pueri? Lūcius est discipulus bonus et diligenter labōrat. Aulus quoque est bonus discipulus. Filii parvi nōndum sunt discipulī. Cornēlius filiōs bonōs amat et saepe laudat. Nōnne Cornēlium amātis, filii?

111. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Quis est Cornēlius? 2. Quālis dominus est Cornēlius? 3. Quālem servum bonus dominus habet? 4. Quem puer laetus amat? 5. Quid habet Cornēlius? 6. Quī ambulant in hortō? 7. Estne hortus longus et lātus? 8. Quō servus laetus properat? 9. Esne dēfessus, *serve bone*?

10. Quālēs sunt filii? 11. Quālēs sunt Pūblius et Servius? 12. Quis est discipulus bonus? 13. Suntne filii parvi discipulī? 14. Quōs Cornēlius laudat? 15. Amātisne Cornēlium, filii?

Nōtā bene

Qui, *who*? (nominative plural masculine); quōs, *whom*? (accusative plural masculine).

DISCUSSION

112. Make a list of the nouns in the first paragraph that are used in the nominative. What endings do these words appear to have? Are they singular or plural?

The nouns which we have studied in the preceding lessons end in *-a*, and are in the first declension. The nouns used in this paragraph end in *-us* or *-r*, and are in the second declension. The nouns in *-r* formerly had the same ending as nouns in *-us*, but the ending has been dropped in the nominative.

Note that the ending *-us* should not be pronounced so as to rime with *loose*, but with *puss*.

Make a list of the nouns used in the first paragraph in the accusative. What ending do these words have? The accusative singular in the second declension ends in *-um*.

What nouns in the first paragraph are in the vocative? What endings do they have? Nouns of the second declension ending in *-us* have the vocative singular in *-e*; nouns in *-r* have the vocative like the nominative.

113. In the second paragraph find nouns in the nominative plural, accusative plural, and vocative plural. What is the ending for each case?

114. The endings for these cases are seen in the following forms of *servus*:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nominative</i>	<i>servus</i>	<i>servi</i>
<i>Accusative</i>	<i>servum</i>	<i>servōs</i>
<i>Vocative</i>	<i>serve</i>	<i>servi</i>

115. Nouns in *r*, as *vir* and *puer*, do not have a case ending in the nominative and vocative singular:

<i>Nominative</i>	<i>vir</i>	<i>virī</i>
<i>Accusative</i>	<i>virum</i>	<i>virōs</i>
<i>Vocative</i>	<i>vir</i>	<i>virī</i>

READING LESSON

116.

CORNĒLIUS ET FILII

Cornēlius et filiī in Viā Appiā sunt. Virum armātum vident. Vir armātus est nūntius Rōmānus et equum album habet. Et nūntius et equus sunt dēfessī quod Rōmam properant. Nūntius magnam pugnam Rōmānam nūntiat.

"Ubi, mī amice, Rōmānī pugnant?" clāmat Cornēlius.

"Rōmānī in Galliā pugnant, Cornēli," respondet nūntius.

"Quis est lēgātus?" rogat Cornēlius.



“Rōmānī Labiēnum lēgātum habent,” respondet nūntius. **“Labiēnus gladium tenet et virōs armātōs vocat. Tum virī armātī pignant.”**

Nūntius Rōmam properat sed Cornēlius et filiī domum ambulant.

Lūcius nūntium et equum album laudat. Tum parvus Pūblius clāmat, **“Ego gladium magnum dēsīderō! Parvī puerī semper gladiōs dēsīderant.”**

“Lēgātī, mī filiī, nōn parvī puerī, gladiōs habent,” respondet Cornēlius.

“Gladium nōn dēsīderās, parve Pūbli,” clāmat Lūcius. **“Tū es parvus puer. Ego sum paene adultus et gladium dēsīderō.”**

“Mārcus, meus filius adultus, gladium habet,” respondet Cornēlius, **“sed vōs, filiī mei, nōn estis adultī et nunc librōs tabellāsque, nōn gladiōs, dēsīderātis.”**

Nōtā bene

117. The word *-que*, *and*, is used as an enclitic, like *-ne* (see § 27). It is not placed between the two words which it connects, like *et* and English *and*, but is always attached to the second of two connected words; as, *puerī puellaeque*, *boys and girls*.

118. Proper nouns in *-ius*, and the common noun *filius*, have the ending *-ī* in the vocative, the accent being retained on the syllable which is accented in the nominative; as, *fili*, *O son*, or, more simply, *son*; *Cornēli*, *Cornelius*. *Meus*, meaning *my*, also has the vocative singular masculine in *-ī*, as in *mī fili*, *my son*.



Courtesy of The Pennsylvania University Museum

Puer Rōmānus

endings of the first declension; when used with masculine nouns they have the endings of the second declension; as, *filia bona*, *a good daughter*; *filius bonus*, *a good son*. When listing adjectives in a vocabulary, it is customary to give the forms of the nominative for the different genders; as, *bonus, bona, good*.

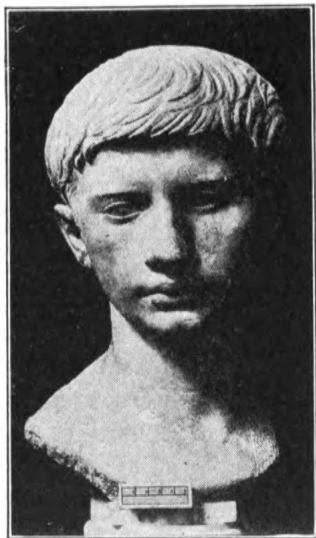
121. Most nouns of the second declension ending in *-us* or *-r* in the nominative singular are masculine.

119. In the plural of all nouns, the vocative case has the same form as the nominative.

120. Many adjectives have the same endings as nouns of the first and second declensions. Such adjectives when used with feminine nouns have the

VOCABULARY XII

- adultus, adulta, *grown up, full-grown*
 armātus, armāta, *armed*
 *clāmō, clāmāre, *call out, shout, exclaim*
 discipulus, *pupil*
 dominus, *master*
 *equus, *horse*
 *ferē, adv., *almost*
 *filius, *son*
 Gallia, -ae, f., *Gaul*
 *gladius, *sword*
 hortus, *garden*
 *lēgātus, *lieutenant; envoy*
 liber, *book*
 *nōndum, adv., *not yet*
 *nūntiō, nūntiāre, *announce, report*
 *nūntius, *messenger; message*
 *puer, *boy*
 *pugna, -ae, f., *fight, battle*
 pugnō, pugnāre, *fight, contend*
 *respondeō, respondēre, *reply, answer*
 *rogō, rogāre, *ask, question*
- Rōmānus, Rōmāna, *Roman; as a noun, Rōmānus, a Roman (man)*
 *servus, *manservant, slave*
 tabella, -ae, f., *writing tablet*
 *teneō, tenēre, *hold, grasp*
 *vir, *man*



Puer Rōmānus

122. Observe that a number of nouns in this vocabulary are the same as nouns which you have had in earlier lessons, except for the ending: *dominus, master, and domina, mistress; filius, son, and filia, daughter; servus, manservant, and serva, maidservant*. In English there is often no very satisfactory way of distinguishing the sex of a person or animal referred to: *discipulus* and *discipula* could both be translated *pupil*,

and the hearer would have to tell from the context whether the pupil was a boy or a girl.

Sometimes a masculine word in Latin does not have the ending -us, as *poëta*, *agricola*, *nauta*.

123. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Explain the meaning of the italicized words in the following sentences:

1. There is a large *equestrian* statue in the park.
2. The *gladiators* ran into the arena.
3. Victor goes to the *library* for reference work.
4. Do not offend a *pugnacious* man.
5. The English bulldog is a *tenacious* animal.

DRILL

Supply the proper case endings:

1. Dominus bon.... serv.... bon.... habet.
2. Serv.... bon.... domin.... amat.
3. Cornēli.... magn.... hort.... habet.
4. Hort.... est long....
5. Quō, serv.... dēfess...., properās?
6. Fīli.... sunt puer.... bon....
7. Lēgāt.... est armāt....
8. Pūblius, parv.... puer, gladi.... dēsīderat.
9. Cornēli.... puer.... bon.... amat.
10. Amātisne Cornēli...., puer....?

EXERCISE XII

Write in Latin:

1. The little boys and the servants like the big garden. (See § 21.)
2. Tullia's little sons do not yet have swords.
3. Marcus, the lieutenant, is grown up and has both a horse and a sword.
4. Lucius and Aulus are pupils and have tablets and books.
5. "Have you your books, Lucius

and Al
messen
Gaul, r
great l
Marcus
battle.
because



d Aulus?" calls out the master. 6. The boys see a messenger in the street. 7. "Are the Romans fighting in Gaul, my friend?" asks Lucius. 8. "I am announcing a great battle, boys," replies the messenger. 9. Perhaps Marcus grasps (his) sword and calls (his) armed men into battle. 10. Messengers hurry to Rome almost every day because the Romans are always fighting.



Equitēs Rōmānī

CHAPTER XIII

MASCULINE NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION GENITIVE, DATIVE, AND ABLATIVE



124.

IN HORTŌ CORNĒLĪ

Cornēlius villam habet. In villā sunt hortus magnus et parva silva. Itaque Cornēlius dominus est *hortī* et *silvae*. Proximus *hortō* est ager. Dominus *hortī* et *agrī* saepe in *hortō* cum *filiō* ambulat. Filius *nāviculam* habet; Cornēlius *nāviculam filiī* libenter spectat.

Hortus est pulcher. Circum hortum est mūrus altus. Proxima mūrō est statua pulchra deī Mercurī. In hortō Cornēlī est magnus numerus statuārum deōrum et deārum.

(96)

Cornēlius multōs amicōs habet. Cornēlius *amicīs* est cārus quod est vir bonus. Cum *amicīs* in hortō hodiē sedet. Fīliū filiaeque Cornēli in hortō sedent. Proximī Cornēliō et amicīs sunt fīlii et filiae. *Amicōrum* fābulae fīliis et filiābus domini sunt grātae.

Extrā mūrum sunt magnī agrī Cornēli. In agrīs servi cotidiē labōrant. Vespere servi dēfessī ex agrīs ad villam properant. Servi in hortīs nōn saepe sedent quod servi dīligenter labōrant.

125. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Quid habet Cornēlius? 2. Cuius est Cornēlius dominus? 3. Ubi est ager? 4. Quid habet fīlius? 5. Ubi est statua deī? 6. Quid est in hortō Cornēli? 7. Suntne multae statucae deōrum et deārum in hortō?

8. Habetne Cornēlius amicōs? 9. Nōne est Cornēlius amicīs cārus? 10. Quālis vir est Cornēlius? 11. Ubi sunt fīlii et filiae? 12. Quōrum fābulae fīliōs et filiās Cornēli dēlectant?

13. Ubi sunt agrī Cornēli? 14. Ubi servi labōrant? 15. Unde servi dēfessī vespere properant? 16. Num servi in hortīs sedent?

Nōtā bene

Quōrum, *whose?* (masculine plural).

DISCUSSION

126. In the sentence *Itaque Cornēlius dominus est hortī et silvae*, how is the word *hortī* used? In what case and number is it? What is the ending? Nouns in the second declension have the genitive singular in *-ī*.

In the sentence *Amicōrum fābulae fīliis et filiābus sunt grātae*, how is *amicōrum* used? In what case and number is it? What is the ending? How does this ending differ from the genitive plural ending of the first declension?



Mercurius

127. Make a list of nouns used with the adjectives meaning *dear*, *near*, and *pleasing*. In what case are these nouns? What is the ending of the dative singular? of the dative plural?

128. Make a list of phrases showing *place in which* and *place from which*. In what case are the nouns in these phrases? What is the ending of the ablative singular? of the ablative plural?

129. The form of the genitive singular of any noun will tell you the declension of the noun; as, *serva*, *servae*, first declension; *servus*, *servī*, second declension.

130. The following paradigms will show you how masculine nouns of the second declension are declined.

servus, servī, base serv-, servant, slave

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	servus	servī
<i>Gen.</i>	servī	servōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	servō	servīs
<i>Acc.</i>	servum	servōs
<i>Abl.</i>	servō	servīs

The vocative singular is *serve*; the vocative plural, as in all nouns, is like the nominative plural.

filius, fili, base fili-, son

<i>Nom.</i>	filius	fili
<i>Gen.</i>	fili	filiōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	filiō	filiīs
<i>Acc.</i>	filium	filiōs
<i>Abl.</i>	filiō	filiīs

Note that the genitive singular of nouns in *-ius* ends in *-i* instead of *-ii*; and that here, contrary to the general rule, the base is changed. The vocative singular of *filius*, and of proper names in *-ius*, ends in *-i* instead of *-ie*; as, *fili*, *Cornēli*. The accent of such forms is on the syllable that is accented in the nominative.

puer, puerī, base puer-, boy

<i>Nom.</i>	puer	puerī
<i>Gen.</i>	puerī	puerōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	puerō	puerīs
<i>Acc.</i>	puerum	puerōs
<i>Abl.</i>	puerō	puerīs

The noun **vir**, **virī**, base **vir-**, is declined exactly like **puer**:

<i>Nom.</i>	vir	virī
<i>Gen.</i>	virī	virōrum
	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>

ager, **agrī**, base **agr-**, *field*

<i>Nom.</i>	ager	agrī
<i>Gen.</i>	agrī	agrōrum
	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>

131. Observe that it is especially important to memorize the genitive singular of nouns that end in **-er**. Thus the genitive singular of **puer** is **puerī**, and hence the base, **puer-**, contains an **e**, just as the nominative does. But the genitive singular of **ager** is **agrī**, and hence the base is **agr-**, which does not contain an **e**.

132. Certain adjectives in **-us** and **-er** are declined according to the second declension when they modify a masculine noun, and according to the first declension when they modify a feminine noun. The base of such adjectives can be found by dropping the **-a** of the feminine form; as, **altus**, feminine **alta**, base **alt-**; **pulcher**, feminine **pulchra**, base **pulchr-**.

READING LESSON

133.

DISCIPULI

Lūcius et Aulus sunt filiī Tulliae et Cornēli. Māne ad lūdum cum paedagōgō ambulant. Puerī librōs et tabellās et stilōs portant. In lūdō dīlīgenter student.

Orbilius est lūdī magister. Orbilius est sevērus et pigri discipulī Orbiliō nōn sunt grātī. Sī lūdī magister irātus est, discipulōs castīgat. Tum puerī clāmant et lacrimant.

Lūcius et Aulus sunt bonī discipulī; itaque ad lūdum libenter properant. Vespere filiī Cornēli ā lūdō ad villam properant. Tum librōs et tabellās in mēnsam conlocant et



cum puellis in hortō villae sedent. Postea Cornēlius filiūs
et filiābus fābulās nārrat.

VOCABULARY XIII

*ager, agrī, m., *field*
 *altus, alta, *high, tall, deep*
 *amicus, amīcī, m., *friend*
 castigo, castigāre, *punish,*
reprove, beat
 *circum, prep. (with acc.),
around
 *conlocō, conlocāre, *place*
 *deus, deī, m., *god*
 *extrā, prep. (with acc.),
outside of
 irātus, irāta, *angry*

lacrimō, lacrimāre, *weep, cry*
 lūdus, lūdī, m., *school; game*
 magister, magistri, m.,
master, schoolmaster
 Mercurius, Mercurī, m.,
Mercury, messenger of the
gods
 *mūrus, mūrī, m., *wall*
 *numerus, numerī, m., *num-*
ber
 paedagōgus, paedagōgī, m.,
attendant, tutor

piger, pigra, <i>lazy</i>	stilus, still, m., <i>style</i> , or
pulcher, pulchra, <i>beautiful</i> ,	stylus, a pointed instru-
fair	ment for writing on wax
*sī, conj., <i>if</i>	vespere, adv., <i>in the evening</i>

134. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

- I. 1. At what time of day are *vesper* services held?
2. What are *mural* decorations?
3. What is *circumpolar* exploration?
4. What is the difference between *horticulture* and *agriculture*?

II. When a newsboy calls "*Extra!*" he is using a Latin word. An *extra* edition of a newspaper may be thought of as an edition issued outside the regular editions, to convey special news.

DRILL

I. *Supply the proper case endings:*

1. Hortus Cornēl.... est magn....
2. Cum Cornēli.... sunt amīc....
3. Serv.... in agr.... (*pl.*) labōrant.
4. Puerī amīc.... (*pl.*) sunt grāt....
5. Librī magistr.... (*sing.*) sunt grāt....

II. *Write in parallel columns the declension of dominus and domina, and compare the endings.*

EXERCISE XIII

Write in Latin:

1. Many slaves work in the master's fields; a few work in the garden. 2. Cornelius and (his) sons like the beautiful garden. 3. In the garden Cornelius tells (his) sons stories about Roman gods. 4. The Romans have a great number of gods. 5. There is a high wall around the master's garden. 6. Where are you, Lucius and Aulus? We are

outside the wall with our attendant. 7. Orbilius, the school-master, calls the boys and (their) friends into school. 8. The lazy boy does not study, but places (his) stylus and tablet on the bench; then the angry teacher sees the boy and punishes (him). 9. The boy cries because Orbilius is angry. 10. In the morning the pupils hurry to school but in the evening they hurry home.

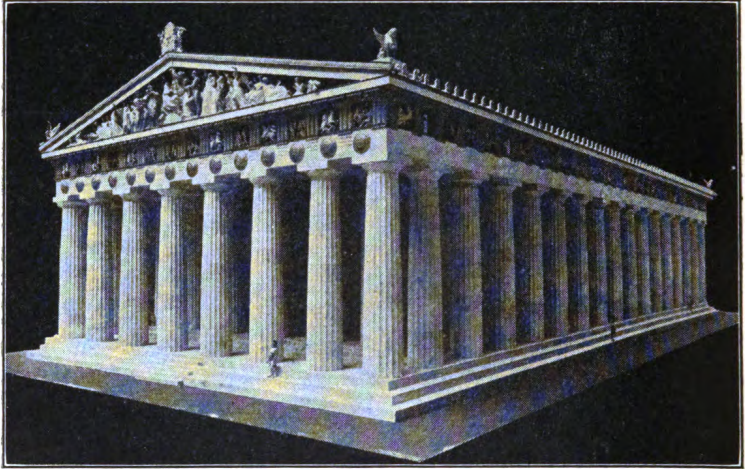


Magister discipulum castigat

A wall painting from Herculaneum

CHAPTER XIV

NEUTER NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION



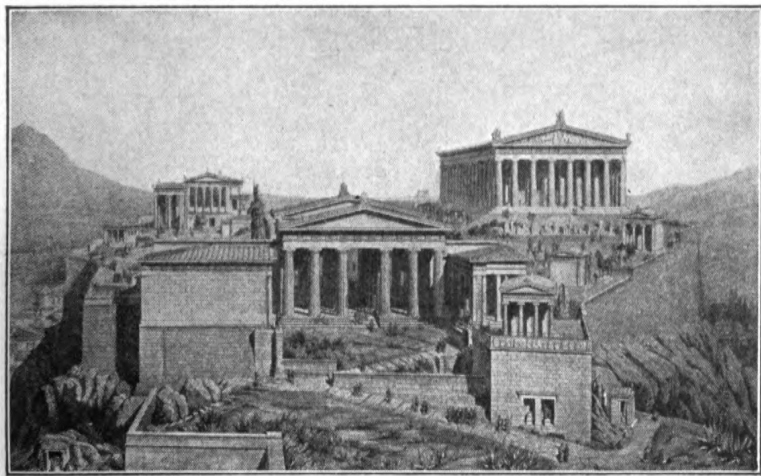
Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art

Parthenōn, clārissimum templum Graeciae

135. TEMPLA ANTĪQUA

Templum est Athēnīs. Templum est *antīquum*. Incolae Athēnārum *templum* saepe intrant. Incolae in templum ambulant quod columnās et statuās libenter spectant. Proximī templō sunt multi virī. Columnae pulchrae templī virōs dēlectant. In templō est magna statua deae sapientiae. Proximae statuae sunt ārae. Fēminae ārās deae ōrnant. Agricolae frūmentum ad ārās templī portant. Nautae aurum ā terris extrēmīs in templum portant. Sīc virī et fēminae templi deam adōrant.

(104)



The Acropolis at Athens

The hill on which the Parthenon stands as it probably looked two thousand years ago. Notice the statue of Athena in the foreground. This bronze statue was about fifty feet high and could be seen far out at sea

Hodiē quoque *templa antiqua* virōs et fēminās dēlectant. À terris extrēmīs ad Graeciam nāvigant. *Templa clāra* intrant et laudant. Etiam hodiē *columnae templōrum antiquōrum* sunt pulchrae. Proxima magnīs templīs sunt multa domicilia parva. Incolae Graeciae longās fābulās dē templīs antiqūis nārrant.

136. Respondē Latīnē :

1. Ubi est templum? 2. Quāle est templum? 3. Quid incolae Athēnārū saepe intrant? 4. Ubi sunt viri? 5. Dēlectantne templī columnae virōs? 6. Ubi est statua deae? 7. Quō agricolae frūmentum portant? 8. Quid nautae in templum portant?

9. Quid virōs et fēminās hodiē dēlectat? 10. Quālia templa hodiē virōs et fēminās dēlectant? 11. Quid virī et fēminae intrant? 12. Nōne columnae templōrum anti-

quōrum sunt pulchrae? 13. Ubi sunt parva domicilia?
14. Narrantne incolae Graeciae fābulās longās dē templis antiquis?

Nōtā bene

Quāle, *what kind of?* (nominative and accusative singular neuter); quālia, *what kind of?* (nominative and accusative plural neuter).

DISCUSSION

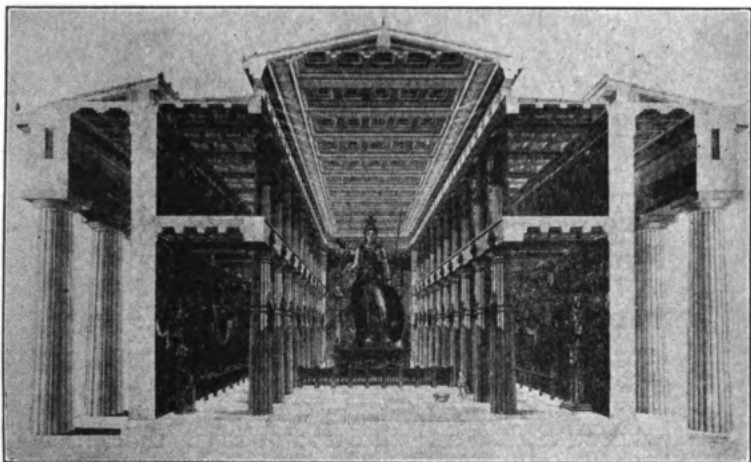
137. In the first two sentences of the story, how is the word **templum** used? In what case and number is it? What is the ending? In the sentence **Columnae pulchrae templi virōs dēlectant**, in what case and number is **templi**? What is the ending? To what declension does this noun belong? Nouns of the second declension with the nominative in **-um** are neuter.

In the sentence **Incolae Athēnārum templum saepe intrant**, how is **templum** used? In what case and number is it? What is the ending? Compare this ending with the nominative singular ending. Neuter nouns of the second declension have the ending **-um** in the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular.

Find sentences which contain the genitive, dative, and ablative singular of **templum**. What is the ending of each of these cases? The endings of the genitive, dative, and ablative singular of neuter nouns in the second declension are the same as those of masculine nouns.

138. In the first sentence of the second paragraph, how is the word **templa** used? In what case and number is it? What is the ending? In the sentence **Templa clāra intrant et laudant**, how is **templa** used? In what case and number is it? What is the ending? The nominative, accusative, and vocative plural of neuter nouns always end in **-a**.

Find sentences which contain the genitive, dative, and ablative plural of **templum**. What are the endings of these



Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art

Statua Minervae

The huge statue of Minerva (called Athena by the Greeks), inside the Parthenon, was made of wood overlaid with gold and ivory. Athena has a small statue of the goddess of victory in her right hand, and a sphinx and two winged horses on her helmet. In the space between the wall and the columns on either side were stored some of the treasures of Athena—trophies of war, and various objects of gold and other metals

cases? In the plural, the endings of the genitive, dative, and ablative of neuter nouns are always the same as those of masculine nouns of the same declension.

139. Learn the following paradigm of a neuter noun of the second declension:

templum, templī, base templ-, temple

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	templum	templa
<i>Gen.</i>	templī	templōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	templō	templīs
<i>Acc.</i>	templum	templa
<i>Abl.</i>	templō	templīs

READING LESSON

140.

IN BRITANNIĀ

In Britannīā cōpiae Rōmānae castra magna habent. Castra Rōmāna proxima sunt ōrae quod Rōmānī multās onerāriās habent. Onerāriae auxilia et frūmentum ad cōpiās Rōmānās portant. Circum castra est altum vāllum. In vāllō stat Mārcus, lēgātus Rōmānus. Mārcus est adultus filius Cornēli. Mārcus nūntium Rōmānum extrā vāllum videt. Nūntius ad castra Rōmāna properat. "Salvē, amice," clāmat Mārcus. "Parantne Britannī proelium?" "Salvē, lēgāte, multī Britannī armātī sunt in silvīs proximīs. Intrā silvās sunt multa arma et multum frūmentum quoque. Fēminae cum filiīs et filiābus ab oppidīs et ab agris in silvās properant quod fāma Rōmānōrum est magna et proelium timent," nūntius clāmat. Tum in castra celeriter properat.

Lēgātus neque Britannōs neque pericula bellī timet quod vāllum castrōrum est firmum et cōpiae Rōmānae sunt multae.

VOCABULARY XIV

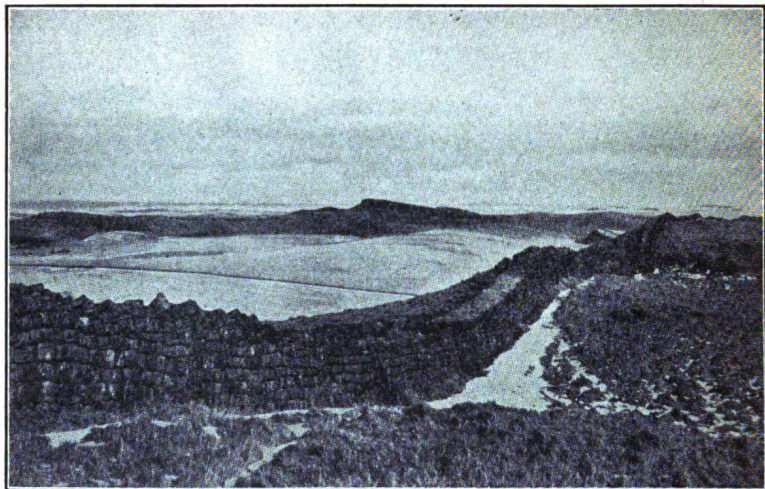
adōrō, adōrāre, <i>worship</i>	celeriter, adv., <i>quickly, fast</i>
āra, -ae, f., <i>altar</i>	*cōpia, -ae, f., <i>abundance, plenty</i> ; in pl., <i>troops, forces</i>
*arma, armōrum, n. pl., <i>arms, armor</i>	domicilium, domicili, n., <i>dwelling, home</i>
aurum, aurī, n., <i>gold</i>	*etiam, adv., <i>even, also</i>
*auxilium, auxili, n., <i>aid, help</i> ; in pl., <i>reinforcements, auxiliary troops</i>	*fāma, -ae, f., <i>fame, reputation, report</i>
*bellum, bellī, n., <i>war</i>	*frūmentum, frūmentī, n., <i>grain, corn</i>
Britannia, -ae, f., <i>Britain</i>	*intrā, prep. (with acc.), <i>within, inside</i>
Britannus, Britanna, <i>British</i> ; as a noun, <i>Britannus, Britanni, m., a Briton</i>	*oppidum, oppidī, n., <i>town</i>
*castra, castrōrum, n. pl., <i>camp</i>	*periculum, periculī, n., <i>danger, peril</i>



Britannī castra Rōmāna oppugnant

proelium, proeli, n., battle
 sic, adv., thus, so, in this way
 templum, templi, n., temple

*timeō, timēre, fear
 *vāllum, vālli, n., rampart,
 fortification



Mūrus Rōmānus

To keep out the attacking Scots and Picts, the Romans built a wall across their northern boundary in Britain. Part of this wall still stands

141. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. Pick out the Latin words with which the following are associated: *auxiliary, bellicose, copious, perilous, timid.*

II. *Intramural* games are played between teams within the same school walls, or within the same institution.

DRILL

I. *Supply the proper case endings:*

1. Perīcula bell.... semper sunt magn.....
2. Circum oppid.... est mūrus altus.
3. Castra proxim.... oppid.... nōn sunt.
4. In castr.... sunt multī virī armātī.
5. Vāllum castr.... est firm.....
6. Lēgātus et virī sunt proximī vāll....
7. Nūntius et lēgātus proeli.... (*pl.*) nōn timent.

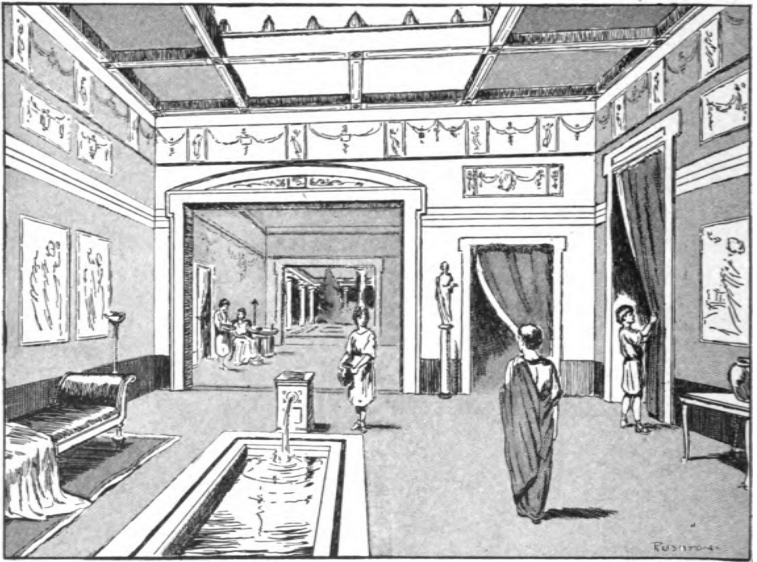
8. Nūntiī ad oppid.... (*sing.*) auxili.... celeriter vocant.
9. Intrā oppid.... (*pl.*) sunt neque fēminae neque puellae.
10. Templā Rōmān.... ārās habent.
II. *Decline:* bellum, proelium, mūrus, castra, ager, fāma.

EXERCISE XIV

Write in Latin:

1. There are beautiful temples in many towns of Italy.
2. The inhabitants of the towns place gold in the temples.
3. There are altars even in the dwellings of the inhabitants.
4. Men and women worship the gods both in the temples and in (their) dwellings.
5. Marcus, the lieutenant, is in Britain with the armed forces of the Romans. 6. He fears neither battles nor the dangers of war, because he has many auxiliary troops.
7. Roman transports bring arms and grain to the camp quickly. 8. Thus there is an abundance of grain in the camp. 9. The Britons are outside the rampart; the Romans are inside the rampart. 10. The Romans have a great reputation, haven't they?

CHAPTER XV
ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST-AND-SECOND
DECLENSION



142. DOMICILIUM URBĀNUM

Rōmae Cornēlius magnum domicilium urbānum habet. Dominus, domina, filiī, filiae, servī, servae, in domiciliō magnō habitant. Cornēlius est dominus benignus; itaque servī bonī Cornēli dīligenter labōrant. Tullia est domina benigna; itaque servae bonae Tulliam amant. Magnum domicilium est dominō et dominae grātum. Rōmae sunt multa domicilia magna.

(112)

Servī et servae in domiciliō Cornēli libenter labōrant quod dominum et dominam amant. Sextus est servus bonus. Sextus nōn est liber sed nōn est miser quod dominus est benignus. Sextus nōn est piger; itaque dominus Sextum saepe laudat. Cornēlius multōs et bonōs servōs habet. Servī bonī nōn sunt liberī sed nōn sunt miserī. Servī nōn sunt pigrī. Maria nōn est libera quod est serva. Tullia est domina benigna; itaque Maria nōn est misera. Maria nōn est pigra. Tulliae servae sunt neque miserae neque pigrae.

Servī et servae nōn sunt miserī quod dominus et domina sunt benignī. Servī et servae sunt laetī quod in domiciliō pulchrō habitant. Domini filiī et filiae quoque sunt laetī. Liberī laetī domiciliū pulchrum amant. In domiciliō peristylū pulchrum est. Altae columnae peristylū circumstant. In peristylō est hortus pulcher. Liberōs peristylū dēlectat quod est apertum. Domiciliū pulchrum Cornēliū et Tulliam et liberōs dēlectat. Domicilia pulchra dominis Rōmānīs semper sunt grāta.

Multi incolae Italiae magna domicilia urbāna habent. Laeca domiciliū pulchrum habet. Laeca est poēta clārus et multam pecūniam habet. Agricolaē Rōmānī multam pecūniam nōn habent; itaque domicilia pulchra nōn habent. Multi agricolae viās urbānās timent; itaque in casīs rūsticīs habitant.

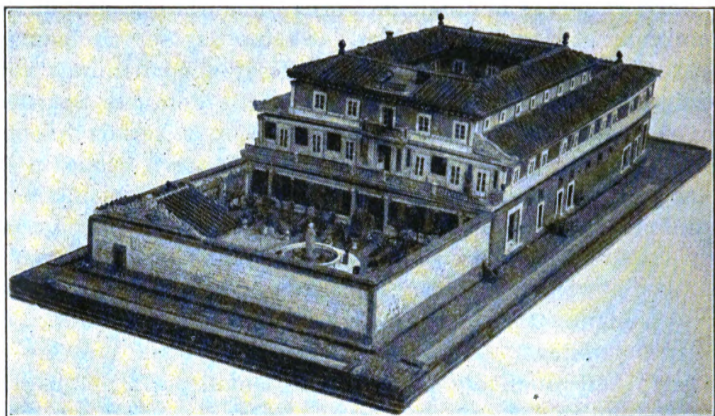
Nōtā bene

143. Liberī, meaning *children*, is the masculine plural of the adjective *liber*, *libera*, *liberum* and really means *the free ones*. It is used to designate the children of free parents. Hence it cannot be used to mean slave children.

Distinguish carefully between *liberī*, *children*, and *librī*, *books*.

144. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Quid Cornēlius Rōmae habet? 2. Quālis dominus est Cornēlius? 3. Quālēs sunt servī? 4. Quālis domina est Tullia? 5. Quālēs sunt servae Tulliae? 6. Quāle est domiciliū? 7. Quālia domicilia Rōmae sunt?



Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art

Domus Pānsae

A model of the House of Pansa, in Pompeii, so called because when it was excavated one of the inscriptions on the garden wall contained the name Pansa. Notices, signs, advertisements, electioneering propaganda, etc., were often written on the walls of buildings, which served as sign-boards to the ancient Romans

8. Quis est Sextus? 9. Quālis servus est Sextus? 10. Cūr dominus Sextum laudat? 11. Num servī sunt miserī? 12. Suntne servī pigri? 13. Cūr est Maria nōn misera? 14. Estne Maria pigra? 15. Quālēs sunt servae Tulliae?

16. Num miserī sunt servī et servae? 17. Quālēs sunt filii et filiae? 18. Quāle est peristylum? 19. Quōs peristylum dēlectat? 20. Quāle domicilium Cornēlium dēlectat? 21. Quālia domicilia dominis Rōmānis sunt grāta?

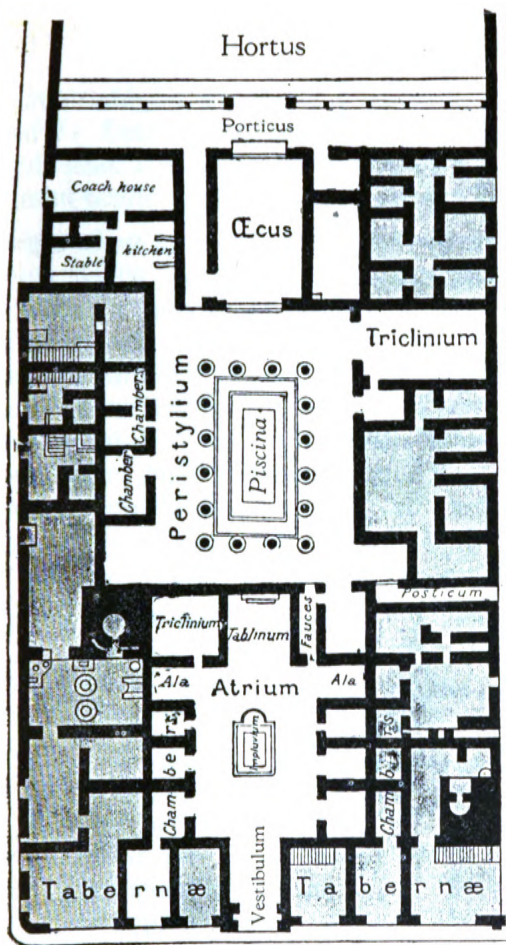
22. Quī magna domicilia habent? 23. Quālis poēta est Laeca? 24. Quī viās urbānās timent?

DISCUSSION

145. State the case, gender, and number of the nouns in the following phrases: **dominus benignus, domina benigna, servī bonī, servae bonae, magnum domicilium, magna domicilia, multī incolae.** What is the ending of the adjective

KEY

vestibulum vestibule and main entrance
tabernae, shops
atrium, main hall
impluvium, pool or rain basin (see p. 120)
 [chambers, about the *atrium*, used as sleeping rooms]
ala, wing or chapel
tablinum, office or library
triclinium, dining room
faucēs, passage
posticum, back door or exit
peristylum, or **peristylum**, an inner court open to the sky, surrounded by a portico
piscina, fish pool (see p. 118)
 [chambers, used as sleeping rooms, especially for women or servants]
triclinium, a second dining room, perhaps used in summer
oecus, hall, drawing room
porticus, portico, a roofed space, separated from the garden by a row of pillars
hortus, garden



First-floor Plan of the House of Pansa

This plan is based on a restoration which is slightly different from that shown on the opposite page. The main entrance from the street (shown at the left in the plan above) was through the *vestibulum*, or vestibule, admitting to the *atrium*, or main hall, which, however, was open to the sky; the owner and his family and servants lived in comparative privacy in the rooms facing upon the *atrium* and the *peristylum*, or peristyle, a second inner court more remote from the street. The pictures on pages 118 and 130 show scenes of family life in the peristyle. The rooms along the outside of the house, shaded in the plan, were rented out as shops (*tabernae*) or apartments. In the large garden in the rear of the house (shown in the foreground in the picture opposite), there were vegetables and fruits, and also flowers and ornamental shrubs.

in each phrase when it modifies a masculine singular noun; a feminine singular noun; a neuter singular noun? What is the ending of the adjective when it modifies a masculine plural noun; a feminine plural noun; a neuter plural noun?

146. Adjectives have three genders, for they must agree in gender, number, and case with the nouns which they modify. Certain adjectives, when modifying masculine nouns, have masculine forms like those of the second-declension masculines. When they modify feminine nouns, they have feminine forms like those of the first declension. When they modify neuter nouns, they have neuter forms like those of the second-declension neuters. Such adjectives are called adjectives of the first-and-second declension. Hereafter adjectives will be listed in the three genders; as, **magnus, magna, magnum, or magnus, -a, -um.**

147. Learn the following paradigm of an adjective of the first-and-second declension.

magnus, magna, magnum, great

Singular

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	magnus	magna	magnum
<i>Gen.</i>	magnī	magnae	magnī
<i>Dat.</i>	magnō	magnae	magnō
<i>Acc.</i>	magnum	magnam	magnum
<i>Abl.</i>	magnō	magnā	magnō

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	magnī	magnae	magna
<i>Gen.</i>	magnōrum	magnārum	magnōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs
<i>Acc.</i>	magnōs	magnās	magna
<i>Abl.</i>	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs

148. In the second paragraph, observe the endings and bases of the adjectives meaning *wretched* and *lazy*.

Some of the adjectives in *-er*, belonging to the first-and-second declension, have a base with the *e*, some have a base without the *e*. The feminine form of the nominative singular shows whether the base has the *e* or not.

149. Learn the following paradigms:

miser, misera, miserum, wretched

Singular

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>miser</i>	<i>misera</i>	<i>miserum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>miserī</i>	<i>miserae</i>	<i>miserī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>miserō</i>	<i>miserae</i>	<i>miserō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>miserum</i>	<i>miseram</i>	<i>miserum</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>miserō</i>	<i>miserā</i>	<i>miserō</i>

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>miserī</i>	<i>miserae</i>	<i>misera</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>miserōrum</i>	<i>miserārum</i>	<i>miserōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>miserīs</i>	<i>miserīs</i>	<i>miserīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>miserōs</i>	<i>miserās</i>	<i>misera</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>miserīs</i>	<i>miserīs</i>	<i>miserīs</i>

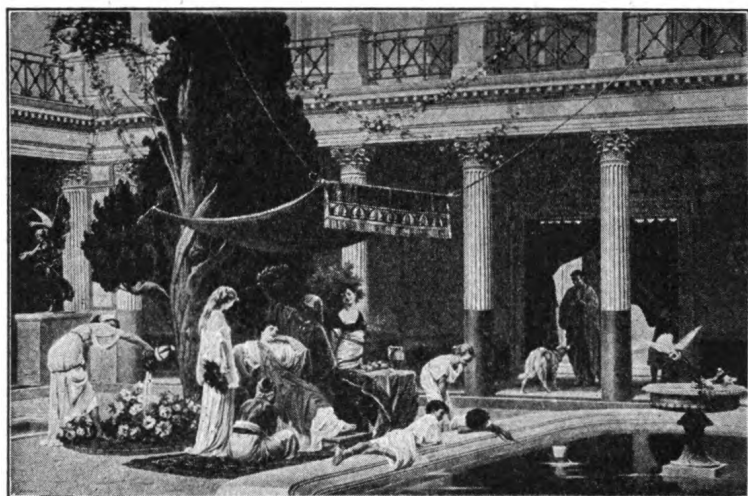
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, beautiful

Singular

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>pulcher</i>	<i>pulchra</i>	<i>pulchrum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>pulchrī</i>	<i>pulchrae</i>	<i>pulchrī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>pulchrō</i>	<i>pulchrae</i>	<i>pulchrō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>pulchrum</i>	<i>pulchram</i>	<i>pulchrum</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>pulchrō</i>	<i>pulchrā</i>	<i>pulchrō</i>

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>pulchrī</i>	<i>pulchrae</i>	<i>pulchra</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>pulchrōrum</i>	<i>pulchrārum</i>	<i>pulchrōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>pulchrīs</i>	<i>pulchrīs</i>	<i>pulchrīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>pulchrōs</i>	<i>pulchrās</i>	<i>pulchra</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>pulchrīs</i>	<i>pulchrīs</i>	<i>pulchrīs</i>



In peristylō

150. In the sentence *Servī et servae nōn sunt miserī quod dominus et domina sunt benignī*, how are the words *servī* and *servae* used? What is the gender of each word? What adjective describes *servī* and *servae*? What ending has it? What adjective describes *dominus* and *domina*? What ending has it? An adjective has a masculine ending if used to limit two nouns referring to persons of different genders.

In the fourth paragraph study the phrases *multī incolae*, *poēta clārus*, and *agricolae Rōmānī*. Why do the adjectives have masculine endings? Adjectives of the first-and-second declension have the endings of the second declension if they modify masculine or neuter nouns, and the endings of the first declension if they modify feminine nouns, whether the nouns modified have these endings or not.

RULE

151. An adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case.

VOCABULARY XV

circumstō, circumstāre, <i>sur-</i> <i>round, encircle</i>	peristylum, peristylī, n., <i>peristyle</i>
*liber, libera, liberum, <i>free</i>	rūsticus, rūstica, rūsticum, <i>rustic, rural</i>
*liberī, liberōrum, m. pl., <i>children</i>	urbānus, urbāna, urbānum, <i>pertaining to the city,</i> <i>urban</i>
*miser, misera, miserum, <i>wretched, unhappy</i>	

152.

LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Explain the meaning of the italicized words in the following sentences:

1. *Circumstantial* evidence should be received with caution.
2. Without *liberty* man is a *miserable* slave.
3. The *interurban* busses run every hour.
4. The garden contains several pieces of *rustic* furniture.

DRILL

I. *The adjectives in earlier lessons were given without showing the forms for the three genders. These forms are given in the following list. Give the meaning of each adjective.*

adultus, -a, -um	clausus, -a, -um	noster, -tra, -trum
albus, -a, -um	Cornēliānus, -a, -um	novus, -a, -um
altus, -a, -um	dēfessus, -a, -um	parvus, -a, -um
Americānus, -a, -um	extrēmus, -a, -um	paucī, -ae, -a
amicus, -a, -um	firmus, -a, -um	piger, -gra, -grum
amplus, -a, -um	grātus, -a, -um	plēnus, -a, -um
antiquus, -a, -um	irātus, -a, -um	proximus, -a, -um
apertus, -a, -um	Italicus, -a, -um	pulcher, -chra, -chrum
armātus, -a, -um	laetus, -a, -um	Rōmānus, -a, -um
benignus, -a, -um	lātus, -a, -um	ruber, -bra, -brum
bonus, -a, -um	longus, -a, -um	sevērus, -a, -um
Britannus, -a, -um	magnus, -a, -um	tēctus, -a, -um
cārus, -a, -um	meus, -a, -um	tuus, -a, -um
clārus, -a, -um	multus, -a, -um	vester, -tra, -trum



Impluvium

II. Supply the proper case endings:

via long....	poēta Rōmān....
domicilium parv....	fēmina pulchr....
ager lāt....	agricol.... liber
filius cār....	vāllum alt....
serv.... miser	naut.... īrāt.... (<i>nom. sing.</i>)

III. Decline the Latin for the following: lazy boy, long war, free man, famous poet, beautiful daughter, big book.

IV. Supply the proper case endings:

1. Laeca, poēta clār..., ad Cornēlī domicilium saepe ambulat.
2. Poēta fābulās grāt.... nārrat.
3. Līberī laet.... poētā clār.... amant.
4. In peristylō pulchr.... poēta cum līberīs bon.... saepe sedet.

5. Fābulae dē terris extrēm.... pueris Rōmān.... sunt grāt.....
6. Fābulae dē deābus puellās parv.... dēlectant.
7. Lūdī liberōrum parv.... poētae clār.... sunt grāt.....

EXERCISE XV

Write in Latin:

1. Many Romans have beautiful city dwellings. 2. Our ristyle is long and wide. 3. Beautiful columns surround e open peristyle. 4. Marcus is at home today and is ting in the peristyle with the little children. 5. He is lling the happy boys and girls stories about the Roman mp and the long war.
6. A rustic cottage is pleasing to the Roman farmer. In the cottage of the happy farmer are a few menservants d maidservants. 8. The farmer is a good master; and (his) slaves are not lazy. 9. We are not free but we are t unhappy. 10. The life of your slaves is unhappy cause you are not a kind master.



Pictūra Rōmāna

The ancient Romans were fond of decorating the walls and floors of their homes with pictures like this, a floor mosaic from an ancient house

CHAPTER XVI

REVIEW OF NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND VERBS

153. I. Case endings

Nominative

Supply the proper case endings:

1. Cornēlius est domin.... bon.... et Tullia est domin.... benign....
2. Lēgāt.... et cōpi.... armāt.... cum Britannis pugnant.
3. Rōmān.... sunt irāt....; itaque pericul.... est magn....
4. Castr.... Rōmānōrum sunt proxim.... oppidō clārō.
5. In oppidō sunt domicili.... mult.... et templum pulchr....
6. Mult.... vir.... et fēmin.... templum intrant.
7. Iānu.... templi est semper apert....
8. Oliv.... et ūv.... pulchr.... dēlectant incolās Rōmae; mult.... incol.... agricolae pecūniam dant.

Genitive

Give the Latin for the italicized words:

1. The stories *of the famous poets* delight the boys.
2. The old poet likes to tell his stories to the *lieutenants'* sons.
3. The *boys'* school is near the town.
4. The boys like the *messenger's* horse.
5. The walls *of the town* are high.
6. In the shop near the school are baskets full *of grain*.
7. Galba's shop is full *of books*.
8. In the shops of Rome are little statues *of gods and goddesses*.



Sacrarium

Nearly every house uncovered in Pompeii had its family shrine. On this one we see the two gods or *Larēs* (each one was called a *Lār*) who watched over the household, dancing about the figure which probably represented the spirit of the family or household. The Romans often associated snakes, which were frequently seen in cemeteries, with the spirits of the dead. The snake on this shrine represents, perhaps, the family ancestors

blative

Give the ablative of these words in the number indicated:

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. <i>terra</i> , singular | 6. <i>gladius</i> , plural |
| 2. <i>equus</i> , plural | 7. <i>numerus</i> , singular |
| 3. <i>aqua</i> , plural | 8. <i>fāma</i> , plural |
| 4. <i>amicus</i> , singular | 9. <i>arma</i> , plural |
| 5. <i>cōpia</i> , singular | 10. <i>pecūnia</i> , singular |

Dative

Give the dative of the following words in the number indicated:

- | | |
|----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. aqua, singular | 11. servus, plural |
| 2. silva, plural | 12. auxilium, singular |
| 3. oppidum, singular | 13. lēgātus, plural |
| 4. via, plural | 14. liberī, plural |
| 5. amicus, singular | 15. equus, singular |
| 6. vīta, singular | 16. templum, plural |
| 7. castra, plural | 17. fābula, plural |
| 8. pugna, singular | 18. proelium, plural |
| 9. patria, plural | 19. filius, plural |
| 10. vir, singular | 20. filia, plural |

Accusative

Give the accusative of the following words in the number indicated:

- | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. auxilium, singular | 7. bellum, singular |
| 2. liber, plural | 8. arma, plural |
| 3. cōpia, plural | 9. amicus, singular |
| 4. vāllum, plural | 10. mūrus, plural |
| 5. gladius, singular | 11. deus, plural |
| 6. prōvincia, plural | 12. periculum, plural |

Vocative

Give the vocative of each of the following words in the number indicated:

- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. dominus, singular | 7. Orbilius, singular |
| 2. Iūlia, singular | 8. liberī, plural |
| 3. discipulus, singular | 9. puer, singular |
| 4. magister, plural | 10. vir, singular |
| 5. filius, singular | 11. Cornēlius, singular |
| 6. lēgātus, singular | 12. Mārcus, singular |

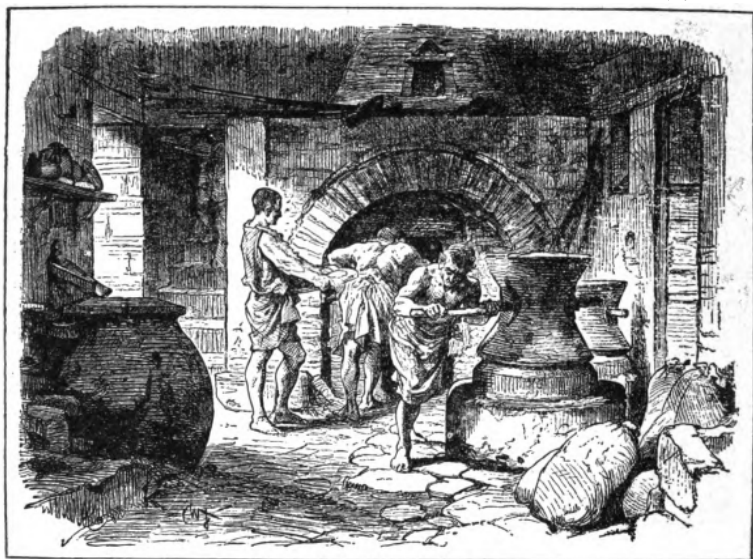


Pistrina
A bakery in Pompeii

154. II. Prepositional phrases

Write the following phrases in Latin:

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. out of the forest | 11. in the camp |
| 2. on the walls | 12. with the auxiliary troops |
| 3. from (away from) the
ramparts | 13. in the provinces |
| 4. with the messenger | 14. out of the windows |
| 5. out of the streets | 15. around the rampart |
| 6. away from the school | 16. to (toward) the forces |
| 7. in the books | 17. outside the wall |
| 8. with the woman | 18. within the camp |
| 9. away from the battle | 19. into the water |
| 10. out of the fight | 20. to (toward) the messen-
ger |



Molae

Slaves are turning the mills shown empty in the preceding picture. Sometimes donkeys were used in place of slaves. In the background the baker is putting leaves into the oven. Sacks of grain waiting to be ground are piled on the stone pavement; the wealthier families brought their own grain to the bakery to be ground and made up into bread

155. III. Relations of place expressed without a preposition

Express the following in Latin:

- | | |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| 1. away from Athens | 9. in Rome |
| 2. at home | 10. to (toward) Athens |
| 3. into Rome | 11. out of Rome |
| 4. from the country | 12. from home |
| 5. in Athens | 13. at Athens |
| 6. home (homeward) | 14. into Athens |
| 7. to (toward) Rome | 15. at Rome |
| 8. to the country | 16. in the country |

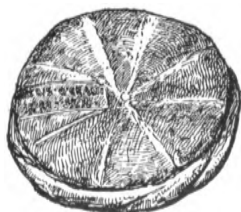
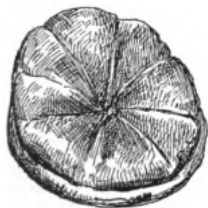
156. IV. Agreement of adjectives

a) *Decline the following:*

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| 1. via lāta | 5. discipulus piger |
| 2. puer noster | 6. poēta laetus |
| 3. bellum miserum | 7. vir liber |
| 4. nauta dēfessus | 8. proelium longum |

b) *Give the Latin for the following in the singular and plural of the case indicated:*

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. a lazy slave, accusative | 16. your town, dative |
| 2. a new temple, nominative | 17. new arms, ablative |
| 3. a harsh master, nominative | 18. my slave, dative |
| 4. a Roman camp, genitive | 19. deep water, dative |
| 5. much grain, accusative | 20. our camp, accusative |
| 6. an ancient poet, ablative | |
| 7. a free inhabitant, nominative | |
| 8. a long life, accusative | |
| 9. the tired messenger, dative | |
| 10. a city dwelling, ablative | |
| 11. a large number, ablative | |
| 12. a good reputation, genitive | |
| 13. the grown-up son, vocative | |
| 14. great danger, nominative | |
| 15. the most remote land, genitive | |



Pānis

These petrified loaves were discovered at Pompeii. Notice their shape, and the baker's stamp on one of them

157. V. Verbs

a) State the person and number of each of the following verbs, and give the three translations of each form:

- | | |
|--------------|------------------|
| 1. habet | 11. salūtant |
| 2. stātis | 12. vident |
| 3. timēmus | 13. respondētis |
| 4. habitās | 14. vocat |
| 5. respondet | 15. studēs |
| 6. sedeō | 16. parās |
| 7. rogant | 17. adōrō |
| 8. clāmāmus | 18. tenent |
| 9. nāvigat | 19. dēmōnstrātis |
| 10. tenētis | 20. vidēs |

b) Give each of the following in the present tense:

1. spectō, third person plural
2. videō, third person singular
3. respondeō, second person plural
4. laudō, second person singular
5. parō, third person singular
6. nārrō, second person singular
7. pugnō, third person plural
8. rogō, second person singular
9. doceō, third person singular
10. dō, third person plural
11. teneō, third person plural
12. vocō, first person singular
13. timeō, first person singular
14. sedeō, second person singular
15. conlocō, first person plural
16. studeō, third person plural
17. clāmō, first person plural
18. habeō, first person singular
19. nūntiō, third person singular
20. timeō, second person singular

Write

1. The
because
Roman
3. The
the troo
my frien
calls out
grain fro
(for) a g
7. Stu
far dista
are happ
money.

EXERCISE XVI

Write in Latin:

1. The inhabitants of the small town are asking (for) aid because they fear a long war. 2. A messenger hurries to the Roman camp and announces the danger to the lieutenant. 3. The lieutenant calls (his) armed men and hurries with the troops to the walls of the town. 4. "Have you arms, my friends? Have you plenty of grain in the town?" calls out the lieutenant. 5. "Our slaves are bringing the grain from the fields into the town. 6. We are preparing (for) a great battle," reply the inhabitants.

7. Sturdy transports bring many slaves to Rome from far distant provinces. 8. Many slaves are wretched; few are happy. 9. Roman masters sometimes give their slaves money. 10. A slave is often the friend of (his) master.

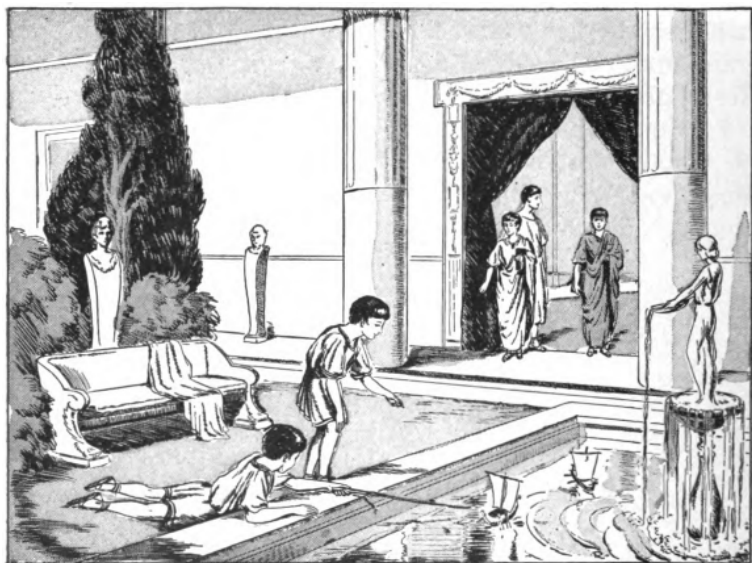


Taberna pistoris

The baker is selling loaves from the piles on his counter.

CHAPTER XVII

PRESENT TENSE OF VERBS OF THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS



158.

I. IN PERISTŪLŌ

Peristŭlum lĭberŏs Tulliae dĕlectat. Puellae statuās saepe ōrnant. Aulus et Lūcius ibi student. Puerī parvī in peristŭlŏ libenter lūdunt quod in peristŭlŏ est aqua. Puerī parvī nāviculās lignēas habent. Tullia in peristŭlŏ saepe sedet et lūdŏs lĭberŏrum spectat. Interdum Tullia cum lĭberis lūdit.

(130)

Hodiē Pūblius et Servius domī sunt sed Lūcius et Aulus in lūdō sunt. Ā domiciliō Tullia clāmat, "Ubi es, Pūbli? Quid agis?" Pūblius respondet, "Lūdō in peristylō, Tullia." Tum Tullia clāmat, "Ubi tū lūdis, Servi?" "Ego quoque in peristylō lūdō," respondet Servius. "Num in aquā lūditis?" rogat Tullia. "In aquā nōn lūdimus sed nāviculae nostrae sunt in aquā. Nāviculās ad Graeciam et ad Crētam mitimus," respondent puerī parvī.

"Quid audis, Pūbli? Quis venit?" subitō rogat Servius. "Lūcius et Aulus in domicilium veniunt," respondet Pūblius. "Venitne paedagōgus cum puerīs, Pūbli?" "Puerī cum paedagōgō veniunt." "Cūr, Lūci, ā lūdō mātūrē venīs?" clāmat Pūblius. "Veniō quod magister est aeger," respondet Lūcius. "Nōne tū et Aulus in peristylum venītis?" clāmat Servius. "In peristylum nōn venīmus. Ad Tulliam venīmus," puerī respondent.

159. Respondē Latīnē:

What do the girls do?

1. Quid puellae agunt? 2. Quid Aulus et Lūcius agunt?
3. Quid puerī parvī libenter agunt? 4. Quid Tullia interdum agit?
5. Quid Tullia clāmat? 6. Quid Pūblius respondet?
7. Quid Tullia rogat? 8. Quid puerī parvī respondent?
9. Quid Servius rogat? 10. Quid Lūcius et Aulus agunt?
11. Venitne paedagōgus? 12. Quid clāmat Pūblius?
13. Quid Lūcius respondet? 14. Quid clāmat Servius?
15. Quid puerī respondent?

160.

DISCUSSION

State the conjugation of the following verb forms: *ōrnant*, *student*, *sedet*, *spectat*. What is the stem vowel of the first conjugation? of the second conjugation?

In the first paragraph of the story, observe the verb forms *lūdunt* and *lūdit*. Do they belong to either of these

conjugations? Find the other persons of this verb in the second paragraph. What is the vowel used before most of the personal endings? What is the ending of the third person plural?

Verbs which are conjugated like *lūdō* belong to the *third conjugation*; the infinitive ending is *-ere*, and the present stem ends in *-e*; as, *lūdō*, *lūdere*, present stem *lūde-*. In the present tense, the stem vowel *-e* is changed to *-i*. Observe that in two places, however, the stem vowel does not appear: the first singular ends in *-ō*, and the vowel before *-nt* of the third plural is *u*.

161. In the third paragraph of the story find all the persons of the verb *venit*. What vowel is used before the personal endings? What seems peculiar in the third person plural? Verbs conjugated like *veniō* in the present tense belong to the *fourth conjugation*. The infinitive ending is *-ire*, and the present stem of a verb of the fourth conjugation ends in *-i*; as, *veniō*, *venire*, present stem *veni-*. Observe that this *i* is shortened in the forms *veniō*, *venit*, *veniunt*, in accordance with the general rule that a vowel before another vowel is short, and in verb forms a vowel is short before final *-m*, *-t*, or *-nt*.

162. Learn the following paradigms:

Present tense

<i>Third Conjugation</i>		<i>Fourth Conjugation</i>	
<i>Singular</i>		<i>Singular</i>	
<i>lūdō</i>	<i>mittō</i>	<i>veniō</i>	<i>audiō</i>
<i>lūdis</i>	<i>mittis</i>	<i>venis</i>	<i>audis</i>
<i>lūdit</i>	<i>mittit</i>	<i>venit</i>	<i>audit</i>
<i>Plural</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
<i>lūdimus</i>	<i>mittimus</i>	<i>venīmus</i>	<i>audīmus</i>
<i>lūditis</i>	<i>mittitis</i>	<i>venītis</i>	<i>audītis</i>
<i>lūdunt</i>	<i>mittunt</i>	<i>veniunt</i>	<i>audiunt</i>

163. You have now studied verbs belonging to all four conjugations. The forms studied belong for the most part to what is called the *indicative mood*; that is, they are the forms used in making ordinary statements and in asking direct questions, and also in many kinds of subordinate clauses. There are other moods (the *imperative* and the *subjunctive*); but in the beginning the indicative is the most important.

The imperative is the mood which is used to express commands. The present imperative singular is the same as the present stem of the verb (see § 108): *portā, vidē, mitte, audī*; the plural is formed by adding *-te* to the singular, except that in the third conjugation the stem vowel *-e-* changes to *-i-*: *portāte, vidēte, mittite, audite*.

The subjunctive has special uses; it will be studied in Lessons XLVI-XLIX.

The verb forms which we have studied have all been in the active voice. Passive forms will be studied in Lesson XVIII.



Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art

Puer Rōmānus

In listing verbs, the vocabularies will give the form of the first person present indicative active, and the infinitive, the latter indicating to which conjugation the verb belongs; as, **portō, portāre**; **videō, vidēre**; **lūdō, lūdere**; **veniō, venīre**.

VOCABULARY XVII (I)

* aeger, aegra, aegrum , sick, ill	lūdō, lūdere , play, frolic
* agō, agere , do, drive	mātūrē , adv., early
* audiō, audire , hear, listen to	* mittō, mittere , send
* ibi , adv., there, in that place	* subitō , adv., suddenly, un- expectedly
ligneus, -a, -um , wooden	* veniō, venīre , come

DRILL

I. Give the first two principal parts and the stem vowel of the Latin verbs with the following meanings:

shout	teach	do
come	ask	send
reply	play	hear

II. Give the rule for forming the present stem of each conjugation.

III. Conjugate the present tense of each verb mentioned in I above.

IV. Give the Latin for the following English phrases; notice that each of these phrases can be expressed by one Latin word:

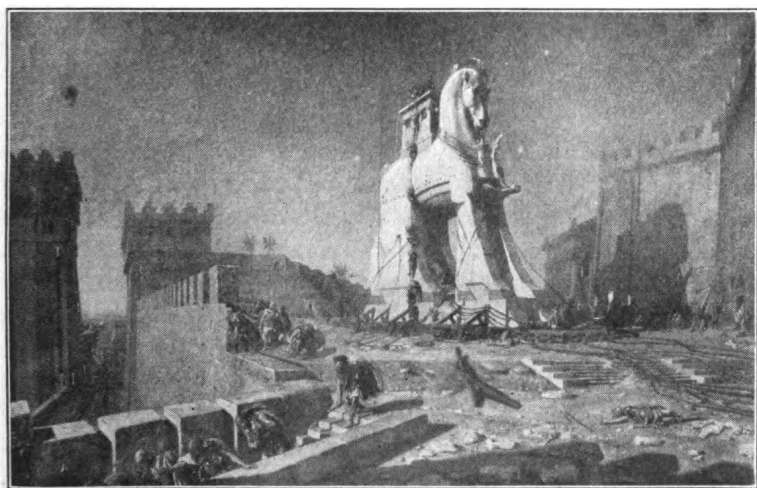
They show, they do, they see, they play, they come; I call, I hear, I do, I teach; you (*sing.*) are standing, you (*sing.*) have, you (*sing.*) are coming, you (*sing.*) do play; we prepare, we send, we are studying, we hear; he gives, he sits, he is coming, he is sending, he does; you (*pl.*) are watching, you (*pl.*) hear, you (*pl.*) are sending, you (*pl.*) do see.

EXERCISE XVII (I)

Write in Latin:

1. We play in the peristyle. 2. Where are you sending your boats, little boys? 3. They are playing in the water. 4. The boys suddenly come into the peristyle. 5. Aren't you (*pl.*) coming home early from school? 6. The teacher isn't sick, is he? 7. What are you (*sing.*) doing there? 8. Servius and Publius hear the boys and come out of the peristyle

READING LESSON



Courtesy of The Corcoran Gallery of Art, Washington, D. C.

164. II. DĒ EQUŌ LIGNEŌ

Multi domini Rōmānī servōs Graecōs habent. Servi Graeci saepe sunt paedagōgī puerōrum Rōmānōrum. Domini paedagōgōs cum filiis ad lūdum mittunt. Paedagōgus Lūci et Aulī est Graecus. Pueris fābulās dē Graeciā saepe nārrat. Fābula dē equō ligneō Lūcium et Aulum dēlectat.



Occāsus Troiae

This picture was made from a description by an ancient Greek of a lost painting done by a famous Greek artist. Different scenes are pictured from the taking of Troy. In the upper right section are pictured some of the Greek heroes—Menelaus, Agamemnon, Ajax, Diomedes, Odysseus

“Graecī sunt irātī quod Troiānī pulchram fēminam Graecam Troiae tenent. Itaque multī armātī ōrās Graeciae relinquunt et Troiam nāvigant. Interim Troiānī arma et frūmentum cōgunt et mūrōs Troiae diligenter mūniunt. Postea Graecī mūrōs oppugnant et longum bellum cum Troiānīs gerunt. Sunt multa proelia in ōrīs Troiae sed dei neque Graecīs neque Troiānīs victōriam dant.

“Tandem Graecī magnum equum ligneum aedificant. Noctū multī armātī in equum ascendunt. Tum reliquī Graecī ad insulam parvam nāvigant sed equum extrā mūrōs Troiae relinquunt. Māne Troiānī ā Troiae mūrīs equum magnum vident. Portās celeriter aperiunt et ad equum properant. Multī clāmant, ‘Est certē dōnum deōrum! Troiānī equum nōn timent sed dēsiderant; itaque equum intrā mūrōs trahunt. Noctū armātī ex equō veniunt. Troiānī Graecōs nōn impediunt quod armātōs nōn audiunt. Ab insulā parvā ad Troiae portās reliquī Graecī properant. Tum armātī ad portās veniunt et sociōs intrā mūrōs dūcunt. Sic Graecī Troiānōs vincunt et Troiam incendunt.”



Occāsus Troiae

This is a continuation of the picture shown on the opposite page. On the upper left the head of the wooden horse is seen above the walls. Turning Trojan women sit near. Helen may be seen seated on the right while the Greeks bring spoils from the city to their waiting ships.

VOCABULARY XVII (II)

aedificō, aedificāre, build
aperiō, aperire, open
ascendō, ascendere, climb, ascend
congō, cōgere, collect; compel, force
donum, -ī, n., gift, offering
ducō, dūcere, lead, guide
gerō, gerere, carry on; wear; bellum gerere, wage war
Graecus, -a, -um, Greek; as a noun, Graecus, -ī, m., a Greek
impediō, impedire, hinder, impede
incendō, incendere, burn, set fire to
interim, adv., meanwhile, in the meantime

**mūniō, mūnīre, fortify, defend*
**oppugnō, oppugnāre, assault, besiege, storm*
**porta, -ae, f., gate*
**relinquō, relinquere, leave, abandon*
**reliquus, -a, -um, remaining, rest of*
**socius, soci, m., companion, comrade, ally*
**trahō, trahere, drag, draw*
Troia, -ae, f., Troy
Troiānus, -a, -um, Trojan; as a noun, Troiānus, -ī, m., a Trojan
victōria, -ae, f., victory
**vincō, vincere, conquer, subdue, overcome*

165. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Explain the italicized words in the following quotations:

1. "Inflexible in faith, *invincible* in arms."
2. "*Society* is no comfort to one not *sociable*."
3. "Between the acting of a dreadful thing
And the first motion, all the *interim* is
Like a phantasma, or a hideous dream."
4. "The *cogent* force of Nature."
5. "'Must I *relinquish* it all,' he cried with wild lamentation."

DRILL

I. Give the present tense of each verb in the story *Dē Equō Ligneō*.

II. Give in Latin the first two principal parts of the following verbs, and state to which conjugation each belongs:

give	hear	see	leave	fear	call
drag	fortify	wage	burn	hinder	conquer
do	hold	open	assault	collect	lead
come	send	prepare	play	climb	hasten

EXERCISE XVII (II)

Write in Latin:

1. We are Trojans; we fortify the walls of Troy because the Greeks are coming.
2. Meanwhile the Greeks are sending many armed men to the shores of Troy.
3. We also collect armed men; afterwards we wage a long war with the Greeks.
4. The Greeks build a wooden horse and leave the horse outside the gates.
5. Many armed Greeks climb into the horse.
6. We do not hear the Greeks; and so we open the walls and drag the gift of the Greeks within the gates.
7. The Greeks come out of the horse and hasten to the gates.
8. The Greeks open the gates and lead their allies into Troy.
9. The Greeks assault Troy and finally have the victory.
10. Thus the Greeks conquer the Trojans and burn Troy.

CHAPTER XVIII

PRESENT PASSIVE, FOUR CONJUGATIONS ABLATIVE OF PERSONAL AGENT ABLATIVE OF MEANS



166.

FĀBULA ORBILĪ I

Orbilius magister discipulōs laudat sī dīligenter student. Interdum ā *magistrō* fābulae nārrantur. Hodiē Orbilius rogat, “Dēsiderātisne fābulam, puerī?” “Certē, certē, fābulam longam, fābulam longam dēsiderāmus,” puerī clāmant. Tum fābula dē Helenā, fēminā pulchrā Graecā, ab Orbiliō nārrātur.

(139)

"In Graeciā Helena habitat. Fēmina pulchra ā multis viris amātur. Troiānus clārus ad Graeciam nāvigat. Fēmina pulchra ā Troiānō vidētur et amātur. Tandem Troiānus fēminam Troiam dūcit. Graeci sunt irāti; itaque bellum parātur. Arma et frūmentum et armāti *onerāriis* ad ōrās Troiānās mittuntur. In ōris Troiānis Graeci castra pōnunt. Troia mūrō altō et portis firmis mūnītur. Postea castra Graecōrum fossā et vallō altō mūniuntur. Graeci Troiānōs nōn timent sed ā Troiānis timentur. Diū bellum geritur. Armāti gladiis, hastis, sagittis pugnant. Et Graeci et Troiāni ā viris clāris dūcuntur sed dei victōriam nōn dant."

167. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Ā quō fābulae narrantur? 2. Ā quō fābula dē fēminā pulchrā nārrātur? 3. Ā quō pulchra fēmina vidētur et amātur? 4. Ā quō bellum parātur? 5. Quōmodo arma et frūmentum et armāti ad ōrās Troiānās mittuntur? 6. Quōmodo Troia mūnītur? 7. Ā quō Graeci timentur? 8. Quōmodo armāti pugnant?

Nōtā bene

Ā quō, *by whom?* quōmodo, *how?* *by means of what?*

DISCUSSION

168. In the sentence *Fābulae ā magistrō narrantur*, what is the subject of the verb? Does the subject act? When the subject of a verb does not act but is acted upon, the verb is said to be in the passive voice. What is the person and number of the verb? What is the ending? In the story *Fābula Orbili I*, list all the verbs in the third person plural, passive voice. To what conjugation does each verb belong? What is the ending of each verb? The personal ending of the third person plural of the passive voice is *-ntur*. In the same story find the passive form of a singular verb in each conjugation. What is the ending? The personal ending of the third person singular of the passive voice is *-tur*.

whom
actor
The al
a verb
sive v
press t
doer
An a
used is
ablative
agent.
the qu
whom?
phrases
press ag
story.

tence 1
altō et p
mūnitu
words
means
with wh
being fo
what ca
words
portis?
osition
with eit
thing by
plished.
It answe
In the st

169. In the sentence *Fābulae ā magistrō nārrantur*, by whom are the stories told? What phrase expresses the actor or the agent? What preposition is used? What case? The ablative case with the preposition *ā* (ab) is used with a verb in the passive voice to express the agent or doer of an act. An ablative so used is called an *ablative of personal agent*. It answers the question *by whom?* Find other phrases that express agency in the story.

170. In the sentence *Troia mūrō altō et portis firmis mūnītur*, which words tell by means of what or with what Troy is being fortified? In what case are the words *mūrō* and *portis*? Is a preposition used?

The ablative without a preposition is used with either a passive verb or an active verb to express the thing by means of which the action of the verb is accomplished. An ablative so used is called an *ablative of means*. It answers the question *by means of what?* or *with what?* In the story find other nouns that express means.



Helena et Priamus

From the walls of Troy, Helen is pointing out the Greek leaders to Priam, the Trojan king

171. Observe the following differences between the ablative of agent and the ablative of means:

The Ablative of Agent:

- (1) denotes persons or living objects;
- (2) is used with the preposition *ā* (*ab*);
- (3) is used with passive verbs only;
- (4) is translated *by* (by the agency of)

The Ablative of Means:

- (1) refers to things;
- (2) is used without a preposition;
- (3) is used with either active or passive verbs;
- (4) is translated *with*, *by*, or *by means of*.

RULES

172. *Ablative of agent.* The ablative with the preposition *ā* (*ab*) is used with a passive verb to express personal agent.

173. *Ablative of means.* The ablative without a preposition is used to show the instrument or the means by which an act is performed.

174.

FĀBULA ORBILĪ II

"Achillēs, fīlius Pēleī, est clārus Graecus. Sī cōpiās Graecās dūcit, Graecīs victōria est. Sed Achillēs irātus est quod captīva pulchra ab eō rapta est. Itaque in tabernāculō sedet neque pugnat. Patrōclus amīcus cum sociīs multis ad tabernāculum venit.

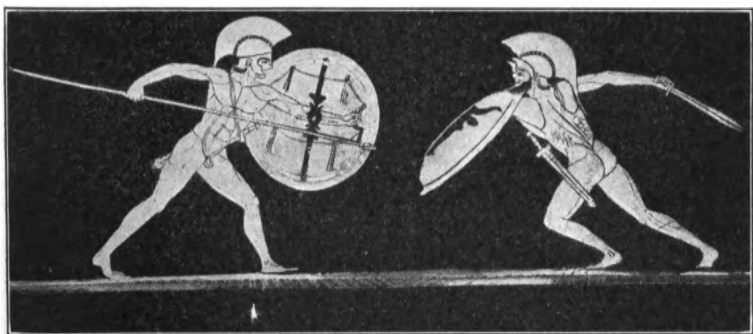
"'Cūr prō patriā nōn pugnās, amīce?' Patrōclus rogat. 'Tū ā Troiānīs maximē timēris. Nōs impedimur quod tū nōn pugnās.'

"'Ego ā Troiānīs timeor. Quod cōpiās nōn dūcō, vōs impediminī. Irātus, tamen, prō patriā nōn pugnō,' Achillēs respondet.

"'Nōs in castris ā lēgātis tenēmur quod tū in tabernāculō sedēs. Interdum nōs ē castris ā cōpiīs Troiānīs pellimur.

Saepe hastis et sagittis Troiānōrum vulnerāmur. Sī ā filiō Pēlei dūcimur, nōn vincimur. Tuum auxilium victōriam semper portat. Tū ad tabernāculum nōn pelleris; tū in tabernāculō nōn tenēris. Tū nōn vulnerāris neque impediris neque vinceris. Cūr tū nōn pugnās?' iterum Patrōclus rogat.

“Vōs, socii mei, in castris saepe tenēmini. Ē castris saepe pellimini. Tēlis Troiānōrum vulnerāmini. Vincitis et vincimini. Ad tabernāculum ego nōn pellor. Ego nōn vulneror neque impediōr neque vincor. Irātus, tamen, nōn



Achillēs cum Troiānō pugnat

This painting on an old Greek vase is full of action. Notice how Achilles (the figure on the left) holds his shield. Memnon (the warrior on the right) has the cheek piece of his helmet raised

pugnō,' Achillēs clāmat. Tum et gladium et arma in terram mittit.

“Patrōclus gladium et arma amīcī celeriter induit. Tum Graecōs ad mūrōs Troiae dūcit. Ibi Patrōclus necātur.”

Nōtā bene

Achillēs, *Achilles*, a famous Greek hero.

Graecīs victōria est, *the Greeks are victorious*.

Ab eō rapta est, *has been taken from him*.

DISCUSSION

175. In the Fābula Orbilī II, list all the verbs in the passive voice whose subjects are in the first and second persons,



Militēs Graeci

singular and plural. What are the endings of the verbs in the first person singular? first plural? second singular? second plural? To what part of the verb are these endings added? Are they used with verbs of all conjugations?

In the passive voice the endings *-r* and *-mur* are the personal endings of the first person singular and plural; the endings *-ris* and *-mini* are the personal endings of the second person singular and plural. These endings are added to the stem of the verb just as the active endings are. Note, however, that the first person singular ends in *-or*. Note also that in the third conjugation, second person singular, the stem vowel, short *e*, is retained in the passive instead of being changed to *i* as in the active; as, *mittis*, active; *mitteris*, passive.

Personal endings, passive voice

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	<i>-r</i>	<i>-mur</i>
<i>2d person</i>	<i>-ris</i>	<i>-mini</i>
<i>3d person</i>	<i>-tur</i>	<i>-ntur</i>

176. The present tense, passive voice, indicative mood, is conjugated as follows. The translations are in the form.



Mīlitēs Graeci

I am being carried, or I am carried; you are being carried, or you are carried; etc.

Present indicative passive

<i>First Conjugation</i>	<i>Second Conjugation</i>	<i>Third Conjugation</i>	<i>Fourth Conjugation</i>
<i>Singular</i>			
portor	videor	mittor	audior
portāris	vidēris	mitteris	audīris
portātur	vidētur	mittitur	audītur
<i>Plural</i>			
portāmur	vidēmur	mittimur	audīmur
portāmini	vidēmini	mittimini	audīmini
portantur	videntur	mittuntur	audiuntur

Note that the short *e* of the stem in the third conjugation appears in only the second person singular.

VOCABULARY XVIII

*ā, ab, prep. (with abl.), <i>by</i>	hasta, -ae, f., <i>spear</i>
*apud, prep. (with acc.), <i>among</i>	Helena, -ae, f., <i>Helen, wife of Menelaus</i>
*captivus, -a, -um, <i>captive</i>	induo, induere, <i>put on</i>
*diū, <i>for a long time</i>	*necō, necāre, <i>kill</i>
*fossa, -ae, f., <i>ditch, trench</i>	

*pellō, pellere, <i>drive, drive out</i>	tabernāculum, -ī, n., <i>tent</i>
*pōnō, pōnere, <i>put, place</i>	*tamen, <i>nevertheless, still</i>
*prō, prep. (with abl.), <i>in be- half of, for</i>	*tēlum, -ī, n., <i>weapon</i>
*sagitta, -ae, f., <i>arrow</i>	vulnerō, vulnerāre, <i>wound, injure</i>

Idiom

castra pōnere, *to pitch camp*

177. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. Pick out the Latin words in the vocabulary with which the following are associated: *beneficial, expel, postpone, tabernacle.*

II. Achilles, the Greek hero of the Trojan war, was immersed when a child in the river Styx by his mother Thetis. He was thus made *invulnerable* in every part of his body except the heel by which she held him.

DRILL

I. Give the English translation of the following verb forms:

laudor	docēris	vincitur	impedimur
salūtāmini	timentur	dūcor	parāris
aperitur	vidēmur	pellimini	aperiuntur

II. Express the following in Latin:

I am being wounded	I am being driven
you (<i>sing.</i>) are feared	you (<i>sing.</i>) are hindered
he is led	he is asked
we are heard	we are seen
you (<i>pl.</i>) are killed	you (<i>pl.</i>) are left
they are held	they are heard

III. Change the above verbs to the corresponding active forms.

IV. Conjugate the present active and passive of the following verbs, giving the English meaning of each form:

- | | | | |
|---------|----------|---------|------------|
| 1. necō | 2. videō | 3. dūcō | 4. impediō |
|---------|----------|---------|------------|

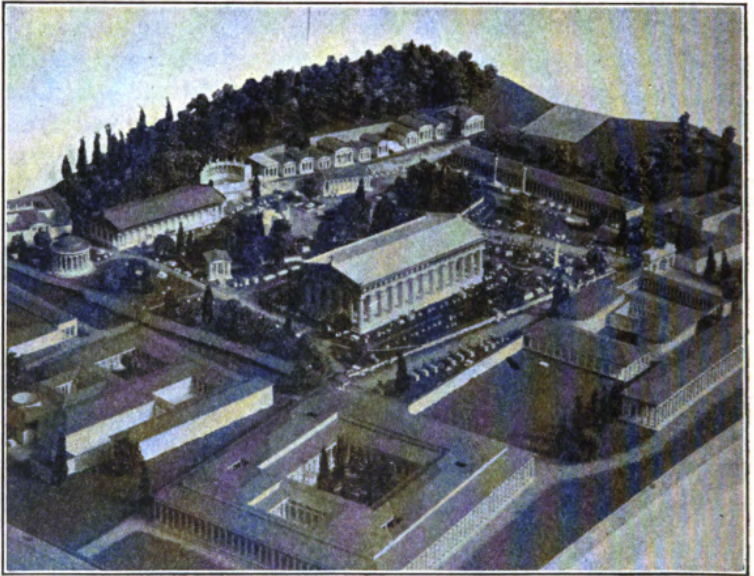
EXERCISE XVIII

Write in Latin:

1. War is waged for a long time by the Trojans. 2. There are many famous men among the Trojans and they are fighting for (their) country. 3. Troy is being fortified with high walls. 4. The camp of the Greeks is being pitched on the shore. 5. A rampart and ditch are being built around the camp by the Greeks. 6. The Greeks are often hindered by the arrows and spears of the Trojans. 7. Achilles is not wounded by the arrows, and he is not driven to his tent by the Trojans; nevertheless he is not fighting. 8. Does Patroclus put on (his) friend's armor? 9. Are you being overcome by the weapons of the Trojans, Patroclus? 10. Patroclus is killed in battle; he is not a captive of the Trojans.

CHAPTER XIX

IMPERFECT TENSE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE, OF FOUR CONJUGATIONS AND THE VERB *SUM*



Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art

Olympia antiqua

178. DĒ TEMPLĪS GRAECĪS

Liberī cum paedagōgō in peristylō sedent. Paedagōgus
liberis fabulam dē templis Graecis nārrat quod in Graeciā
lived, or used to live
habitābat.

“Graeci multōs deōs et deās habēbant. In pulchris tem-
were adorned
plis deōs et deās adōrābant. Tempa *ōrnābantur* columnis

(148)

altis et āris. Magnae statuae deōrum et deārum in templis vidēbantur. Graeci multa dōna ad templa mittēbant. Frumentum ab agricolis et aurum ā nautis mittēbātur. Cotidiē magnae iānuae templōrum aperiēbantur; nam Graeci ad templa saepe veniēbant.

“Olympia oppidum pulchrum in Graeciā erat. Olympiae erant multa templa. Hic erat templum deī maximī. In soliō altō deus sedēbat. Deus ā viris et fēminis adōrābātur et timēbātur. Deus verba virōrum et fēminārum audiēbat et cōsilia regēbat. Statua numquam relinquiēbātur sed semper custōdiēbātur.”

179. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Habēbantne Graeci multōs deōs et deās? 2. Ubi Graeci deōs et deās adōrābant? 3. Quōmodo templa ōrnābantur? 4. Nōne statuae deōrum et deārum in templis vidēbantur? 5. Quid Graeci agēbant?



Juppiter optimus maximus

6. Ubi erat Olympia? 7. Ubi erant multa templa? 8. Ubi erat deus? 9. Ā quibus deus timēbātur? 10. Nōne deus verba virōrum et fēminārum audiēbat?

180.

DISCUSSION

State the person, number, and voice of each verb in the second paragraph of the story *Dē Templis Graecis*, and tell in what conjugation it is. What syllable has each verb between the stem and the personal ending? The suffix



Pompa

-bā- is used to form the stem of the imperfect tense. This tense expresses an action in the past which is habitual or progressive; as, **habēbant**, *they used to have* or *they were having*, often translated simply *they had*.

181. Find an example of each conjugation in the imperfect tense in this paragraph. Each conjugation uses its present stem, the sign **-bā-**, and the proper personal ending, active or passive voice, to form this tense. In the third conjugation, what is the quantity of the stem vowel before the sign **-bā-**? In the fourth conjugation, what is the quantity of the stem vowel? In the fourth conjugation, what letter is added before the sign **-bā-**?

182. In the last paragraph of the story, to what time do the verbs **erat** and **erant** refer? Since the forms **erat** and **erant** are parts of the irregular verb **sum**, *I am*, the formation of the imperfect tense is irregular and does not follow the rules given in § 181.

183. Memorize the following paradigms. The translations are in the form *I was carrying*, *I used to carry*, or often simply *I carried*, etc., for the active, and *I was being carried*, *I used to be carried*, or often simply *I was carried*, etc., for

the passive. In a question, the proper translation form would be *was I carrying?* etc.

**Imperfect indicative
Active**

<i>First Conjugation</i>	<i>Second Conjugation</i>	<i>Third Conjugation</i>	<i>Fourth Conjugation</i>
portābam	vidēbam	mittēbam	audiēbam
portābās	vidēbās	mittēbās	audiēbās
portābat	vidēbat	mittēbat	audiēbat
portābāmus	vidēbāmus	mittēbāmus	audiēbāmus
portābātis	vidēbātis	mittēbātis	audiēbātis
portābant	vidēbant	mittēbant	audiēbant

Passive

portābar	vidēbar	mittēbar	audiēbar
portābāris	vidēbāris	mittēbāris	audiēbāris
portābātur	vidēbātur	mittēbātur	audiēbātur
portābāmur	vidēbāmur	mittēbāmur	audiēbāmur
portābāminī	vidēbāminī	mittēbāminī	audiēbāminī
portābantur	vidēbantur	mittēbantur	audiēbantur

Imperfect indicative of *sum*

Singular

eram, *I was, I used to be, etc.*

erās

erat

Plural

erāmus

erātis

erant

READING LESSON

184.

TULLIA ET LĪBERĪ

“Quid herī agēbātis, līberī?” rogat Tullia.

“In peristylō cum paedagōgō sedēbāmus,” respondent līberī. “Paedagōgus fābulam vēram dē templis Graecis nārrābat.”

“Amābāsne fābulam, parve Servi?” rogat Tullia.



Rōmānī dīs sacrificant

Sacrifices of pigs, sheep, and oxen were always offered after a triumph, or after a review of the army

“Ego fābulam amābam, Tullia,” respondet Servius.
 “Habitābantne deī et deae in templīs?”

“Nōn in templīs sed in Olympō deī et deae habitābant, Servi.”

“Quid deī et deae in Olympō agēbant, Tullia?”

“Deī et deae incolās terrārum cūrābant et cōnsilia regēbant. Zeus maximus deus erat; reliquōs deōs et deās dē cōnsiliis monēbat. Tamen discordia inter incolās Olympī saepe veniēbat. Discordia, vērō, erat causa bellī Troiānī.”

“Nōnne lūdī magister herī fābulam dē bellō Troiānō nārrābat, Lūcī?”

“Certē! Herī fābulās dē bellō Troiānō et dē Patrōclō nārrābat. Erant fābulae bonae.”

Nōtā bene

Zeus, *Zeus*, Greek name for the chief of the gods. The corresponding Roman god was named Iuppiter, *Jupiter*.

VOCABULARY XIX

* <i>causa</i> , -ae, f., <i>cause, reason</i>	* <i>moneō, monēre</i> , <i>advise, warn</i>
* <i>cōnsilium, cōsili</i> , n., <i>plan, purpose</i>	* <i>nam</i> , conj., <i>for</i>
<i>custodiō, custodire</i> , <i>guard, watch</i>	* <i>numquam</i> , adv., <i>never</i>
<i>discordia</i> , -ae, f., <i>discord, quarrel</i>	<i>Olympia</i> , -ae, f., <i>Olympia, a town in Greece</i>
<i>heri</i> , adv., <i>yesterday</i>	<i>Olympus</i> , -i, m., <i>Mt. Olympus, the home of the gods</i>
<i>hic</i> , adv., <i>here, in this place</i>	* <i>regō, regere</i> , <i>guide, direct, control, rule</i>
* <i>inter</i> , prep. (with acc.), <i>between, among</i>	<i>solium, soli</i> , n., <i>throne</i>
<i>maximus</i> , -a, -um, <i>greatest, very great</i>	<i>verbum</i> , -i, n., <i>word</i>
	<i>vērō</i> , adv., <i>truly, indeed</i>
	* <i>vērū</i> , -a, -um, <i>true</i>

185. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

1. What does the *custodian* of the high school do?
2. What are *interscholastic* contests?
3. What do you do when you *verify* a problem?
4. In some states the minimum wage is set by law. What is a *maximum* wage?

DRILL

I. Give the English for the following verb forms:

<i>lūdēbant</i>	<i>vulnerābantur</i>	<i>reguntur</i>	<i>mittēbār</i>
<i>monent</i>	<i>erās</i>	<i>erant</i>	<i>dabāmus</i>
<i>relinquēbātis</i>	<i>custodiēbātur</i>	<i>dūcēbāmini</i>	<i>induimus</i>
<i>oppugnābant</i>	<i>vidēbāris</i>	<i>aperiēbam</i>	<i>cōgēbat</i>

II. Give the Latin for the following verb forms:

I was; I was opening; I was being heard; he is leading; you (*sing.*) are leaving; you (*pl.*) used to be guarded; it was being burned; you (*sing.*) were directing; we are conquering; they were fearing; they used to be dragged; you (*pl.*) were; they were doing; I am.

EXERCISE XIX

Write in Latin:

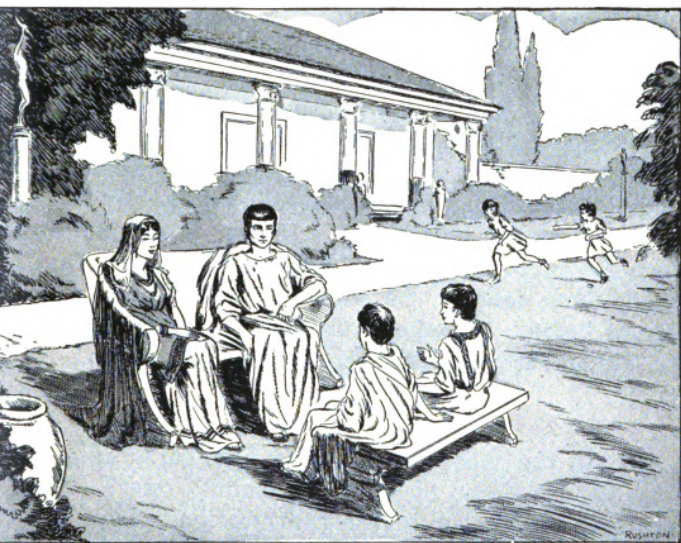
1. Yesterday the children were listening to the words of the attendant. 2. At Olympia the ancient temples were truly beautiful. 3. The temples of the gods and goddesses were carefully guarded, for beautiful gifts were often placed on the altars. 4. Here the greatest of the gods (the greatest god) used to have a temple. 6. His throne was often decorated with wreaths, and was never left (unguarded). 6. The gods used to live on Olympus and direct the plans of men and women. 7. The Greeks and Trojans were advised by the gods. 8. Discord among the goddesses was the cause of the Trojan war.

**Mars**

The Romans regarded Mars, the war god, as their special deity, who favored and protected them

CHAPTER XX

UTURE TENSE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE, OF THE
FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS AND SUM



86.

LŪCIUS ET AULUS

Hodiē Lūcius et Aulus in hortō cum Cornēliō et Tulliā
sunt. Parvī puerī ibi lūdunt.

“Crās, mei filiī, Rōmam *ambulābō*,” inquit Cornēlius.
“Nōne tū quoque, Lūcī, *ambulābis*?” “Ego libenter
ambulābō, sī Aulus *ambulābit*,” respondet Lūcius. “Bene!
E! Crās nōs Rōmam *ambulābimus*!” clāmat Aulus.
“Quō crās *ambulābitis*?” rogat Tullia. “Puerī Rōmam
ambulābunt,” respondet Cornēlius.

(155)

"Quid, Aule, Rōmae vidēbis?" rogat Tullia. "Forum Rōmānum vidēbō," respondet Aulus. "Fortasse lūdōs in Cīrcō Maximō vidēbimus," clāmat Lūcius. "Certē," inquit Cornēlius, "puerī lūdōs Rōmānōs vidēbunt, Tullia, quod nunc Rōmae lūdī celebrantur." "Lūdōs amō," clāmat Lūcius. "Adultus ego aurīga erō!" "Tū aurīga eris et ego poēta erō; fābulās dē aurīgīs nārrābō," clāmat Aulus.

"Crāsne erit Mārcus Rōmae?" rogat Tullia. "Rōmae erunt multī virī et fēminae quod lūdī celebrantur. Fortasse Mārcus ibi erit," respondet Cornēlius. "Fortasse Mārcum vidēbimus," clāmant puerī et in domicilium properant.

"Nōne nōs quoque Rōmam ambulābimus?" rogant Pūblius et Servius. "Vōs, parvī puerī, domī manēbitis; ā Tulliā docēbiminī," respondet Cornēlius. "Tū, Tullia, ā parvīs puerīs servāberis. Dōna Rōmā portābuntur. Fortasse, meī filiī parvī, ā Tulliā laudābiminī. Tum bonis puerīs dōna dabō." "Ā Pūbliō et Serviō bene servābor," clāmat Tullia. "Bonī erimus," clāmant Pūblius et Servius. "Ā Tulliā, vērō, laudābimur. Portā multa dōna."

DISCUSSION

187. In the conversation in the first paragraph, to what time do the forms of the verb *ambulō* refer? Read the forms as they occur in the conversation. How are these forms made? How do they differ from the forms of the imperfect tense? These are future forms of the verb *ambulō*. The future indicative active of *ambulō* is formed by adding the tense sign of the future -bi- to the present stem *ambulā-*, and then adding the personal endings. Note that the tense sign is combined with the ending to form -bō in the first person singular, and that the tense sign is -bu- in the third person plural; as, *ambulābō, ambulābunt*.

188. In the second paragraph are found several forms of the future tense of the verb *videō*. To what conjugation



Both

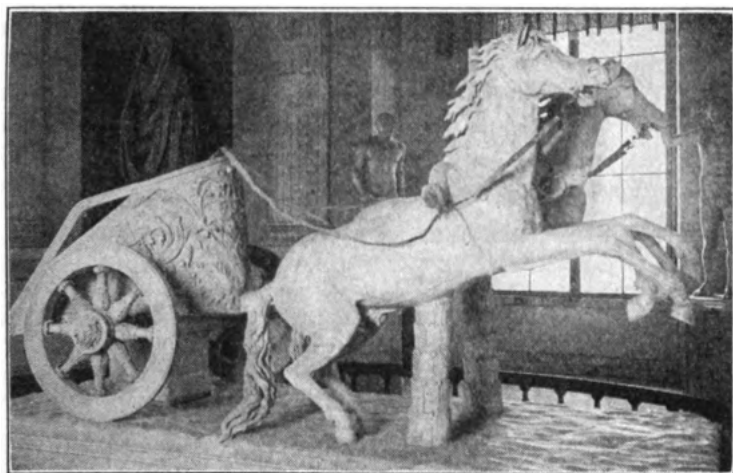
does this
tense of
of ambul

189. S

To form
and second
ent stem
carefully
third pers

190. In
forms of
use the
imperfect

191. In
future ten
of the fut



Bigae

Both two-horse and four-horse chariots were used in the races

does this verb belong? What is the tense sign? The future tense of *videō* is formed in the same way as the future tense of *ambulō*.

189. Summary

To form the future active indicative of verbs of the first and second conjugations, add the tense sign *-bi-* to the present stem, and then add the personal endings. Notice carefully the variation in the first person singular and the third person plural.

190. In the third and fourth paragraphs are found several forms of the future tense of the verb *sum*. Do these forms use the tense sign *-bi-*? How do they differ from the imperfect tense of the same verb?

191. In the fifth paragraph, several passive forms of the future tense are given. They are made like the active forms of the future tense, except that the passive personal endings

are used instead of the active ones. These endings are added to the future tense sign just as the active endings are. Note, however, that the first person singular ends in *-bor*, and the second person singular in *-beris*. (See § 175.) The vowel of the tense sign in the future tense is always short.

192. Memorize the following paradigms. Translate as *I shall carry, you will carry*, etc., in the active; and *I shall be carried, you will be carried*, etc., in the passive.

Future indicative

Active

First Conjugation	Second Conjugation	The verb sum
portābō	vidēbō	erō
portābis	vidēbis	eris
portābit	vidēbit	erit
portābimus	vidēbimus	erimus
portābitis	vidēbitis	eritis
portābunt	vidēbunt	erunt

Passive

portābor	vidēbor
portāberis	vidēberis
portābitur	vidēbitur
portābimur	vidēbimur
portābiminī	vidēbiminī
portābuntur	vidēbuntur

VOCABULARY XX

auriga, -ae, m., charioteer, driver	forum, -ī, n., forum, market place; Forum, specifically, the Roman Forum at Rome
*bene, adv., well, fine	*inquit, he says, he said
celebrō, celebrāre, celebrate; throng	*maneō, manēre, remain, stay
circus, -ī, m., circus	*servō, servāre, save, protect
crās, adv., tomorrow	



This view
before the
Plum Casti

193.

I. Pro
for, and
to put of

II. Th
became
place wh
public in
but only
Today
who mee
trovery.
devoted t



Forum Rōmānum

This view of the ancient Roman Forum shows a religious procession before the temple of Castor and Pollux, or, as the Romans called it, *Templum Castōrum*, the "temple of the Castors"

193.

LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. *Procrastinate* contains two Latin words, *prō* meaning *for*, and *crās* meaning *tomorrow*. Hence, *procrastinate* means to put off for another day, or to defer from day to day.

II. The *Roman Forum* was originally the market place and became the official center of the life of Rome. It was the place where the people assembled to discuss matters of public interest. There were several other fora in Rome, but only one was called specifically the *Roman Forum*.

Today the word *forum* is applied to an assembly of people who meet to discuss matters of common interest or of controversy. The magazine called *The Forum* is a magazine devoted to the discussion of controversial subjects.

DRILL

I. *Give the English for the following verb forms:*

timēberis	vocābiminī	erō	habēbit
dēlectābunt	tenēbis	docēbitur	erimus
eritis	monēbor	sedēbitis	clāmābō

II. *Give the Latin verb forms for the following:*

I shall fear, he will be called, we shall be delighted, you will hold, you will be seen, they will be, you will be taught, I shall be praised, you will be cared for, they will ask.

III. *Give the present and imperfect tenses of the above verbs in the indicated person and number.*

EXERCISE XX

Write in Latin:

1. Tomorrow the boys will walk to Rome.
2. "You, Servius, will stay at home with Publius."
3. "I, too," says Tullia, "shall be at home with the little boys."
4. "You will be well protected by the children, won't you, Tullia?"
5. Tullia will be praised by the little boys.
6. Gifts will be

given to the children by Cornelius. 7. We shall hurry to the Forum and shall see our friends there. 8. The games will be celebrated in the Circus Maximus. 9. Many beautiful horses will be seen by Lucius and Aulus. 10. There will be a great number of famous charioteers.



Pugil

CHAPTER XXI

FUTURE TENSE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE, OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS



194.

PŪBLIUS ET SERVIUS

Pūblius et Servius in hortō lūdunt. Prope puerōs parvōs Tullia cum amīcā Camillā sedet. Fēminae puerōs spectant et audiunt.

“Nōn semper,” inquit Pūblius, “parvī erimus. Tum nōs quoque cum Lūciō et Aulō Rōmam ambulābimus.” “Mox discipulī erimus et cotidiē ad lūdum properābimus,” respondet Servius. “Quid in lūdō agēs?” rogat Pūblius. “In

lūdō fābulās legam," respondet Servius. "Tūne, Servi, semper fābulās *legēs*?" "Interdum lūdi magister fābulās *leget*. Fābulās dē deīs et deābus leget," respondet Servius. "Nōs in lūdō multās fābulās *legēmus!*" clāmat Pūblius.

"Quālēs fābulās, mei filiī, *legētis*?" rogat Tullia. "Fābulās dē bellis et dē aurīgīs legēmus," respondent Pūblius et Servius.

"Meī filiī parvī, Camilla," inquit Tullia, "libenter fābulās *legent*. Fortasse domī fābulās nārrābunt." "Parvī filiū tuī sunt cārī, Tullia. Fortasse ad villam meam mox *venient*. Nunc domum prope-rābō. Nōne ad lecticam, puerī, *veniētis*?" rogat Camilla. "*Veniē-mus* sī Tullia quoque *veniet*," respon-dent puerī. "Cum filiīs parvīs," inquit Tullia, "libenter *veniam*. Nōne iterum, cāra Camilla, ad villam *veniēs*?" "Mox *veniam* et filiae meae quoque *venient*," respondet Camilla.



Puer legit

DISCUSSION

195. In the second paragraph of the story Pūblius et Servius, to what time do the forms of the verb *legō* refer? Read the forms as they occur in the story. How do they differ from the forms of the future tense of verbs of the first and second conjugations? What is the tense sign used?

The future tense of verbs of the third conjugation does not use the tense sign *-bi-*. The tense sign of the future of the third conjugation is *-ē-* (*-a-* in the first person singular), shortened as usual in the third person singular and plural, before *-t* and *-nt*. The future tense of verbs of the third conjugation is formed by dropping the stem vowel of the present stem and adding the tense sign *-ē-* and the personal

endings
singular

legō. I
The fut
tense si
ent ster
sign *-ē-*
as in the

translati
for the
the pass

endings. Notice carefully the variation in the first person singular and the third person singular and plural.

196. Compare the future forms of *veniō* with those of *legō*. In what respect are they alike? How do they differ? The future tense in the fourth conjugation also has the tense sign *-ē-*; but note that the stem vowel *-ī* of the present stem is shortened to *-i* before adding the future tense sign *-ē-*. The future tense sign and the endings are exactly as in the third conjugation.

197. Memorize thoroughly the following paradigms. The translations are in the form *I shall send, you will send, etc.*, for the active, and *I shall be sent, you will be sent, etc.*, for the passive.

Future indicative

Third Conjugation

Fourth Conjugation

Active

mittam
mittēs
mittet

audiam
audiēs
audiet

mittēmus
mittētis
mittent

audiēmus
audiētis
audient

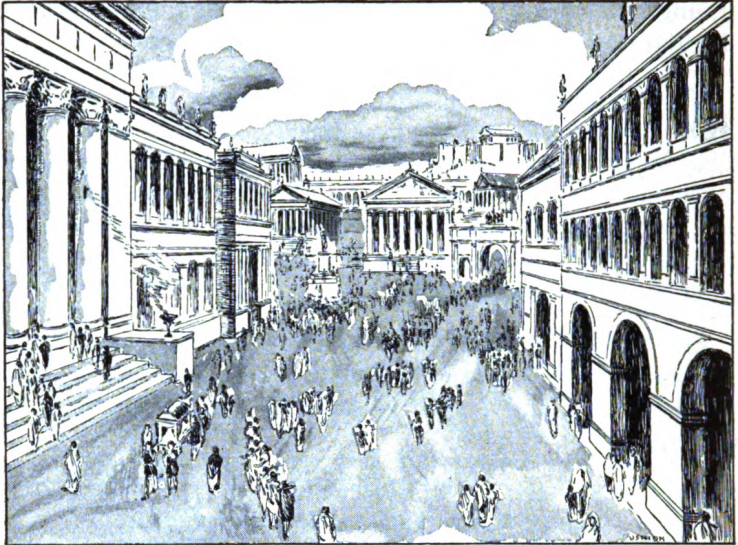
Passive

mittar
mittēris
mittētur

audiar
audiēris
audiētur

mittēmur
mittēmini
mittentur

audiēmur
audiēmini
audientur



READING LESSON

198.

CRĀS

Crās Cornēlius filiōs Lūcium et Aulum ad Forum Rōmānum dūcet. Ibi puerī aedificia multa et magna vidēbunt. Multōs virōs clārōs quoque vidēbunt. Nam virī clārī ad Forum Rōmānum cotīdiē veniunt. Multa verba dē glōriā patriae dicentur et audientur. Fortasse Cornēlius sententiam dē bellō dicet. Tum puerī laetī erunt quod Cornēlius ā multīs audiētur et laudābitur. Forum Rōmānum virōrum et fēminārum erit plēnum. Erit pompa in Forō Rōmānō. Virī ad templa deōrum properābunt. Fēminae ad tabernās ambulābunt et puerī tardī ad lūdōs current. In Forō nōn erit ōtium quod multum negōtium agētur.

Cornēlius rogābit, “Nōne, puerī, in tabernās veniētis?” “Libenter in tabernās veniēmus, nam dōna ad Tulliam liberōsque mittēmus,” respondēbunt filiī. Ē tabernīs multa

dōna ad villam ā servis portābuntur. Parvum scūtum ad Pūblium, parvus gladius ad Servium mittētur. Ad Tulliam fibula pulchra mittētur. Tum Cornēlius et filiū per angustās viās Rōmae ad Circum Maximum properābunt, et cum amicīs spectāculum exspectābunt. Ē subselliis spectāculum vidēbunt. Quadrigae per arēnam volābunt. Equi celeriter current. Virī et fēminae et puerī clāmābunt. Tandem dēfessī domum venient et Tulliae liberisque dōna dabunt.

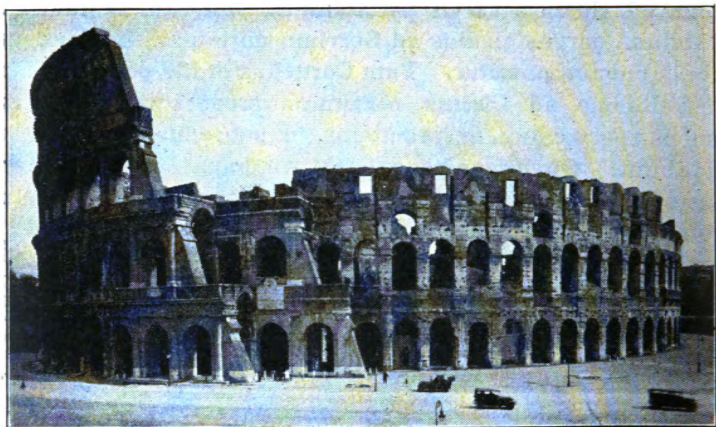
VOCABULARY XXI

*aedificium, aedifici, n., <i>building</i>	pompa, -ae, f., <i>procession,</i> <i>parade</i>
*angustus, -a, -um, <i>narrow</i> arēna, -ae, f., <i>sand; arena</i>	*prope, prep. (with acc.), <i>near</i> quadrigae, -ārum, f. pl., <i>team</i> <i>of four horses, chariot with</i> <i>team</i>
*currō, currere, <i>run</i>	
*dicō, dicere, <i>say, tell, express</i>	
*exspectō, exspectāre, <i>await,</i> <i>expect, wait for</i>	*scūtum, -ī, n., <i>shield</i>
fibula, -ae, f., <i>pin, brooch</i>	*sententia, -ae, f., <i>opinion,</i> <i>thought</i>
*glōria, -ae, f., <i>glory</i>	spectāculum, -ī, n., <i>exhibi-</i> <i>tion, spectacle</i>
legō, legere, <i>choose; read</i>	subsellium, subselli, n., <i>bench, seat</i>
mox, adv., <i>soon</i>	
*negōtium, negōtī, n., <i>busi-</i> <i>ness, task</i>	*tardus, -a, -um, <i>slow, tardy</i>
ōtium, ōtī, n., <i>leisure, rest</i>	volō, volāre, <i>fly; walk or</i> <i>run with great speed</i>
*per, prep. (with acc.), <i>through</i>	

199.

LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. The word *arēna* meant originally *sand*, or a *sandy area*. In ancient times the open space in the center of the amphitheater, where the combats of the gladiators or wild beasts took place, was covered with sand to keep the gladiators from slipping, and to absorb the blood; hence this open space took the name *arēna*. The English word *arena* is applied to any place where a public contest occurs.



Colossēum

This was the largest and most famous amphitheater of ancient times. In its huge arena, gladiatorial combats and wild-beast fights took place. Though it is in ruins, it is estimated that 50,000 spectators could be seated in the Colosseum, and there was standing room for many thousands more.

II. *Aquascutum* is a trade name, used by an English firm, for a brand of raincoat. Why was this name selected?

III. Explain the meanings of the words *pomp*, *negotiate*, *edifice*, *sentence*.

DRILL

I. *Translate:*

agētur

habētur

legentur

curret

audiēminī

celebrābunt

sedētis

veniētis

volābit

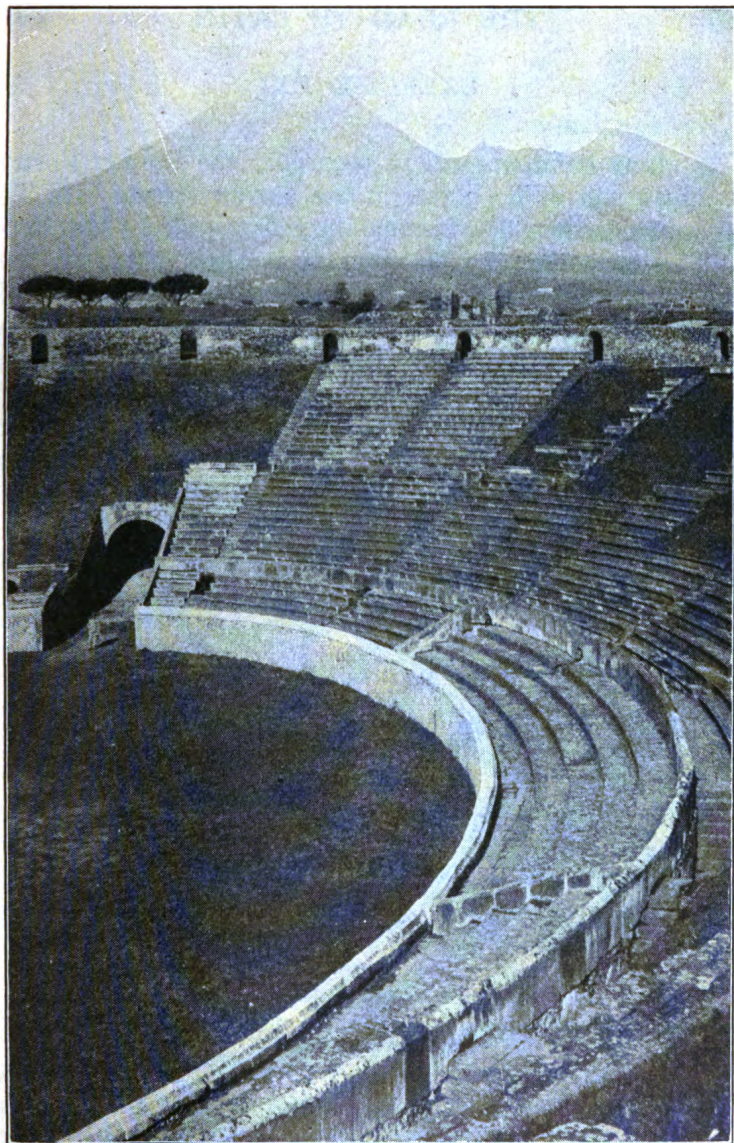
leguntur

erimus

mittēminī

II. *Write in Latin:*

They will fly, they will sit, they will run, they will come, you (*sing.*) will be called, you will be heard, you will be led, you will be advised, he will await, he will be awaited, he will put on, they will say.



Amphitheātrum Pompeiānum

(167)

EXERCISE XXI

Write in Latin:

1. Many buildings will be seen near the Roman Forum. 2. There will be no horses in the narrow streets. 3. The great procession will soon come through the Circus Maximus. 4. The tardy boys will run quickly to their seats and they will watch the exhibition. 5. The four-horse teams will fly quickly through the arena. 6. Cornelius will have leisure, and will express his opinion about the charioteers. 7. Much business will be done at Rome. 8. Meanwhile the little boys are waiting for Cornelius at home. 9. Tullia is reading stories about the glory of Rome. 10. Tullia's brooch is beautiful, and the shield and sword delight the little boys.



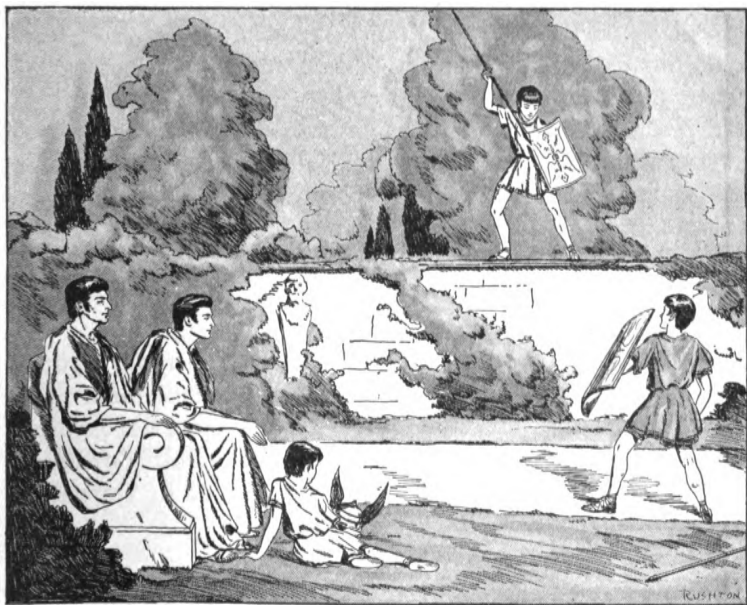
Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art

Aurigae ad certamina parati

**Two-horse and four-horse chariots, with their charioteers, on coins
from Syracuse, Sicily**

CHAPTER XXII

PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE OF VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION IN -IŌ REVIEW OF THE PRESENT SYSTEM



200. LŪDUS PUERŌRUM

Quotannis Mārcus lēgātus ab hibernis domum venit. Ad puerōs dōna ferē semper portat. Saepe dōna sunt arma lignea. In hibernis armātī nōn pugnant et magnum est ōtium; itaque dōna parva libenter faciunt. Hodiē Mārcus puerīs dōna dat.

"Ego galeam *accipiō*," Pūblius clāmat. "Quid tū *accipis*, Aule?" "Ego pīlum et scūtum *accipiō* et Lūcius quoque pīlum et scūtum *accipit*," Aulus respondet. "Cūr pīla et scūta *accipitis*? Nōne dēsiderātis galeās?" Pūblius rogat. "Pīla et scūta *accipimus* quod libenter pugnāmus. Parvī puerī, Pūbli, galeās *accipiunt* sed nōs pīla et scūta *accipimus*," Aulus respondet. Itaque ā Lūciō et ab Aulō pīla et scūta accipiuntur et ā Pūbliō galea accipitur.

Nunc Lūcius et Aulus proelium committunt. Cornēlius et Mārcus in hortō sedent et lūdum spectant. Aulus in terrā stat; Lūcius in mūrō stat. Lūcius dē mūrō pīlum in Aulum dēicit. Aulus pīlum scūtō intercipit et rēicit. Tum pīlum ab Aulō iacitur et ā Lūciō intercipitur et rēicitur. Diū pīla ā pueris iaciuntur, intercipiuntur, rēiciuntur. Tandem puerī dēfessī in subselliō sedent. "*Iaciēbāsne*, Mārce, pīla in barbarōs?" rogat Aulus. "Multa pīla *iaciēbam*," Mārcus respondet. "In Germānōs et in Gallōs *iaciēbantur*. Pīlum meum ā barbarō nōn semper intercipiēbātur et rēiciēbātur. Saepe ā barbarō capiēbātur."

"Mox," inquit Aulus, "pīla in barbarōs *iaciam*. Nōne tū quoque, Lūcī, pīla *iaciēs*?" "Pīla multa *iaciēmus*. Pīla barbarōrum saepe intercipiēmus. Fortasse pīla barbarōrum capiēmus," respondet Lūcius. "Mox," inquit Cornēlius, "meī filii erunt armātī. Tum multa pīla et in Germānōs et in Gallōs *iacient*."

DISCUSSION

201. In the second paragraph of the story, list the forms that make up the present tense active of the verb *accipiō*. Do these forms resemble the forms of any of the conjugations previously studied? Which of these forms are like the corresponding forms of *mittō*? Which are different? Do these resemble the forms of any other conjugation? The present tense active and passive of *accipiō* is conjugated like *mittō* except in the first person singular and the third person



plural.
ing form
accipiunt
of the th
of the fo
ends in -
third-con

Pres
Pres
Pres.
202. Fo
of the th



Militēs pugnant

Figures carved on the Arch of Constantine at Rome

plural. In those persons the forms are like the corresponding forms of the fourth conjugation; as, *accipiō, accipior, accipiunt, accipiuntur*. Verbs like *accipiō* are called *-iō verbs of the third conjugation* and are distinguished from verbs of the fourth conjugation by the present infinitive, which ends in *-ere*. They are listed in vocabularies just like other third-conjugation verbs: *accipiō, accipere*.

	<i>Third Conjugation</i>	<i>Third Conjugation in -iō</i>	<i>Fourth Conjugation</i>
<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	mittō	accipiō	audiō
<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	mittere	accipere	audire
<i>Pres. Stem</i>	mitte-	accipe-	audi-

202. Forms of the imperfect tense of four other *-iō* verbs of the third conjugation are found in the third paragraph.

They are *iaciō*, *throw*, *rēiciō*, *throw back*, *intercipiō*, *intercept*, *capiō*, *take*. Is the imperfect tense of *-iō* verbs like the imperfect tense of *mittō*, or of *audiō*? The imperfect tense of *-iō* verbs of the third conjugation is conjugated like verbs of the fourth conjugation: *accipiēbam*, like *audiēbam*.

Which conjugation do the forms of the future tense of the *-iō* verbs found in the last paragraph resemble? The future tense of *-iō* verbs of the third conjugation is conjugated like the future tense of verbs of the fourth conjugation: *as*, *accipiam*, like *audiam*.

203. Memorize thoroughly the following paradigms:

Present indicative

<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive</i>
<i>capiō</i>	<i>capior</i>
<i>capis</i>	<i>caperis</i>
<i>capit</i>	<i>capitur</i>
<i>capimus</i>	<i>capimur</i>
<i>capitis</i>	<i>capimini</i>
<i>capiunt</i>	<i>capiuntur</i>

Imperfect indicative

<i>capiēbam</i>	<i>capiēbar</i>
<i>capiēbās</i>	<i>capiēbāris</i>
<i>capiēbat</i>	<i>capiēbātur</i>
<i>capiēbāmus</i>	<i>capiēbāmur</i>
<i>capiēbātis</i>	<i>capiēbāmini</i>
<i>capiēbant</i>	<i>capiēbantur</i>

Future indicative

<i>capiam</i>	<i>capiar</i>
<i>capies</i>	<i>capieris</i>
<i>capiet</i>	<i>capietur</i>
<i>capiemus</i>	<i>capiemur</i>
<i>capietis</i>	<i>capiemini</i>
<i>capient</i>	<i>capientur</i>

VOCABULARY XXII

*accipiō, accipere, *receive, accept*

*barbarus, -a, -um, *uncivilized, barbarous; as a noun, barbarus, -ī, m., a barbarian*

*capiō, capere, *take, seize*

*committō, committere, *join, begin*

dēiciō, dēicere, *throw down, hurl down*

*faciō, facere, *make, do, perform*

galea, -ae, f., *helmet*

Gallus, -a, -um, *Gallic; as a noun, Gallus, -ī, m., a Gaul*

Germānus, -a, -um, *German, Germanic; as a noun, Germānus, -ī, m., a German*

*hīberna, -ōrum, n. pl., *winter quarters*

*iaciō, iacere, *throw, hurl, fling*

intercipiō, interciperere, *intercept*

*pilum, -ī, n., *javelin*

quotannis, adv., *every year, yearly*

rēiciō, rēicere, *throw back, hurl back; beat or force back, repulse*

Idiom

proelium committere, *begin battle, join battle*

204.

LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. Answer the following questions:

1. When the bear *hibernates*, what does he do?

2. What is a shoe *factory*?

II. *Barbarous* is derived from a Greek word which originally meant *stammer, babble*, and later *foreign*, in allusion to the confused sounds of any foreign language. Then it began to carry associations of contempt, and to imply vulgarity and lack of civilization. The Greeks at the height of their power called the Romans "barbarians," and the Romans, after they had conquered the Greeks, applied the word to all who differed in language and manners from themselves. So today the word *barbarian* is applied to a person who is felt to have customs and a culture inferior to one's own.

DRILL

I. *Translate:*

mittētur
relinquunt
iaciunt
tenēmini

docētur
mūniēmur
custōdiētur
pugnās

cōgēbātis
pūgnābimus
faciēbās
accipiēris

II. *Give the present, imperfect, and future, in the active and passive, of the following verbs in the person and number indicated:*



Princeps Gallicus

1. servō, third singular
2. moneō, first singular
3. dūcō, second singular
4. iaciō, third plural
5. custōdiō, first plural
6. vincō, second plural

EXERCISE XXII

Write in Latin:

1. The men were led into winter quarters every year.
2. They used to make many beautiful gifts there.
3. Gifts were often brought home by Marcus.
4. We shall receive helmets; you (*pl.*) will receive shields.
5. I shall begin the battle; you will intercept my javelin and throw it back, Aulus.
6. Stories about the Gauls and Germans are pleasing to the boys.
7. "I was almost taken by the barbarians," says Marcus.
8. Weapons were thrown upon the Romans from the walls of the town.

CHAPTER XXIII NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

Nouns in *x, s*



25. DUX ET MĪLITĒS

Dux bellum amat. Libenter *dux* armātōs ad bellum dūcit.
Ducis periculōrum est plēna; sed *ducis* virtūs est
 magna. *Ducī* patria est cāra. Saepe patria *ducem* vocat;
 ā *duce* armāti ad bellum dūcuntur.
 Erant apud Rōmānōs multi et clārī *ducēs*. Statuae *ducum*
 eorū in Forō Rōmānō vidēbantur. Bellum *ducibus*
 cānis erat semper grātum quod spolia erant multa.
ducēs Rōmānōs laudāmus et fābulās dē *ducibus* legimus.

(175)

Miles bellum amat. Virtūs militis est magna. Victōria militi est grāta; itaque prō patriā diligenter pugnat. Pāx quoque militem dēlectat et ā milite laudātur.

Apud Rōmānōs erant multī et clārī militēs. Victōriae militum Rōmānōrum erant multae. Saepe magnī triumphī agēbantur. Triumphī et ducibus et militibus erant grāti. Populus Rōmānus militēs laudābat quod multa spolia ā ducibus militibusque Rōmam portābantur. Lēx antiqua erat: victōrī sunt spolia.

Nōtā bene

Victōrī sunt spolia, *to the victor belong the spoils.*

206. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Quis bellum amat? 2. Cuius virtūs est magna?
3. Cui est patria grāta? 4. Quem patria vocat? 5. Ā quō armātī ad bellum dūcuntur?
6. Nōnne erant apud Rōmānōs multī ducēs clārī?
7. Quōrum statuāe in Forō Rōmānō vidēbantur? 8. Quibus erat bellum grātum? 9. Quōs laudāmus? 10. Dē quibus fābulās legimus?

11. Nōnne miles bellum amat? 12. Cuius virtūs est magna? 13. Cui est victōria cāra? 14. Quem pāx dēlectat?
15. Ā quō pāx laudātur?

16. Erantne multī militēs clārī apud Rōmānōs?
17. Nōnne erant victōriae militum Rōmānōrum multae?
18. Quibus triumphī erant grāti? 19. Quōs Rōmānī laudābant? 20. Ā quibus multa spolia Rōmam portābantur?

Nōtā bene

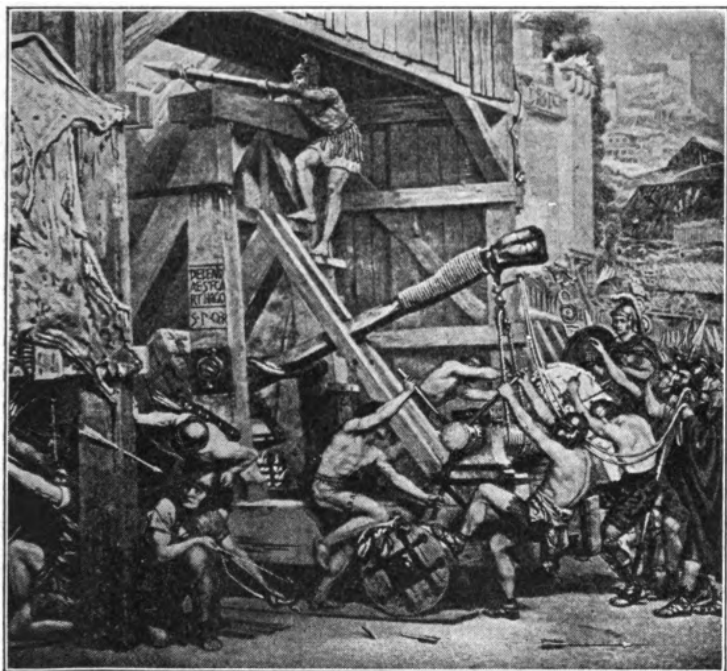
Quibus, dative and ablative plural, all three genders, of the interrogative pronoun.

DISCUSSION

207. In the first paragraph of the story, find examples of the nominative and genitive singular of the word **dux**.



What is
base to v
case use
seem to s
stands fo
can be sh
A noun
third decl
the singu
these case
words are
declension



Oppugnātiō oppidi

What is the ending of the genitive singular? What is the base to which the ending is added? Does the nominative case use this base? At first the nominative case does not seem to show this base; but **x** is a double consonant and stands for the combination **cs**, and the base of **dux**, **ducis** can be shown in the nominative by writing **duc-s**, **duc-is**.

A noun whose genitive singular ends in **-is** belongs to the *third declension*. Find examples of the remaining cases in the singular. In the second paragraph, find examples of these cases used in the plural. The endings used with these words are those of masculine and feminine nouns of the third declension.

208. In the third and fourth paragraphs, find examples of all cases of the singular and plural of the word *mīles*. What letters form the base? How does the base differ from the nominative? Many nouns of the third declension have a nominative in *x* or *s*. If the base of a noun ends in *c* or *g*, its nominative ends in *x*; as, *dux*, *ducis*, base *duc-*; *lēx*, *lēgis*, base *lēg-*. Nouns whose nominative ends in *s* often have a base ending in *t*, or *d*, or *p*. You will find examples of such nouns in the Reading Lesson which follows.

209. In the Reading Lesson of this chapter other new nouns of the third declension are used. Memorize carefully the nominative singular, the genitive singular, and the gender. Notice that masculine and feminine nouns have the same endings. Learn carefully the spelling of the base from the genitive form, as the endings for all the cases except the nominative and vocative are added to this base.

210. Learn the following paradigms of masculine and feminine nouns in *s* or *x*:

dux, *ducis*, *m.*, base *duc-*, *leader*
mīles, *mīlitis*, *m.*, base *mīlit-*, *soldier*
lēx, *lēgis*, *f.*, base *lēg-*, *law*

Singular

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>dux</i>	<i>mīles</i>	<i>lēx</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ducis</i>	<i>mīlitis</i>	<i>lēgis</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>duci</i>	<i>mīlitī</i>	<i>lēgī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ducem</i>	<i>mīlitem</i>	<i>lēgem</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>duce</i>	<i>mīlite</i>	<i>lēge</i>

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ducēs</i>	<i>mīlitēs</i>	<i>lēgēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ducum</i>	<i>mīlitum</i>	<i>lēgum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ducibus</i>	<i>mīlitibus</i>	<i>lēgibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ducēs</i>	<i>mīlitēs</i>	<i>lēgēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ducibus</i>	<i>mīlitibus</i>	<i>lēgibus</i>

READING LESSON

211.

MILITĒS RŌMĀNĪ

Auctōritās Rŏmāna erat magna quod Rŏma tot milītēs habēbat. Milītēs erant peditēs et equitēs. Eques equum ^{on horseback} habēbat et ab equō pugnābat. Pedes equum nōn habēbat;

^{afoot} pedibus pugnābat. Equitēs proelium committēbant sed peditēs pilīs et gladiis proelium gerēbant. Arma peditis erant lōrica, galea, scūtum, gladius. In sinistrā scūtum, in dextrā pilum portābātur. Interdum milītēs Rŏmānī oppidum oppugnābant, et magni lapidēs in mūrōs oppidī mittēbantur.

Virtūs militum Rŏmānōrum erat magna. Ā rēgibus et principibus multārum terrārum Rŏmānī timēbantur quod fāma militum Rŏmānōrum erat magna. Liberī rēgum et principum saepe erant obsidēs Rŏmānōrum et Rŏmam ducēbantur. Multās fābulās dē obsidibus Rŏmānōrum legēmus.

VOCABULARY XXIII

*auctōritās, auctōritātis, f.,
power, influence, authority

*dexter, dextra, dextrum,
right; dextra, -ae, f.,
right hand

*dux, ducis, m., leader

*eques, equitis, m., horse-
man; in pl., cavalry

*lapis, lapidis, m., stone

*lēx, lēgis, f., law
lōrica, -ae, f., corselet, armor

*mīles, mīlitis, m., soldier

*obses, obsidis, m., hostage

*pāx, pācis, f., peace

*pedes, peditis, m., foot sol-
dier; in pl., infantry

*pēs, pedis, m., foot

*populus, -ī, m., a people,
nation

*prīnceps, prīncipis, m., chief

*rēx, rēgis, m., king

*sinister, sinistra, sinistrum,
left; as a noun, sinistra,
-ae, f., left hand

spolium, spoli, n., spoil, booty

*tot, adj. (indeclinable), so
many

trīumphus, -ī, m., triumph;
trīumphum agere, to hold
a triumph

*virtūs, virtūtis, f., courage,
valor



Imperātor et milītēs

Idioms

ab equō pugnāre, to fight on horseback; pedibus pugnāre, to fight afoot.

212.

LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Pick out the Latin words with which the following are associated: *legal, military, pedestrian, principal, regal.*

DRILL

I. *Decline the Latin expressions for the following: Roman foot soldier, large foot, German chief, good law, famous leader.*

II. *Give the nominative singular, genitive singular, gender, nominative plural, and genitive plural of the Latin nouns for the following:*

courage	stone	triumph	shield
hostage	power	peace	horseman
spoil	law	foot	king



Spolia

III. Supply the proper case endings:

1. Scūta pedit.... erant magna.
2. Pedit.... ped.... pignant.
3. Milit.... lapid.... saepe vulnerābantur.
4. Auctōritās Rōmāna obsid.... nōn erat grāta.
5. Duc.... multōs princip.... Rōmam dūcēbant.
6. Nōs lēg.... Rōmānās laudāmus.

EXERCISE XXIII

Write in Latin:

1. I shall read many stories about the power and laws of the Romans. 2. Roman leaders used to carry on war with cavalry and infantry. 3. The leader sometimes fought on (from) horseback, sometimes afoot. 4. Both the leader and (his) soldiers had great courage. 5. The Roman soldier used to wear a helmet and a corselet. 6. The left hand held the shield, the right hand the sword. 7. The soldiers used to storm a town with large stones. 8. Kings and chiefs were often hostages of the Roman leaders. 9. A triumph was a great spectacle because there were so many spoils. 10. Peace was also dear to the Roman people.

CHAPTER XXIV
NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION
ABLATIVE OF TIME

Nouns in *r, er, l*



213. DĒ PRĪNCIPIBUS RŌMĀNĪS

In prīncipiō Rōma ā rēgibus regēbātur. Prīmus rēx erat Rōmulus. *Frāter* Rōmulī erat Remus. Rōmulus et Remus erant geminī. Pater Rōmulī et *frātris* Remī deus Mārs, māter Rhēa Silvia erat. Rōmae erant statuae patris Mārtis et mātis Rhēae Silviae et frātrum. Rōmulus erat rēx bonus et ā Rōmānis laudābātur. Erant septem rēgēs Rōmānī.

Posteā erant cōsulēs. *Cōsul* Rŏmānus ā populō Rŏmānō dēligēbātur. *Imperium cōsulis* erat maximum. Duo cōsulēs quotannis dēligēbantur et cīvitatē regēbant.

Posteā imperātōrēs Rŏmam regēbant. *Imperātor* clārus erat Augustus Caesar. Rŏmae est magna statua *imperātōris* Augusti Caesaris.



Lictōrēs

Lictors preceded important magistrates through the streets. As symbols of authority, they carried the *fascēs*, bundles of rods bound together about an ax, which they used to inflict punishment on those sentenced by the magistrates

Nōtā bene

Duo, *two* (see § 355); septem, *seven* (indeclinable adjective).

214. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Quis erat Rŏmulus? 2. Quis erat Remus? 3. Quis erat Mārs? 4. Quis erat Rhēa Silvia? 5. Quōrum statuæ sunt Rŏmae?

6. Quis ā populō Rŏmānō dēligēbātur? 7. Cuius imperium erat maximum?

8. Quis erat Augustus Caesar? 9. Ubi est magna statua imperātōris? 10. Quālēs erant principēs Rōmae?

DISCUSSION

215. In the story *Dē Principibus Rōmānīs*, find the genitive singular of the nouns *imperātor*, *frāter*, and *cōnsul*. To what declension do these nouns belong?



Augustus Caesar Imperātor

216. Learn the paradigms of the following nouns ending in *r*, *er*, and *l*:

imperātor, *imperātōris*, *m.*, base *imperātōr-*, *commander*, *emperor* (observe that *-ōr-* of the base appears as *-or* in the nominative)

frāter, *frātris*, *m.*, base *frātr-*, *brother*

cōnsul, *cōnsulis*, *m.*, base *cōnsul-*, *consul*

Singular

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>imperātor</i>	<i>frāter</i>	<i>cōnsul</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>imperātōris</i>	<i>frātris</i>	<i>cōnsulis</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>imperātōrī</i>	<i>frātrī</i>	<i>cōnsulī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>imperātōrem</i>	<i>frātre</i>	<i>cōnsule</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>imperātōre</i>		

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>imperātōrēs</i>	<i>frātrēs</i>	<i>cōsulēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>imperātōrum</i>	<i>frātrum</i>	<i>cōsulū</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>imperātōribus</i>	<i>frātribus</i>	<i>cōsulibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>imperātōrēs</i>	<i>frātrēs</i>	<i>cōsulēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>imperātōribus</i>	<i>frātribus</i>	<i>cōsulibus</i>

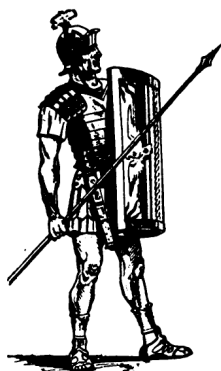
Nouns in ō, s

217. DĒ CAESARE ET LEGIŌNIBUS

Apud Rōmānōs Caesar erat maximus dux. Caesar et legiōnēs in Galliā et Britanniā pugnābant, In legiōne est magnus numerus militum. *Bellō Helvēticō* multae legiōnēs cum Caesare erant. Decima legiō et in bellō et in pāce Caesarī cāra erat. Virtūs decimae legiōnis erat magna. *Hieme* Caesaris legiōnēs in hibernis manēbant. *Aestāte* Caesar legiōnēs cōgēbat et bellum cum Gallis gerēbat.

Saepe imperātor militēsque triumphum agēbant. *Multitūdō* hominum in Rōmae viās properābat. Per Forum Rōmānum victor, militēs, spolia, veniēbant. Clāmōrēs *multitūdinis* erant magnī. Spectāculum multitudinem laetam dēlectābat.

Triumphus erat mōs antiquus. Hodiē quoque vestigia mōris antiqui vidēmus; nam in viis nostris pompae magnae videntur.



218. Respondē Latīnē:

Miles Rōmānus

1. Ubi Caesar pugnābat? 2. Quandō erant multae legiōnēs cum Caesare? 3. Cui erat legiō decima cāra? 4. Quandō decima legiō Caesarī cāra erat? 5. Cuius virtūs erat magna? 6. Quandō Caesaris legiōnēs in hibernis manēbant? 7. Quandō Caesar bellum gerēbat?

8. Quō multitūdō properābat? 9. Cuius clāmōrēs erant magnī? 10. Quid hodiē vidēmus?

Nōtā bene

Quandō, when?

DISCUSSION

219. In the story *Dē Caesare et Legiōnibus*, what is the genitive singular of legiō? To what declension does this



Triumphus

noun belong? What is the genitive singular of **multitūdō**? To what declension does it belong? Many nouns of the third declension end in **ō** in the nominative but have the base in **n**. Notice the spelling of the genitive. Some nouns in **ō** have a genitive form in **-ōnis**, some in **-inis**; as, **legiō**, **legiōnis**; **multitūdō**, **multitūdinis**.

220. What is the genitive singular of **mōs**? To what declension does it belong? A few nouns of the third declension have a nominative in **s**, but use the letter **r** in the genitive and all cases thereafter; as, **mōs**, **mōris**.

221. Always learn the nominative and genitive singular and gender of a third-declension noun. List the third-declension nouns in the story **Dē Caesare et Legiōnibus**, and try to give the nominative and genitive singular and gender of each noun without referring to the vocabulary.

222. Learn these paradigms of nouns ending in *ō* and *s*:

homō, hominis, m. or f., base homin-, person

legiō, legiōnis, f., base legiōn-, legion

mōs, mōris, m., base mōr-, custom

Singular

<i>Nom.</i>	legiō	homō	mōs
<i>Gen.</i>	legiōnis	hominis	mōris
<i>Dat.</i>	legiōnī	hominī	mōrī
<i>Acc.</i>	legiōnem	hominem	mōrem
<i>Abl.</i>	legiōne	homine	mōre

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	legiōnēs	hominēs	mōrēs
<i>Gen.</i>	legiōnum	hominum	mōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	legiōnibus	hominibus	mōribus
<i>Acc.</i>	legiōnēs	hominēs	mōrēs
<i>Abl.</i>	legiōnibus	hominibus	mōribus

223. State what question the following expressions answer: **bellō Helvēticō, in bellō et in pāce, aestāte, hieme.** What case is used in all the expressions? What preposition is sometimes used? All these expressions show the *time when* an action takes place. The ablative may be used to express time; when so used it is called the *ablative of time*. When the word itself refers to time, the ablative case without a preposition is used; as, **hieme, in winter; aestāte, in summer.** When the word itself does not express time, the preposition **in** is used with the ablative case; as, **in bellō, in war; in pāce, in peace.** When an adjective modifies a word not relating to time, the ablative may be used without the preposition; as, **bellō Helvēticō.**

224.

RULE

Ablative of time. Time when may be expressed by the ablative.

VOCABULARY XXIV

*aestās, aestātis, f., <i>summer</i>	*imperium, imperī, n., <i>command, power</i>
Caesar, Caesaris, m., <i>Caesar</i>	
*cīvitās, cīvitātis, f., <i>state</i>	*legiō, legiōnis, f., <i>legion</i>
clāmōr, clāmōris, m., <i>shout, cry</i>	Mārs, Mārtis, m., <i>Mars, god of war</i>
*cōsul, cōsulis, m., <i>consul</i>	*māter, mātris, f., <i>mother</i>
*decimus, -a, -um, <i>tenth</i>	*mōs, mōris, m., <i>custom, manner</i>
*dēligō, dēligere, <i>choose, elect</i>	multitūdō, multitūdinis, f., <i>multitude</i>
*frāter, frātris, m., <i>brother</i>	*pater, patris, m., <i>father</i>
geminī, -ae, -a, <i>twin</i>	*primus, -a, -um, <i>first</i>
Helvēticus, -a, -um, <i>Helvetian</i>	prīncipium, prīncipī, n., <i>beginning</i>
*hiems, hiemis, f., <i>winter</i>	prīncipium, prīncipī, n., <i>beginning</i>
*homō, hominis, m. or f., <i>person, man</i>	vestigium, vestigī, n., <i>trace, footprint</i>
imperātor, imperātōris, m., <i>commander, emperor</i>	victor, victōris, m., <i>victor</i>

225. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Explain the italicized words in the following sentences:

1. Our monetary system is a *decimal* system.
2. We do not have *fraternities* in our school.
3. His *maternal* grandfather was president.
4. He is a man of good *morals*.

DRILL

I. *Decline the Latin expressions for the following:*

Famous consul, good mother, great commander, weary legion, happy person, old custom.

II. *Supply the proper case endings:*

1. Pāx homin.... est cāra.
2. Aestāt.... bellum ā milit.... gerēbātur.
3. Hiems multitūdin.... nōn dēlectat.



Iō triumphe!

(189)

4. Clāmōr.... victōr.... erant magnī.

5. Milit.... decimae legiōn.... sunt Caesar.... cārī.



Victōria

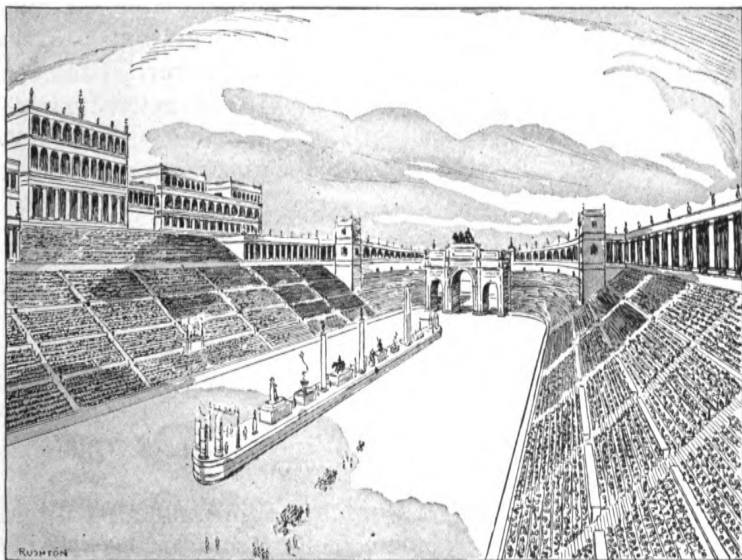
EXERCISE XXIV

Write in Latin:

1. Kings, consuls, and emperors used to rule the Roman state. 2. Romulus, the first king, and Remus, were the twin sons of Mars. 3. Later on the Roman people elected consuls. 4. The power of the consuls was very great. 5. In the Helvetian war, Caesar was the commander of many legions. 6. We hear many stories about the tenth legion. 7. In winter the Roman soldiers were led into winter quarters; in summer they carried on war. 8. Triumphs were always held in Rome. 9. A multitude of people used to watch the triumph. 10. In the beginning many shouts were heard. 11. The fathers and mothers of the victors were in the streets. 12. Traces of the ancient custom are seen today.

CHAPTER XXV

NEUTER NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION ABLATIVE OF MANNER



226. DĒ CERTĀMINIBUS RŌMĀNĪS

Populus Rōmānus lūdōs et spectācula amābat. Erant lūdī gladiātōriī, *certāmina* quadrigārum, alia spectācula. Rōmānī lūdōs gladiātōriōs et certāmina quadrigārum libenter spectābant. *Certāmen* quadrigārum in Circō Maximō erat et populō Rōmānō maximē acceptum erat. Multitūdō virōrum et fēminārum et liberōrum certāmen quadrigārum *magnō cum studiō* spectābat. Prīncipiū *certāminis* quadrigārum

(191)

ā dominō lūdōrum nūntiābātur. Tum spectātōrēs cum studiō aurigās salūtābant.

Saepe auriga erat servus. *Corpus* aurigae aut rubrā aut albā tunicā tegēbātur. Colōre tunicae Rōmānī corpus aurigae cernēbant. Pulchra erat aurigae magnitūdō ^{stature} *corporis*. Maximā cum celeritāte equī currēbant. *Corpora* equōrum erant pulchra. Spectātōrēs corpora equōrum laudābant. Victōri certāminis quadrigārum palma ā dominō lūdōrum dabātur. *Mūnus* erat aurigae grātum. Multa *mūnera* pulchra victōri ā spectātōribus dabantur. Crās Cornēlius cum filiis Lūciō et Aulō Circum Maximum iterum intrābunt. Ibi puerī certāmen quadrigārum maximō studiō spectābunt. Clāmōrēs spectātōrum Circum Maximum complēbunt.

Nōtā bene

Magnitūdō corporis, *stature, build*; literally, *size of body*.

Certāmen quadrigārum, *chariot race*.

227. Respondē Latinē:

1. Quālēs erant lūdī? 2. Quid Rōmānī libenter spectābant? 3. Quid erat maximē acceptum? 4. Quōmodo multitūdō certāmen quadrigārum spectābat? 5. Quōmodo spectātōrēs aurigās salūtābant?

6. Quis erat auriga? 7. Quid aut rubrā aut albā tunicā tegēbātur? 8. Quid Rōmānī colōre tunicae cernēbant? 9. Quōmodo equī currēbant? 10. Nōne erant corpora equōrum pulchra? 11. Quid spectātōrēs laudābant? 12. Quid erat aurigae grātum? 13. Cui mūnera ā spectātōribus dabantur? 14. Quōmodo filii Cornēli certāmen quadrigārum spectābunt? 15. Quōrum clāmōrēs Circum Maximum complēbunt?

Nōtā bene

Quōmodo, *how*? This expression is really two words run together, quō and modō, and means *in what manner*?



Rŏmānī lūdōs gladiātōriōs libenter spectābant

DISCUSSION

8. In the sentence *Certāmen quadrigārum erat populō ānō maximē acceptum*, what does the adjective *acceptum* tell about the gender of the noun *certāmen*? In the sentence *Prīncipium certāminis quadrigārum ā dominōrum nūntiābātur*, in what case is *certāminis*? To whatension, then, does *certāmen* belong?

9. In the first paragraph of the story, find examples of the word *certāmen* in the nominative and accusative cases, singular and plural. What do you notice about the nominative singular and accusative singular ending? about the nominative plural and accusative plural ending? Neuter nouns of the third declension, like all neuters, have the same form in the nominative, accusative, and vocative. In the plural they have the ending *-a* for the nominative, accusative, and

vocative. (See § 138.) In all other cases they use the same endings as masculine and feminine nouns of the third declension. Memorize carefully the genitive of the neuter noun, for the endings must be added to the base obtained from this form.

230. Many neuter nouns of the third declension end in **-en** in the nominative singular and in **-inis** in the genitive singular; as, **certāmen, certāminis**. Notice the vowel change in the genitive. In the second paragraph of the story find two other neuter nouns. Give the nominative and genitive singular of each noun. Notice the spelling. Some neuter nouns of the third declension end in **-us** in the nominative singular and **-oris** or **-eris** in the genitive singular; as, **corpus, corporis**, and **mūnus, mūneris**.

231. Learn the following paradigms of neuter nouns:

certāmen, certāminis, n., base certāmin-, contest, strife
corpus, corporis, n., base corpor-, body
mūnus, mūneris, n., base mūner-, gift

Singular

<i>Nom.</i>	certāmen	corpus	mūnus
<i>Gen.</i>	certāminis	corporis	mūneris
<i>Dat.</i>	certāminī	corporī	mūnerī
<i>Acc.</i>	certāmen	corpus	mūnus
<i>Abl.</i>	certāmine	corpore	mūnere

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	certāmina	corpora	mūnera
<i>Gen.</i>	certāminum	corporum	mūnerum
<i>Dat.</i>	certāminibus	corporibus	mūneribus
<i>Acc.</i>	certāmina	corpora	mūnera
<i>Abl.</i>	certāminibus	corporibus	mūneribus

232. Observe the following phrases, and tell what question they answer: **magnō cum studiō, maximō studiō, cum studiō, maximā cum celeritāte**. What case is used in these



Gladiātōrēs

In this old mosaic we see the umpire between the fighters.
Notice the protection on the arms of the combatants

phrases? Is there a preposition? All the phrases tell the *manner* in which the action took place. The ablative may be used to express manner, ordinarily with the preposition *cum*; when so used, it is called an *ablative of manner*. When the word has an adjective modifier, the ablative may be used with or without the preposition. Notice the position of *cum* when an adjective is used: **magnō cum studiō**, *with great zeal*.

RULE

233. Ablative of manner. The ablative with *cum* may be used to express the manner in which an act is performed. *Cum* need not be used when the ablative has a modifier.



In arēnā

Various scenes from the arena are represented in this old bas-relief. To the left are gladiators fighting on horseback. In the center we see wounded gladiators raising a hand to ask mercy from the audience. On the right, a gladiator who has been refused mercy is being killed by his victorious opponent

VOCABULARY XXV

acceptus, -a, -um, <i>acceptable, pleasing</i>	gladiātōrius, -a, -um, <i>gladiatorial</i>
*aut, conj., <i>or</i> ; aut . . . aut, <i>either . . . or</i>	magnitūdō, magnitūdinis, f., <i>size</i>
celeritās, celeritātis, f., <i>quickness, speed</i>	*mūnus, mūneris, n., <i>reward, gift</i>
*cernō, cernere, <i>detect, distinguish</i>	palma, -ae, f., <i>palm leaf; sign of victory</i>
certāmen, certāminis, n., <i>contest, strife, race</i>	spectātor, spectātōris, m., <i>spectator</i>
color, colōris, m., <i>color</i>	studium, studī, n., <i>zeal, eagerness</i>
compleō, complēre, <i>fill, cover</i>	
*corpus, corporis, n., <i>body</i>	*tegō, tegere, <i>cover, protect</i>

Idiom

magnitūdō corporis, *stature*

234. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. Pick out the Latin words in the vocabulary with which the following words are associated: *tegument, corporal, complete, celerity*.

II. Explain the meaning of the italicized words in the following sentences:

1. The skin is a *tegument*.
2. *Corporal* punishment is seldom practiced in the schools today.
3. Betty will soon *complete* the course in the junior high school.
4. The election was carried through with great *celerity*.

DRILL

I. *Decline the Latin expressions for the following:*

Great contest, beautiful body, pleasing gift, happy spectator, long winter.

II. *Supply the proper case endings:*

1. Spectātōrēs magn.... cum studi.... ad certāmen properant.
2. Erant mult.... certāmin.... in Circō Maximō.
3. Equus ped.... alb.... et corpus alb.... habet.
4. Multī equī corpor.... alb.... habent.
5. Victōrēs mūner.... amant.
6. Mūnus parv.... erat accept....

EXERCISE XXV

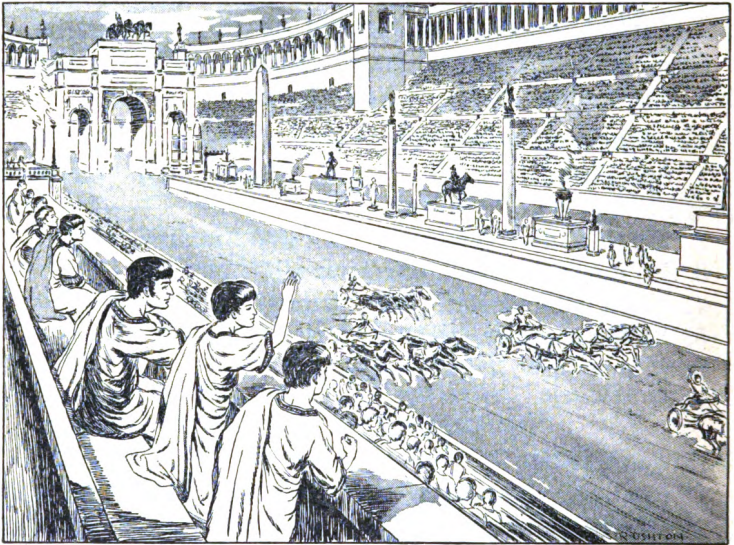
Write in Latin:

1. Contests were especially pleasing to the Romans.
2. A multitude of people often filled the Circus Maximus.
3. The spectators watched both gladiatorial games and chariot races with great zeal.
4. The stature of the charioteer was praised.
5. Red tunics often covered the bodies of the charioteers.
6. The drivers were distinguished by their colors.
7. The horses will run with the greatest speed.
8. The palm leaf was the victor's reward.

CHAPTER XXVI

SUMMARY

CONSONANT STEMS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION



235. DĒ CERTĀMINE QUADRĪGĀRUM

Nunc Cornēlius cum filiīs Circum Maximum intrat. Magnō cum gaudiō puerī in subselliis sedent. Circus Maximus puerōs dēlectat. Circus Maximus est aedificium longum. In mediō Circō Maximō est magna arēna. Sōl arēnam illūminat. Circum arēnam sunt subsellia. Dē subselliis spectātōrēs lūdōs spectant. In Circō Maximō sunt multa genera hominum. Sunt ducēs, mercātōrēs, agricolae, servī. Dē subselliis puerī magnō studiō arēnam spectant.

(198)

Arēna mūrō angustō dīviditur. Nōmen mūrī angustī est “spīna.” In spīnā sunt statuæ clārōrum aurigārum et equōrum. Prope terminōs spīnae sunt columnae altae. Columnae sunt mētae. In summā spīnā prope mētās iūdicēs stant. Circum spīnam equī volant.

“Nōne est tempus certāminis, pater?” rogant puerī.

“Nōndum, mei filiū,” respondet Cornēlius. “Ante certāmen semper est pompa. Pompa per viās ad Circum Maximum iter facit. In pompā sunt equī, aurigae, virī clārī, imāginēs pulchrae deōrum. Mox pompa portam intrābit et per arēnam veniet.”

“Porta aperitur,” clāmat Lūcius. “Pompa venit!”

Post pompam spectātōrēs signum certāminis expectant. Signum ā dominō lūdōrum datur; quadrigae maximā cum celeritāte in arēnam volant. Per septem

spatia equī circum spīnam volant. Vulnera aurigārum sunt multa. Interdum aurigae interficiuntur quod super capita et corpora miserōrum reliquae quadrigae volant.

“Meus auriga est in spatiō extrēmō,” clāmat Aulus. “Volat circum mētām extrēmam. Reliquōs aurigās relinquit. Est victor!”



Signum ā dominō lūdōrum datur

Nōtā bene

Per septem spatia, for seven laps.

236. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Quōmodo puerī in subselliis sedent? 2. Quāle aedificium est Circus Maximus? 3. Quid arēnam illūminat?
4. Quālēs hominēs sunt in subselliis? 5. Quōmodo arēna dīviditur? 6. Quī in summā spīnā stant?
7. Quid puerī rogant? 8. Estne pompa magna?
9. Cūr sunt vulnera aurīgārū multa?
10. Quid Aulus clāmat?

DISCUSSION

237. In many nouns of the third declension the stem (see § 82) is the same as the base, and ends in a consonant. Such nouns are called *consonant stems*. It is necessary to learn carefully the nominative and genitive singular of each noun. The following nouns show most of the types:

dux, ducis, base duc-
 lēx, lēgis, base lēg-
 lapis, lapidis, base lapid-
 princeps, principis, base princip-
 miles, militis, base milit-
 virtūs, virtūtis, base virtūt-
 celeritās, celeritātis, base celeritāt-
 cōsul, cōsulis, base cōsul-
 imperātor, imperātōris, base imperātōr-
 frāter, frātris, base frātr-
 legiō, legiōnis, base legiōn-
 homō, hominis, base homin-
 certāmen, certāminis, base certāmin-
 corpus, corporis, base corpor-
 mūnus, mūneris, base mūner-
 caput, capitis, base capit-

238. There are no good rules for gender in the third declension. Learn the gender when the noun is first used. Most nouns whose nominative ends in *-tās, -tūdō, -ūs, or -ēs* are feminine. Most nouns whose nominative ends in *-men* or *-us* are neuter. *Caput* and *iter* are also neuter.

VOCABULARY XXVI

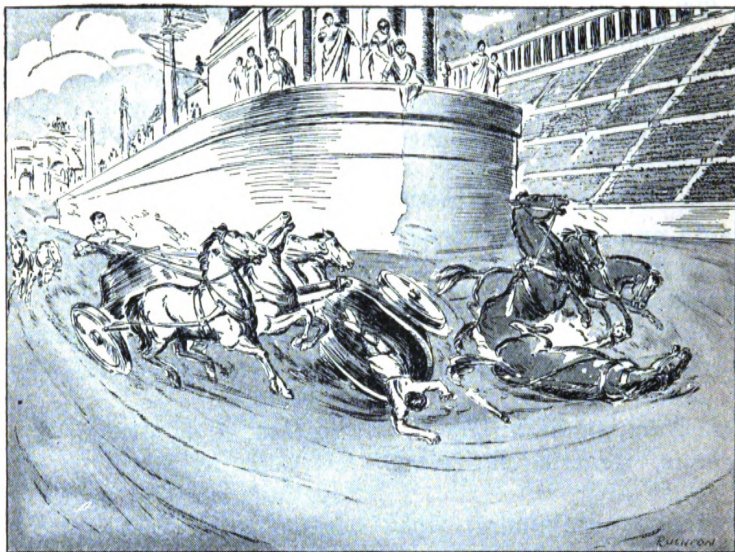
* <i>ante</i> , prep. (with acc.), <i>before</i> , <i>in front of</i>	* <i>mercātor</i> , <i>mercātōris</i> , m., <i>merchant</i>
* <i>caput</i> , <i>capitis</i> , n., <i>head</i> , <i>cap- ital</i>	<i>mēta</i> , -ae, f., <i>goal</i>
* <i>dīvidō</i> , <i>dīvidere</i> , <i>divide</i> , <i>sep- arate</i>	* <i>nōmen</i> , <i>nōminis</i> , n., <i>name</i>
<i>gaudium</i> , <i>gaudī</i> , n., <i>joy</i>	* <i>post</i> , prep. (with acc.), <i>after</i> , <i>behind</i>
* <i>genus</i> , <i>generis</i> , n., <i>kind</i> , <i>class</i>	* <i>signum</i> , -ī, n., <i>signal</i>
<i>illūminō</i> , <i>illūmināre</i> , <i>light up, illuminate</i>	* <i>sōl</i> , <i>sōlis</i> , m., <i>sun</i>
<i>imāgō</i> , <i>imāginis</i> , f., <i>image</i>	* <i>spatium</i> , <i>spatī</i> , n., <i>space</i>
* <i>interficiō</i> , <i>interficere</i> , <i>kill</i>	<i>spīna</i> , -ae, f., <i>spina</i>
* <i>iter</i> , <i>itineris</i> , n., <i>journey</i> , <i>march, route</i>	* <i>summus</i> , -a, -um, <i>highest</i> , <i>top of</i>
<i>iūdex</i> , <i>iūdicis</i> , m., <i>judge</i>	<i>super</i> , prep. (with acc.), <i>above, over</i>
* <i>medius</i> , -a, -um, <i>middle</i> , <i>middle of</i>	* <i>tempus</i> , <i>temporis</i> , n., <i>time</i>
	<i>terminus</i> , -ī, m., <i>end; bound- ary line</i>
	* <i>vulnus</i> , <i>vulneris</i> , n., <i>wound</i>

Idiom

iter facere, to march

239. Nōtā bene

Observe that *medius* is an adjective; it can sometimes be translated *mid*, though in English we use the adjective *mid* in only a few expressions, as in *midair*, *midseason*, *midstream*, etc. More often, the English idiom requires that *medius* be translated as if it were a noun: in *mediō Circō Maximō*, in the middle of the *Circus Maximus*.



Quadrigae circum spinam volant

In the same way the adjective *summus*, *highest*, must usually be translated as if it were a noun: in *summā spinā*, *on the top of the "spine."*

Since *medius* and *summus* are adjectives, they always agree in gender, number, and case with the word they modify.

240.

LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Explain the meaning of the italicized words in the following sentences:

1. Many people do not believe in *capital* punishment.
2. He left his *itinerary* with us before he sailed.
3. Several persons were *nominated* for President.
4. They reached the *summit* of the mountain at last.
5. We felt that the *judicial* decision in the case was fair.
6. He was appointed *mediator* in the dispute.



Aurīga victor

Bearing the palm of victory, the winning charioteer is just leaving the Circus of Maxentius, several miles south of Rome

DRILL

I. Give the nominative and genitive singular, the gender, and the nominative and genitive plural of every third-declension noun in the story *Dē Certāmine Quadrigārum*.

II. Decline the Latin expressions for the following:

Beautiful head, good judge, bright sun, great merchant, dear mother, small image, famous legion, long name, ancient time, the middle of the road, the top of (one's) head.

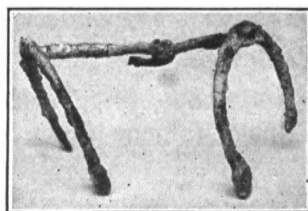
III. Supply the proper case endings:

1. Capit.... equōrum sunt pulchr....
2. Mult.... genera homin.... vidēbimus.
3. Itinera milit.... erunt long....
4. Puellae corōnīs imāgin.... magn.... ōrant.
5. Mercātōr.... iūdic.... laudant.
6. Tempor.... Rōmānōrum saepe laudantur.
7. Mūner.... victōr.... (*sing.*) dantur.

EXERCISE XXVI

Write in Latin:

1. There were contests of many kinds in the Circus Maximus. 2. With merchants, leaders, and judges, the boys await the signal of the master of the games. 3. The parade enters the gate and marches in front of the spectators. 4. Above the spectators is the bright sun; it lights up the arena. 5. The open space is divided by the "spine"; on the top of the spine are many images. 6. It is time for the race (of the race), and the teams fly to the goals with great speed. 7. Sometimes the charioteers are killed; often a driver has many wounds on (his) head and body. 8. The rest of the teams fly around the ends of the spine. 9. After the race the victor will stand in the middle of the arena. 10. Then there will be great joy and the name of the victor will be praised.



Courtesy of the Metropolitan Museum of Art

Frënum

CHAPTER XXVII

MASCULINE, FEMININE, AND NEUTER I-STEMS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

241.

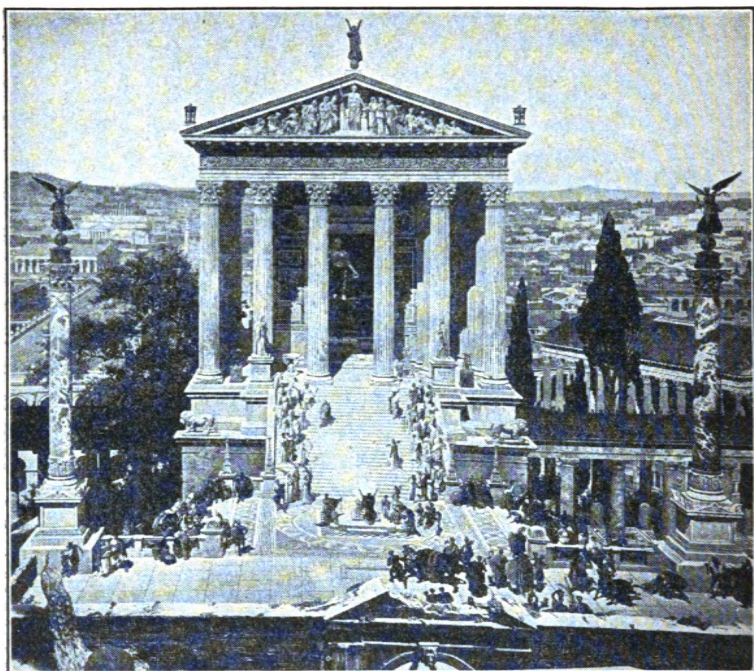
DĒ URBE RŌMĀ

Rōma est urbs clāra. Viae, templa, aedificia urbis sunt pulchra. Rōmulus, rēx primus, urbī nōmen dedit. Flūmen Tiberis urbem dīvidit. Mare nōn longē ab urbe abest. In mare flūmen Tiberis fluit; urbs Rōma ab ōre flūminis Tiberis nōn longē abest. Nōmen maris est Mare Inferum. Ā *marī* paucae nāvēs Rōmam veniunt quod flūmen nōn est altum. Est Mare Superum quoque; nam *maria* Italiam ferē circumstant.

Sunt multae et magnae urbēs in Italiā. Rōma est maxima *urbium*. Rōma est caput Italiae. Multis urbibus pulchris proxima est Rōma. Viātōrēs ā multis terris ad *urbis* clārās veniunt. In multis urbibus Italiae sunt ruinae aedificiōrum magnōrum. Ruinae urbium antiquārum viātōribus sunt grātae; antiquās *urbēs* libenter spectant.

Temporibus antiquis *civis* Rōmānus erat homō superbus. Nisi homō erat *civis* Rōmānus, "barbarus" saepe appellābātur. Vīta *civis* Rōmānī erat inviolāta. Barbarus *civī* Rōmānō nōn erat cārus; itaque vīta barbarī nōn erat inviolāta. Barbarus *civem* Rōmānum nōn amābat et ā *cive* Rōmānō nōn amābātur.

Civēs Rōmānī extrēmīs in terrīs saepe habitābant. Iūra *civium* Rōmānōrum etiam extrēmīs in terrīs diligenter servābantur. Iūdicēs *civibus* Rōmānīs erant benignī. Sī homō clāmābat, "Civis Rōmānus sum," vīta erat inviolāta. Itaque imperium Rōmānum et in Italiā et in terrīs



Rōma antiq̄ua

This view of ancient Rome shows the temple of Juno Moneta, where a sacrifice is soon to be offered. This famous temple was also the mint of ancient Rome. It was built on the Capitoline Hill, and can be seen towering above the walls of the Capitol in the extreme right of the picture on page 159

extrēmīs civīs Rōmānōs servābat. Iūre imperium Rōmānum
ā civibus Rōmānīs laudābātur.

Nōtā bene

Dedit, *gave*; iūre, *justly*.

Mare Inferum, the *Lower Sea*, or the sea along the southwest coast of Italy.

Mare Superum, the *Upper Sea*, along the northwest coast.

242. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Quālis urbs est Rōma? 2. Nōne sunt viae, templa, aedificia urbis pulchra? 3. Cui Rōmulus nōmen dedit? 4. Quid flūmen dīvidit? 5. Num mare longē ab urbe abest? 6. Quō flūmen Tiberis fluit? 7. Nōne nōmen maris est Mare Inferum? 8. Unde nāvēs Rōmam veniunt? 9. Quid Italiam ferē circumstat?

10. Quid est in Italiā? 11. Estne Rōma maxima urbium? 12. Quibus est Rōma proxima? 13. Quō viātōrēs veniunt? 14. Ubi sunt ruīnae aedificiōrum magnōrum? 15. Quid viātōrēs libenter spectant?

16. Quis erat homō superbus? 17. Cuius vīta erat inviolāta? 18. Amābāturne barbarus ā cīve Rōmānō? 19. Quōrum iūra servābantur? 20. Quōs imperium Rōmānum servābat?

DISCUSSION

243. In the first paragraph of the story *Dē Urbe Rōmā*, find the genitive singular of *urbs*. To what declension does *urbs* belong? What letters form the base? Find examples of all the other cases in the singular, and list the endings. In the second paragraph find examples of all the cases in the plural, and list the endings. Do you find any case endings different from the endings of the third declension which you have just learned?

Nouns of the third declension which we have so far studied are called *consonant stems* because their stems end in a consonant. *Urbs* belongs to a group of nouns called *i-stems*. Masculine and feminine *i-stems* differ from consonant stems in that they have the ending *-ium* in the genitive plural and *-īs* as well as *-ēs* in the accusative plural. Neuter *i-stems* differ from consonant stems in that they have *-ī* instead of *-e* in the ablative singular, *-ia* in the nominative and accusative plural, and *-ium* in the genitive plural.

244. In the third paragraph, find the genitive singular of *civis*. To what declension does this noun belong? Notice that the nominative singular and the genitive singular have the same number of syllables. Words which have the same number of syllables in these two cases of the singular are called *parisyllables*. Find examples of all the cases, singular and plural, of *civis*. What are the endings of the genitive plural and accusative plural? This noun also is an i-stem.

245. In the first paragraph, what is the genitive singular of the noun *mare*? (Observe that it is a parisyllable.) To what declension does it belong? What is the accusative singular of the noun? What is the gender? Remember that all neuter nouns have the nominative and accusative singular alike. What is the ablative singular of *mare*? What is the nominative plural? This noun also belongs to the i-stem group of the third declension.

246. In order to decline a noun of the third declension, it is necessary to know whether it is an i-stem or not. Remember, therefore, that the following are i-stems:

1. All parisyllables. Thus *civis* (*civis*), *mare* (*maris*) are i-stems; but *sōl* (*sōlis*), *imāgō* (*imāginis*) are not. Note, however, the following exceptions: *animal*, *animālis*, *animal*, is an i-stem, though not a parisyllable; and *frāter*, *māter*, *pater* are not i-stems.
2. Nouns in which the penult (that is, the syllable next before the last) of the genitive form ends in a consonant. Thus *urbs* (*ur-bis*), *gēns* (*gen-tis*), *nox* (*noc-tis*), when syllabified according to the rules given in § 6, show a penult ending in a consonant, and belong among the i-stems; whereas *potestās* (*potestā-tis*), *ōs* (*ō-ris*), *prīnceps* (*prīnci-pis*) do not.

As an additional check, nouns of the third declension belonging to the i-stem group will have the genitive plural



§ 247

given in t
animal, an

247. Lea

Nom.
Gen.
Dat.
Acc.
Abl.

Nom.
Gen.
Dat.
Acc.
Abl.

S
Nom.
Gen.
Dat.
Acc.
Abl.

The form
order to ma
in actual use
Observe t
singular, and
15

given in the vocabularies; *as, urbs, urbis, urbium, f., city; animal, animālis, animālium, n., animal.*

247. Learn the following paradigms of i-stems:

Masculine and Feminine

urbs, urbis, f., city

cīvis, cīvis, m. or f., citizen

caedēs, caedis, f., slaughter, massacre

Singular

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>urbs</i>	<i>cīvis</i>	<i>caedēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>urbis</i>	<i>cīvis</i>	<i>caedis</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>urbī</i>	<i>cīvī</i>	<i>caedī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>urbem</i>	<i>cīvem</i>	<i>caedem</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>urbe</i>	<i>cīve, -ī</i>	<i>caede</i>

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>urbēs</i>	<i>cīvēs</i>	<i>caedēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>urbium</i>	<i>cīvium</i>	<i>caedum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>urbibus</i>	<i>cīvibus</i>	<i>caedibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>urbis, -ēs</i>	<i>cīvis, -ēs</i>	<i>caedis, -ēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>urbibus</i>	<i>cīvibus</i>	<i>caedibus</i>

Neuter

mare, maris, n., sea

animal, animālis, n., animal

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>mare</i>	<i>maria</i>	<i>animal</i>	<i>animālia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>maris</i>	<i>marium</i>	<i>animālis</i>	<i>animālium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>marī</i>	<i>maribus</i>	<i>animālī</i>	<i>animālībus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mare</i>	<i>maria</i>	<i>animal</i>	<i>animālia</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>marī</i>	<i>maribus</i>	<i>animālī</i>	<i>animālībus</i>

Nōtā bene

The form *marium* is given as the genitive plural of *mare* in order to make a complete paradigm; but this form is not found in actual use.

Observe that *animal* has *-al* in the nominative and accusative singular, and *-āl-* in all other cases.

READING LESSON

248. DĒ POTESTĀTE RŌMĀNĀ

In principiō Rōma erat parva urbs. Bellō potestātem augēbat. Prīmō proelia cum gentibus proximīs gerēbantur. Virtūs gentium proximārum erat magna sed Rōmānī erant victōrēs. Tandem Rōma erat domina Italiae.



Militēs Karthāginiēnsēs

Crossing the Alps on the way to invade Italy

Trāns mare habitābant Karthāginiēnsēs. Erant hostēs Rōmānōrum. Magnam classem habēbant; itaque mare regēbant. Magnum numerum nāvium longārum habēbant et bellum amābant. Erant longa bella inter Rōmānōs et Karthāginiēnsēs; magna erat caedēs. Tandem Rōmānī erant victōrēs; itaque Rōma erat domina maris.

Tum in Asiā et in Galliā et in Britanniā bella gerēbantur. Tandem Asia, Gallia, Britannia in Rōmae potestāte erant. Sic terrā marīque potestās Rōmāna erat maxima.

Nōtā bene

Karthāginiēnsēs, *the Carthaginians, people of Carthage.*

VOCABULARY XXVII

absum, abesse, <i>be distant, be absent</i>	*iūs, iūris, n., <i>right, justice</i> longē, adv., <i>far</i>
*appellō, appellāre, <i>call by name, address, name, en- title, call</i>	*mare, maris, n., <i>sea (gen. pl. lacking)</i>
*augeō, augēre, <i>increase, en- large</i>	*nāvis, nāvis, nāvium, f., <i>ship</i>
*caedēs, caedis, caedium, f., <i>slaughter, massacre</i>	*nisi, conj., <i>unless, if . . . not</i>
*cīvis, cīvis, cīvium, m. or f., <i>citizen</i>	ōs, ōris, n., <i>mouth, face</i>
*classis, classis, classium, f., <i>fleet; class</i>	*potestās, potestātis, f., <i>power, ability</i>
*flūmen, flūminis, n., <i>river</i>	primō, adv., <i>at first</i>
*fluō, fluere, <i>flow</i>	ruīna, -ae, f., <i>ruin</i>
*gēns, gentis, gentium, f., <i>race, tribe</i>	superbus, -a, -um, <i>haughty, proud</i>
*hostis, hostis, hostium, m., <i>an enemy; in pl., the enemy</i>	Tiberis, Tiberis, m., <i>Tiber</i> (see § 567)
inviolātus, -a, -um, <i>inviola- ble, unhurt</i>	*trāns, prep. (with acc.), <i>across, over</i>
	*urbs, urbis, urbium, f., <i>city</i>
	viātor, viātōris, m., <i>traveler, wayfarer</i>

Idioms

nāvis longa, *warship*terrā marique, *on land and sea, by land and sea*

249.

LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Tell the meaning of the adjectives in the following phrases:
*civil government, oral recitation, marine painting, hostile
 look, fluent speaker.*



Via antiqua Pompeiāna

Streets in ancient Rome must have been much like this. Notice the stepping-stones for pedestrians to cross the street. Why were they necessary?

DRILL

I. *Decline the Latin expressions for the following:*

Small head, large tribe, proud enemy, beautiful animal, weary traveler, warship.

II. *Give the nominative and genitive singular, the gender, and the nominative and genitive plural, of the Latin nouns with the following meanings:*

hostage	name	courage	body
law	foot	sun	head
mother	journey	winter	summer
custom	sea	fleet	slaughter



Fistula

This old lead pipe was unearthed during recent excavations in Rome. The inscription on it (with abbreviated words expanded) reads as follows: IMP(ERATORIS) DOMITIANI CAESAR(IS) AUG(USTI) SUB CURA EUTYCHI L(IBERTI) PROC(URATORIS) FEC(IT) HYMNUS CAESAR(IS) N(OSTRI) SER(VUS)

The inscription may be translated thus: Of (Belonging to) the Emperor Domitian Caesar Augustus, under the care of Eutychus, Freedman, Procurator (*i.e.*, Eutychus was boss). Hymnus, slave of our Caesar, made it (the lead pipe)

III. Supply the proper case endings:

1. Classis host.... est in mar....
2. Rōma gent.... (*pl.*) proxim.... vincet.
3. Iūr.... civ.... diligenter servābantur.
4. In urb.... Rōm.... videntur multī civ....
5. Puerī animāl.... magn.... libenter vident.
6. Ruīn.... urb.... Rōmānārum viātōrēs libenter vident.

EXERCISE XXVII

Write in Latin:

1. At first the Romans waged many battles with the near-by tribes and there was great slaughter. 2. Then warships were built and the fleet fought with the enemy on the sea. 3. Thus the Roman power was increased on land and sea by many wars. 4. The Romans were proud because

Rome was called the mistress of both land and sea. 5. Unless a man was a Roman citizen, (his) rights were not inviolable.

6. The city of Rome is not far from the sea. 7. The river Tiber divides the city and flows into the sea. 8. Near the mouth of the Tiber are the ruins of an ancient city. 9. Every year many travelers sail across the sea to Italy. 10. Perhaps your teacher will talk about the great city of Rome.

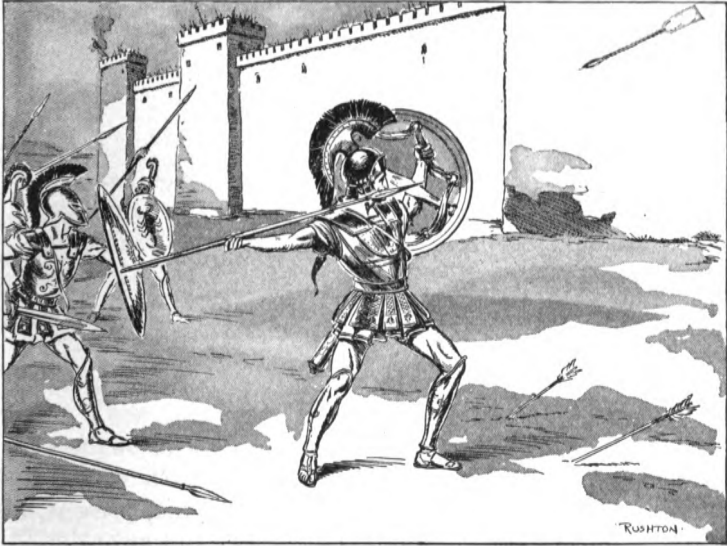


Nummī sociōrum rebellantium

When Julius Caesar was growing up, many Italian cities revolted against Rome. They planned to form an Italian confederation in which Rome would have the same rank as the other cities. Their ambition is shown in these coins (twice their actual size), which they issued while the war was being fought. On the coin to the right, a bull, the symbol of Italy, is seen goring the Roman wolf. The coin to the left represents the oath which the allies took to be faithful to each other against Rome. Eight warriors are pictured taking an oath by touching their spears to the body of a pig held by the kneeling warrior in the center. The country of the confederated allies was called "Italia"; this was the earliest use of the name

CHAPTER XXVIII

PERFECT ACTIVE, ALL CONJUGATIONS AND SUM



250.

PUERĪ ET PATER

“Cūr, Aule, librum domum portāvistī?” rogāvit Cornēlius ubi puerī ā lūdō vērunt. “Librum domum portāvi quod fābulam in lūdō lēgī et maximē amāvi,” respondit Aulus. “Num nōs fābulam audīvimus, Aule?” rogāverunt parvī puerī. “Fortasse, frātrēs parvī, fābulam audīvistis,” respondit Aulus. “Quam fābulam lēgistī, Aule?” “Aulus fābulam dē Aenēā et Ascaniō lēgit,” clāmāvit Lūcius. “Nōs quoque, puerī,” inquit Cornēlius, “fābulam dē Aenēā lēgimus.” “Pater mē, adulēscētem,” inquit Mārcus,

(215)

"Athēnās misit. Ibi tabulam dē Aenēā et sociīs vidī."
 "Vōs, puerī," inquit Cornēlius, "clāram fābulam dē prīncipiīs Rōmae lēgistis. Semper puerī Rōmānī fābulam dē Aenēā lēgērunt."

Nōtā bene

Mē, *me*, acc. case of *ego*; *quam*, *what? which?* (f. acc.).

Aenēās is declined like nouns of the first declension, except in the nominative singular. See main vocabulary.

251. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Quid rogāvit Cornēlius? 2. Quid Cornēliō respondit Aulus? 3. Quid rogāvērunt parvī puerī? 4. Quid parvīs puerīs respondit Aulus? 5. Quam fābulam lēgērunt puerī? 6. Quō Mārcum pater misit? 7. Quid vidit Mārcus? 8. Nōne puerī libenter fābulam dē Aenēā lēgērunt?

DISCUSSION

252. In the story *Puerī et Pater*, list the forms of the verb *legō* as they appear. Note that the base, to which the endings are added, is *lēg-*. To what time, past, present, or future, do these forms refer? Do they point out a continued, habitual, or repeated act, or do they refer to a single finished act? Does the subject of each verb act, or is it acted upon?

253. These forms constitute a tense called the *perfect*, or *present perfect*, tense. A verb in the perfect refers to a single act, now completed, or perfected; whence the name of the tense. The perfect tense differs from the imperfect tense because it refers to a single completed act, while the imperfect tense refers to repeated, continued, or habitual action in the past; as, *legēbat*, *he was reading, he used to read*; *lēgit*, *he read, he has read*.



Puerī fābulam audiunt

254. Read the forms as listed. What part of the verb is the same in all the forms? What are the endings that are added to this part? Are the endings the regular personal endings?

The endings of the perfect active indicative belong to that tense alone and differ from the endings of the other tenses. They are called the *characteristic* endings of the perfect tense, and are added to the *perfect stem* of the verb.

255. Learn the following paradigm of the perfect tense of *legō*, perfect stem *lēg-*:

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>lēgī</i>	<i>lēgimus</i>
<i>lēgistī</i>	<i>lēgistis</i>
<i>lēgit</i>	<i>lēgērunt</i>

256. The perfect stem of all verbs is found from the third principal part. Latin verbs have four principal parts, chosen so as to show the stems from which all the verb forms are made. The principal parts of *legō* are:

<i>Present</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Perfect</i>
<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Passive Participle</i>
legō	legere	lēgī	lēctus

257. The perfect stem is found by dropping *-ī* from the perfect indicative form, usually given as one of the principal parts; as, *lēgī*, *perfect stem*, *lēg-*. Upon this perfect stem are formed all the tenses of the perfect system; that is, all the tenses referring to completed action. Upon the present stem are formed all the tenses of the present system; that is, all the tenses referring to incompleted action.

258. Hereafter in the vocabulary the four principal parts of the verbs will be given and should be carefully learned. The three stems of each verb may be found from the principal parts. The forms chosen as principal parts are as follows:

1. *the present indicative active first person singular*
2. *the present active infinitive*
3. *the perfect indicative active first person singular*
4. *the perfect passive participle*

259. The rules for forming the stems are as follows:

1. The *present stem* is found by dropping the *-re* from the present infinitive.
2. The *perfect stem* is found by dropping the *-ī* from the perfect indicative.
3. The *participial stem* is found by dropping the *-us* from the perfect passive participle.

DRILL

I. Learn the principal parts of the following verbs:

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Perf. Pass. Part.
portō	portāre	portāvī	portātus
videō	vidēre	vīdī	vīsus
mittō	mittere	mīsī	missus
audiō	audīre	audīvī	audītus

These forms are often given abbreviated, as follows: portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus; mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus; audiō, -ire, -īvī, -ītus.

II. Write the three stems of each of the above verbs and tell how they are found.

260. When there is no perfect passive participle, the future active participle, if there is one, is given as the fourth principal part; as, *sum, esse, fui, futūrus*.

261. Learn the following paradigms. The translations are in the form *I have carried, I carried, I did carry*, etc.

Perfect Indicative Active

First Conjugation	Second Conjugation	Third Conjugation
portāvī	vīdī	mīsī
portāvistī	vīdistī	mīsistī
portāvit	vīdit	mīsīt
portāvimus	vīdimus	mīsimus
portāvistis	vīdistis	mīsistis
portāvērunt	vīdērunt	mīsērunt

Fourth Conjugation

The verb *sum*

audīvī	fui
audīvistī	fuistī
audīvit	fuit
audīvimus	fuiamus
audīvistis	fuistis
audīvērunt	fuērunt

RULE

262. The perfect tense represents an act as now completed.

READING LESSON



263. DĒ RŌMAE PRĪNCIPĪS I

Aenēās erat dux clārus et pius. Virtūs Aenēae erat magna. Ubi Graecī magnīs ignibus Troiam dēlēvērunt, cum uxōre Creūsā et filiō Ascaniō et patre Anchisā ex urbe fūgit. Pater erat aeger et invalidus; itaque Aenēās umeris patrem ad ōram maritimam portāvit. Ascanium, parvum filium, dextrā dūxit; uxor post Aenēam properāvit. Per multa tēla et magnōs ignēs properāvērunt et tandem ad ōram pervēnērunt. Ibi multī hominēs fuērunt. Sed Creūsa āfuit. Aenēās maximē lacrimāvit et clāmāvit: "Ubi, Creūsa, es? Quō cucurristi? Cūr tū sociōs reli-

quisti? Num meam Creūsam āmīsī? Fātane uxōrem rapuērunt? Vidistisne, socii, meam uxōrem?" Creūsa, autem, nōn respondit. Aenēās patrem et filiū reliquit et ad urbem cucurrit. Uxōrem nōn invēnit. Tandem miser ad sociōs revēnit. Tum nāvēs aedificāvit. Postea Aenēās sociique ad Italiam nāvigāvērunt.

Nōtā bene

Anchīsēs, *Anchises*, the father of Aeneas. For inflection, see main vocabulary.

VOCABULARY XXVIII

- | | |
|--|--|
| *adulēscēns, adulēscētis, m., <i>youth, young man</i> | *perveniō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventūrus, <i>arrive, come up</i> |
| *āmīttō, āmittere, āmīsī, āmissus, <i>lose, send away</i> | pius, -a, -um, <i>devoted to the gods</i> |
| *autem, conj., <i>however, but, furthermore</i> (postpositive) | *rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus, <i>snatch, seize, carry off by force, steal</i> |
| *dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētus, <i>destroy</i> | reveniō, revenīre, revēnī, reventūrus, <i>return, come back</i> |
| fātum, -ī, n., <i>fate</i> ; Fāta, -ōrum, n. pl., <i>the Fates</i> | tabula, -ae, f., <i>picture, painting</i> |
| *fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus, <i>flee</i> | *ubi, conj., <i>when</i> (used with perf. ind., to denote a single past act) |
| *ignis, ignis, ignium, m., <i>fire</i> | umerus, -ī, m., <i>shoulder</i> |
| invalidus, -a, -um, <i>weak</i> | uxor, uxōris, f., <i>wife</i> |
| *inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventus, <i>find, discover</i> | |
| *maritimus, -a, -um, <i>pertaining to the sea, of the sea</i> | |

Nōtā bene

Observe that the penult in *maritimus* is short, so that the accent is on the antepenult: *ma-ri'ti-mus*.

264.

LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Pick out the Latin words in the vocabulary with which the following words are associated: *fugitive, ignite, invalid, invent, revenue.*

DRILL

I. *Translate the following:*

incendimus
rapuit
nāvigāvit
fūgistī
revēnī
fuimus
fuistis
respondistī
pervēnērunt
dūxērunt
cucurrērunt
dēlēvī

II. *Give in Latin:*

you (*pl.*) have lost,
they fled, he seized,

I returned, we shouted, they have burned, I was, you (*sing.*)
have run, we remained, he has led.



Aenēās cum patre et filiō

III. *Give the principal parts and the three stems of the following:*

dō	moneō	dēleō	maneō
habeō	capiō	gerō	agō
faciō	impediō	aperiō	interficiō

EXERCISE XXVIII

Write in Latin:

1. When great fires destroyed Troy, the Trojans fled to the seashore. 2. Aeneas, devoted to the gods, carried his weak father on his shoulders. 3. His wife Creusa will not arrive at the seashore. 4. Will the Fates seize the wretched Creusa? 5. Aeneas returned to the city; however, he did not find his wife. 6. And so he lost his wife and home. 7. Cornelius has often told his sons the story of the beginnings of the Roman race. 8. The youth Marcus saw pictures of the Trojans in Athens.



In hōc nummō Aenēam vidēmus

Both sides of the coin are shown here in twice actual size. On one side Aeneas is represented carrying his father from Troy. On the other is the head of Venus, who, according to legend, was the mother of Aeneas

CHAPTER XXIX.

ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION OF TIME PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT ACTIVE OF ALL CONJUGATIONS AND SUM



265. DĒ RŌMAE PRĪNCIPĪS II

Aenēās et socii septem annōs per varia maria et diversās
had wandered
terrās errāverant. Tandem Iūnō, rēgina deōrum, magnā
tempestāte Troiānōs ad ōrās Āfricae pepulit. Iūnō Troiānōs
timēbat et ab Italiā arcēbat. Iūnō sic putābat: “Nisi
Troiānī in Italiam pervēnerint, numquam erit gēns Rōmāna.”

(224)

Quod Didō, rēgina Karthāginis, Troiānōs benignē accēperat et maximē adiūverat, Aenēās rēginam amāvit. Multōs mēnsēs Karthāgine mānsit. Tandem Mercurius, deōrum nūntius, ad Aenēam mandāta ā patre deōrum portāvit. Sic Aenēam dē fātis admonuit. Tum Aenēās magnō cum studiō classem comparāvit.

Quod Didō cōnsilia Troiānōrum cognōverat, fuit irāta et Aenēae clāmāvit: "Sī tū mē ^{me shall have deserted} *reliqueris*, semper miser eris. Sī tū ad Italiam fūgeris, ego mē ^{myself} interficiam." Aenēās respondit: "Ad Italiam nōn ultrō properō. Fāta mē admonuērunt." Postea Aenēās et Ascanius ad Italiam nāvigāvērunt et ibi gentem Rōmānam cōstituērunt.

266. Respondē Latinē:

1. Quam diū Aenēās et socii errāverant? 2. Quō Iūnō Troiānōs pepulit? 3. Quid Iūnō putābat?

4. Cūr Aenēās rēginam amāvit? 5. Quam diū Karthāgine mānsit? 6. Quid ēgit Mercurius?

7. Cūr Didō irāta fuit? 8. Quid clāmāvit Didō?

Nōtā bene

Quam diū, *how long?*

DISCUSSION

267. In the sentence Aenēās et socii septem annōs per varia maria et diversās terrās errāverant, what do the words *septem annōs* tell? What question do they answer? In what case is the noun *annōs*? In the sentence Aenēās Karthāgine multōs mēnsēs mānsit, what do the words *multōs mēnsēs* tell? What question do they answer? Both the phrases *septem annōs* and *multōs mēnsēs* answer the question *how long?* and are in the accusative case. The accusative used in this way is called the *accusative of duration of time*.

Observe that this same construction is used in English. In the sentence *They had been wandering seven years*, *years* is just as truly an accusative of duration of time as the Latin *annōis*. Many persons explain *years*, wrongly, as the object of the omitted preposition *for*: *They had wandered (for) many years*.



Parcae

The Fates were three sisters, one of whom was thought of as spinning the material of human destiny, one as twisting it into threads representing individual human lives, and one as cutting the threads when destiny was fulfilled. Although the Fates were usually referred to as *Parcae* (goddesses of fate), they were sometimes also called *Fāta* (see Lesson XXVIII)

268. In the sentence *Quod Didō Troiānōs benignē accēperat*, *Aenēās rēginam amāvit*, to what time do both verbs refer? Do the verbs refer to acts that take place at the same time or does the act of one verb take place before the other? Which one takes place first? Since the verb *accēperat* denotes an act in the past which takes place before the time of the perfect tense *amāvit*, it is said to be in the *past perfect* or *pluperfect tense*, and the clause is

translated *Since Dido had received the Trojans kindly*. Upon what stem is *accēperat* made? What is added to the stem to make this form?

269. In the sentence *Sī tū mē reliqueris, semper miser eris*, to what time do the verbs refer? Do the verbs refer to acts that take place at the same time or does the act of one take place before the other? Which one takes place first? Since the verb *reliqueris* refers to an act that takes place in the future and is completed before the time of the future tense *eris*, it is called the *future perfect tense*, and the clause is translated, literally, *If you shall have deserted me*, or, in more idiomatic English, *If you desert me*. Upon what stem is *reliqueris* made? What is added to the stem to make this form? List other verbs in the story in the pluperfect and future perfect tenses.

270. The pluperfect and future perfect tenses are made upon the perfect stem. The tense sign of the pluperfect tense is *-erā-* and the tense sign of the future perfect tense is *-eri-*. The pluperfect tense of any verb is composed of the perfect stem plus the sign *-erā-* plus the personal endings; as, *portāv-erā-s*, *you had carried*. In the tense sign *-erā-* the *a* remains long only in the second person singular and in the first and second persons plural. The future perfect tense is composed of the perfect stem plus the tense sign *-eri-* plus the personal endings; as, *portāv-eri-t*, *he will have carried*. Note, however, that, just as in the future tense of the first and second conjugations, the vowel of the tense sign combines with the ending of the first person singular to form *-ō*. In the third person plural, however, the vowel before the ending *-nt* is *i*.

271. The sentence *Sī tū mē reliqueris . . .*, *If you shall have deserted me . . .*, shows that Latin is more precise than English in distinguishing between simple future action and action already completed at a specified time in the future. Therefore the future perfect is a common Latin tense, but is not very common in English. In English the present or the future is likely to be used: *If you desert me*.

RULES

272. *The accusative of duration of time.* The accusative may be used to express duration of time.

273. The pluperfect tense expresses a past action which has been completed at or before a given past time.

274. The future perfect tense expresses a future action completed at or before a given future time.

275. Learn the following paradigms of the pluperfect and future perfect tenses of *portō*, *videō*, *mittō*, *audiō*, and *sum*. The translations are in the form *I had carried*, etc., *I had been*, for the pluperfect; and *I shall have carried*, etc., *I shall have been*, for the future perfect.

Pluperfect

<i>portāveram</i>	<i>vīderam</i>	<i>mīseram</i>	<i>audīveram</i>	<i>fueram</i>
<i>portāverās</i>	<i>vīderās</i>	<i>mīserās</i>	<i>audīverās</i>	<i>fuerās</i>
<i>portāverat</i>	<i>vīderat</i>	<i>mīserat</i>	<i>audīverat</i>	<i>fuerat</i>
<i>portāverāmus</i>	<i>vīderāmus</i>	<i>mīserāmus</i>	<i>audīverāmus</i>	<i>fuerāmus</i>
<i>portāverātis</i>	<i>vīderātis</i>	<i>mīserātis</i>	<i>audīverātis</i>	<i>fuerātis</i>
<i>portāverant</i>	<i>vīderant</i>	<i>mīserant</i>	<i>audīverant</i>	<i>fuerant</i>

Future Perfect

<i>portāverō</i>	<i>vīderō</i>	<i>mīserō</i>	<i>audīverō</i>	<i>fuerō</i>
<i>portāveris</i>	<i>vīderis</i>	<i>mīseris</i>	<i>audīveris</i>	<i>fueris</i>
<i>portāverit</i>	<i>vīderit</i>	<i>mīserit</i>	<i>audīverit</i>	<i>fuerit</i>
<i>portāverimus</i>	<i>vīderimus</i>	<i>mīserimus</i>	<i>audīverimus</i>	<i>fuerimus</i>
<i>portāveritis</i>	<i>vīderitis</i>	<i>mīseritis</i>	<i>audīveritis</i>	<i>fueritis</i>
<i>portāverint</i>	<i>vīderint</i>	<i>mīserint</i>	<i>audīverint</i>	<i>fuerint</i>

276. A *synopsis* of a verb is a list of the forms in a given person and number through all the tenses, in order. Thus for *portō* in the first person singular indicative active the synopsis is *portō*, *portābam*, *portābō*, *portāvī*, *portāveram*, *portāverō*; for *dō* in the third person, *dat*, *dabat*, *dabit*, *dedit*, *dederat*, *dederit*.

VOCABULARY XXIX

- **adiuvō, adiuvāre, adiūvī, adiūtus, aid, help, assist*
admoneō, admonēre, ad-monuī, admonitus, advise, admonish
- **annus, -ī, m., year*
arceō, arcēre, arcuī, —, hold at a distance, keep away, hold off
benignē, adv., kindly
- **cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus, learn about, understand*
- **comparō, comparāre, comparāvī, comparātus, make ready, set in order, prepare; procure*
- **cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstitui, cōstitutus, establish, station; decide*
- Didō, Didōnis, f., Dido, queen of Carthage*
- **dīversus, -a, -um, different, diverse, various*
errō, errāre, errāvī, errātus, wander, roam
- Karthāgō, Karthāginis, f., Carthage, a city of northern Africa*
- **mandātum, -ī, n., command, order*
- **mēnsis, mēnsis, mēnsium, m., month*
- **putō, putāre, putāvī, putātus, consider, think*
rēgina, -ae, f., queen
- **tempestās, tempestātis, f., storm; weather*
ultrō, adv., voluntarily
varius, -a, -um, various

277.

LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Explain the meaning of the italicized words:

Just before the *annual* election, the various candidates were *admonished* to obey the *mandates* of the law, and avoid the *errors* of their predecessors.

DRILL

I. Translate:

sumus	erāmus	fuius	fuerāmus
errātis	errābātis	errāvistis	errāveritis
cognōscō	cognōvī	cognōscēbam	cognōveram
cōstituunt	cōstituent	cōstituērunt	cōstituerint

II. *Give in Latin:* we kept away, they had understood, you (*sing.*) have wandered, you (*pl.*) will have wandered, he established, they are, they were, they had been, they have been.

III. *Give a synopsis of each of the following verbs in the indicative active, in the person and number designated:*



Iūnō, rēgīna deōrum

Juno pursued the Trojans with her hatred

regō, second person singular
fugiō, third person plural
inveniō, first person plural
moneō, first person singular
errō, third person singular
sum, second person plural

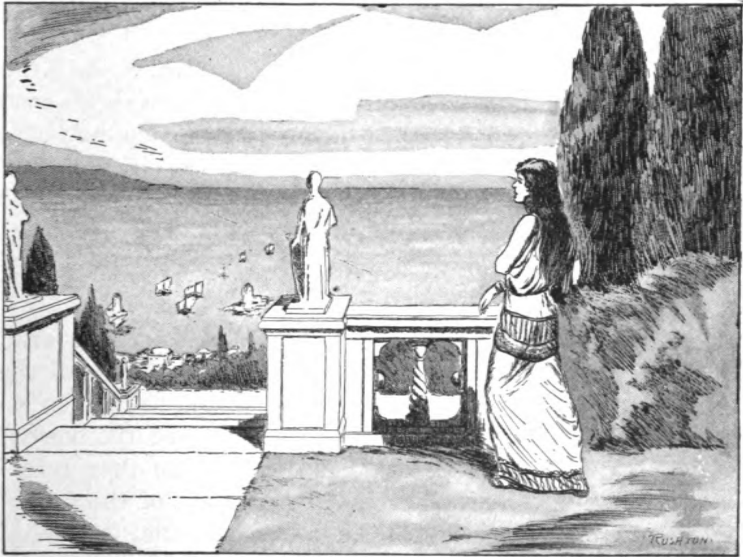
EXERCISE XXIX

Write in Latin:

1. The Trojans had wandered for many years, but had not yet established the Roman race. 2. For the angry queen of the gods had driven Aeneas and his companions into diverse seas. 3. She was keeping the Trojans from Italy with a great storm. 4. If Dido, queen of Carthage, receives (will have received) the Trojans kindly, they will voluntarily remain in Africa for many months. 5. Mercury had come to Aeneas and had brought various commands from the king of the gods. 6. The fleet will be prepared because Mercury has warned Aeneas. 7. Will Dido learn (about) the plans of Aeneas? 8. Dido thought thus: "Aeneas will not leave my city, because I have helped the Trojans."

CHAPTER XXX

THE PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE OF ALL CONJUGATIONS



278.

DĒ AENĒĀ PIŌ

Quod Troia ā Graecis *incēnsa erat*, Troiānī in partēs diversās *pulsī sunt*. Multī interfectī sunt, sed Aenēās et socii ad Italiam *fūgērunt*. In Āfricā ā rēgīnā Karthāginis adiūtī sunt. Aenēās rēgīnae dixerat: “Sī nōs Troiānī in urbem tuam bene *acceptī erimus*, et sī auxilium ad sociōs meōs *missum erit*, nōmen tuum semper laudābitur.”

(231)

Itaque Troiānī ā rēgīnā adiūtī erant et nōmen rēgīnae diū laudābātur.

Tandem nāvēs Troiānae comparātae sunt quod Aenēās ā Mercuriō admonitus erat. Sed cōnsilia Aenēae ā rēgīnā audīta erant et Didō irāta erat. Aenēās graviter accūsātus est; rēgīnam tamen reliquit. Iterum Troiānī ā Fātis in mare pulsī sunt. Misera Didō sē interfēcit quod relicta erat. Sed Aenēās et sociī laeti ad Italiam nāvīgāvērunt.

279. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Cūr Troiānī in partēs diversās pulsī sunt? 2. Num Aenēās et sociī interfectī sunt? 3. Quō Aenēās et sociī fūgērunt? 4. Ā quō Aenēās adiūtus est? 5. Quid Aenēās rēgīnae dixerat? 6. Nōne auxilium ad sociōs missum erat? 7. Cūr nāvēs Troiānae comparātae sunt? 8. Cūr Didō irāta erat? 9. Cūr Didō sē interfēcit? 10. Quid Aenēās et sociī ēgērunt?

DISCUSSION

280. In the sentence *Quod Troia ā Graecīs incēnsa erat, Troiānī in partēs diversās pulsī sunt*, do the subjects of the verbs themselves perform the action of the verbs, or do they receive the action? In what voice are the verbs? To what time—past, present, or future—do they refer? Does the action of one take place before that of the other? Which one takes place first? Then in what tense is *incēnsa erat*? What is the form *incēnsa*? With what is it combined to make the pluperfect passive? In what tense is *pulsī sunt*? What is the form *pulsī*? With what is it combined to make the perfect passive?

In the sentence *Sī nōs Troiānī in urbem tuam bene acceptī erimus, et sī auxilium ad sociōs meōs missum erit, nōmen tuum semper laudābitur*, are the verbs active or passive? Why? To what time do they refer? Do they all take place at the same time? Explain the difference in time.



§ 281

In what te
What form
forms com

281. Th
the passiv
combining
imperfect,
these form
and case v
erat; Troi
accūsātus e

282. Lea
tenses. Th

Perfect:
Pluperf
Future F

Perf
portātu
portātu
portātu
portātu
portāti
portāti
portāti

283. The
in the othe
way, by add
of the verb

Second C
Third C
etc.
Fourth C
erō, etc.

In what tense are the verbs **accepti erimus** and **missum erit**? What forms are **incēnsi** and **missum**? With what are these forms combined to make the future perfect passive?

281. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses of the passive voice of verbs of all conjugations are made by combining the perfect passive participle with the present, imperfect, and future tenses of **sum** respectively. In all these forms the participle must agree in gender, number, and case with the subject of the verb; as, **Troia incēnsa erat**; **Troiānī pulsī sunt**; **auxilium missum erit**; **Aenēās accūsātus est**.

282. Learn the paradigms of the passive in the perfect tenses. The translations are in the following form:

Perfect: portātus sum, I was carried, I have been carried

Pluperfect: portātus eram, I had been carried

Future Perfect: portātus erō, I shall have been carried

<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>	<i>Future Perfect</i>
portātus sum	portātus eram	portātus erō
portātus es	portātus erās	portātus eris
portātus est	portātus erat	portātus erit
portātī sumus	portātī erāmus	portātī erimus
portātī estis	portātī erātis	portātī eritis
portātī sunt	portātī erant	portātī erunt

283. The verb **portō** is in the first conjugation; but verbs in the other conjugations are inflected in exactly the same way, by adding the proper forms of **sum** to the past participle of the verb to be inflected.

Second Conjugation: visus sum, visus eram, visus erō, etc.

Third Conjugation: missus sum, missus eram, missus erō, etc.

Fourth Conjugation: auditus sum, auditus eram, auditus erō, etc.

READING LESSON

284. AENĒAS IN ITALIAM VENIT

Postquam Aenĕās et socii Karthāginem reliquērunt, ad Italiam pervēnērunt. Multi Italiae incolae Troiānis erant inimici, quod aliēni erant. Sed Latīnus, rēx Laurenti, Troiānōs benignē accēperat.

Lāvīnia, Latīni filia, ā Turnō amāta est. Turnus erat rēx



Vergilius

The story of Aeneas as we know it today was written by the Roman poet Vergil nearly two thousand years ago. This old manuscript portrait represents the poet seated, tablet in hand, beside a reading desk. The *capsa*, or book chest, is beside him

Rutulōrum. Turnus Aenĕām timēbat quod Aenĕās ā Latīnō benignē acceptus erat. Turnus sic putābat: “Si pulchra Lāvīnia ab Aenĕā vīsa erit, et amāta erit, coniūnx Turnō nōn dabitur.” Itaque bellum miserum inter Aenĕām et Turnum gestum est. Multi hominēs utrimque interfecti sunt. Tandem Turnus in proeliō cecidit.

Lāvīnia ab Aenĕā in mātīmōnium ducta est, et oppidum Lāvīnium conditum est. Ibi Aenĕās paucōs annōs rēgnābat. Postea Aenĕās ā Rutulīs occisus est. Tum Ascanius,

Aenēae filius, rēgnābat. Ascanius Albam Longam, urbem clāram, condidit. Albae Longae gēns Troiāna trecentōs annōs rēgnābat. Tandem Rōmulus, filius Rhēae Silviae et Mārtis, Rōmam condidit. Sic gēns Rōmāna cōstitutā est.

VOCABULARY XXX

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>accuse, reproach</i>	Lāvīnium, Lāvīnī, n., <i>Lavinium</i> , a city of Latium, founded by Aeneas
*aliēnus, -a, -um, <i>foreign, strange</i> ; as a noun, aliēnus, -ī, m., a stranger	mātrimōnium, mātrimōnī, n., <i>marriage</i>
*cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsūrus, <i>fall, fall down</i>	*occidō, -ere, occidī, occisus, <i>kill, slay, cut down</i>
condō, -ere, condidī, conditus, <i>found, establish</i>	*pars, partis, partium, f., <i>part; direction</i>
coniūnx, coniugis, m. or f., <i>husband; wife</i>	*postquam, conj., <i>after</i> (used with perfect indicative)
*graviter, adv., <i>violently, hard</i>	rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>reign, rule</i>
*inimīcus, -a, -um, <i>unfriendly, hostile</i>	trecentī, -ae, -a, <i>three hundred</i>
Laurentum, -ī, n., <i>Laurentum</i> , a town in Latium, where Latinus lived	utrimque, adv., <i>on both sides, from each side</i>

Idiom

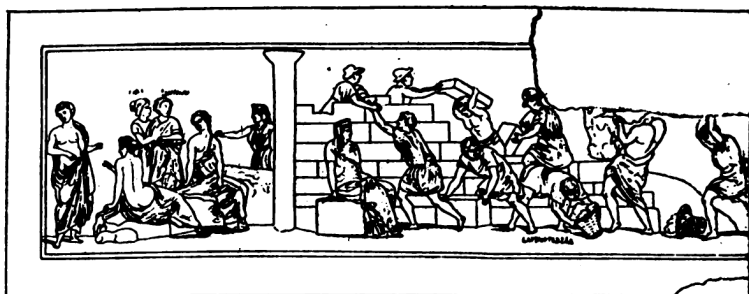
in mātrimōnium dūcere, *to marry*

285.

LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. Pick out the Latin words in the vocabulary with which the following words are associated: *alien, cadence, inimical, partial*.

II. *Dido*. 'To cut a dido' means to cut a caper, play a prank, or do an extravagant thing. This use of the word is sometimes explained from a story of the founding of Carthage. When Dido asked Iarbas, a Numidian prince,



Troïāni Lāvīnium condunt

This picture and the one on the opposite page are drawn from an old Roman fresco, now partly destroyed. The fresco showed various scenes from the founding of Lavinium, Alba Longa, and Rome. Workmen are laying the city walls. Lavinia is seated facing you in the left corner of the picture

for enough land to found a city, he did not wish to give it to her, but disliked to make a definite refusal. So he told her that she might have as much land as she could cover with a bull's hide. Dido outwitted him by having the bull's hide cut up into long thin strips with which she inclosed a large tract of land; and on this land she was able to build her city.

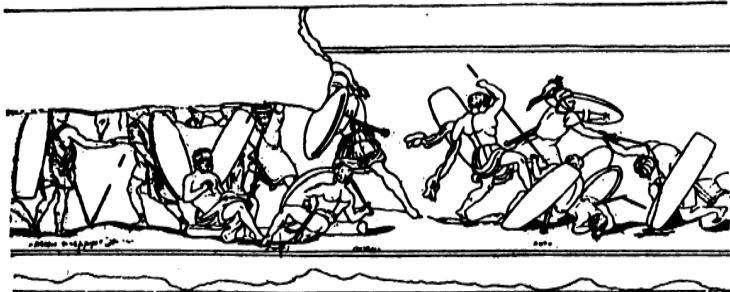
DRILL

I. Write in Latin:

She had been received, she had received; they will have been helped, they will have helped, they will help; he has killed, he has been killed, he was killing; we shall fall, we shall have fallen; they were establishing, they had established, they had been established; you were ruling, you had ruled, you will have ruled.

II. Write a synopsis in the active and passive of each of the following verbs, in the person and number designated, and give the English meaning of each form:

1. accūsō, in the second person plural
2. occīdō, in the third person plural



Troiānī Lāvīnium condunt

In this part of the fresco we see the fighting between the Trojans and the Latins. Aeneas, wearing a crested helmet, may be seen charging an enemy, probably Turnus, whose figure is now defaced

3. moneō, in the third person singular
4. impediō, in the first person plural
5. iaciō, in the second person singular

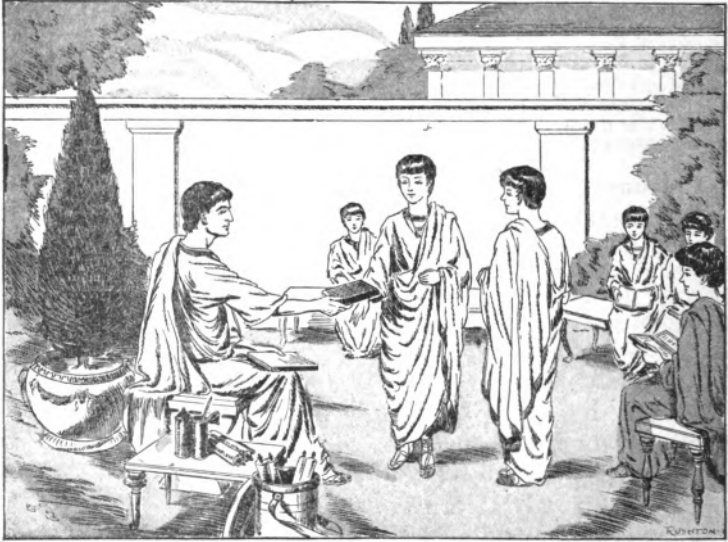
EXERCISE XXX

Write in Latin:

1. The inhabitants of Troy had been driven in many directions by the Greeks. 2. The Trojans remained in Carthage for many months. 3. They fled from Carthage because they had been warned by the Fates. 4. Aeneas had thought: "If I am received (shall have been received) kindly, I shall remain in Italy and establish a new race." 5. But because they were strangers, the Trojans were not kindly received by the unfriendly inhabitants of Italy. 6. Men from each side fought hard and fell in battle. 7. Turnus violently reproached the Trojan leader. 8. After Turnus had been killed in battle, Aeneas married Lavinia, daughter of Latinus. 9. Latinus had founded Laurentum, but Aeneas and his wife were founding Lavinium. 10. The Trojan race will rule at Alba Longa for three hundred years.

CHAPTER XXXI

PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS; GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE, GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES; POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES



286. IN LŪDŌ

Hodiē Sextus magnā cum celeritāte in lūdum venit, quod magister pueris praemia dabit. In lūdō Orbilius mox Sextum ad sē vocat et dīcit: “Herī, Sexte, ego tē laudāvī quod tū fābulam pulchram dē Rōmā scripserās. Rōma mihi est cāra et fābula tua mē dēlectāvit. Itaque hodiē praemium tibi ā mē datur. Praemium tuum est novus stilus.” Sextus

respondet, “Tibi, magister, grātiās agō,” et stilum cum

(238)

gaudiō accipit. "Stilus novus mihi est maximē acceptus. Nunc ego magnā diligentiā scribam." Sextus amicis suis stilum novum dēmōnstrat.

Tum Orbilius Lūcium et Aulum ad sē vocat, "Herī, mei puerī," inquit, "vōs quoque laudāvimus. Vōs nōbīs fābulam dē Aenēā et principiis Rōmae nārrāvistis. Fābulae vestrae nōs dēlectāvērunt et ā nōbīs laudātae sunt. Vōbīs quoque praemia dō. Praemia vestra sunt librī. In libris sunt fābulae dē Rōmānis clāris. Fortasse *pars fābulārum* nōbīs ā vōbīs nārrābitur." Puerī laeti librōs suōs accipiunt. "Nōs," inquit Lūcius, "tibi grātiās agimus; libenter librōs novōs legimus."

Which one of us

"*Quis nostrum* fābulās hodiē nārrābit?" Titus magis-

Part (Some) of you

trum rogat. "Pars vestrum fābulās nārrābit et pars vestrum fābulās scribet. Parvī puerī fābulās nārrābunt," respondet Orbilius. "Nōnne nōs quoque, Orbili, ā tē laudābimur?"

You will not forget us (be forgetful of us), will you?

Num tū eris oblītus nostrī? Cupidī praemiōrum sumus. Nōnne nōbīs quoque praemia dabis?" rogat Titus. "Ego nōn erō oblītus vestrī, sī vōs mēcum diligenter labōrāveritis," respondet Orbilius. "Dē quō fābulam nārrābō?" rogat Titus. "Fābulam dē Aenēā nārrā," respondet Orbilius.

He was self-sacrificing

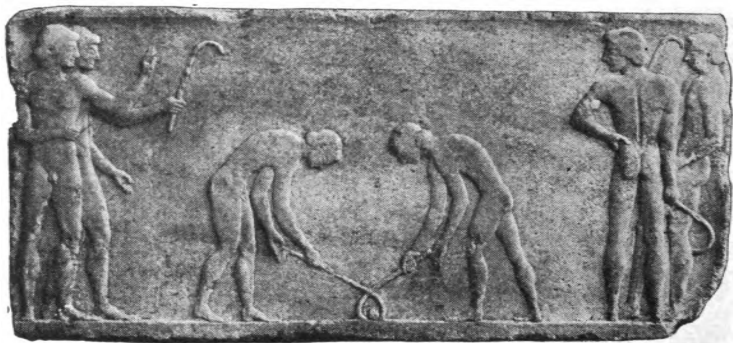
"Aenēās," inquit Titus, "pius erat. Suī erat oblītus et prō patriā sē dēvovēbat. Adultus, ego quoque mei oblītus erō." "Nōs nostrī semper oblītī erimus et prō patriā nōs dēvovēbimus," clāmant discipulī. "Certē," inquit Orbilius, "sed nunc libris Latinīs vōs dēvovēte."

Nōtā bene

Tibi, magister, grātiās agō, *thank you, sir; literally, to you, sir, I perform thanks.*

Suī erat oblītus, *he was self-sacrificing; literally, he was forgetful of self.*

Nārrā, *tell* (imperative); vōs dēvovēte, *devote yourselves.* (See § 163.)



Lūdus antiquus

The Romans learned from the Greeks a game which resembled in some ways our modern hockey. Notice the way in which the sticks are used in playing, as contrasted with the modern position

DISCUSSION

287. In the story In Lūdō are found many pronouns. *Ego* is called the pronoun of the *first* person because it refers to the person speaking. *Tū* is called the pronoun of the *second* person because it refers to the person spoken to. *Ego* and *tū* with their plurals *nōs* and *vōs* are called *personal* pronouns. Find as many cases as you can of these pronouns in the story.

288. The nominative forms of the personal pronouns are not often used except to give emphasis or make a contrast. For the genitive of the plural *nōs* there are two forms, *nostrī* and *nostrum*; for the genitive of *vōs* there are two forms, *vestrī* and *vestrum*. These genitive forms are not ordinarily used to denote possession; for this purpose the possessive adjectives *noster*, *our*, and *vester*, *your*, are used instead.

289. The genitive case often designates the whole of which a part is taken; as, *pars fābulārum*, *a part of the stories*. In the same way the genitive forms *nostrum* and

vestrum are used to designate the whole of which a part is taken; as, **quis nostrum**, *who (which one) of us?* **pars vestrum**, *part of you*. A genitive so used is called a *genitive of the whole*, or, often, a *partitive genitive*.

290. The genitive case is used with many adjectives meaning *desirous*, *forgetful*, *mindful*, *full*, and *skilled*; as, **cupidi praemiōrum sumus**, *we are desirous of prizes*. In the same way the genitive forms **nostrī** and **vestrī** are used with these adjectives; as, **oblītus nostrī**, *forgetful of us*; **oblītus vestrī**, *forgetful of you*. The genitive so used is called the *genitive with adjectives*.

291. **Sui**, **sibi**, **sē** (*acc.*) and **sē** (*abl.*) are the forms of the reflexive pronoun used in the third person only. It is called reflexive because it refers back to the subject of the sentence in which it is used. This pronoun has no nominative. The declension is the same in the plural as in the singular. The meaning is determined by the subject; as, **puella sē vulnerat**, *the girl wounds herself*; **puer sē vulnerat**, *the boy wounds himself*; **animal sē vulnerat**, *the animal wounds itself*; **militēs sē vulnerant**, *the soldiers wound themselves*.

292. All forms of the personal pronouns **ego** and **tū** except the nominative may be used reflexively; as, **ego mē vulnerō**, *I wound myself*; **tū tē vulnerās**, *you wound yourself*.

293. Note that in expressing the ablative of accompaniment with these pronouns the preposition **cum** follows the pronoun and is attached to it; as, **mēcum**, *with me*; **tēcum**, *with you* (*sing.*); **nōbiscum**, *with us*; **vōbiscum**, *with you* (*pl.*); **sēcum**, *with himself, herself, themselves*.

294. The personal pronouns **ego** and **tū**, and the reflexive **sui**, each have a corresponding pronominal adjective which is used to show possession. These adjectives are called

possessive adjectives and are declined according to the first-and-second adjective declension. They are **meus, mea, meum**, *my* or *mine*; **noster, nostra, nostrum**, *our*; **tuus, tua, tuum**, *your* (used when speaking to one person); **vester, vestra, vestrum**, *your* (used when speaking to more than one person); **suus, sua, suum**, *his, her, its, their* (used when referring to the subject of the clause in which it stands).

Possessive adjectives follow the rule for the agreement of adjectives—that is, they agree in gender, number, and case with the words they modify; as, **frāter meus**, *my brother*; **soror mea**, *my sister*; **nōmen meum**, *my name*.

295. Learn the paradigms of personal and reflexive pronouns. The reflexive pronoun has no forms in the nominative.

Personal Pronouns

First Person		Second Person
<i>Singular</i>		
<i>Nom.</i>	ego	tū
<i>Gen.</i>	meī	tuī
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi	tibi
<i>Acc.</i>	mē	tē
<i>Abl.</i>	mē	tē
<i>Plural</i>		
<i>Nom.</i>	nōs	vōs
<i>Gen.</i>	nostrī, nostrum	vestrī, vestrum
<i>Dat.</i>	nōbīs	vōbīs
<i>Acc.</i>	nōs	vōs
<i>Abl.</i>	nōbīs	vōbīs

For the third person, the pronoun is, *he, ea, she, id, it*, is used. This pronoun and its forms are discussed in the next chapter.

Reflexive pronouns

	First Person	Second Person	Third Person
	<i>Singular</i>		
<i>Gen.</i>	meī	tuī	sui
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi	tibi	sibi
<i>Acc.</i>	mē	tē	sē, sēsē
<i>Abl.</i>	mē	tē	sē, sēsē
	<i>Plural</i>		
<i>Gen.</i>	nostrī	vestrī	sui
<i>Dat.</i>	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibi
<i>Acc.</i>	nōs	vōs	sē, sēsē
<i>Abl.</i>	nōbīs	vōbīs	sē, sēsē

Suus, -a, -um, is used only when the possessor is the same person or thing as the subject of the clause in which it stands.

296. The possessive adjectives are as follows:

meus, mea, meum, *my, mine*

tuus, tua, tuum, *your* (one person)

suus, sua, suum, *his, her, its*

noster, nostra, nostrum, *our*

vester, vestra, vestrum, *your* (more than one person)

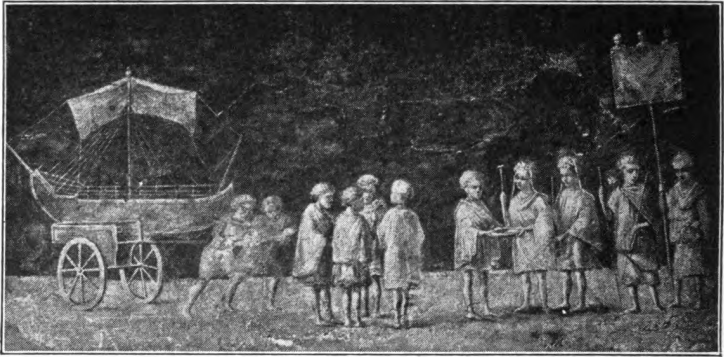
suus, sua, suum, *their*

RULES

297. A possessive adjective agrees with the noun it modifies, in gender, number, and case.

298. *Genitive of the whole.* The genitive is used to express the whole of which a part is taken.

299. *Genitive with adjectives.* Adjectives meaning *desirous, full, mindful, skilled,* and their opposites, govern the genitive.



Pompa puerōrum

This picture and the one on the opposite page decorated the walls of a building in Ostia, the ancient port of Rome. The pictures represent a society of boys honoring Diana. In the picture on this page we see the boys carrying a standard and pulling a model of a boat. The two flower-crowned boys are making a libation. The ceremony probably took place at the opening of navigation in the spring

VOCABULARY XXXI

- | | |
|---|--|
| * cupidus , -a, -um, <i>desirous, eager</i> | * scribō , -ere, scripsī, scriptus, <i>write</i> |
| dēvoveō , -ēre, dēvōvī, dēvōtus, <i>devote; vow; sacrifice</i> | * sui (gen.), reflex. pron., <i>of himself, etc.</i> |
| diligentia , -ae, f., <i>diligence, care</i> | * suus , -a, -um, <i>his, her, its, their</i> |
| * ego , I; nōs , <i>we</i> | * tū , <i>you</i> (sing.); vōs , <i>you</i> (pl.) |
| * grātia , -ae, f., <i>favor, esteem</i> | * tuus , -a, -um, <i>your</i> (used when addressing one person) |
| * meus , -a, -um, <i>my</i> | * vester , -tra, -trum, <i>your</i> (used when addressing more than one person) |
| * noster , -tra, -trum, <i>our</i> | |
| oblītus , -a, -um, <i>unmindful, forgetful</i> | |
| praemium , praemī , n., <i>reward</i> | |

Idiom

grātiās agere, *to thank*: used with the dative of the person



Pompa Puerōrum

In this picture, four boys are burning torches before a statue of Diana, while the others carry baskets of fruit, and standards from which hang bunches of grapes. The leader of the procession is giving an order. This ceremony probably took place at the time of the vintage in the autumn

300. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Explain the meaning of the italicized words:

1. The *cupidity* of the dealer gave him a bad name.
2. Many officials try to *ingratiate* themselves with the people.
3. Each month the company gave a *premium* to the regular customers.
4. Time has *obliterated* the names on the tombstones.
5. The card was printed in old English *script*.

DRILL

Substitute the correct Latin word for the italicized English word or words:

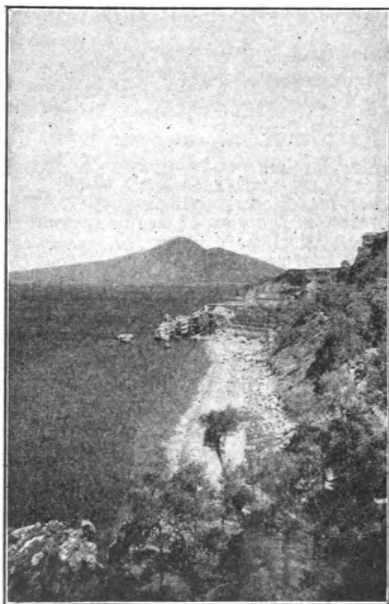
1. Lūcius et Aulus cum amīcīs *their* domum properant.
2. Estne pater *with you*, māter?

3. *Your pater nōn est with me, puerī.*
4. *Quis domum with you vēnit?*
5. *Our amīcī with us vēnērunt.*
6. *Pater of himself est oblītus.*
7. *Pater prō patriā himself dēvovet.*
8. *Pater est cupidus of peace.*

EXERCISE XXXI

Write in Latin :

1. Aulus was writing his Latin story with great diligence:



Ōra Italiae

2. "The commander called his soldiers to him.
3. 'You have fought with the greatest courage, my legions.
4. You have been eager for battle.
5. You have been unmindful of yourselves; you have devoted yourselves to your country.
6. You have not been forgetful of your country.
7. Part of you have been wounded.
8. Many of my soldiers have been killed.
9. I shall give you great rewards.'"

10. "Your story is good, Aulus," says Orbilius. "Thank you, sir," replied Aulus.

CHAPTER XXXII

THE DEMONSTRATIVE *IS*; THE RELATIVE *QUI*

The demonstrative



301.

DĒ PROCAE FILIIIS I

Multōs annōs rēgēs Albae Longae rēgnāverant. Proca
 fuit rēx clārus Albānōrum. ^{He} *Is* ^{Of him, or His} duōs filiōs habuit. *Eius*
 filiī erant Numitor et Amūlius. Numitor erat maior nātū;
 itaque *eī* rēgnum datum est. Sed Amūlius, malus homō, *eum*
 cum filiō et filiā ā rēgnō pepulit. Etiam tum Amūlius frātre
 et eius liberōs timēbat. Itaque ab *eō* filius Numitōris inter-

(247)

fectus est et filia, Rhēa Silvia, sacerdos Vestae facta est.
^{She} *Ea* tamen à Mārte, deō bellī, amābātur. ^{Of her, or Her} *Eius* filiī erant
 Rōmulus et Remus, geminī. Puerī parvī *eī* erant cārī.
 Sed Amūlius *eam* in custōdiam trādīdit et geminōs ab *eā*
 rapuit. Puerī in arcā positī sunt et in flūmen Tiberim iactī
 sunt. Tum crēbrī imbrēs in flūmen vēnerant; itaque *id*
 erat altum. In *eius* rīpās aqua redundāverat et flūmen
 nunc Palātium tangēbat. Proxima *eī* sub Palātiō erat arbor
 antiqua. Paucī rāmī arboris flūmen tetigērunt et arcam
 continuērunt. Nōn diūtius erat flūmen altum; arca in terrā
 relictā erat. Paulō post lupa ad flūmen vēnit. Lupa puerōs
 invēnit et servāvit.

Nōtā bene

Maior nātū, *elder, older*; duōs, *two*.

Tiberim is acc. sing.; see main vocabulary.

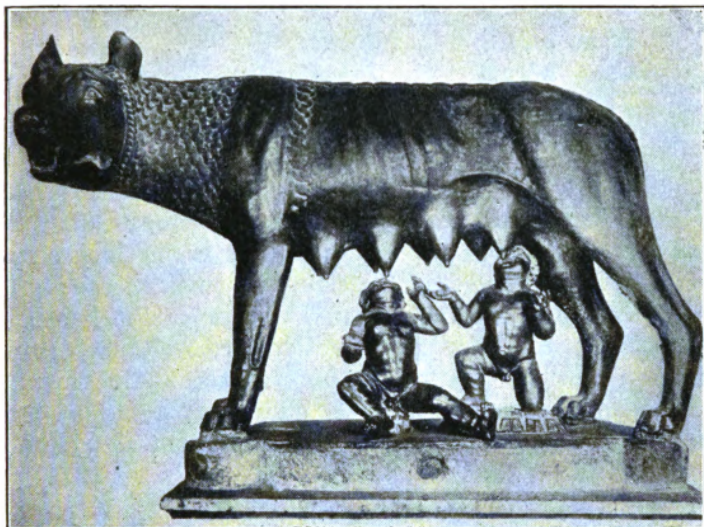
DISCUSSION

302. The singular forms of the pronoun *is* are used in the story *Dē Procae Filiis I*. This pronoun has three genders. The gender of the pronoun is the same as that of the noun which it represents. Find the masculine forms of the pronoun. Give the case and meaning of each. Find the feminine forms of the pronoun. Give the case and meaning of each. Find the neuter forms of the pronoun. Give the case and meaning of each.

The plural forms of this pronoun must be learned from the paradigm given on the next page.

303. The pronoun *is*, *ea*, *id* is really a demonstrative pronoun, because it stands for, and points out, an object or person previously mentioned; but it is frequently used as the personal pronoun of the third person. It may also be used as a demonstrative adjective, modifying a noun.

When *is*, *ea*, *id* is used as an adjective, it means *this* or *that*, and agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun



Lupa cum Rōmulō et Remō

it modifies; as, is *vir, this (or that) man; ea sacerdōs, this (or that) priestess; id flūmen, this (or that) river*. *Is* refers without special emphasis to persons or objects which already have been mentioned; it is a weak demonstrative.

304. Learn the following paradigm. Observe that the plural endings are the same as those of adjectives of the first-and-second declension.

Singular

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id
<i>Gen.</i>	eius	eius	eius
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō

Plural

Nom.	eī, iī	cae	ea
Gen.	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
Acc.	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

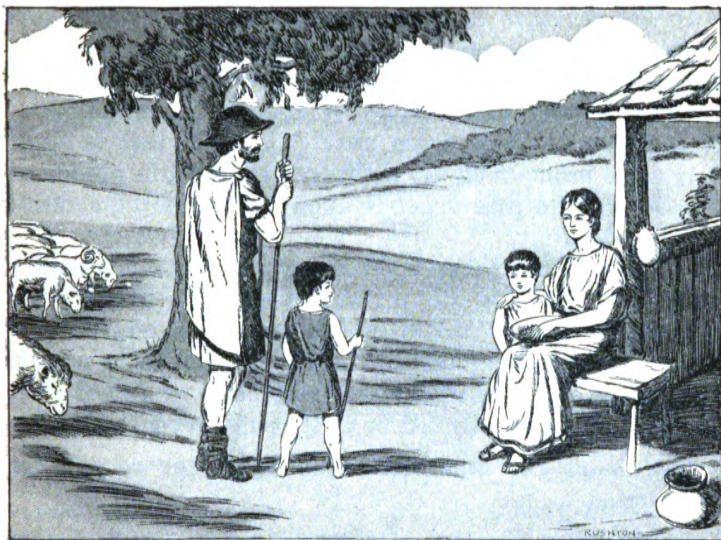
305. The possessive adjective *suus*, -a, -um, meaning *his, her, its, their*, is used when the possessor is the same person or thing as the subject of the clause in which it stands; as, *Puerī mātrēm suam amāvērunt*, *The boys loved their mother*. Under other conditions the genitive forms of the personal pronoun must be used: *eius*, *his, her, its*, in the singular, and *eōrum* or *eārum*, *their*, in the plural; as, *Amūlius eōrum mātrēm in custōdiam trādīdit*, *Amulius put their mother under arrest*.

The relative

306. DĒ PROCAE FĪLIIS II

Geminī ā deō Mārte ^{who} quī erat pater eōrum semper cūrā-
bantur. Is lupam ^{which} quae in Palātiō habitābat ad puerōs mīsīt.

Ea lupa liberōs ad latibulum suum ^{which} quod erat sub Palātiō trāxit et multōs mēnsēs mātrēm sē gessit. Tum pāstor, cuius nōmen erat Faustulus, eōs invēnit et domum ad uxōrem Accam portāvit. Statim Acca puerōs quī erant pulchrī amāvit. Sic liberī Rhēae, filiae Numitōris, quem Amūlius ā rēgnō pepulerat, servātī sunt. Multōs annōs geminī quibus nōmina Rōmulus et Remus data erant cum Accā et Faustulō habitābant. Pāstōrēs quibuscum cotidiē labōrābant eōs ducēs dēlēgērunt. Post multōs annōs Rōmulus et Remus fābulam dē avō Numitōre et eius frātre audīvērunt. Deinde geminī quōrum virtūs erat maxima Albam Longam properāvērunt et Amūlium ex rēgnō



pepulērunt. Itaque Numitor iterum rēx Albānōrum factus est et Albae Longae erat magnum gaudium.

Ea est fābula dē Rōmā quam liberī Rōmānī amābant. Etiam hodiē nōs quī eam fābulam legimus dēlectāmur.

Nōtā bene

Sē gessit, *acted (as), conducted herself (as).*

DISCUSSION

307. In the sentence *Geminī ā deō Mārte quī erat pater eōrum semper cūrābantur*, to what word does the pronoun *quī* refer? In what gender and number is *Mārte*? The pronoun *quī* is in the same gender and number as the word to which it refers. This word is called the *antecedent* and the pronoun is called a *relative* pronoun. In what case is *Mārte*? In what case is *quī*? Is the relative pronoun *quī* in the same case as its antecedent *Mārte*?

In the sentence *Sic liberī Rhēae, filiae Numitōris, quem Amūlius ā rēgnō pepulerat, servātī sunt*, to what word does *quem* refer? In what gender and number is *Numitōris*? In what gender and number is *quem*? In what case is *Numitōris*? How is *quem* used? In what case is *quem*? A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends upon its use in the clause in which it occurs.

In the sentence *Etiam hodiē nōs quī eam fābulam legimus dēlectāmur*, what is the antecedent of *quī*? What person and number is *nōs*? Of what verb is *quī* the subject? What is the person and number of the verb? A relative pronoun also agrees in person with its antecedent; therefore the verb of which it is subject must be in the same person.

308. Learn the following paradigm of the relative *quī*, *quae*, *quod*.

	<i>Singular</i>		
	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>
	<i>Plural</i>		
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

Nōtā bene

If the preposition *cum* is used with the forms *quō*, *quā* and *quibus*, it is usually attached to them as an enclitic; as, *quōcum*; *quācum*; *quibuscum*.

RULE

309. A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person, but its case depends upon its use in the clause in which it stands.

VOCABULARY XXXII

*arbor, arboris, f., tree	pāstor, pāstōris, m., shepherd
arca, -ae, f., chest	*paulō, adv., a little
avus, -ī, m., grandfather	*quī, quae, quod (relative), who, which, that
*contineō, -ēre, continui, con- tentus, hold fast, hem in	rāmus, -ī, m., branch
crēber, -bra, -brum, dense; frequent	redundō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, overflow
custōdia, -ae, f., guard, cus- tody	*rēgnum, -ī, n., kingdom, royal power
*deinde, adv., then, thereupon, afterwards	rīpa, -ae, f., bank
diūtius, adv., longer	sacerdōs, sacerdotis, m. or f., priest; priestess
imber, imbris, imbrium, m., rain	*statim, adv., immediately, at once
*is, ea, id (demonstrative), this, that, he, she, it; pl., they	*sub, prep. (with abl.), under, at the foot of
latibulum, -ī, n., den	*tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctus, touch
lūpa, -ae, f., wolf (female)	*trādō, -ere, trādidī, trāditus, hand over, surrender, be- tray
*malus, -a, -um, bad, wicked	
Palātium, Palātī, n., the Palatine hill	

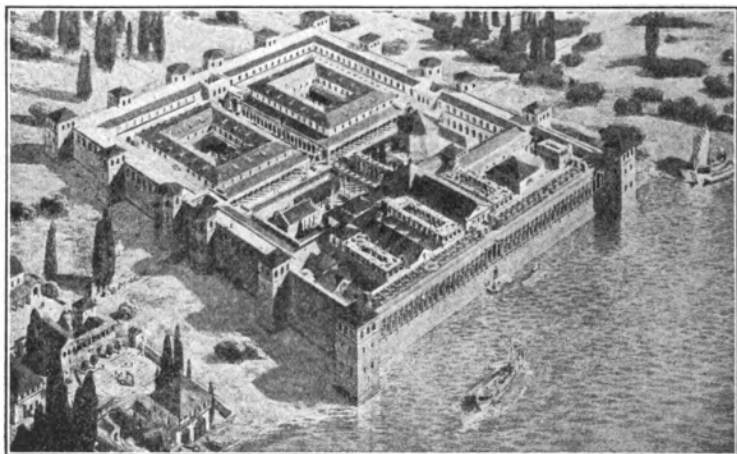
Idioms

in custōdiam trādere, to put under arrest
maior nātū, the elder
paulō post, a little later

310. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Arbor Day is a day set apart for the planting of trees by school children. It was first instituted in Nebraska, where

the trees were scarce, and was finally established in every State and Territory. The date is fixed by proclamation. The word *arbor* meaning *trellis for vines* is not derived from Latin *arbor*, *tree*, but from *herba*, *grass*; it formerly meant *plot of grass*, then *lawn* or *orchard*, and finally *trellis*.



Rēgia

This is the palace of the emperor Diocletian at Salernae (now the city of Split, in Yugoslavia). As Diocletian was a great soldier, he laid out his palace on the general plan of a Roman military camp

Palace, meaning a *fine residence*, comes from the name of the Palatine Hill, where the Emperor Augustus and many wealthy Romans had elaborate dwellings.

Pastor. The name *pastor* is often applied to the minister of a church. His work as a pastor is likened to that of a shepherd who cares for his flock.

Tradition is the giving over or handing down of opinions or beliefs, by the people of one age to those of another through oral communication.



Rōmulus et Remus in nummō signāti

On one side of the coin is the head of Roma, the goddess of the city of Rome. On the other side is the wolf with Romulus and Remus. Behind them is the fig tree whose branch kept the twins from floating farther down the Tiber. On the left is Faustulus leaning on his staff

DRILL

I. Give the Latin for the following phrases:

1. This clan (*nom.* and *acc.*), this king (*nom.* and *acc.*), this river (*nom.* and *acc.*), these shepherds (*nom.* and *acc.*), these priestesses (*nom.* and *acc.*), these temples (*nom.* and *acc.*).

2. With him, to or for them, of her, of them, him (*acc.*), them (*masc. acc.*), she, they (*fem.*), of it, they (*neuter*).

II. Give the Latin for the italicized words:

1. The wolf came *to them* and the boys liked *her*.
2. The mother loved *her boys*, but Amulius feared *her boys*.
3. *Her boys* were thrown into the river.
4. The wolf heard *their cries*.
5. The boys found *their grandfather* and made him king.

III. Substitute Latin words for the italicized English words:

1. Arca in *which* pueri positī erant parva erat.
2. Parvī erant puerī *whom* Fastulus invēnerat.
3. Flūmen in *which* geminī iactī erant Palātium tetigit.

4. Casa ad *which* pāstor liberōs portābat erat proxima rīpae Tiberis.

5. Postea in Palātiō erant domicilia magna in *which* clārī virī habitābant.

6. Casae *which* pāstōrēs aedificāverant nōn erant magnae.

7. Pāstor *with whom* Rōmulus et Remus habitābant erat benignus.

EXERCISE XXXII

Write in Latin:

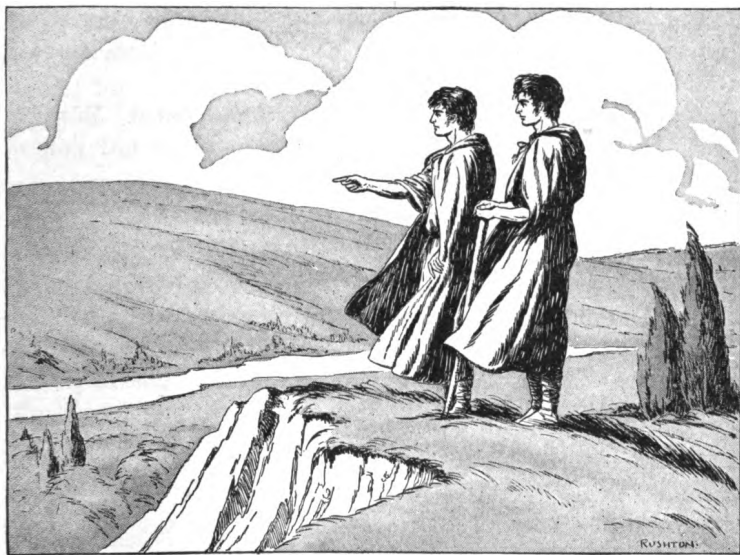
1. This was the kingdom which Proca had given to Numitor. 2. But Numitor was driven out of the kingdom by his brother Amulius. 3. The priestess whom Mars loved was immediately put under arrest. 4. At that time the twins were placed in a little chest by Amulius. 5. The river was high because there had been frequent rains. 6. It had overflowed upon its banks and had touched the branches of the trees. 7. The chest was held fast at the foot of a tree. 8. A little later a wolf whose den was near the Palatine hill found the boys. 9. Afterwards a shepherd found them and hurried home with them. 10. Amulius will reign no longer; the boys' grandfather will reign again in Alba Longa.



Pāstor

CHAPTER XXXIII

THE DEMONSTRATIVES *HIC, ILLE, ISTE*
THE INTENSIVE *IPSE*; ABLATIVE OF CAUSE
PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE



311. DĒ URBIS NOVAE LOCŌ I

Rōmulus et Remus *victōriā magnā* laetī cum avō suō Albae Longae mānsērunt. Sed dēsiderābant agrōs et montēs suōs; itaque revēnērunt ad loca in quibus eī, puerī et adulēscentēs, habitāverant. Praetereā *amōre* libertātis suam urbem et rēgnum cupiēbant. Sed frātrēs dē urbis novae locō inter sē dissentiēbant.

^{This}
“*Hic* mōns,” inquit Rōmulus, “est locus urbī novae idōneus. Latera *huius* montis sunt alta et hostēs prohibēbunt. Proximum *huic* montī est flūmen magnum quō nāvēs ad terrās extrēmās nāvigābunt. Praetereā ad *hunc* montem ā Faustulō portātī sumus et in *hōc* monte tot annōs habitāvimus. Hōc in locō urbem novam condēmus.”

“*Istīs causīs* nōn addūcor,” respondet Remus. “*Hic* mōns est altus sed nōn est aequus. *Ille* mōns et altus et aequus est. Agri *illius* montis sunt lātī. Flūmen est proximum *illī* montī quoque et hostēs prohibēbit. Itaque ad *illum* montem properābimus et *illō* in locō urbem novam condēmus.”

Sic Rōmulus dēlēgit montem quem postea Rōmānī *Palātium* appellābant. Remus autem montem quī postea appellābātur *Aventinus* dēlēgit.

DISCUSSION

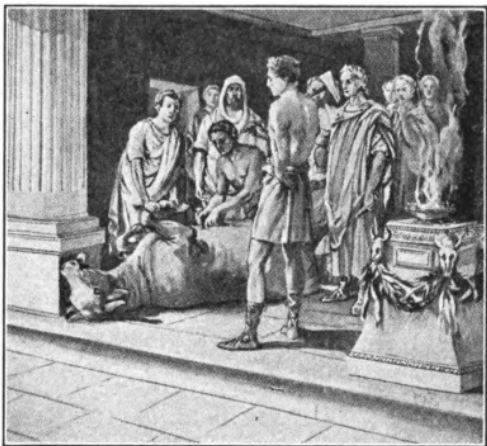
312. In the second paragraph of *Dē Urbis Novae Locō I*, the masculine singular forms of the demonstrative *hic* are found. Determine the case of these forms by observing the nouns which they modify. Is the mountain which *hic* points out near the speaker?

313. In the third paragraph of the story, the masculine singular forms of the demonstrative *ille* are found. Determine the case of these forms also. Is the mountain which *ille* points out near the speaker or relatively far away from the speaker?

314. The demonstrative *hic* is used to point out persons or objects near the speaker in time, place, or thought, and is sometimes called the *demonstrative of the first person*. The demonstrative *ille* is used to point out persons or things remote from the speaker in time, place, or thought, and is sometimes called the *demonstrative of the third person*.

315. In the third paragraph, the words *Istis causis* may be translated *by those reasons of yours*. *Iste* is sometimes called the *demonstrative of the second person* because it points out persons or objects near the person spoken to; it often implies scorn. There is no word in English that exactly translates it; often *that* alone is sufficient.

316. When *hic* and *ille* refer to two different persons or things named in a sentence, *hic* usually refers to the nearer word, *ille* to the remoter word. In such a case *ille* may be translated *the former*, and *hic*, *the latter*; as, *Aenēās et Rōmulus erant clārī*; *ille Troiānus*, *hic Rōmānuserat*, *Aeneas and Romulus were famous men*; *the former was a Tro-*



Rōmānī augurium capiunt

The Romans had several methods of learning the will of the gods. Like Romulus and Remus, they observed the flight of birds, such as the eagle and the vulture. Another method is shown in this picture, that of observing the entrails of animals sacrificed

-jan, *the latter was a Roman*. When *ille* follows the noun which it modifies it often means *that famous*, *that well-known*.

317. In the reading lesson are examples of the intensive *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*. The intensive strengthens the word it modifies; as, *Amūlius ipse Numitōrem pepulit*, *Amulius himself drove out Numitor*; *Ego ipse hunc locum dēsiderō*, *I myself long for this place*. *Ipse* may sometimes be translated *very*; as, *ipsa causa*, *the very reason*. *Ipse*, *ipsa*,

ipsum is declined like **iste, ista, istud**, except that the neuter nominative and accusative ending is **-um** instead of **-ud**.

318. Learn the following paradigms:

hic, haec, hoc, this (sing.), these (pl.)

Singular

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	hic	haec	hoc
<i>Gen.</i>	huius	huius	huius
<i>Dat.</i>	huic	huic	huic
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc	hanc	hoc
<i>Abl.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	hī	hae	haec
<i>Gen.</i>	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Acc.</i>	hōs	hās	haec
<i>Abl.</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs

ille, illa, illud, that (sing.), those (pl.)

Singular

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	ille	illa	illud
<i>Gen.</i>	illius	illius	illius
<i>Dat.</i>	illī	illī	illī
<i>Acc.</i>	illum	illam	illud
<i>Abl.</i>	illō	illā	illō

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	illī	illae	illa
<i>Gen.</i>	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	illīs	illīs	illīs
<i>Acc.</i>	illōs	illās	illa
<i>Abl.</i>	illīs	illīs	illīs

iste, ista, istud, that (sing.) of yours, those (pl.) of yours

Singular

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	iste	ista	istud
<i>Gen.</i>	istius	istius	istius
<i>Dat.</i>	istī	istī	istī
<i>Acc.</i>	istum	istam	istud
<i>Abl.</i>	istō	istā	istō

Plural

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	istī	istae	ista
<i>Gen.</i>	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	istīs	istīs	istīs
<i>Acc.</i>	istōs	istās	ista
<i>Abl.</i>	istīs	istīs	istīs

319. In the sentence **Rōmulus et Remus victōriā magnā laeti cum avō suō Albae Longae mānsērunt**, what phrase tells why Romulus and Remus were happy? In what case are these words? Is a preposition used? In the sentence **Praetereā amōre libertātis suam urbem et rēgnum cupiēbant**, what words tell for what reason they desired a new city? In what case is **amōre**? The ablative may be used, generally without a preposition, to express cause or reason. When so used it is called the *ablative of cause*. This ablative is generally used with adjectives and verbs of emotion.

320. In the sentence **Sic Rōmulus dēlēgit montem quem posteā Rōmānī Palātium appellābant**, the verb **appellābant** has two accusatives. **Quem** is the direct object and **Palātium** is the predicate accusative, referring to **quem**. In the sentence **Remus montem quī posteā appellābātur Aventinus dēlēgit**, the verb **appellābātur** is passive and has two nominatives. **Quī** is the subject nominative and **Aventinus** is the predicate nominative, referring to **quī**.

Many verbs of *making, choosing, naming, and calling* take two accusatives, one the direct object, the other the predicate accusative. In the passive the *direct object* becomes the subject and the *predicate accusative* becomes the *predicate nominative*.

RULES

321. Ablative of cause. The ablative may be used, generally without a preposition, to express the cause or reason of an action, state, or feeling.

322. Predicate accusative. Verbs of naming, making, choosing, showing, and calling may take two accusatives: a direct object and a predicate accusative. In the passive voice such verbs take two nominatives: the subject and the predicate nominative.

READING LESSON

323. DĒ URBIS NOVAE LOCŌ II

Deinde frātrēs augurium cēpērunt. Illō tempore, ut erat mōs, hominēs avium fugā auguria capiēbant. Vulturēs bona signa semper habēbantur. Rōmulus in Palātiō mānsit et augurium exspectāvit. Remus ad montem quem dēlēgerat properāvit et caelum spectāvit. Per illam noctem frātrēs caelum spectāvērunt. Tandem primā lūce sex vulturēs ā Remō visī sunt. Is magnō cum gaudiō nūntium ad sē vocāvit. Subitō nūntius, qui ā Rōmulō ipsō missus erat, aderat. Rōmulus vulturēs duodecim viderat! Sic Rōmulus erat victor et Palātium erat locus deīs acceptus.

Nūntius magnā cum celeritātē ad Rōmulum sociōsque revēnit. "Hunc montem," clāmāvit Rōmulus victoriā laetus, "dei ipsī dēlēgērunt." Magnum erat gaudium in Palātiō. Statim Rōmulus ipse āram in hōc locō posuit et deīs grātiās ēgit.



teā mūrus urbis ā Rōmulō ipsō dēsīgnātus est. Remus
 iō miser mūrum spectāvit et clāmāvit, "Iste mūrus
 s nōn prohibēbit." Deinde eum trānsiluit. Rōmulus
 urbis irātus Remum interfēcīt. Rōmulus fuit prīmus
 ōmānōrum.

Nōtā bene

six, and *duodecim*, *twelve*, are indeclinable adjectives.

VOCABULARY XXXIII

cō, -ere, addūxī, ad-
 ctus, lead to, move,
 fluence
 m, adesse, adfui, ad-
 ūrus, be present
 us, -a, -um, level, even,
 al

amor, amōris, m., love
 augurium, augurī, n., augury,
 omen
 Aventinus, -ī, m., the Aven-
 tine, one of the seven hills
 of Rome
 avis, avis, avium, f., bird

caelum, -i, n., sky	libertās, libertātis, f., liberty, freedom
*cupiō, -ere, cupīvī, cupītus, desire, be eager for, long for	*locus, -i, m., place, location; loca, locōrum, n. pl., places, region
dēsignō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, mark out, designate	*lūx, lūcis, f., light
dissentiō, -īre, dissēnsī, dissēnsus, disagree, differ	*mōns, montis, montium, m., mountain
*fuga, -ae, f., flight	*nox, noctis, noctium, f., night
*hic, haec, hoc (demonstrative), this	*praetereā, adv., besides, furthermore, moreover
*idōneus, -a, -um, suitable, convenient, fit	*prohibeō, -ēre, prohibuī, prohibitus, keep off, prohibit, prevent
*ille, illa, illud (demonstrative), that	trānsiliō, -īre, trānsilui, —, leap across, jump over
*ipse, ipsa, ipsum (intensive), self	*ut, conj., as
*iste, ista, istud (demonstrative), that	vultur, vulturis, m., vulture
*latus, lateris, n., side	

Idioms

augurium capere (or augurium agere), to take the augury, consult the omens

mediā nocte, at midnight; primā lūce, at daybreak

summus mōns, the top of the mountain

324. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Answer the following questions:

1. In what art are *aviators* engaged?
2. What is an *equilateral* triangle?
3. What is *local* option?
4. What are the duties of a *designer*?
5. Why is a bat called a *nocturnal* animal?

DRILL

I. *Decline the following phrases, singular and plural:*

Haec nāvis, illud certāmen, nūntius ipse, illa nox, hoc augurium, ista causa.

II. *Supply the proper case endings:*

1. H.... adulēscētēs auguri.... laetī domum revēnērunt.

2. Ill.... adulēscētēs vultu-
rum fug.... sunt miserī.

3. H.... arborēs rīpam tetigē-
runt.

4. Ill.... arborēs erant in flū-
mine ips....

5. Ill.... loca sunt templis
idōnea.

6. Fug.... avium ill.... sacer-
dōtēs addūcuntur.

7. Casa Rōmulī ips.... erat in
latere ill.... montis.

8. "Ego trānsiliam ist....
mūrum," clāmat Remus.



EXERCISE XXXIII

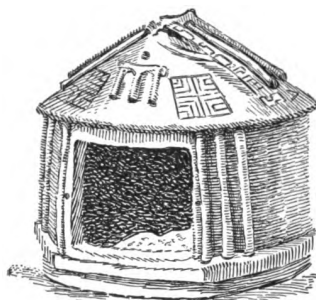
Write in Latin:

1. The young men were influenced by their love of liberty.
2. They longed for a new city but they disagreed with each other about the location.
3. Then Romulus marked out a level place on the mountain whose sides were steep.
4. On this place he took an augury, as was the custom.
5. "I myself shall remain on this mountain and shall watch the sky," said Romulus.
6. On that night Remus also awaited the flight of the birds.

Sibylla

In emergencies, the Romans consulted the Sibylline books of prophecies which were kept in the temple of Jupiter on the Capitoline and could be opened only by order of the Senate. The books were supposed to contain the prophetic sayings of a great prophetess or Sibyl, who was inspired by Apollo.

7. At daybreak twelve vultures were seen by the former, six by the latter. 8. Those who were present on the Palatine shouted with great joy. 9. That wall of yours is not suitable, and furthermore it will not keep out (prohibit) the enemy. 10. Then the wretched youth jumped over the wall.



Casa antiq̄ua

**In some parts of Italy, peasants
still live in houses similar to this**

CHAPTER XXXIV

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION GENITIVE OF DESCRIPTION

325. DĒ FACTĪS FORTIBUS

Fābulae dē Rōmae principiis erant liberis Rōmānīs maximē acceptae. Facta clāra *ācrium* virōrum et fēminārum ab eis laudābantur. Faustulus, *ācer* pāstor, ā pueris, Acca, *ācris* uxor eius, ā puellis laudābātur. Ingenium pāstōrum erat *ācre*, nam multa erant pericula. Facta pāstōris *ācris* et uxōris *ācris* sunt nōta. Fāmam ingenī *ācris* eōrum etiam hodiē audīmus. Ab *ācrī* pāstōre geminī inventī sunt et domum portātī sunt. Ab uxōre *ācrī* puerī educātī sunt. Cum pāstōribus geminī multōs annōs habitāverunt. Eī postea ducēs dēlectī sunt, quod adulēscētēs erant *magnī ingenī*. Mox multa dē ingenio *ācrī* Rōmulī rēgis legēmus.

Liberī Rōmānī fābulās dē factīs *fortium* virōrum et fēminārum libenter audiēbant. Saepe patrēs eis fābulās dē Rōmulō fortī nārrābant. Rōmulus etiam puer erat *fortis*. Agrōs pāstōrum custodiēbat et saepe cum latrōnibus pugnābat. Virēs puerī fortis erant magnae. Multae fābulae dē Rhēā Silvīā quoque nārrābantur. Ea erat fēmina *fortis*. Fīlii parvī ā mātře fortī diligenter custodiēbantur. Malus rēx, tamen, eōs rapuit et dolor mātris fortis erat magnus. Liberī parvī fābulam dē lupā maximē amābant. Animal *forte* suō ore geminōs parvōs ā ripā flūminis trāxit. Cotidiē in latibulō animālis fortis puerī cūrābantur. Sed tandem Faustulus puerōs invēnit et ab animālī fortī eōs cēpit.

Facta *audācium* virōrum et fēminārum fāmam Rōmae auxērunt. *Audāx* rēx, Rōmulus, filiās Sabīnōrum rapuit;

audāx factum Rōmulī est nōtum. Erat quoque virgō *audāx*, Tarpeia, dē quā fābula nārrātur. Magna est fāma rēgis audācis et virginis audācis. Brevī tempore fābulās nōtās dē rēge audācī et dē virgine audācī legēmus.

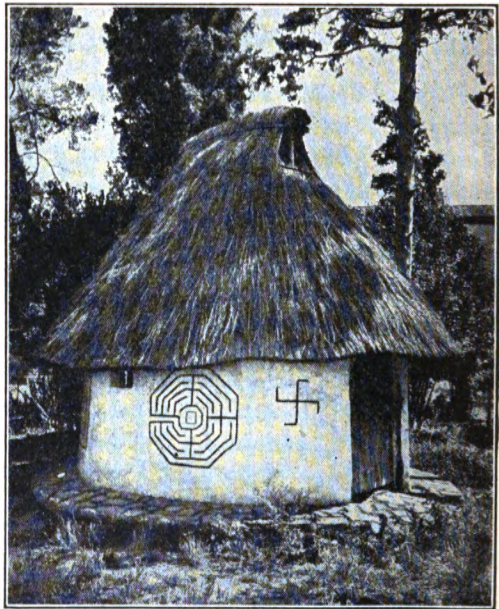
326. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Quālis erat Faustulus? 2. Quālis erat Acca? 3. Quāle erat ingenium pāstōrum? 4. Cuius facta sunt nōta? 5. Ā quō geminī inventī sunt? 6. Ā quō puerī educātī sunt? 7. Quālis ingenī erant adulescentēs?

8. Quid liberī Rōmānī libenter audiēbant? 9. Quālis puer erat Rōmulus? 10. Quis erat fēmina fortis? 11. Quāle animal puerōs ā rīpā flūminis portāvit?

12. Quōrum facta fāmam Rōmae auxērunt?

13. Rapiuitne rēx audāx filiās Sabinōrum? 14. Dē quō fābulās legēmus?



Casa Rōmulī

Modern Romans made this hut on the ancient models, such as that shown on page 266. Rōmulus's hut probably looked much like this

DISCUSSION

327. In the first paragraph of the story *Dē Factis Fortibus*, find the nominative singular forms, masculine, feminine, and

neuter, of the adjective *acer*. Find the genitive singular forms for the three genders also. To what declension does *acer* belong? This is an adjective of the third declension. Find the ablative singular forms for the three genders. What is the ending of the genitive plural? Like what group of nouns in the third declension is this adjective declined?

328. Some adjectives of the third declension have *three terminations* in the nominative singular, an ending for each of the three genders; as, *acer* (*masc.*), *acris* (*fem.*), *acre* (*neut.*). All genders in the genitive singular have the ending *-is*. The base of some of these adjectives ends in *-r*, of others in *-er*. The vocabulary form always shows whether the *e* is kept or not, as, *acer*, *acris*, *acre*, and *celer*, *celeris*, *celere*. The endings of these adjectives are the same as the endings of the *i*-stem nouns in the third declension. Observe that the only ending of the ablative singular is *-ī*.

329. In the second paragraph of the story, various cases of the adjective *fortis* are used. Identify the cases. What are the nominative singular endings of this adjective in the three genders? This is also an adjective of the third declension, but since its masculine and feminine endings are alike, it is called an *adjective of two terminations*.

330. In the third paragraph of the story, forms of the adjective *audāx* are used. Identify the forms. What is the ending of the nominative singular in the three genders? Because the three genders have the same ending, this is called an *adjective of one termination*. Notice the base of this adjective. In what letter does it end? In memorizing this type of adjective, learn both nominative and genitive singular, as the base, to which the endings must be added, is formed from the genitive. In the vocabulary the second form given for such adjectives is the genitive singular.

331. Adjectives of the third declension are therefore classified as *adjectives of three terminations*, *adjectives of two terminations*, and *adjectives of one termination*. Learn the following paradigms:

Three terminations

Singular

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris
<i>Dat.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
<i>Acc.</i>	ācre <u>m</u>	ācre <u>m</u>	ācre
<i>Abl.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Gen.</i>	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācris, -ēs	ācris, -ēs	ācria
<i>Abl.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

Two terminations

One termination

Singular

	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	fortis	forte	audāx	audāx
<i>Gen.</i>	fortis	fortis	audācis	audācis
<i>Dat.</i>	fortī	fortī	audācī	audācī
<i>Acc.</i>	fortem	forte	audācem	audāx
<i>Abl.</i>	fortī	fortī	audācī	audācī

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	fortēs	fortia	audācēs	audācia
<i>Gen.</i>	fortium	fortium	audācium	audācium
<i>Dat.</i>	fortibus	fortibus	audācibus	audācibus
<i>Acc.</i>	fortis, -ēs	fortia	audācis, -ēs	audācia
<i>Abl.</i>	fortibus	fortibus	audācibus	audācibus

332. In the second clause of the sentence *Eī postea ducēs dēlectī sunt, quod adulēscētēs erant magnī ingeni*, which words show what kind of young men the twins were? In what case are these words? A noun in the genitive, modified by an adjective, may describe a noun; such a genitive is called a *genitive of description*.

RULE

333. *Genitive of description.* A phrase consisting of a noun in the genitive with a modifying adjective may be used to describe another noun.



READING LESSON

334.

DĒ URBE NOVĀ

Urbs nova quam Rōmulus condiderat erat parva et paucōs incolās habēbat. Sed rēx Rōmulus magnam urbem cupīvit; itaque asyllum aperuit. Ad asyllum hominēs omnium generum convēnērunt. Erant pāstōrēs, mercātōrēs, agri-

colae, nautae, servi, latrōnēs. Homīnēs quī ex suis civitātibus pulsī erant ad asyllum properāvērunt. Sed fēminae ad asyllum nōn vērērunt; itaque novā in urbe fuērunt paucae fēminae. Tum Rōmulus ad gentēs quae prope habitābant nūntiōs celerēs mīsīt. Cum eis gentibus rēgnū commūne cupīvit et ab hominibus filiās uxōrēs petīvit. Sed negōtium nūntiōrum erat difficile; ab omnibus gentibus pulsī sunt.

Deinde Rōmae Rōmulus cum studiō lūdōs parāvit et Sabīnōs, finitimōs potentēs, ad lūdōs vocāvit. Sabīnī fābulās dē viribus Rōmānōrum audīverant. Itaque nūntium libenter accēpērunt. Cum omnibus fēminis et liberis Rōmam convēnērunt. Brevī tempore Rōmulus ipse signum dedit et Rōmānī lūdōs commīsērunt.

VOCABULARY XXXIV

*ācer, ācris, ācre, *spirited, keen, fierce*

animal, animālis, animālium, n., *animal*

asyllum, -ī, n., *refuge*

*audāx, audācis, *daring, bold*

*brevis, breve, *short, brief*

*celer, celeris, celere, *swift*

*commūnis, commūne, *common, general, joint*

conveniō, -īre, convēnī, convēntūrus, *come together, gather, assemble*

*difficilis, difficile, *difficult, hard*

dolor, dolōris, m., *grief, sorrow*

ēducō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *rear, train, educate*

factum, -ī, n., *deed, act*

*finitimus, -a, -um, *neighboring*; as a noun, finitimus, -ī, m., *neighbor*

*fortis, forte, *brave, strong*
ingenium, ingenī, n., *disposition, ability*; nature
latrō, latrōnis, m., *robber*

nōtus, -a, -um, *renowned, well-known*

*omnis, omne, *all, every*

*petō, -ere, petīvī or petīl, petītus, *seek, ask*

*potēns, potentis, *powerful*
Sabīnus, -a, -um, *belonging to the Sabines*; as a noun, Sabīnī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Sabines*

virgō, virginis, f., *maiden, virgin*

*vīres, vīrium, f. pl., *strength*

LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

335. Answer the following questions:

1. What is a *convention*?
2. What is the meaning of the phrase *Community Chest*?
3. What is a *dolorous* expression?
4. What is *education*?
5. For whom are *omnibuses* run?

DRILL

I. *Decline the Latin phrases for the following:*

Difficult route, swift robber, a bold Sabine, common city, my word.

II. *Express the following phrases in Latin:*

Of all the inhabitants, to or for the daring boys, of this brave young man, with the swift messengers, by the eager shepherd, brief stories (*acc.*), noted soldier (*nom.*), quick animals (*acc.*), great grief (*nom.*), daring deeds (*nom.*), these birds (*acc.*).

III. *Supply the proper case endings:*

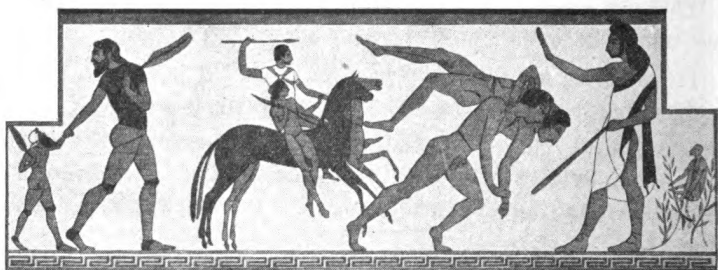
1. Brev.... fābulae discipulōs dēlectant.
2. Negōtia nūntiōrum sunt difficil.....
3. Puerī equōs celer.... laudant.
4. Lūdī ā rēge potent.... parātī sunt.
5. Cīvēs in rēgnō commūn.... habitābant.

EXERCISE XXXIV

Write in Latin:

1. The mother's grief was great because her little sons had been stolen.
2. The twins were saved by the quick animal who had found them on the bank of the river.
3. The spirited wife, to whom the shepherd had carried the boys, trained them with great diligence.
4. Many difficult deeds had been performed.
5. In this way the young men had increased the fame of Rome among

the powerful neighbors. 6. The neighbors themselves were not seeking a joint kingdom. 7. For they feared the refuge in which there were daring robbers. 8. Romulus, a man of great ability, had prepared games and had invited (called) the Sabines. 9. The spectators have assembled and the Romans will begin the games in a short time. 10. All the Sabine maidens are praising the strength of the brave Romans.



Rōmulus lūdōs parat

Riding and wrestling, shown in this picture of an ancient fresco, were probably part of the entertainment prepared by Romulus and his men for the Sabines. In the following chapter you will see three other pictures of games performed at ancient entertainments

CHAPTER XXXV

PARTICIPLES OF ALL CONJUGATIONS



DĒ FĪLIĀBUS SABĪNŌRUM

ulus, rēgnī cupiditāte ^{induced} *adductus*, nūntiōs ad gentēs
ās mīserat. Sed eae gentēs timōre *adductae* nūntiōs
ē nōn accēperant. Omnēs finitimī nūntiōs ā Rōmulō
pepulerant. Itaque nova cōnsilia capta sunt. Is
lūdōs parāvit et Sabīnōs ad eōs vocāvit. Sabīnī
n ā Rōmulō missum accēpērunt et eum libenter audī-
Tum Sabīnī Rōmam *ventūrī* uxōrēs et liberōs

(275)

The fourth principal part is called, specifically, the *perfect passive participle*, or, commonly, the *perfect participle*. Grammatically the perfect passive participle is an adjective of the first-and-second declension. As an adjective it must agree with the noun it modifies in gender, number, and case. It always represents an action as finished *before* the time of the main verb. The literal translation of *adductus* is *having been induced*; of *missōs*, *having been sent*. Often, however, the shorter translation, in the form *induced*, or *sent*, is appropriate. Find the remaining perfect participles in the first paragraph of the story.

338. In the sentence *Tum Sabīnī Rōmam ventūrī uxōrēs et liberōs convocāvērunt*, what word does *ventūrī* modify? What is the gender, number, and case of *ventūrī*? What were the Sabines about to do? Is the form *ventūrī* built from the present stem, the perfect stem, or the participial stem of the verb *veniō*? The participial stem is found by dropping the *-us* ending from the perfect passive participle. The future active participle is formed by adding the letters *-ūrus*, *-a*, *-um* to the participial stem, and it is declined like an adjective of the first-and-second declension. It refers to an action, in the active voice, which will occur *after* the time of the main verb. There is no form of the English verb corresponding to *ventūrus*, though it is often conventionally translated *about to come* as the most convenient way of expressing the idea. So also *portātūrus*, *about to carry*. Find another future active participle in the first paragraph.

339. In the sentence *Rōmulus eōs cernēns et eōrum clāmōrēs audiēns gaudiō mōtus est*, the words *cernēns* and *audiēns* describe the noun *Rōmulus* by telling what he is doing. Likewise in the sentence *Rōmulus apud nōbilēs Rōmānōs sedēns et multa cōgitāns cum gaudiō certāmina spectāvit*, the words *sedēns* and *cōgitāns* describe *Rōmulus* by telling what he is doing. The conventional translation



Lūdi Rōmānī

of *cernēns*, *audiēns*, *sedēns*, *cōgitāns*, is in the form *seeing*, *hearing*, *sitting*, *thinking*. Does the action in these participles occur at the same time as that of the main verb, or before it, or after it?

340. To what conjugation does *cernēns* belong? *audiēns*? *sedēns*? *cōgitāns*? What stem is used in making these participles? The present active participle in all conjugations ends in *-ns*, which in the first and second conjugations is added directly to the present stem: *cōgitāns*, *sedēns*. In the third the stem vowel of the present is lengthened before *-ns*: *cernēns*; and the *-iō* third and the fourth have *-iē-* before the ending *-ns*; as, *fugiēns*. For the pronunciation, see note at the bottom of page 3.

341. Since the forms *cernēns*, *audiēns*, *sedēns*, and *cōgitāns* modify *Rōmulus*, what must their gender, number, and case be? Find the genitive singular forms of these participles in the story. What ending is found on all these forms? To what declension must these participles belong? Memorize the base carefully. The present active participle is an adjective of one termination in the third declension. Observe that the ablative singular ending is either *-e* or *-ī*. (See § 575.) There are several other present participles in the second paragraph of the story. Identify the conjugation, case, gender, and number of each participle.



Lūdi Rōmānī

342. The literal translation of a participle is often unsuitable in the English sentence. Therefore the perfect passive participle is sometimes translated by a clause introduced by *when* or *after*, and the present participle is often translated by a clause introduced by *while*. A relative clause is often used for either of these participles. While you are first learning about participles, you may find it convenient to use the literal translations; but you should always try to see the real meaning of the participle, and to express that meaning in idiomatic English:

**Sabīnī nūntium missum
accēpērunt**

*The Sabines received the having-
been-sent messenger*
*The Sabines received the messen-
ger who had been sent*

**Rōmulus eōs cernēns
gaudiō mōtus est**

*Romulus, seeing them, was moved
with joy, or was pleased*
*Romulus was pleased when he saw
them*

**Puella in turri stāns ōr-
nāmenta aurea spec-
tāvit**

*The girl standing in the tower
observed (their) golden orna-
ments*
*While standing in the tower, the
girl observed (their) golden
ornaments*

343. Participles of verbs of all conjugations

Present active participle

*Time same as that of main
verb;*

Third-declension adjective

- I. **portāns**, gen. **portantis**,
carrying
- II. **vidēns**, gen. **videntis**, *seeing*
- III. **mittēns**, gen. **mittentis**,
sending
- iō III. **capiēns**, gen. **cipientis**,
seizing
- IV. **audiēns**, gen. **audientis**,
hearing

Future active participle

*Time after that of main
verb;*

*First-and-second declen-
sion adjective*

- I. **portātūrus**, -a, -um, *about to
carry*
- II. **visūrus**, -a, -um, *about to
see*
- III. **missūrus**, -a, -um, *about
to send*
- iō III. **captūrus**, -a, -um, *about
to seize*
- IV. **audītūrus**, -a, -um, *about
to hear*

Perfect passive participle

*Time before that of main
verb;*

*First-and-second declen-
sion adjective*

- I. **portātus**, -a, -um, *having
been carried, carried*
- II. **visus**, -a, -um, *having been
seen, seen*
- III. **missus**, -a, -um, *having
been sent, sent*
- iō III. **captus**, -a, -um, *having
been seized, seized*
- IV. **audītus**, -a, -um, *having
been heard, heard*

RULE

344. A participle is a verbal adjective, and agrees with the noun it modifies in gender, number, and case.

READING LESSON



345.

DE TARPEIĀ

Sabīnī īnsidiīs Rōmulī incitātī Rōmā fūgērunt. Raptae virginēs quoque erant irātae et libertātem Rōmulum ōrāvērunt. Sed Rōmulus eis libertātem nōn dedit. Mox lēgātī ā patribus Sabīnīs ad Rōmulum missī sunt. Rōmulus eōs domum mīsīt. Tum bellum longum et ācre inter Rōmānōs et Sabīnōs gestum est. Multōs annōs gentēs pugnābant. Multa proelia extrā mūrōs urbis facta sunt. Tandem Tatius, quī erat potēns rēx Sabīnōrum, multōs militēs coēgit et Rōmam iter fēcīt.

Rōmānī Capitōlium mūnīverant. Tarpeiō principi Rōmānō salūs urbis tribūta erat. Eius filia, virgō audāx, erat Tarpeia. Ea in turri stāns ōrnāmenta aurea in sinistris Sabīnō-
bracelets
 rum vidit. Tarpeia armillās aureās amāvit et ōrnāmentōrum cupida mūnitiōnēs clam reliquit. Ad ducem Sabīnōrum cu-

currit. "Sī mihi dabis ea quae milītēs tui in sinistris gerunt, nocte portam urbis aperiam et milītēs tuos in urbem dūcam."
wear, or carry

Tatius mūrōs oppugnātūrus cum gaudiō eam audīvit. Celeriter Tarpeia intrā mūrōs urbis revēnit. Mediā nocte ipsa portam aperuit. Tatius prīmus in Tarpeiam ōrnāmenta postulantem nōn solum armillās sed etiam scūtum iēcīt. Eius milītēs quoque ōrnāmenta et scūta iēcērunt. Nam Sabīnī in sinistris et ōrnāmenta et scūta gessērunt. Tarpeia scūtis oppressa cecidit. Ab illō tempore ei quī patriam trādiderant dē Capitoliō dēiecti sunt. Ea pars Capitoli appellātur Mōns Tarpeius.

VOCABULARY XXXV

- | | |
|---|--|
| aureus, -a, -um, <i>golden</i> | *moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, <i>move, disturb</i> |
| Capitōlium, Capitoli, n., <i>the Capitoline Hill in Rome</i> | mūnitiō, mūnitiōnis, f., <i>fortification, rampart</i> |
| *clam, adv., <i>secretly</i> | *nihil, n. (indeclinable), <i>nothing</i> |
| *cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>consider, weigh, think</i> | *nōbilis, -e, <i>renowned, noble</i> |
| cupiditās, cupiditātis, f., <i>longing, desire</i> | nōn solum . . . sed etiam, <i>not only . . . but also</i> |
| *frustrā, adv., <i>in vain</i> | *opprimō, -ere, oppressī, oppressus, <i>weigh down, overwhelm, oppress</i> |
| *incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>urge, incite, arouse</i> | ōrnāmentum, -ī, n., <i>ornament, decoration; equipment, trappings</i> |
| *insidiae, -ārum, f., <i>ambuscade, plot, wiles</i> | |
| *intermittō, -ere, intermisī, intermissus, <i>leave off, stop</i> | |

*ōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>plead, pray, beg</i>	surgō, -ere, surrēxi, surrēctūrus, <i>rise, stand up</i>
*postulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>demand, request</i>	timor, timōris, m., <i>fear</i>
*salūs, salūtis, f., <i>safety, health</i>	*tribuō, -ere, tribui, tribūtus, <i>assign, attribute</i>
*significō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>express, indicate, point out; signify</i>	*turris, turris, turrium, f., <i>tower</i>
	*undique, adv., <i>on all sides, from all parts</i>

Idiom

cōnsilium capere, *to form a plan*

346. The verbs petō and postulō take the accusative of the thing asked for and ab with the ablative of the person asked:

Ā Rōmulō libertātem postulāvērunt, *They demanded (their) liberty from Romulus.*

The verbs rogō and ōrō usually take the accusative for both the person and the thing asked.

347. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Pick out the Latin words in the vocabulary with which the following are associated:

Frustrate, insidious, annihilate, resurrection, salutary.

DRILL

I. Give the conventional translations of the following participles:

surgēns	tribūtus	petītus	incitātūrus
cōgitātūrus	movēns	oppressus	postulāns

II. Give the Latin for the following English participles:

Surrendering, about to oppress, demanding, having been seen, receiving, having been killed, interrupting, having been indicated, hearing, about to run.

III. Give the participles—present, future, and perfect—of the following verbs, with the English translations:

interficiō petō cōgitō prohibeō mūniō

IV. Decline the Latin phrases for the following:

a loving mother	the fortified hill
the aroused king	the pleading girl

EXERCISE XXXV

Write in Latin:

1. The noble Romulus was not moved by fear; he was considering a daring plot. 2. If he stands up (will have stood up), the Romans will stop the games. 3. The stolen maidens are being held in the new city. 4. The envoys sent by their fathers were not heeded (heard) by Romulus. 5. The pleading maidens sought their liberty in vain.

6. The safety of the city had been assigned to Tarpeia's father. 7. But Tarpeia, aroused by a longing for the golden ornaments, betrayed not only her father but also her country. 8. She ran from the tower and secretly left the fortifications. 9. The face of the Sabine leader had indicated nothing. 10. The maiden demanding her rewards was weighed down on all sides by the shields.



Lūdi Rōmāni

CHAPTER XXXVI

CARDINAL AND ORDINAL NUMERALS NINE IRREGULAR PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

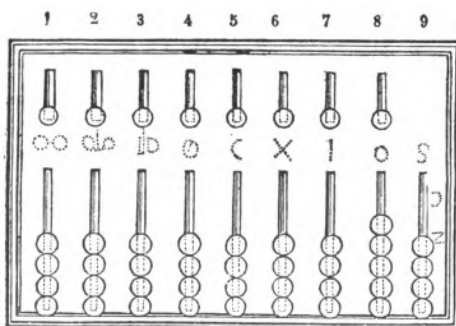
348. DĒ NUMERIS RŌMĀNIS

Est hōra tertia et Orbilius parvōs puerōs numerōs docet. Numerī ab ūnō ad vigintī docentur. Nōn omnēs discipuli sunt diligentēs. ^{One} Alius numerōrum memor erit, ^{another} alius oblītus. ^{Some} Alii ^{others} bene, alii male respondēbunt. "Ūnus, duo, trēs, quattuor, quinque, sex, septem, octō, novem, decem," respondet puer primus. "Bene!" inquit Orbilius. Orbilius secundum puerum reliquōs numerōs rogat. "Nesciō," respondet is puer. Orbilius eum nōn laudat. Laudātur opus ^{of one} alterius sed opus ^{of the other} alterius reprehenditur. Alter domī diligenter labōrāverat; alter nōn labōrāverat. Tum tertius respondet, "Ūndecim, duodecim, tredecim, quattuordecim, quindecim, sēdecim, septendecim, duodēvigintī, ūndēvigintī, vigintī." "Quis omnēs numerōs scit?" "Ego numerōs sciō. Bene eōs memoriā teneō," clāmat Titus. Titus magnam laudem accipit. "Quot digitōs, Claudī, habēs?" "Decem digitōs habeō." "Sī ūnī digitō adduntur duo digitī, quot digitī sunt?" "Trēs digitī sunt," respondet puer quīntus. "Sī duōbus digitīs quinque digitī adduntur, quot digitī sunt?" "Nesciō," respondet puer sextus. Is timet quod Orbilius certē eum castigābit. Tum Orbilius septimum vocat et rogat, "Sī tribus digitīs septem digitī adduntur, quot digitī sunt?" Is quoque respondet, "Nesciō." Nunc magister irātus ambōs puerōs pigrōs ad sē vocat. Animus neutrius est laetus. Orbilius cum studiō ambōs castigat.

Utrī laus crās dabitur? Crās ambō puerī laudābuntur. Omnēs quidem puerī laudābuntur. Nullī discipulī erunt numerōrum oblītī sed omnēs tōtam hōram cum diligentiā labōrābunt.

349. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Quid agit Orbilius? 2. Quid puer primus respondet?
3. Estne secundus discipulus bonus? 4. Cuius opus laudātur? reprehenditur? 5. Quid tertius respondet? 6. Cūr Titus magnam laudem accipit? 7. Quot digitōs habet Claudius? 8. Sī ūnī digitō trēs digitī adduntur, quot digitī sunt? 9. Sī duōbus digitīs ūnus digitus additur, quot digitī sunt? 10. Sī tribus digitīs duo digitī adduntur, quot digitī sunt? 11. Cūr est Orbilius irātus? 12. Quōs Orbilius castigat? 13. Cuius animus est laetus?
14. Uter puer crās reprehendētur? 15. Quam diū discipulī cum diligentiā labōrābunt? 16. Ūllusne discipulus erit numerōrum oblītus?



Abacus

By means of the movable buttons in the grooves of this counting board, Romans did their sums. The seven grooves numbered 1 to 7 were for whole numbers; the other two for fractions. The longer, lower grooves stood for the different denominations according to a decimal system, groove 7 marking the units, groove 6 the tens, groove 5 the hundreds, etc. The upper grooves had five times the denominational value of the lower, a moved button representing 5 in upper groove 7, 50 in 6, etc. The fractions were counted

by a duodecimal system: $\frac{1}{2}$, $\frac{1}{3}$, etc., in groove 8, and fractional parts of $\frac{1}{4}$ in groove 9. Thus, to represent 12, move up one button in lower groove 6 and two in lower 7; for 17, move up one in lower 6, and two in lower 7 and one in upper 7. The number 6,348 would be represented by moving one button in upper 4 and one in lower 4, three in lower 5, four in lower 6, and three in lower 7 and one in upper 7

DISCUSSION

350. In the story *Dē Numerīs Rōmānīs* are found the cardinal numerals one to twenty. Cardinal numbers correspond to English *one, two, three*, etc.; they state how many objects or persons are mentioned. The word *cardinal* is derived from Latin *cardō, cardinis*, *hinge*; cardinal numbers are so called because they are considered the most important numbers, the pivotal numbers; and numbers of other kinds, as *first, second, third*, etc., hinge or depend upon them.

Consider the following clauses:

Sī ūnī digitō adduntur duo digitī

Sī duōbus digitīs quīque digitī adduntur

Sī tribus digitīs septem digitī adduntur

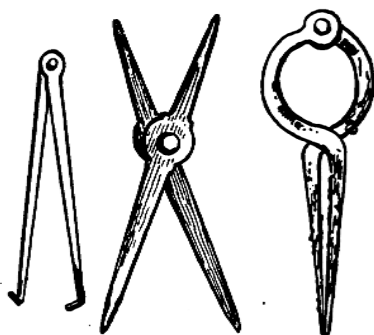
What is the case of the numerals *ūnī, duōbus, tribus*? These three cardinals are declinable; the other cardinals, except 200, 300, 400, etc., to 900, are indeclinable. The declension of *ūnus, duo*, and *trēs* must be carefully memorized (see §§ 355, 356).

351. In the same story there are a few numerals corresponding to English *first, second, third*, etc. These numerals tell the *order* of persons or objects; hence they are called *ordinal* numerals, or *ordinals*. They are adjectives of the first-and-second declension. Memorize the first ten ordinals.

352. In the sentence *Aliī bene, aliī male respondēbunt*, what meanings has *aliī*? In the sentence *Alius numerōrum memor erit, alius oblītus*, what meanings has *alius*? The word *alius* is often used with contrasted meanings, *one . . . another* for the singular meanings, and *some . . . others* for the plural meanings. When only one *alius* occurs in a sentence, it has the meaning *another*.

Alius is declined like a first-and-second declension adjective except in the genitive and dative singular. Memorize all its forms. (See § 356.)

353. In the sentence *Opus alterius laudātur sed opus alterius reprehenditur*, what is the case of *alterius* and what meanings has it? In the sentence *Alter domi dīligenter labōrāverat, alter nōn labōrāverat*, what meanings has *alter*? The word *alter* is used only when two definite persons or things have been mentioned and something is told about *(the) one* and *the other*. Its contrasted meanings in the singular are *(the) one . . . the other*. This word is also somewhat irregular, as can be observed from the genitive singular form. Memorize all its forms.



Īnstrūmentā ad circulōs dūcendōs
These compasses were found in Pompeii

354. There are nine words in Latin which show this peculiarity of declension, having *-ius* in the genitive singular and *-ī* in the dative singular. They are *ūnus*, *alius*, *alter*; also, *sōlus*, *tōtus*, *uter*, *neuter*, *ūllus*, *nūllus*. Of these, *alius* has the form *aliud* in the neuter singular nominative and accusative. With these exceptions, the words in this group have the endings of a first-and-second declension adjective; but the vocative is lacking.

These words are called *pronominal adjectives*: they are used sometimes as pronouns, sometimes as adjectives.

355. Numerals

Cardinals

1. ūnus, -a, -um
2. duo, duae, duo
3. trēs, tria
4. quattuor
5. quinque
6. sex
7. septem
8. octō
9. novem
10. decem
11. ūndecim
12. duodecim
13. tredecim
14. quattuordecim
15. quīndecim
16. sēdecim
17. septendecim
18. duodēvigintī
19. ūndēvigintī
20. vīgintī

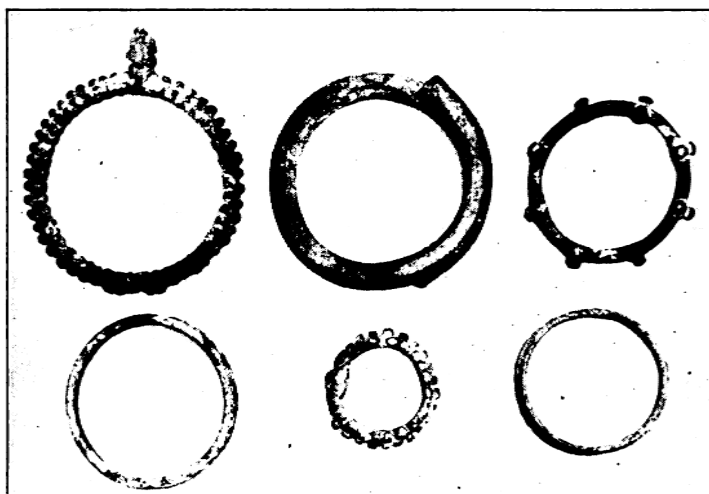
Ordinals

- primus, -a, -um, *first*
 secundus, -a, -um, *second*
 tertius, -a, -um, *third*
 quārtus, -a, -um, *fourth*
 quīntus, -a, -um, *fifth*
 sextus, -a, -um, *sixth*
 septimus, -a, -um, *seventh*
 octāvus, -a, -um, *eighth*
 nōnus, -a, -um, *ninth*
 decimus, -a, -um, *tenth*

The declension of ūnus is given in § 356. Ūnus, of course, has no plural, and duo and trēs have no singular. Duo and trēs are declined as follows:

	duo, <i>two</i>			trēs, <i>three</i>	
	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
<i>Gen.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
<i>Dat.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
<i>Acc.</i>	duōs (duo)	duās	duo	trēs, trīs	tria
<i>Abl.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

Ambō, *both*, is like duo, except that final -ō is long.



Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art

Armillae

356. The nine irregular pronominal adjectives are:

ūnus, -a, -um, <i>one</i>	nūllus, -a, -um, <i>none</i>
tōtus, -a, -um, <i>whole</i>	ūllus, -a, -um, <i>any</i>
sōlus, -a, -um, <i>alone, only</i>	
neuter, neutra, neutrum, <i>neither</i> (of two)	
uter, utra, utrum, <i>which?</i> (of two)	
alter, altera, alterum, <i>the other</i> (of two)	
alius, alia, aliud, <i>another</i>	

Ūnus and alius are declined as follows:

	ūnus, <i>one</i>		
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum
Gen.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus
Dat.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī
Acc.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum
Abl.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō

*alius, another, other**Singular*

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>alius</i>	<i>alia</i>	<i>aliud</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>(alterius)</i>	<i>(alterius)</i>	<i>(alterius)</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>aliī</i>	<i>aliī</i>	<i>aliī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>alium</i>	<i>aliā</i>	<i>aliud</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>aliō</i>	<i>aliā</i>	<i>aliō</i>

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>aliī</i>	<i>aliae</i>	<i>alia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>aliōrum</i>	<i>aliārum</i>	<i>aliōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>aliīs</i>	<i>aliīs</i>	<i>aliīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>aliōs</i>	<i>aliās</i>	<i>alia</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>aliīs</i>	<i>aliīs</i>	<i>aliīs</i>

The form *alterius* is almost always used instead of *alius* in the genitive.

READING LESSON

357.

DĒ BELLŌ SABĪNŌ

Sabīnī in Capitōlium ā Tarpeiā ductī mūnitiōnēs occupāverunt sed Rōmānī ad Palātium fūgērunt. Inter duōs montēs fuit spatium aequum quod postea Forum Rōmānum appellātum est. Hīc duo rēgēs cum multis militibus proelium commiserunt. Diū atque acriter pugnātum est sed victōria neutri rēgī data est. Multa proelia facta sunt; multī militēs caesi sunt. Tandem Hostilius, dux Rōmānus, interfectus est et Rōmulus lapide vulnerātus cecidit. Rōmānī rēgem vulnerātum videntēs perterriti sunt et aliī in aliam partem fūgērunt. Brevī tempore autem Rōmulus surrexit. Fugā militum irātus acriter eōs accūsāvit; sed nē ūnus quidem fugam intermisit. Tum Rōmulus Iovem patrem deōrum invocāns auxilium orāvit. Virtūs Rōmānōrum verbis Rōmulī cōfirmāta est et fugam intermisērunt.



"Proelium committite et hostēs vincite, milītēs," clāmat Rōmulus. "Iuppiter nōbīs auxilium dabit." Itaque Rōmānī cum Sabīnīs iterum proelium committunt. Subitō Sabīnōrum filiae, quae ā Rōmānīs raptae sunt, in proelium currunt. Neque tēla neque vīrēs hominum timent. Hūc et illūc currunt, ōrantēs finem bellī. Et Sabīnī et Rōmānī verbīs eārum addūcuntur. Itaque ambō rēgēs finem bellī faciunt.

Pāx inter eōs cōstitutā est. Rōmānī Sabīnique urbem commūnem habuērunt. Et Rōmulus et Tatius urbem commūnem quīnque annōs rēxērunt. Tandem Tatius interfectus est et Rōmulus sōlus rēgnāvit. Postea multa mīlia Rōmānōrum Rōmulum deum et patrem urbis adōrāvērunt.

Nōtā bene

Iuppiter, Iovis, *Jupiter*, chief of the gods.

Nē ūnus quidem, *not even one, not a single one.*

VOCABULARY XXXVI

- ācritēr, adv., *fiercely, eagerly, bitterly*
 addō, -ere, addidī, additus, *add*
 ambō, ambae, ambō, *both* (see §355, note)
 *animus, -ī, m., *mind, feeling, disposition*
 *caedō, -ere, cecidī, caesus, *cut down, slay, kill*
 *cōfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *strengthen, declare*
 digitus, -ī, m., *finger*
 *diligēns, diligētis, *diligent, careful*
 *finis, finis, finium, m., *end, limit; in pl., boundaries, territory*
 *hōra, -ae, f., *hour*
 *hūc et illūc, *hither and thither*
 invocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call upon, invoke*
 *laus, laudis, f., *praise, glory*
 male, adv., *poorly, badly*
 memor, memoris, *mindful, heedful*
 *memoria, -ae, f., *memory*
 *mīlia, mīlium, n. pl., *thousands* (followed by the genitive of the whole)
 nesciō, -īre, -īvī, —, *not to know, be ignorant*
 *occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *seize, take possession of*
 *opus, operis, n., *work, labor; composition*
 perterreō, -ēre, perterruī, perterritus, *terrify, thoroughly alarm*
 *quidem, adv., *indeed, certainly, at least; nē . . . quidem, not even*
 quot, adj. (indeclinable), *how many?*
 reprehendō, -ere, reprehendī, reprehēnsus, *seize; blame, censure*
 *sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *know*

Note that cecidī, from caedō, means *I killed*, and cecidī, from cadō, means *I fell down* (see Vocabulary 30).

Idioms

diū atque ācritēr pugnātum est, *they fought long and also fiercely*

aliī in aliam partem, *some in one direction, others in another; some one way, some another*

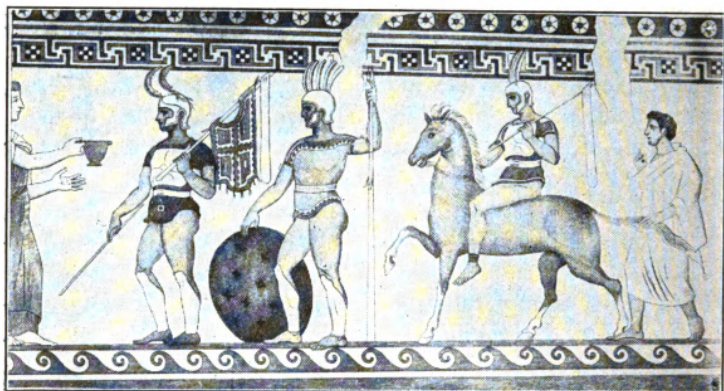
memoriā tenēre, *to remember*

358.

LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. Explain the meaning of the italicized words:

1. The man was so *terrified* that he committed *suicide*.
2. The *pastor* of *Unity* Church gave the *invocation*.
3. On *Memorial* Day we honor the *memory* of the dead.
4. The man's act was *reprehensible*.



Militēs domum reveniunt

II. The Roman year originally began with *March*. This month was named for **Mārs**, god of agriculture (and of war), because agricultural work for the spring begins in this month. *September*, *October*, *November*, and *December* were the seventh, eighth, ninth, and tenth months respectively, as their names indicate.

DRILL

1. Give the cardinal numerals to twenty.
2. Give the ordinal numerals to ten.
3. Give the nine irregular pronominal adjectives, with their meanings.

II. *Decline the following phrases in the number given:*

virgō sōla duo animālia trēs adulēscētēs ūnus digitus
alii militēs alterum iter mīlia hominum ambō frātrēs

III. *Supply the proper endings for the adjectives:*

1. Null.... puellae erant in Orbili lūdō.

2. Habēbatne lūdus Rōmānus ūll.... fenestrās?

3. Utr.... puero praemium datum est?

4. Opus neutr.... laudātum est.

5. Numitori sōl.... rēgnum datum erat.

6. Militēs tōt.... noctem pugnāvērunt.

7. Rēgnum ūn.... rēgi dabitur.

8. Duo pueri bene respondērunt; alter.... liber datus est,
alter.... stilus datus est.

9. Fābulae dē Aenēā ali.... discipulōs dēlectant; fābulae
dē Rōmulō ali.... dēlectant.

EXERCISE XXXVI

Write in Latin:

1. At the third hour the diligent boys will give their compositions to Orbilius. 2. To some boys he will give praise, to others he will not. 3. The mind of the first boy who had answered badly was wretched. 4. Not even the second boy knew the numbers. 5. Orbilius beat both boys because they had not remembered their numbers. 6. Titus, mindful of the numbers, did not reply, "I do not know"; he added seven fingers to three fingers with great quickness.

7. Romulus called upon the father of the gods because the Sabines had seized the Capitoline Hill and the Romans were fleeing. 8. Many had been slain; and so the rest, terrified, were running hither and thither. 9. The Romans, bitterly reproached by Romulus, were strengthened by his words and put an end to their flight. 10. Many thousands of Romans have worshiped Romulus as god and father of the city.

CHAPTER XXXVII

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES; DECLENSION OF THE COMPARATIVE; COMPARISON WITH QUAM; ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON



359.

DE HORATIŌ I

Apud Rōmānōs Horātius Cocles fuit *clārus* mīles. Horā-
more famous than
 tius fuit *clārior* vir quam multī principēs. Fuit *multis*
kings
rēgibus *clārior*. Appellābātur *clārissimus* mīles Rōmānō-
most famous
 rum antiquōrum.

Quid fuit forte factum huius virī? Numquam *fortius*
 factum ā Rōmānō gestum est. Factum Horāti fuit fortissi-

(296)

mum; sōlus cōpiās hostium vicit. Factum nullius militis clāriōris et fortiōris umquam scriptum est. Numquam fābulam dē virō fortiōre, numquam fābulam dē factō clāriōre legētis. Fābula dē audaciā huius fortissimī et clārissimī militis etiam ā poētis scripta est. Facta nullōrum virōrum fortiōrum et clāriōrum umquam scripta sunt.

Ubi Tarquinius Superbus, postrēmus rēx Rōmānōrum, propter ācerrimās iniuriās ex rēgnō expulsus est, miserrimus erat et auxilium ā rēge potentissimō Etruscōrum petivit. Lārs Porsena, rēx Etruscōrum, quī erat etiam Tarquiniō ācrior, Rōmam magnā cum celeritāte contendit. Sine morā fortissimis et celerrimis cōpiis montem Iāniculum occupāverat. Tum vērō Rōmānī magnō periculō



Fēmina Etrūsca

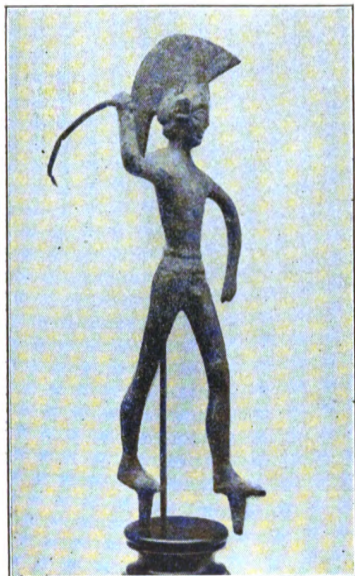
erant miseriōrēs quam miserrimī servī. Nōn diūtius erat
The Pile Bridge
 iter in urbem hostibus difficillimum. Pōns Sublicius, quī
^{over}erat in flūmine Tiberī inter montem Iāniculum et urbem, sōlus hostēs prohibēbat. Ante oculōs Rōmānōrum visio caedis et mortis miserrimae erat. Lārs Porsena deō crudēlissimō simillimus vidēbātur; itaque magnō terrōre mōti sunt.

360. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Quālis vir fuit Horātius? 2. Quam clārus fuit?
3. Quis fuit multis rēgibus clārior?

4. Quam forte fuit factum Horātī? 5. Lēgistīne fābulam dē factō ūllīus militis clārīoris et fortiōris? 6. Quī fābulam dē audaciā huius fortissimī et clārissimī militis scripsērunt?

7. Quā dē causā Tarquinius ex rēgnō expulsus erat? 8. Quam ācer erat Porsena? 9. Quam miserī erant Rōmānī? 10. Cui fuit Porsena similimus?



Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art

Miles Italicus

ing the greatest degree, **clārissimus**, *most famous*. When we express these different degrees of an adjective we are giving the *comparison* of the adjective. In English we sometimes use suffixes in comparison, as in *bright, brighter, brightest*, and sometimes use *more* and *most*, as in *famous, more famous, most famous*. The three degrees of an adjective are called *positive degree*, *comparative degree*, and *superlative degree*; as, **clārus, clārīor, clārissimus**.

Nōtā bene

Quam, *than*; as an interrogative adverb, *how?* or *how much?* to what degree? quā dē causā, *why?* for what reason?

DISCUSSION

361. In the first paragraph of the story **Dē Horātīō I**, what are the phrases used to describe **Horātius**? Do the adjectives in these phrases differ in degree? The three degrees of the adjective **clārus** are expressed as follows: the simple form, **clārus**, *famous*; a form showing a greater degree, **clārīor**, *more famous*; and a form showing

In the second paragraph of the story, what are the three forms of the adjective **fortis** used to describe **factum**? Do they differ in degree? The forms **forte**, **fortius**, **fortissimum** show the comparison of a neuter adjective of the third declension. Since most adjectives follow the same rules for comparison, by studying and combining the forms of **clārus** and **fortis** we learn that adjectives are compared as follows:

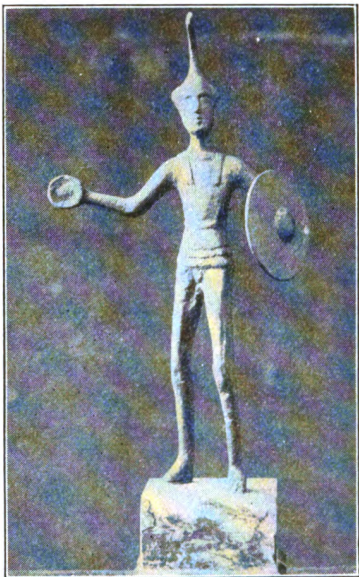
<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
clārus, -a, -um	clārior, clārius	clārissimus, -a, -um
fortis, forte	fortior, fortius	fortissimus, -a, -um

The meaning of the comparative degree is usually expressed in English by *more* or by the suffix *-er*; but often *rather*, *quite*, *too* will express the meaning better. In the same way the superlative may be expressed by *most* or by the suffix *-est*, and also by *very* or *exceedingly*. Thus **clārior** may be translated *rather famous, too famous, etc.*, and **clārissimus**, *very famous, exceedingly famous, etc.*

RULES

362. The comparative degree of an adjective is regularly formed by adding **-ior** (m., f.) and **-ius** (n.) to the base of the positive form.

363. The superlative degree is regularly formed by adding **-issimus, -a, -um**, to the base of the positive.



Courtesy of The Barnes Art Foundation

Miles Etruscus

364. To determine the declension of the comparative degree of an adjective, study the second paragraph of the story. What case of the adjective establishes the declension of the comparative? *Clāriōris* and *fortiōris* agree with *mīlitis* and are in the genitive case. They show that the comparative degree of an adjective is in the third declension. What form tells whether it is an *i*-stem or not? *Fortiōrum* and *clāriōrum* are in the genitive plural and indicate that the stem is a consonant stem. The ending of the ablative singular is usually *-e*, as shown in *clariōre*, *fortiōre*.

The declension of the comparative is as follows:

<i>Singular</i>		
	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>fortior</i>	<i>fortius</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>fortiōris</i>	<i>fortiōris</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>fortiōrī</i>	<i>fortiōrī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>fortiōrem</i>	<i>fortius</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>fortiōre</i>	<i>fortiōre</i>
<i>Plural</i>		
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>fortiōrēs</i>	<i>fortiōra</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>fortiōrum</i>	<i>fortiōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>fortiōribus</i>	<i>fortiōribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>fortiōrēs</i>	<i>fortiōra</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>fortiōribus</i>	<i>fortiōribus</i>

The declension of the superlative can be readily determined by studying the phrases *clāriissimus mīles*, *fortissimum factum*, and *clāriissimī et fortissimī mīlitis*.

RULES

365. The comparative degree of any adjective is an adjective of two terminations in the third declension, with a consonant stem.

366. The superlative degree of any adjective is an adjective of the first-and-second declension in *-us*, *-a*, *-um*.

367. Some adjectives have an unusual comparison. In the third paragraph of the story, find different degrees of the adjectives *miser*, *celer*, and *acer*. Is the comparative of these adjectives like that of *clārus*? Is the superlative? You can make the superlative degree of adjectives ending in *-er* by adding the ending *-rimus* directly to the nominative masculine singular.

368. Study the following forms:

miser, misera, miserum

comp., miserior, miserius; superl., miserrimus, -a, -um

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum

comp., pulchrior, pulchrius; superl., pulcherrimus, -a, -um

celer, celeris, celere

comp., celerior, celerius; superl., celerrimus, -a, -um

acer, ācris, ācre

comp., ācrior, ācrius; superl., ācerrimus, -a, -um

369. In the two sentences *Nōn diūtius erat iter in urbem hostibus difficillimum*, and *Lārs Porsena deō crūdēlissimō simillimus vidēbātur*, how is the superlative degree of the adjectives *difficilis* and *similis* formed? Is the superlative of *crūdēlis* formed in the same way? Six adjectives ending in *-lis* form the superlative by adding *-limus* to the base of the positive; as, *difficillimus, simillimus*. They are *facilis, easy; difficilis, hard; similis, like; dissimilis, unlike; gracilis, slender; and humilis, low*. Memorize this list. All other adjectives ending in *-lis* form their superlative regularly; as, *nōbilissimus, crūdēlissimus*.

370. In the sentence *Horātius fuit clārior vir quam multi principēs*, with what is the noun *Horātius* compared? How is the comparison expressed? In what case is *vir*? In what case is *principēs*? Comparison of two nouns may be expressed by using the conjunction *quam, than*. The second

noun must then be in the same case as the first; as, *vir, nominative, principēs, nominative*. Find another example of this construction in the story.

371. In the sentence *Fuit multīs rēgibus clārior*, with what is the subject of *fuit* compared? Is the word *quam* used? In what case is *multīs rēgibus*? In what case is the subject



Courtesy of Mary A. Grant, Ph.D.

Via Rōmāna

Paved by the Romans, this road is still in use

of *fuit*? Comparison may also be expressed by the ablative without *quam* if the first of the two words compared is in the nominative or accusative.

372. In the sentence *Ubi Tarquinius Superbus propter ācerrimās iniūriās ex rēgnō expulsus est*, what does the phrase *propter ācerrimās iniūriās* show? How is it made? Cause may be shown by using the preposition *propter* and the accusative. You will remember that cause may also be shown by using the ablative (see § 321).

RULES

373. Comparison with *quam*. When *quam* is used to express comparison, the two words compared must be in the same case.

374. Ablative of comparison. The ablative without *quam* may be used to express comparison if the first of the two words compared is in the nominative or accusative.

375. Cause expressed by a prepositional phrase. The preposition *propter* followed by the accusative may be used to express cause.

VOCABULARY XXXVII

<i>audācia</i> , -ae, f., <i>boldness</i>	<i>postrēmus</i> , -a, -um, <i>last</i>
* <i>contendō</i> , -ere, <i>contendī</i> , <i>contentus</i> , <i>fight</i> ; <i>hasten</i>	* <i>propter</i> , prep. (with acc.), <i>on</i> <i>account of</i> , <i>because of</i>
<i>crūdēlis</i> , <i>crūdēle</i> , <i>cruel</i> , <i>fierce</i>	* <i>quam</i> , conj., <i>than</i>
<i>expellō</i> , -ere, <i>expulī</i> , <i>expul-</i> <i>sus</i> , <i>drive out</i> , <i>expel</i>	* <i>similis</i> , <i>simile</i> , <i>like</i> , <i>similar</i>
<i>Iāniculum</i> , -ī, n., <i>Janiculum</i> , a hill across the Tiber from the Forum	* <i>sine</i> , prep. (with abl.), <i>with-</i> <i>out</i>
* <i>iniūria</i> , -ae, f., <i>wrong</i> , <i>in-</i> <i>jury</i> , <i>insult</i>	<i>sublicius</i> , -a, -um, <i>built</i> <i>upon piles</i> ; <i>Pōns Sublicius</i> , the <i>Pile Bridge</i> , a bridge over the Tiber
* <i>mora</i> , -ae, f., <i>delay</i>	<i>terror</i> , <i>terrōris</i> , m., <i>terror</i> , <i>great fear</i>
* <i>mors</i> , <i>mortis</i> , <i>mortium</i> , f., <i>death</i>	* <i>umquam</i> , adv., <i>ever</i>
* <i>oculus</i> , -ī, m., <i>eye</i>	* <i>videor</i> , -ērī, <i>vīsus sum</i> , <i>be</i> <i>seen</i> , <i>seem</i> , <i>seem best</i>
* <i>pōns</i> , <i>pontis</i> , <i>pontium</i> , m., <i>bridge</i>	<i>vīsiō</i> , <i>vīsiōnis</i> , f., <i>vision</i>

Idioms

quā dē causā, *wherefore?* *for what reason?* (interrogative);
wherefore, *for which reason* (relative)

376.

LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Explain the meaning of the italicized words:

1. The pirates of the Barbary coast were men of the greatest *audacity*.
2. Some people are naturally *contentious*.
3. *Expulsion* from school is a great disgrace.
4. Dr. Jones is a famous *oculist*.

DRILL

- I. *Compare the following adjectives:*

clārus	lātus	longus	brevis
audāx	ācer	miser	pulcher
facilis	dissimilis	nōbilis	crūdēlis

II. *Decline in the singular:* mora brevior, iter difficile, terror ācrior, oculus clārior.

III. *Decline in the plural the Latin expressions for:* more cruel injuries, longer bridges, swifter rivers, braver animals.

EXERCISE XXXVII

Write in Latin:

1. The last king of Rome was very cruel.
2. Because he had been expelled from Roman territory, the king, in great wretchedness (the very wretched king), was seeking help from Porsena.
3. The deeds of Porsena were more cruel than the insults of Tarquinius.
4. Porsena's face was very like the face of a fierce animal.
5. The eyes of the Romans were filled with visions of death and slaughter.
6. Never will the Romans see a more extensive (wider) camp than that of the cruel Porsena.
7. The Romans were greatly terrified at the boldness of the enemy (were moved with great fear on account of the boldness of the enemy).
8. The Etruscans hastened without delay to the Pile Bridge.
9. Then indeed the city was in the greatest danger.
10. Will any soldier ever be braver than Horatius?

CHAPTER XXXVIII

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION



377.

DĒ HORĀTIŌ II

Horātius Coclēs cum aliīs mīlitibus Rōmānīs pontem dēfendēbat. Subitō cōpiās Porsenae infimum ad montem dēcurrentēs vidērunt. Itaque magnō terrōre commōtī alii in aliam partem fugiēbant. Tum Horātius clāmāvit: “Quā dē causā, Rōmānī, fugitis? Timētisne mortem? Cōpiae Etruscōrum sunt *magnae*; sunt *multis mīlibus* mīlitum

maiōrēs quam nostrae cōpiae; sed virtūs Rōmāna est *maxima* et semper omnia vincet. Sī milītēs *malī* Porsenae pontem tenuerint, civēs Rōmānōs in servitūtem dabunt. Estne mors servitūte *peior*? Cīvibus Rōmānīs, vērō, servitūs est longē *pessimum* malum. Rōmānī numquam servi erunt. Hic minimus pōns sōlus coniugēs liberōsque nostrōs dēfendit. Nōne nōs igitur *hōc ponte* Etruscōs prohibēbimus? Nōne nostrās coniugēs liberōsque *ab hostibus* liberābimus? Sī ferrō ignique pontem vōs dēlēbitis, ego sōlus in extrēmō ponte stāns hostēs prohibēbō. Acerrimae cōpiae Etruscōrum hunc pontem nōn tenēbunt!"

Haec dixit et extrēmum ad pontem cucurrit. Herminius et Lartius, duo milītēs optimī, ad Horātium properāvērunt. Hī trēs erant *multō* audaciōrēs cūctis Etruscīs et eōs *ā ponte* prohibēbant. Cēteri Rōmānī maximō cum studiō pontem dēlēbant. Mox Horātius Herminiō et Lartiō clāmāvit, "Pontem relinquite, mei comitēs. Ad cēterōs Rōmānōs properāte. Ego sōlus in ponte manēbō!" Eī Horātium reliquērunt, et ad terram firmam cucurrērunt. Tum hostēs clāmāntēs tēla in Horātium misērunt, sed Horātius, rūpī simillimus, scūtō tēla eōrum accipiēbat. Tandem pōns magnō fragōre in flūmen cecidit. Horātius deum flūminis invocāns impeditus in flūmen dēsiluit, et ad terram tūtus vēnit.

Sic Horātius *magnum* et *bonum* factum ēgit. Nullus mīles umquam erat Horātiō *maior*; nullus mīles umquam erat Horātiō *melior*. Etiam hodiē hominēs fābulam dē *maximā* et *optimā* virtūte Horātī nārrant.

Pessimum malum, *the worst evil*. *Malum* is used as a noun.

378. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Cuius cōpiās milītēs Rōmānī vidērunt? 2. Quō cōpiae dēcurrebant? 3. Quō milītēs Rōmānī fugiēbant? 4. Quam magnae sunt cōpiae Etruscōrum? 5. Quam magna est

virtūs Rōmāna? 6. Estne mors servitūte peior? 7. Nōne Horātius ponte Etruscōs prohibēbit? 8. Ā quibus militēs Rōmānī coniugēs liberōsque liberābunt? 9. Quōmodo militēs Rōmānī pontem dēlebunt?

10. Quō Horātius cucurrit? 11. Quālēs militēs erant Herminius et Lartius? 12. Quam audācēs erant eī militēs? 13. Cui erat Horātius simillimus? 14. Eratne ūllus miles Horātiō maior?

DISCUSSION

379. In the story *Dē Horātiō II* are found the forms of several adjectives that are compared irregularly. In the sentence *Cōpiaē Etruscōrum sunt magnae . . .*, find the three degrees of the adjective *magnus*. They are *magnus*, *maior*, *maximus*. Is this comparison made according to the rules of comparison? In the sentence *Sī militēs malī Porsenae pontem tenuerint . . .*, and in the following sentences, find the three degrees of the adjective *malus*. They are *malus*, *peior*, *pessimus*. In the last paragraph of the story find the three degrees of the adjective *bonus*. They are *bonus*, *melior*, *optimus*.

380. Several other irregular forms are found in the story. They are *īnīmus*, which serves as the superlative of the adjective *īnferus*, *low*; *minimus*, serving as the superlative of *parvus*, *small*; and *extrēmus*, the superlative of *exterus*,



Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art

Militēs Etruscī

These warriors form part of the decoration on an Etruscan chariot which was found in the tomb of an Etruscan nobleman (see p. 313)

outside. These are all irregular in their comparison; that is, their forms are not made according to the rules for comparing adjectives (see §§ 362, 363). The only way to learn the comparison of such adjectives is to memorize them thoroughly at once.

381. The most important examples of irregular comparison are as follows:

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>
bonus , -a, -um, <i>good</i>	melior , melius , <i>better</i>
malus , -a, -um, <i>bad</i>	peior , peius , <i>worse</i>
magnus , -a, -um, <i>great</i>	maior , maius , <i>greater</i>
parvus , -a, -um, <i>small</i>	minor , minus , <i>less</i>
multus , -a, -um, <i>much</i>	—, plūs , <i>more</i> (sing.)
multī , -ae, -a, <i>many</i>	plūrēs , plūra , <i>more</i> (pl.)

Superlative

optimus , -a, -um, <i>best</i>
pessimus , -a, -um, <i>worst</i>
maximus , -a, -um, <i>greatest</i>
minimus , -a, -um, <i>least</i>
plūrimus , -a, -um, <i>most</i> (sing. or pl.)

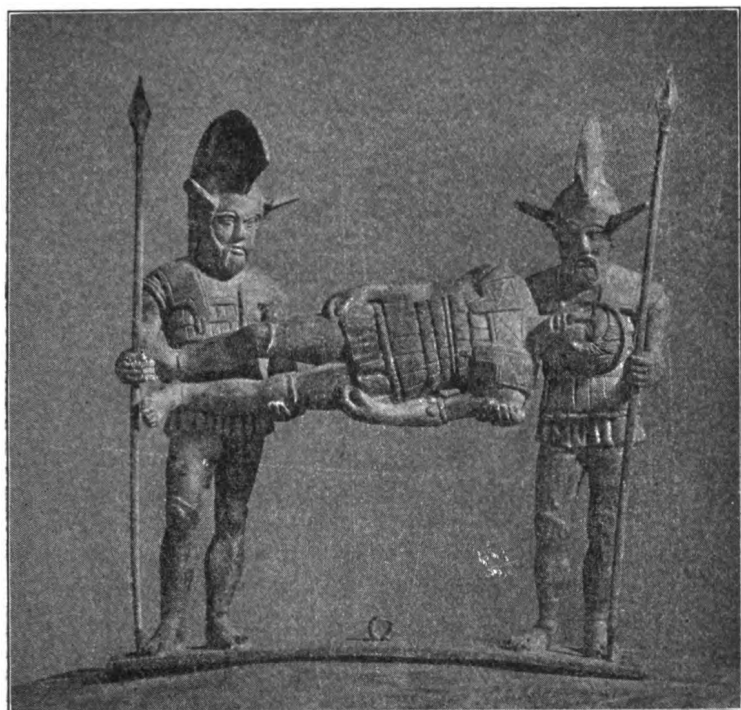
The following are also used rather frequently:

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>
inferus , -a, -um, <i>low</i>	inferior , inferius
exter or exterus , -a, -um, <i>outside</i>	exterior , exterius
superus , -a, -um, <i>high</i>	superior , superius

Superlative

īnfirmus , -a, -um; īmus , -a, -um
extrēmus , -a, -um
summus , -a, -um; suprēmus , -a, -um

382. Phrases containing the adjectives **summus**, **extrēmus**, and **īnfirmus** are often translated idiomatically: **summus**



Militēs socium mortuum portant

This group in bronze formed the handle of a box made in the fourth century B.C. Though the figures appear crude when compared with modern sculpture, they show a good deal of rugged vigor. They typify the military spirit of the early Romans

mōns, the top of the mountain; *īfīmus mōns*, the bottom of the mountain; *extrēmus pōns*, the end of the bridge. (See § 239.)

383. Several adjectives are compared by using the adverbs *magis*, more, and *maximē*, most; as, *idōneus*, suitable; *magis idōneus*, more suitable; *maximē idōneus*, most suitable.

384. In the sentence *Cōpiae Etrūscōrum sunt magnae; sunt multīs mīlibus mīlitum maiōrēs quam nostrae cōpiae*,

what phrase tells how much greater the forces of the Etruscans are than the forces of the Romans? This phrase shows the amount of difference between the two sets of forces, indicated specifically by the ablative *mīlibus*.

The sentence *Hī trēs erant multō audāciōrēs cūctis Etrūscīs* may be translated, *These three were bolder by much, or much bolder, than all the Etruscans*. What does the word *multō* show? *Multō*, which is in effect a substantive in the ablative, used as an adverb, shows how much bolder these men were than the Etruscans. It shows the degree of difference in their boldness. English has a very similar construction, sometimes using *by*, sometimes omitting it, as in the sentences "Charles is taller than Mary *by a head*," "Charles is *a year* older than Mary."

When two persons or things are compared, then, the amount of the difference between them is often specified. This amount of difference is expressed by a noun in the ablative; the ablative so used is called *ablative of degree of difference*.

385. In the sentence *Nōne nōs igitur hōc ponte Etrūscōs prohibēbimus*, what phrase shows that from which the Etruscans were to be kept away? What is the case of the noun in this phrase? Is a preposition used? In the sentence *Hī trēs erant multō audāciōrēs cūctis Etrūscīs et eōs ā ponte prohibēbant*, what phrase shows from what the three kept the Etruscans? What case is used? Is there a preposition?

In the sentence *Nōne coniugēs liberōsque nostrōs ab hostibus liberābimus*, what phrase shows from whom the wives and children are to be freed? In what case is *hostibus*? Is there a preposition in this phrase?

With verbs meaning *keep (from)*, *free*, *separate*, etc., the idea of separation is expressed by the ablative, sometimes with, sometimes without, a preposition.

RULES

386. Ablative of degree of difference. The ablative is used to express the degree of difference between two objects compared.

387. Ablative of separation. The ablative, sometimes with a preposition, sometimes without, may be used to express separation.

VOCABULARY XXXVIII

* <i>cēterī, -ae, -a, the rest of;</i> as a pronoun, <i>(the) others</i>	* <i>ferrum, -ī, n., iron; sword</i>
<i>comes, comitis, m., companion, comrade</i>	<i>fragor, fragōris, m., crashing, noise</i>
<i>commoveō, -ēre, commōvī, commōtus, stir up, move deeply, alarm</i>	<i>impeditus, -a, -um, burdened, hindered</i>
<i>cūctus, -a, -um, all, entire, the whole (of)</i>	* <i>infimus, -a, -um, lowest</i>
<i>dēcurrō, -ere, dēcurrī or dēcucurrī, dēcursūrus, run down, run</i>	* <i>liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, set free, free, liberate</i>
* <i>dēfendō, -ere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus, defend, guard</i>	* <i>magis, adv., more</i>
<i>dēsiliō, -ire, dēsiliū, dēsultus, leap down</i>	<i>multō, adv., much</i>
	<i>rūpēs, rūpis, rūpium, f., cliff, rock</i>
	* <i>servitūs, servitūtis, f., slavery, servitude</i>
	* <i>tūtus, -a, -um, safe, secure, out of danger</i>

Idioms

infimus mōns, the bottom of the mountain; summus mōns, the top of the mountain; extrēmus pōns, the end of the bridge

388. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. Pick out the Latin words in the vocabulary with which the following are associated: *desultory, defendant, infirmity.*

II. *Fe* (for Latin *ferrum*) is the chemical symbol for iron.



Horātius in nummō signātus

On this old Roman coin, Horatius is seen swimming the Tiber. A Roman with uplifted ax is still chopping at the bridge. The head of the Roman emperor Antoninus Pius is stamped on the other side of the coin

III. The abbreviation *etc.* stands for *et cētera*, which means *and others*, but is usually translated *and so forth*.

DRILL

I. Compare the following adjectives, giving all the genders for each degree:

celer	inferus	magnus	similis
nōbilis	multus	exterus	firmus
bonus	parvus	crūdēlis	clārus

II. Express the following phrases in Latin in the designated case:

Very bad companions (*gen.*); greater crashing (*acc.*); the bottom of the mountain (*nom.*); very firm rocks (*acc.*); worse slavery (*dat.*); the end of the road (*abl.*); rather good swords (*dat.*); the tops of the trees (*abl.*).

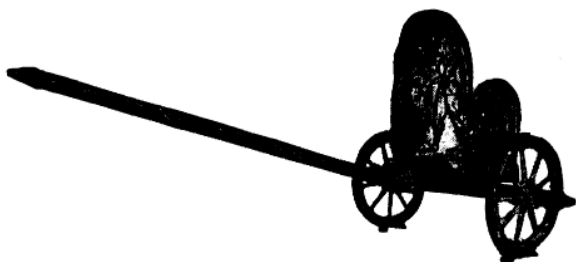
III. Express the italicized phrases in Latin:

1. Horatius is near *the end of the bridge*.
2. The soldiers stand like *very firm rocks*.
3. Slavery is *much worse than death*.
4. Horatius had a *very keen mind*.
5. He is desirous of *very little praise*.

EXERCISE XXXVIII

Write in Latin:

1. Horatius, who was defending the bridge, was very like a god. 2. "Slavery," says Horatius, "is much more suitable for the enemy than for Romans." 3. This brave soldier with two companions kept off many thousands of the enemy. 4. In the meantime the others, stirred by the greatest terror, were destroying the bridge with fire and iron. 5. The whole city, safe again, heard the great crashing of the bridge. 6. Horatius, burdened with his weapons, will leap down from the end of the bridge into the river. 7. The companions of Horatius were at the bottom of the cliff. 8. These ran down to the river and dragged him to dry land (*ad terram firmam*).



Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art

Currus Etrūscus

A closer view of the decoration on this chariot is given on
page 307

CHAPTER XXXIX

COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE

POSSUM

VOLŌ, NŌLŌ, MĀLŌ



389. DĒ DAEDALŌ ET ĪCARŌ I

Multis ante annis Daedalus cum Īcarō, parvō filiō, Athēnīs ad insulam Crētā fūgit quod ab Athēnārū cīvibus dam-nātus erat. Primō Minōs, rēx Crētae, eum benignē accēpit; nam Daedalus erat vir artium perītissimus et rēgem iuvāre poterat. Sed postea rēx Daedalō et Īcarō fuit inimicus et

(314)

eōs in custōdiam dedit. Mare et terra ā custōdibus rēgis custōdiēbantur. Daedalus, tamen, patriam vidēre cupiēbat et semper cōsilia fugae cōgitābat. Sīc sēcum cōgitābat: “Nōne novās artēs *facere possum?* Nōne ego et Īcarus ā Crētā fugere possumus?”

Tandem parvum filium ad sē vocat. “Mīnōs quidem nāvis et militibus mare terramque regere potest. Caelum, vērō, regere nōn potest. Ā caelō nulli custōdēs nōs prohibēre possunt. Ego ālās facere possum; tum nōs Athēnās mox revenīre possumus. Tū, parve fili, mē iuvāre potes.

“Tū et tuī custōdēs, Mīnōs, *vinci potestis*. Callidus es, Mīnōs, sed callidior est Daedalus; nōn *terrēri potest*. Mare et terra ā tē *custōdīri* et *regī* possunt. Sed caelum ā tē *occupārī* nōn potest. Ē caelō neque vocārī neque *capī* possumus.

“Effugere nōn potuī; nunc dēmum hanc aliēnam īnsulam relinquere poterō. Nōs Graeciam iterum vidēre poterimus. Tū, mī fili, Athēnīs habitāre poteris. Cīvis Athēnārum esse dēbēs. Nunc properāre dēbeō; negōtium enim est difficile.”

Hōc modō Daedalus effugere cōstituit. Tum is multās pennās comparāvit. Ē pennīs cērāque ālās levēs fēcit. Sed Īcarus opus saepe impediēbat. Tum eius pater rogābat, “*Visne relinquere Crētā, mī fili?*” “Certē, pater, *volō fugere*.” “Quārē, igitur, pennīs lūdīs?” “Pennae, pater, sunt levēs et pulchrae. Ventus eās hūc et illūc mittit. Mē iuvat pennīs lūdere.” “Sed nōs ālās *facere volumus*. Sī adultī opus *facere volunt*, nōn lūdunt; tū puer lūdere nōn dēbēs.” “Ego labōrābō. In Crētā *manēre nōlō*. Ego quoque Athēnīs *habitāre mālō*.”

Sīc dēmum ālae sunt parātae; Daedalus Īcarō eās dēmōnstrat. Ālae Īcarum dēlectant, nam ālis avis simillimae esse videntur. Poteruntne Daedalus et Īcarus eīs ālis volāre?

Nōtā bene

Mīnōs, Mīnōis, *Minos*, a king of Crete.

Mē iuvat pennīs lūdere, *it pleases me to play with the feathers;*
that is, *I like to play with the feathers.*

390. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Quandō Daedalus cum filiō parvō ad Crētā fugit?

2. Quālis vir erat Daedalus?

3. Cūr rēx eum benignē accēpit? 4. Cūr Daedalus et Īcarus ā Crētā fugere nōn poterant?

5. Quid Daedalus Īcarō dē rēge nārrat? 6. Quid Daedalus Īcaro dē sē nārrat?

7. Quid ā rēge agī potest?

8. Quid ambō iterum agere poterunt? 9. Cūr Daedalus properāre dēbet?

10. Quid Daedalus agere cōstituit? 11. Quōmodo ālās facere poterat? 12. Quid

Labyrinthus
When Daedalus was in Crete, he built the labyrinth for the king. The Minotaur, a famous monster, was confined in the center of the labyrinth

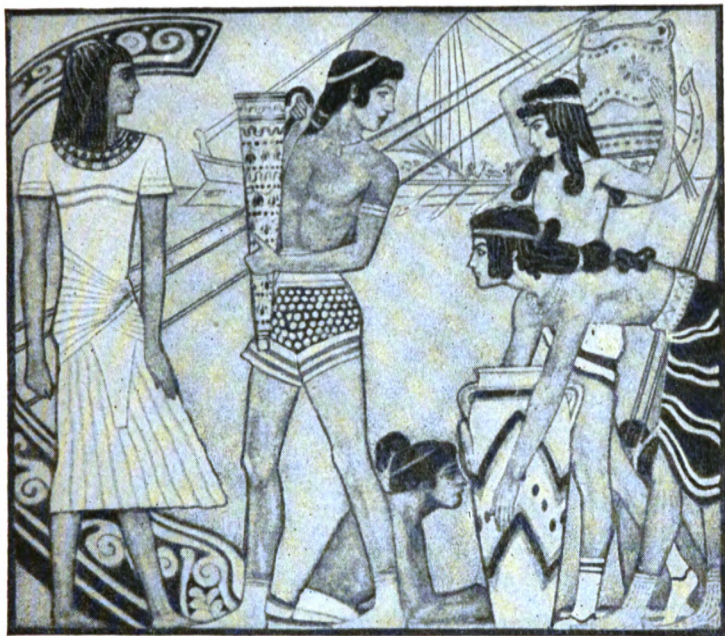
pater rogābat? 13. Ubi Īcarus manēre nōn vult? 14. Ubi Īcarus habitāre māvult?

15. Quālēs sunt ālae Daedalī? 16. Quōmodo Daedalus et Īcarus volāre poterunt?



DISCUSSION

391. In the sentence Nōnne novās artēs facere possum, what part of the word possum is familiar? List the other forms of this verb found in the first four paragraphs of the story Dē Daedalō et Īcarō I. What forms belong to the present tense of this verb? to the imperfect tense? to



Mercātōrēs Crētēnsēs

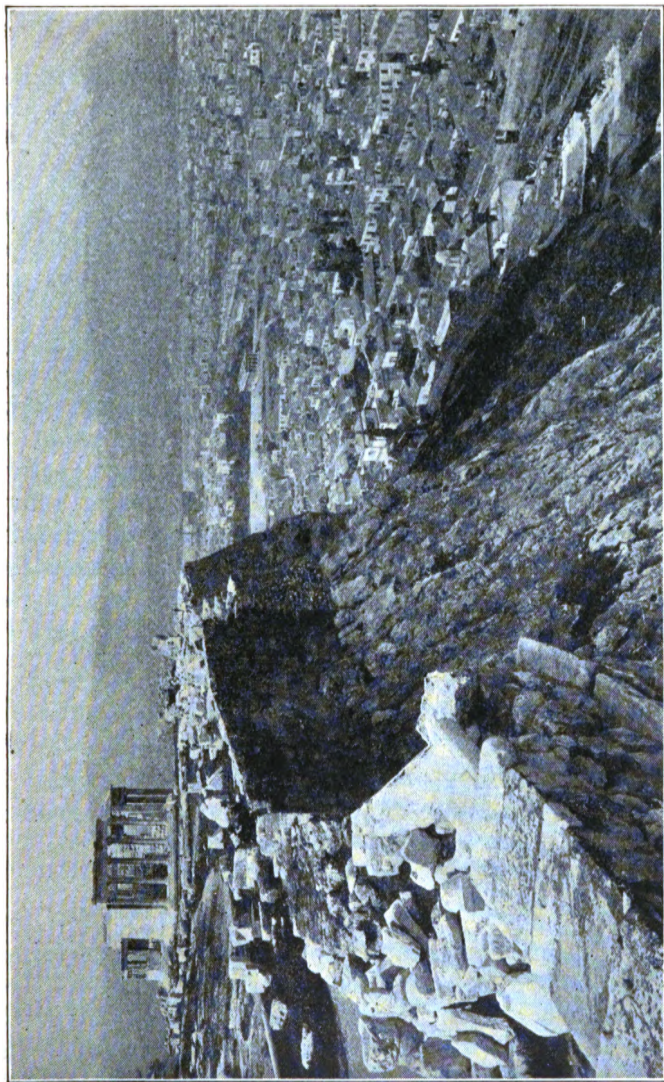
Crete was an early center of civilization, and Cretan merchants went to all the Mediterranean countries with the Cretan wares. Notice the boats in the picture. Can you tell from the costume of the man on the left with what country the merchants are trading?

the future tense? What syllables are used with the various tenses of **sum** to form this verb? To what forms of **sum** are the letters **pos-** prefixed? What prefix is used with all other forms of **sum**? The verb **possum** is a compound of the adjective **potis**, *able*, and the verb **sum** and has the meaning, *I am able, I can*. The present, imperfect, and future tenses of this verb may be found by prefixing the syllable **pot-** or **pos-** to the present, imperfect, and future tenses of **sum**. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect are formed on the third principal part, as in other verbs.

392. Learn the following paradigm of **possum**. Observe carefully the spelling of the pluperfect and the future perfect forms.

Present	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
possum , <i>I am able, I can</i> , etc.	possumus
potes	potestis
potest	possunt
Imperfect	
poteram , <i>I was able, I could</i> , etc.	poterāmus
poterās	poterātis
poterat	poterant
Future	
poterō , <i>I shall be able</i> , etc.	poterimus
poteris	poteritis
poterit	poterunt
Perfect	
potui , <i>I have been able, I could</i> , etc.	potuimus
potuisti	potuistis
potuit	potuērunt
Pluperfect	
potueram , <i>I had been able</i> , etc.	potuerāmus
potuerās	potuerātis
potuerat	potuerant
Future Perfect	
potuerō , <i>I shall have been able</i> , etc.	potuerimus
potueris	potueritis
potuerit	potuerint

393. What verb form accompanies all the forms of **possum** that appear in the story? The meaning of **possum**, *I am able*, or *I can*, is often made fuller or more complete by adding an infinitive, called a *complementary infinitive*, which completes its meaning; as, **effugere possum**, *I am able to escape*,



Athēnae, urbs Graeciae clārissima

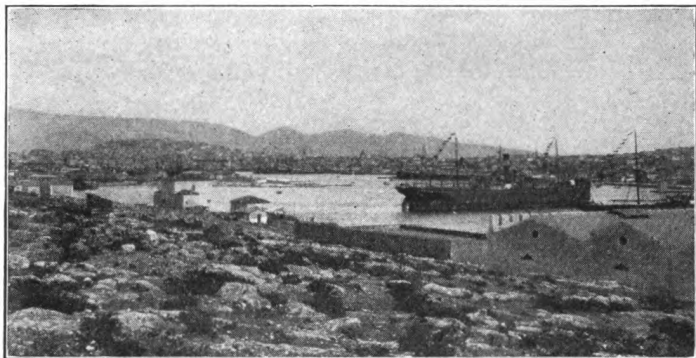
or *I can escape*. The subject of the verb *possum* is the person thought of as doing the action expressed in the infinitive.

394. In the second paragraph of the story, pick out the complementary infinitives and state the conjugation to which each belongs. The present active infinitive of regular verbs ends in *-re*. The vowel preceding the letters *-re* identifies the conjugation. In the third paragraph of the story, list the forms of *possum* and their complementary infinitives. Do the subjects of these phrases act or are they acted upon? If the subject of the phrase is acted upon, then the infinitive is passive. State the conjugation to which each infinitive belongs and give the present active infinitive. What change takes place in the present active infinitive to form the present passive infinitive of each conjugation? In the first, second, and fourth conjugations the final *-e* of the present active infinitive becomes *-i*. In the third conjugation, including *-iō* verbs, the ending *-ere* is dropped and *-i* is substituted.

395. Observe the following infinitive forms:

<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive</i>
I. <i>portāre</i> , to carry	<i>portārī</i> , to be carried
II. <i>vidēre</i> , to see	<i>vidērī</i> , to be seen, to seem
III. <i>mittere</i> , to send	<i>mittī</i> , to be sent
<i>-iō</i> III. <i>capere</i> , to take	<i>capī</i> , to be taken
IV. <i>audire</i> , to hear	<i>audīrī</i> , to be heard

396. In the fifth paragraph of the story, various forms of the verb *volō*, *I wish*, are found. List these forms. Are these forms made from a regular stem? Since this verb has no regular stem, it is said to be an *irregular verb*. Its forms must be memorized thoroughly. There are only a few irregular verbs in Latin. From the word *volō* two others are formed. They are *nōlō*, composed of *ne* and *volō*,



Piraeus, portus Graecus

Piraeus, the port of ancient Athens, is an important modern seaport

meaning *I am unwilling*, and *mālō*, composed of *magis* and *volō*, meaning *I am more willing*, or *I prefer*.

397. What do the verbs *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō* require to complete their meaning? Find other verbs in the story which require an infinitive to complete their meaning. Verbs meaning *decide*, *wish*, *try*, *seem*, *be able* are often followed by the infinitive; and also the various forms of *dēbeō*, *I ought*. Observe that the complementary infinitive immediately precedes the word upon which it depends. The negative *nōn* may intervene between the two. The complementary infinitive may be active or passive.

RULE

398. *Complementary infinitive.* The infinitive may be used with certain verbs to complete the meaning.

399. Learn the conjugations of the following irregular verbs. Observe that all the tenses except the present are formed regularly according to the rules for the third conjugation.

volō, velle, voluī, —, *to be willing*
 nōlō, nolle, noluī, —, *to be unwilling*
 mālō, malle, māluī, —, *to prefer*

<i>Present</i>	volō vis vult volumus vultis volunt	nōlō nōn vis nōn vult nolumus nōn vultis nolunt	mālō māvis māvult mālumus māvultis mālunt
<i>Impf.</i>	volēbam <i>etc.</i>	nōlēbam <i>etc.</i>	mālēbam <i>etc.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	volam volēs <i>etc.</i>	nōlam nōlēs <i>etc.</i>	mālam mālēs <i>etc.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	voluī <i>etc.</i>	noluī <i>etc.</i>	māluī <i>etc.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	volueram <i>etc.</i>	nolueram <i>etc.</i>	mālueram <i>etc.</i>
<i>Fut. perf.</i>	voluerō <i>etc.</i>	noluerō <i>etc.</i>	māluerō <i>etc.</i>

READING LESSON

400. DĒ DAEDALŌ ET ICARŌ II

Daedalus insulam primā luce relinquere cōstituerat. Id tempus eī maximē idōneum fugae esse vidēbātur. Nunc Daedalus filiō parvō ālās dat et memor magnī periculī sic Īcarum monet: "Sī superior volābis, sōl cēram solvet; sī inferior volābis, aqua ālās tanget et tē impediet. Inter haec pericula volāre dēbēmus. Ego primus volābō; tū post mē volābis."



Nunc dēmum ambō sunt in caelō. Eī quī Daedalum et Īcarum per caelum volantēs spectant maximē commoventur. Eis Daedalus et Īcarus deī esse videntur; nam deī sōlī caelum obtinent et volāre possunt.

Sine morā per caelum clārum volant. Graecia propior et cārīor esse vidētur. Īcarus per caelum volāns est laetissimus. Sed propior sōlī esse vult. Mox est verbōrum patris oblītus; ad sōlem volat. Nōne cōnsilia patris, Īcare, memoriā tenēs? Nōne Graeciam vidēre vīs? Pater filiū ad sōlem volantem videt et iterum eum monet. Eius verba frūstrā dicuntur; nam sōl cēram solvit.

Nunc Īcarus perterritus volāre temptat. Sed volāre nōn potest; ālae āmittuntur. In mare cadit.

Daedalus fuit miserrimus et domum volāre nōluit. In marī corpus filiī petivit et invēnit. Tum pater sōlus volāvit.

VOCABULARY XXXIX

<i>āla</i> , -ae, f., <i>wing</i>	* <i>nōlō</i> , <i>nōlle</i> , <i>nōluī</i> , —, <i>be unwilling</i>
<i>ars</i> , <i>artis</i> , <i>artium</i> , f., <i>art, skill, trick; device</i>	* <i>obtimeō</i> , -ēre, <i>obtinuī</i> , <i>obtentus</i> , <i>occupy, hold fast, possess</i>
<i>callidus</i> , -a, -um, <i>shrewd, skilful</i>	<i>parātus</i> , -a, -um, <i>prepared, ready</i>
<i>cēra</i> , -ae, f., <i>wax</i>	<i>penna</i> , -ae, f., <i>feather</i>
* <i>custōs</i> , <i>custōdis</i> , m., <i>guard, defender</i>	* <i>peritus</i> , -a, -um, <i>skilled, experienced</i>
<i>damnō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>condemn, convict</i>	* <i>possum</i> , <i>posse</i> , <i>potuī</i> , —, <i>be able, can</i>
* <i>dēbeō</i> , -ēre, <i>dēbuī</i> , <i>dēbitus</i> , <i>owe, ought</i>	<i>propior</i> , <i>propius</i> , <i>nearer</i>
<i>dēmum</i> , adv., <i>at length, at last</i>	<i>quārē</i> , interrog. adv., <i>wherefore? why?</i>
<i>effugiō</i> , -ere, <i>effūgī</i> , —, <i>escape</i>	<i>solvō</i> , -ere, <i>solvi</i> , <i>solūtus</i> , <i>unbind, depart, dissolve</i>
* <i>iuvō</i> , -āre, <i>iūvī</i> , <i>iūtus</i> , <i>assist, help; iuvat, impersonal, it pleases, it is useful to</i>	* <i>temptō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>try, attempt</i>
* <i>levis</i> , <i>leve</i> , <i>light</i>	* <i>terreō</i> , -ēre, <i>terruī</i> , <i>territus</i> , <i>frighten, terrify</i>
* <i>mālō</i> , <i>mālle</i> , <i>māluī</i> , —, <i>wish more, prefer</i>	* <i>ventus</i> , -ī, m., <i>wind</i>
* <i>modus</i> , -ī, m., <i>measure, manner, way</i>	* <i>volō</i> , <i>velle</i> , <i>voluī</i> , —, <i>wish, be willing</i>

401. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. Explain the italicized words in the following sentences:

1. The invalid likes to *solve* puzzles.
2. *Levity* often creeps into the most serious assemblies.
3. *Debts* incurred through war become national burdens.

II. 1. *Semper paratus* is a familiar motto, meaning *always prepared*, or *ever ready*.



Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art

Pöculum Graecum

A cup from the country of Daedalus, made with the skill for which Greek artists and craftsmen were famous

2. *Possunt quia posse videntur* is a familiar Vergilian quotation, meaning *they are able because they seem to be able*, but generally translated *they can because they think they can*.

DRILL

I. Give a synopsis of the following verbs in the person and number indicated:

possum, third singular
dēbeō, third plural active
cōstituō, first singular active
videor, first plural

solvō, third singular active
volō, second singular
nōlō, third singular
mālō, third plural

II. Give the present active and passive infinitives of the Latin verbs for the following:

move	condemn	defend	hear
seize	give	destroy	decide
throw	fortify	occupy	prepare

III. Express the italicized verb phrases in Latin:

1. Skilled men alone *can fly*.
2. Guards *seemed to be placed* everywhere.
3. I *have decided to be* brave.

4. Daedalus *ought to be praised*.
5. Icarus *did not wish to be left* on the island.
6. The little boy *wishes to hold the feathers* in his fingers.
7. Daedalus *preferred to accomplish his task*.
8. Icarus *wishes to fly* with his new wings.

EXERCISE XXXIX

Write in Latin:

1. Very many men skilled in the arts have tried to fly with wings. 2. Daedalus, who had been condemned in Athens, was able to escape to Crete. 3. At first the king of Crete was very friendly, but later he put Daedalus under arrest. 4. The king's guards were able to control the sea and land. 5. The shrewd king could not possess the sky; and he could not terrify (neither could he terrify) Daedalus. 6. And so Daedalus, moved by the greatest longing for Greece, made wings out of feathers. 7. The wind seemed to play with the very light feathers; and so the little boy wished to play also. 8. At length the wings are ready; in this way both will be able to escape from the very wicked king. 9. Icarus ought not to leave his father; for the sun will melt (dissolve) the wax. 10. Icarus was unwilling to fly behind his father; he preferred to be nearer the sun.

CHAPTER XL

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION



402.

DĒ C. MŪCIŌ I

Fābulam lēgimus dē Horātiō, quī Etrūscōs ā ponte prohibuit. Quamquam Lārs Porsena ita ab Horātiō pulsus erat, tamen ab urbe Rōmā nōn discessit. *Longē lātēque* castra eius in ripīs Tiberis pertinēbant. Porsenae castra *longius* et *lātius* quam Rōma ipsa pertinēbant. Rēx Etrūscōrum, quod victus erat, irātissimus erat. Itaque trāns flūmen Tiberim castra posuerat et Rōmam obsidēbat.

(327)

Senātōrēs Rōmānī castra in omnēs partēs *longissimē* et *lātissimē* pertinentia vīdērunt. Itaque timōre magnopere mōtī sunt. Omnēs magnō in periculō erant. Nēmō ex urbe excēdere poterat; nēmō in urbem prōcēdere poterat. Interim Rōmae erat maxima inopia frūmentī. Frūstrā senātōrēs auxilium ā deīs immortālībus petīvērunt. Famem mortemque miserrimē exspectābant.

C. Mūcius erat nōbilis iuvenis *magnā virtūte*. Ad senātōrēs, virōs maximā auctōritāte, *fortiter* vēnit et audācter dīxit. "Lārs Porsena, vir audācissimus," inquit, "Rōmam iam diū obsidet. Diūtissimē civēs nostrōs perterruit. Diūtiusne eum tolerāre dēbēmus? Ego sōlus ad castra hostium *celeriter* prōcēdere volō. Nōn *celerius* quam ego sagitta ipsa volābit. Ego enim civis Rōmānus civēs Rōmānōs ab hōc periculō et ab hīs hostibus *celerrimē* liberābō! Probatīsne mea cōnsilia?"

Senātōrēs haec verba dīlīgenter cōgitantēs, ita respondērunt: "Bene dīxistī, C. Mūcī! Nē senātor quidem melius dīxit. Nam Lārs Porsena, vir maximā audāciā, male ēgit. Nūllī hostēs umquam peius ēgērunt. Lārs Porsena pessimē ēgit quod nostram urbem sine causā oppugnāvit. Sī tua cōnsilia optimē perfēceris, populō Rōmānō maximum beneficium dabis et ā populō Rōmānō semper laudāberis."

Nōtā bene

403. The early Latin alphabet did not have the letter G, and C was used for the sound of both C and G. The initial letter that used to stand for Gāius was therefore written C, and even after G was adopted into the alphabet, C was still used to stand for Gāius. Hence the C. of the title stands in this place for Gāiō, and should be so read. The C. in the fourth paragraph stands for the vocative Gāi.

Lārs Porsena Rōmam iam diū obsidet, *Lars Porsena has been besieging Rome for a long time*. Observe that with iam diū, a present tense should often be translated into English by a present perfect.



Courtesy of Mary A. Grant, Ph.D.

Montēs in Etrūriā

404. Respondē Latinē:

1. Pertinēbantne castra Porsenae longē lātēque? 2. Pertinēbatne Rōma longius et lātius quam castra Porsenae?
3. Quid senātōrēs Rōmānī vidērunt? 4. Ā quibus senā-

tōrēs auxilium petivērunt? 5. Quōmodo famem et mortem expectābant?

6. Quālis erat C. Mūcius? 7. Quālēs erant senātōrēs? 8. Quōmodo dixit Mūcius? 9. Quam diū Porsena cīvēs Rōmānōs perterruit? 10. Quid agere vult Mūcius? 12. Quam celeriter prōcēdet Mūcius? 13. Ā quibus liberābuntur cīvēs Rōmānī? 14. Quam male ēgit Porsena? 15. Cūr Porsena pessimē ēgit?

DISCUSSION

405. In the sentence *Longē lātēque castra eius in ripis Tiberis pertinēbant*, how are the words *longē* and *lātē* used? If they are used to modify the verb *pertinēbant*, what part of speech are they? From what Latin adjectives are they formed? To what declension do these two adjectives belong? How are the adverbs made?

In the sentence *Ad senātōrēs virōs maximā auctōritāte fortiter vēnit*, how is *fortiter* used? From what Latin adjective is it made? To what declension does this adjective belong? In the sentence *Ego sōlus ad castra hostium celeriter prōcēdere volō*, how is *celeriter* used? From what adjective is it made? To what declension does the adjective belong? Study these two adverbs *fortiter* and *celeriter* and state how they are made.

In the sentence *Senātōrēs haec verba dīligenter cōgitantēs, ita respondērunt*, how is the adverb *dīligenter* made?

RULES

406. Adverbs may be made from adjectives of the first-and-second declension by adding *-ē* to the base of the positive degree of the adjective.

407. Adverbs may be made from adjectives of the third declension by adding *-iter* to the base of the positive degree of the adjective.

408. Adverbs may be made from adjectives of the third declension ending in *-ns* by adding *-er* to the base.

Examples of these formations are: *lātus*, *wide*, base *lāt-*, adverb *lātē*; *fortis*, *brave*, base *fort-*, adverb *fortiter*; *diligēns*, *careful*, base *diligent-*, adverb *diligenter*.

The adverb *audācter*, *boldly*, made on the base *audāc-*, has lost the *i* of the suffix *-iter*; as, *audāx-*, base *audāc-*, adverb *audācter*.

409. In the sentence *Bene dixistī*, C. Mūcī, what part of speech is *bene*? To what adjective does it correspond? In the sentence *Nam Lārs Porsena . . . male ēgit*, what part of speech is *male*? To what adjective does it correspond? Some adverbs appear to be irregularly formed from the corresponding adjectives; as, *bonus*, adverb *bene*, and *malus*, adverb *male* (*male* irregular because ending in *-e* instead of *-ē*); also *magnus*, adverb *magnopere*.

410. A few words used as adverbs are really the accusative neuter singular form of the corresponding adjective; as, *facilis*, *easy*, adverb *facile*; *multus*, *much*, *many*, adverb *multum*. Other words used as adverbs are the ablative neuter singular form of the adjective, as *multō*. *Multum* means *to a great amount, extent, or degree*; *multō* means *by a great amount, etc.* *Multō* is used mainly with comparatives; as, *multō magis*, *much more*; that is, *more by a great amount*.

411. In the first and second paragraphs of the story *Dē C. Mūciō I*, find the other degrees of the adverbs *lātē* and *longē*. In the third paragraph of the story find the comparison of the adverb *celeriter*. In the last paragraph find all the degrees of the adverbs *bene* and *male*. List these comparisons and study the comparative degree of each. Are they all made alike? Does the form of the comparative look familiar? What does it resemble? The comparative degree of the adverb is the neuter accusative singular of the comparative degree of the corresponding adjective.

412. Examine the forms of all the superlative adverbs listed. Are these forms similar? What does the superlative form of the adverb resemble? What change has been made? The superlative degree of the adverb may be made by adding *-ē* to the base of the corresponding superlative adjective. This is true of all superlative adverbs (except *plūrimum*), regular or irregular, for which a corresponding adjective exists.

413. Some adverbs not made from adjectives are also compared; as, *diū, diūtius, diūtissimē; saepe, saepius, saepissimē*.

414. Observe the relation of adverb to adjective, in the various degrees, in the following table:

	<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
<i>Adjective</i>	<i>lātus</i>	<i>lātior, lātius</i>	<i>lātissimus</i>
<i>Adverb</i>	<i>lātē</i>	<i>lātius</i>	<i>lātissimē</i>
<i>Adjective</i>	<i>celer</i>	<i>celerior, celerius</i>	<i>celerrimus</i>
<i>Adverb</i>	<i>celeriter</i>	<i>celerius</i>	<i>celerrimē</i>
<i>Adjective</i>	<i>bonus</i>	<i>melior, melius</i>	<i>optimus</i>
<i>Adverb</i>	<i>bene</i>	<i>melius</i>	<i>optimē</i>

The following list of irregular adverbs must be memorized:

<i>bene, well</i>	<i>melius</i>	<i>optimē</i>
<i>male, badly</i>	<i>peius</i>	<i>pessimē</i>
<i>magnopere, greatly</i>	<i>magis</i>	<i>maximē</i>
<i>parum, (a) little</i>	<i>minus</i>	<i>minimē</i>
<i>multum, much</i>	<i>plūs</i>	<i>plūrimum</i>
<i>prope, near</i>	<i>propius</i>	<i>proximē</i>

415. In the sentence *Lārs Porsena, vir audācissimus, Rōmam iam diū obsidet*, what is the word that tells what kind of man Lars Porsena is? What part of speech is this

word? In the sentence *Nam Lārs Porsena, vir maximā audāciā, male ēgit*, what phrase describes the word *vir* and takes the place of *audācissimus*? Of what is this phrase made? In what case are the two words? The phrase *maximā audāciā* and the adjective *audācissimus* both describe the word *vir*, and have the same meaning.

A phrase consisting of a noun and modifying adjective in the ablative may be used to describe another noun. An ablative so used is called an *ablative of description*. You will remember that we studied the *genitive of description* in Chapter XXXIV (§ 333). Thus either the ablative or the genitive may be used to describe a noun. The genitive must be used when the phrase denotes dimension or measure; as *pedum decem mūrus*, a *ten-foot wall*.

RULE

416. Ablative of description. A noun and modifying adjective, in the ablative, may be used to describe another noun.

READING LESSON

417.

DĒ C. MŪCIŌ II

Tum C. Mūcius gladiō armātus ad castra hostium laetissimē et celerrimē properāvit. Ibi mīlitibus Etrūscīs ignōtus ambulābat et omnia spectābat. Subitō in mediīs castrīs duōs virōs magnā auctōritāte in sellā sedentēs vidit. Circum eōs plūrimī mīlitēs ācriter properābant. "Uter est Porsena? Poterōne perficere cōsilia mea?" Ita cōgitāns ad virōs audācissimē cucurrit et gladiō virum sibi proximum occidit. Tum quam celerrimē fūgit. Iuvenis miser vērō scrībam, nōn rēgem, occiderat!

Mīlitēs iuvenem captum ad rēgem trāxērunt. Rēx magnopere commōtus eum superbē rogāvit, "Cūr hoc malum perfēcistī? Sine causā scrībam meum occidistī!"

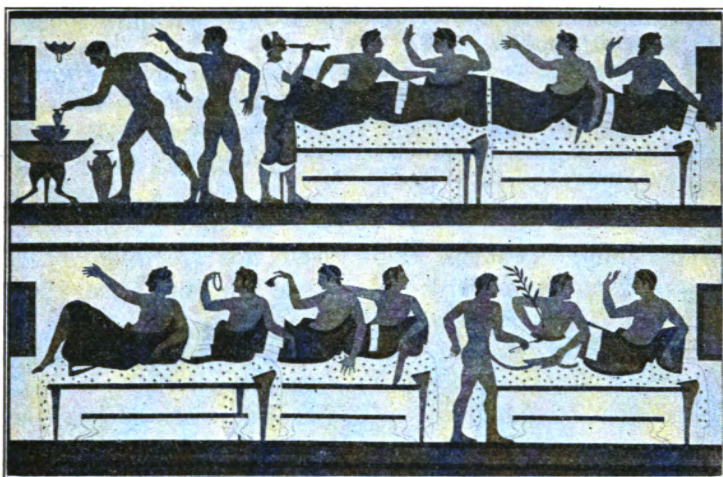


C. Mūcius sine timōre etiam superbius respondit, “Rēgem, nōn scribam humilem, occidere volūi. Id autem perficere nōn potuī. Sed, Porsena, maximīs periculīs et plūrimīs insidiīs semper circumdaberis. Multī enim iuvenēs Rōmānī tē occidere cōstituērunt.”

Porsena maximē perterritus respondit, “Nisi mihi omnia cōsilia Rōmānōrum statim nārrāveris, ignī cōsūmēris.”

Mūcius respondit, “Cīvis Rōmānus multō magis honōrem suum quam vitā amat. Patria cīvī Rōmānō vitā multō est cārīor. Cīvis Rōmānus mortem nōn timet.” Haec dixit et posuit dextram in ignī quī prope in arā erat. Dextra ignī cōsūmpta est. Mūcius autem statuæ simillimus sē nōn mōvit.

Porsena virtutem eius vidēns etiam plūs timōris habēbat, et magnā vōce clāmāvit, “Tū es fortis! Hostem tam fortem interficere nōn possum! Deī ipsī mortem tālis virī vetant!”



Convivium Etrūscum

Sic C. Mūcius servātus est quod tam fortis fuit et quod patriam suam amāvit. Tum hōc beneficiō adductus, rēgi omnia cōsilia iuvenum Rōmānōrum dixit. “Sunt,” inquit, “trecenti nōbilēs iuvenēs quī tē occidere cōstituērunt. Sī fortūna alium ab hōc factō prohibuerit, alius id libenter temptābit. Tandem ūnus ex nōbīs cōsilia perficiet. Sic dēmum Rōma, nostra patria, liberābitur!”

Tum Lārs Porsena hīs verbīs adductus virum fortissimum domum mīsīt. Mox cum Rōmānīs pācem cōfirmāvit. Omnibus suis cōpiīs Rōmā discessit. Postea populus Rōmānus propter magnam eius virtūtem Mūciō cognōmen Scaevolam dedit, et nōmen eius semper laudāvit.

Nōtā bene

Scaevola means literally *left-handed*.

Quam celerrimē, *as quickly as possible*. The highest possible degree of an adjective or adverb is expressed by *quam* and the superlative. The translation is in the form *as . . . as possible*.

Plūs timōris, *more fear*. **Plūs** is used as a noun and is followed by the genitive of the whole.

Ūnus ex nōbis, *one of us*. With numerals the ablative with **ex** or **dē** is commonly used instead of the genitive of the whole.

Omnibus suis cōpiis, *with all his forces*. In military expressions, such as this, the ablative of accompaniment is often used without **cum**.

VOCABULARY XL

- | | |
|---|--|
| * beneficium , beneficī , n.,
<i>kindness, benefit, favor</i> | laetē , adv., <i>joyfully</i> |
| * circumdō , -are, circumdedī ,
circumdatus , <i>encircle, surround</i> | * nēmō , (nūllius), (see § 567),
<i>no one</i> |
| cognōmen , cognōminis , n.,
<i>surname</i> | * obsideō , -ēre, obsēdī , obsessus , <i>besiege, blockade</i> |
| * cōnsūmō , -ere, cōnsūmpsī ,
cōnsūmptus , <i>consume, destroy</i> | * perficiō , -ere, perfēcī , perfectus , <i>accomplish, perform</i> |
| discēdō , -ere, discessī , discessūrus , <i>go away, depart</i> | * pertineō , -ēre, pertinuī , —, <i>extend, pertain</i> |
| excēdō , -ere, excessī , excessūrus , <i>go out</i> | * probō , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>approve, test, try out</i> |
| * famēs , famis , f., <i>hunger, famine</i> | prōcēdō , -ere, prōcessī , prōcessūrus , <i>go before, advance, proceed</i> |
| * fortūna , -ae, f., <i>fortune, lot</i> | * prope , adv., <i>near by, near</i> |
| * honor , honōris , m., <i>honor, esteem</i> | quamquam , conj., <i>although</i> |
| * iam , adv., <i>already, now</i> | scriba , -ae, m., <i>secretary, scribe</i> |
| ignōtus , -a, -um, <i>unknown, unnoticed</i> | senātor , senātōris , m., <i>senator</i> |
| immortālis , -e, <i>immortal</i> | superbē , adv., <i>haughtily</i> |
| * inopia , -ae, f., <i>lack, scarcity</i> | tālis , -e, <i>such</i> |
| * ita , adv., <i>thus, so</i> | tolerō , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>endure</i> |
| iuvenis , iuvenis , iuvenum
m., <i>young man, youth</i> | vetō , -āre, vetuī , vetitus , <i>forbid, prohibit</i> |

418. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Answer the following questions:

1. What is a *perfect* recitation?
2. When is a person *obsessed*?
3. What is an *intolerable* act?
4. What is a *veto*?
5. What is a period of *probation*?



Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art
Lucerna Etrusca

DRILL

I. Compare the Latin adjectives for the following, giving all the genders for each degree:

cruel	difficult	safe	light
suitable	quick	beautiful	good
skilled	large	bold	wide

II. Compare the Latin adverbs for the following:

swiftly	firmly	boldly	badly
easily	beautifully	diligently	greatly
often	(a) little	near	bravely

III. Express in Latin the following phrases:

Very light feathers (*acc.*); a very long sword (*abl.*);
swiftest horses (*nom.*); a rather haughty young man (*gen.*);

too brave a man (*acc.*); more famous stories (*gen.*); most diligent guard (*dat.*); rather suitable places (*nom.*); easier routes (*nom.*); very cruel deeds (*abl.*).

IV. *Express in Latin the italicized words or phrases:*

1. We were freed *from the greatest danger*.
2. He worked *as well as possible*.
3. Horatius was a soldier of *great boldness*.
4. The bridge was *a few feet higher* than the banks of the river.
5. Was the deed of Horatius *more famous than the deed* of Mucius?
6. The plans of Mucius *had not been carried out easily*.

• EXERCISE XL

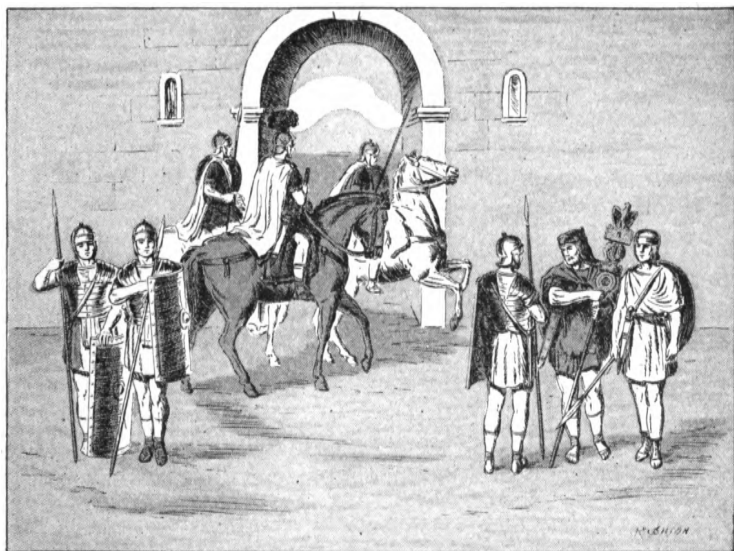
Write in Latin:

1. No one had been able to go out from Rome because Lars Porsena was besieging it. 2. If the very cruel king does not withdraw (will not have withdrawn), famine will very quickly destroy the inhabitants of the city. 3. The senators have joyfully approved the plans of Mucius. 4. Will he be able to accomplish his plans and to free his country (which is) surrounded by such dangers? 5. A greater benefit than this cannot be bestowed upon (given to) the Roman people. 6. I shall go out boldly from the fortifications and I shall proceed to the enemy's camp, which extends far on the banks of the river. 7. Although he observes all the men as carefully as possible, the king is still unknown to him. 8. He wished to kill the king but fortune prevented him; he killed the secretary. 9. The immortal gods forbade the death of the youth whom the haughty king had not been able to terrify. 10. The Roman people gave the surname "Scaevola" to him because they wished thus to give him great honor.

CHAPTER XLI

FOURTH DECLENSION

DATIVE OF PURPOSE; DATIVE OF INTEREST
ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION



419. DĒ EXERCITIBUS RŌMĀNIS I

Exercitus Rŏmānus, quem Caesar in Galliam dŭcēbat, in trēs partēs dīvisus est. Ūna pars *exercitŭs* equitātus erat, altera pars auxilia, tertia pars peditēs, quī milītēs legiŏnārii appellābantur.

Potentissima pars exercitŭs Rŏmāni erant legiŏnēs, nam habēbant milītēs legiŏnāriŏs, virŏs maximae virtūtis, quī pīlis

gladiisque pugnābant. Ubi Caesar signum dedit, milites primī in hostēs appropinquantēs pila mittēbant; tum gladiis in eōs impetum faciēbant. Post proelium equitātus, quī in cornū dextrō et in cornū sinistrō cōstitēbat, in hostēs fugientēs impetum faciēbat et eōs caedēbat. Ante proelium quoque equitātus *Caesarī et exercitū magnō auxiliō erat*, of great service to Caesar and the army nam equitātus cum equitātū hostium proelium saepe committēbat. Auxilia, vel peditēs levis armaturae, proeliis nōn saepe pugnābant. Eae cōpiae tamen magnō ūsui erant, quod ad exercitum frumentum ā finitimis gentibus coactum portābant. Ab exercitū Caesaris multae gentēs victae sunt; nam milites Rōmānī *virtūte viribusque* omnēs aliōs superāvērunt.

Exercitūs Rōmānī ad multās terrās sociis praesidiō mittēbantur. Milites eōrum exercituum terrā marique pugnābant. Nulli exercitūs exercitibus Rōmānis parēs erant virtūte. Omnēs nātiōnēs orbis terrarum igitur potentēs exercitūs Rōmānōs timēbant. Diū cum Rōmānis bellum gerēbant, sed frūstrā pugnābant, nam omnēs nātiōnēs ab exercitibus Rōmānis victae sunt.

420. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Quot in partēs exercitus Rōmānus divīsus est? 2. Quō nōmine ūna pars exercitūs appellābātur? altera pars? tertia pars?

3. Ubi equitātus cōstitit? 4. Cui equitātus magnō auxiliō erat? 5. Quid ad exercitum portābātur? 6. Ā quō multae gentēs victae sunt? 7. Quōmodo milites Rōmānī aliōs superāvērunt?

8. Quibus exercitūs Rōmānī praesidiō mittēbantur? 9. Ubi milites eōrum exercituum pugnābant? 10. Erantne ūlli exercitūs exercitibus Rōmānis virtūte parēs? 11. Nōne omnēs nātiōnēs exercitūs Rōmānōs timēbant? 12. Ā quibus omnēs nātiōnēs victae sunt?



Imperātor mīlitēs cohortātur

Compare this with the similar picture shown on page 180

DISCUSSION

421. In the sentence **Exercitus Rōmānus in trēs partēs dīvisus est**, in what case is **exercitus**? In the sentence **Ūna pars exercitūs equitātus erat**, in what case is **exercitūs**? How does the genitive case differ from the nominative? What does the genitive singular ending tell about a noun? The genitive singular ending of **exercitus** is **-ūs**.

The word **exercitus** is not in the first, second, or third declension, as is shown by the ending of the genitive singular. Nouns that have the ending **-ūs** in the genitive singular belong to the fourth declension.

In the second paragraph of the story find the dative, accusative, and ablative singular of **exercitus**. What is the ending of each case?

In the last paragraph of the story, find the nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative plural of *exercitus*. Give the ending of each case. These are the endings of masculine and feminine nouns of the fourth declension. Most nouns of the fourth declension ending in *-us* are masculine, though *manus*, *manūs*, *hand*, or *band*, and *domus*, *domūs*, *house*, are feminine. Several cases of the noun *domus* have endings of the second declension also, in addition to the fourth-declension endings: *domō* (ablative singular); *domōs* (accusative plural). In the locative singular, only the second-declension form, *domī*, is found. (See § 567.)

422. There are three neuter nouns of the fourth declension, ending in *-ū* in the nominative singular. The most common is *cornū*, *cornūs*, *wing of an army*, or *horn*.

423. Learn the following paradigms of nouns in the fourth declension:

exercitus, *-ūs*, *m.*, base *exercit-*, *army*

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>exercitus</i>	<i>exercitūs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>exercitūs</i>	<i>exercituum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>exercitui</i>	<i>exercitibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>exercitum</i>	<i>exercitūs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>exercitū</i>	<i>exercitibus</i>

cornū, *cornūs*, *n.*, base *corn-*, *horn*, *wing*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>cornū</i>	<i>cornua</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cornūs</i>	<i>cornuum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cornū</i>	<i>cornibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>cornū</i>	<i>cornua</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>cornū</i>	<i>cornibus</i>

424. In the sentence *Ante proelium quoque equitatus Caesarī et exercitui magnō auxiliō erat*, what is the Latin phrase that tells that the cavalry was of service? In what case are the words of this phrase? Who were affected by

this aid? In what case are **Caesarī** and **equitātui**? In the sentence **Exercitūs Rŏmānī ad multās terrās sociīs praesidiō mittēbantur**, what word shows the purpose of sending Roman armies to many lands? In what case is **praesidiō**? Who were affected by this protection? In what case is **sociīs**?

425. The dative case may be used to show the purpose, advantage, or end for which persons or things serve; when so used, it is called the *dative of purpose*. With the dative of purpose is often found another dative which designates the person affected or referred to; and this is called the *dative of interest*, or, sometimes, the *dative of reference*. When the dative of purpose and the dative of interest are used together, the combination is called the *double dative*. **Sum** and certain verbs of motion are used most frequently with the dative of purpose. The nouns **auxiliō**, **cūrae**, **impedimentō**, **praesidiō**, and **ūsui** are used most frequently as datives of purpose.

426. In order to show the construction, a phrase like **Equitātus Caesarī auxiliō erat** is often translated *The cavalry was for an advantage to Caesar*; but such translations to show construction, if they do not happen to agree with the English idiom, should always be followed by a more natural expression, such as *The cavalry was of service to Caesar*.

427. In the sentence **Militēs Rŏmānī virtūte viribusque omnēs aliōs superāvērunt**, which words tell in what respect the Roman soldiers surpassed all others? In what case is **virtūte**? In what case is **viribus**? Is a preposition used? In the sentence **Nūlli exercitūs exercitibus Rŏmānīs parēs erant virtūte**, what word tells in what respect other armies were not equal to the Roman armies? In what case is **virtūte**? Is a preposition used?

The ablative without a preposition may be used to show in *what respect* a statement or assertion is true or a term



Sagittarii

The long robes show that these archers are not Romans. They are Roman allies, who have probably come from an Oriental country

is to be applied. An ablative so used is called an *ablative of specification*.

RULES

428. Dative of purpose. The dative may be used with forms of *sum* and verbs of motion to express purpose or service, and is often accompanied by another dative showing the person affected or interested.

429. Ablative of specification. The ablative without a preposition may be used to show in what respect a statement is true or a term is to be applied.

READING LESSON

430. DE EXERCITIBUS RŌMĀNĪS II

Mīlītēs legiōnārii erant civēs Rŏmāni, incolae Italiae aut prŏvinciārum Rŏmānārum. Equitēs nŏn erant civēs Rŏmāni sed erant mīlītēs aliēni quī ex aliis terris vēnerant. Mīlītēs legiōnārii equitibus magnitudīne corporis nŏn semper erant parēs sed saepe eōs virtūte superābant.

Mīles legiōnārius bene armātus erat. In capite galeam, in corpore lōricam, in sinistrā manū scūtum gerēbat. Quae arma ei praesidiō erant. In dextrā manū gerēbat grave pīlum, quod longissimē mittere poterat. Habēbat praetereā gladium, quī ā dextrō latere pendēbat. Ubi hostēs propius vēnerant, mīles legiōnārius pīlum mittēbat. Tum in hostēs dēcurrēbat et cum eis gladiō pugnābat. Arma equitum erant variōrum generum; nam equitēs ā variis terris vēnerant.

Quī summum imperium exercitūs habēbat "dux bellī" appellābātur. Post eius primam victōriam "imperātor" appellābātur. Lēgāti erant mīlītēs quī singulās legiōnēs dūcēbant. Ei lēgāti erant nōbilēs magnae virtūtis. Fortissimī autem mīlitum omnium erant centuriōnēs. Erant bellī perītissimī et multōs impetūs in hostēs fēcerant.

Nōtā bene

431. Quae arma: *These arms; literally, which arms.* The relative quī, quae, quod may be used as an adjective, modifying



Centuriō

a noun. When so used at the beginning of a sentence, it is often translated *this, these*, etc.

432. *Quī summum imperium exercitūs habēbat, He who had the supreme command.* The relative *quī, quae, quod* may be used to mean *he who*, etc., like English *whoever*. When so used it is called a *double relative*, because it is equivalent to the relative and its antecedent.

VOCABULARY XLI

- | | |
|--|---|
| * <i>appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus</i>
(with dat. or ad and acc.),
<i>approach, draw near</i> | <i>legiōnārius, -a, -um, of a</i>
<i>legion; as a noun, legiō-</i>
<i>nārius, -ārī, m., a legion-</i>
<i>ary, member of a legion</i> |
| <i>armātūra, -ae, f., armor,</i>
<i>equipment</i> | * <i>manus, manūs, f., hand;</i>
<i>band (of soldiers)</i> |
| * <i>centuriō, centuriōnis, m.,</i>
<i>centurion</i> | * <i>nātiō, nātiōnis, f., race, tribe,</i>
<i>nation</i> |
| * <i>cōsistō, -ere, cōstitī, —,</i>
<i>stand, take a position</i> | <i>orbis, orbis, orbium, m.,</i>
<i>circle</i> |
| * <i>cornū, cornūs, n., horn; wing</i>
(of an army) | * <i>pār, paris, equal</i> |
| * <i>domus, domūs, f., house;</i>
<i>home (see §§ 76, 78)</i> | <i>pendeō, -ēre, pependī, —,</i>
<i>be suspended, hang down</i> |
| * <i>equitātus, equitātūs, m.,</i>
<i>cavalry</i> | * <i>praesidium, praesidī, n., gar-</i>
<i>ison, protection</i> |
| * <i>exercitus, exercitūs, m.,</i>
<i>army</i> | * <i>singulī, -ae, -a, one at a</i>
<i>time, single</i> |
| * <i>gravis, -e, heavy; grave, se-</i>
<i>vere</i> | * <i>superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,</i>
<i>overcome, surpass, defeat</i> |
| * <i>impetus, impetūs, m., attack,</i>
<i>assault</i> | * <i>ūsus, ūsūs, m., use, service</i>
* <i>vel, conj., or</i> |

Idioms

- orbis terrārum, the world*
impetum facere (with in and acc.), to make a charge or
attack (upon)

433. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Explain the italicized words:

An *impetuous* youth, *manual* training, *international* law, the *usual* procedure, a *pendent* nest.

DRILL

I. *Decline the Latin phrases for the following:*

Right wing, foreign cavalry, our house, a fierce attack, the left hand.

II. *Supply the proper case endings:*

1. Mīlitēs impet.... in hostēs faciēbant.
2. Lēgātī imperātōr.... auxili.... vērunt.
3. Mīlitēs lev.... armātūr.... auxilia appellābantur.
4. Auctōritās senātōr.... erat maxima.
5. Multī mīlitēs legiōnārii erant in exercit.....
6. Peditēs celeritāt.... nōn erant parēs equitāt....
7. Dux soci.... praesidi.... equitātum mīsīt.
8. Nātiōnēs orbis terrārum virtūt.... Rōmānōs nōn superābant.

EXERCISE XLI

Write in Latin:

1. The soldiers of light armor, called auxiliaries, were not often sent into battle by Caesar. 2. The cavalry often fought with the enemy's (*pl.*) cavalry before the battle; after the battle they attacked the fleeing enemy. 3. The cavalry stood in both wings of the army. 4. The legions took their position one at a time and awaited the approaching enemy. 5. The legionary soldiers carried on the battle with their swords. 6. The shield, which was of great protection to the soldier, was carried in his left hand; the sword hung from his right side. 7. The centurions were not equal to the lieutenants in authority, but they often surpassed them in experience. 8. The nations of the world feared the attacks of the Roman armies.

CHAPTER XLII
FIFTH DECLENSION
ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT OF SPACE



434. DĒ ACIĒ TRIPLICĪ ET DĒ AGMINE

Exercitus Rōmānus ad proelium instrūctus *aciēs* appellābātur. *Acies* Caesaris *acies* triplex appellābātur. *Acies* triplex complūrēs legiōnēs habēbat. Omnis legiō in decem cohortēs dīvidēbātur. Eae cohortēs ad proelium parātae hōc modō instruēbantur. Prīma *acies* quattuor cohortēs habēbat. Mīlitēs prīmae *aciēi* gerēbant pīla quae primō impetū in hostēs mittēbant. Secunda *acies* trēs cohortēs

(348)

habēbat. Eae cohortēs saepe primae *aciēi* auxiliō mittēbantur. Tertia aciēs quoque trēs cohortēs habēbat. Tertia aciēs vel primam *aciem* vel secundam *aciem* magnō in periculō iuvāre poterat. Milītēs quī proximē cōscripti erant rei militāris peritī nōn erant et in tertiā *aciē* conlocābantur. Interdum aciēs triplex circiter *octingentōs pedēs* pertinēbat. Aciēs legiōnum sex veterānārum quam Caesar in ripis Axonae instruxerat circiter *mille passūs* pertinuit.

Exercitus Rōmānus, iter faciēns, agmen appellābatur. Aestate Caesaris milītēs, ex hibernis ēducti, iter *multa milia passuum* in finēs hostium faciēbant. Gallia longē aberat et multī *diēs* cōsūmēbantur. Eōrum *diērum* ōrdō agminis sic cōstituēbātur. Inter singulās legiōnēs erat magnus numerus impedimentōrum; itaque legiōnēs auxiliū inter sē dare nōn potuerunt. Sī, autem, legiōnēs hostibus appropinquābant et periculum erat maximum, agmen sē aliter habēbat. Veterānae legiōnēs in primō agmine conlocābantur; post eas impedimenta totius exercitūs conlocābantur; deinde reliquae legiōnēs quae proximē cōscriptae erant agmen claudēbant et impedimentis praesidiō erant. Cotidiē milītēs castra mūniēbant. Itaque tōtum diem iter facere nōn poterant. Iter quīndecim milium passuum erat illis diēbus idōneum. Quod sī Caesar in hostēs repentinum impetum facere voluit, paucōs diēs magna itinera fēcit. Magnis itineribus Caesar paucis diēbus ad hostium castra subitō pervenire poterat.

Nōtā bene

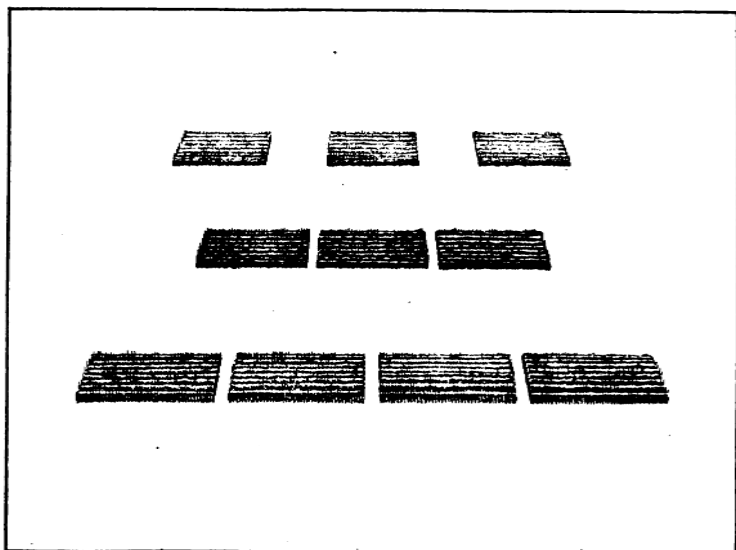
Axona, *Axona*, now called *Aisne*, a river in Belgium.

Octingentōs pedēs, *eight hundred feet*. The Latin word *pēs*, *pedis* was used, like the English word *foot*, as a unit of length. For the construction of *pedēs*, see §§ 441, 443.

435. Respondē Latinē:

1. Quot cohortēs prima aciēs habēbat? 2. Quid milītēs primae aciēi gerēbant? 3. Cui cohortēs secundae aciēi

auxiliō saepe mittēbantur? 4. Quam aciem tertia aciēs iuvāre poterat? 5. Ubi milites quī proximē cōscriptī erant



Aciēs triplex

This diagram shows the ten cohorts of a single legion drawn up in the threefold battle array, facing the beholder. Four cohorts are in the front line, and three in each of the other two. The cohorts in the third, or rear, line are spread out to protect the flanks of the second line, and to be in a position to go to the assistance of either the first or the second line.

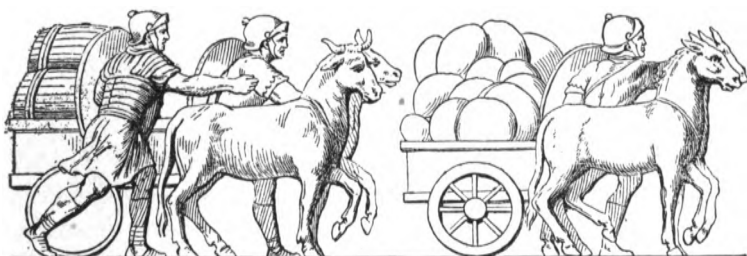
conlocābantur? 6. Quam longē aciēs triplex interdum pertinēbat? 7. Quam longē aciēs Caesaris pertinuit?

8. Quō nōmine exercitus Rōmānus, iter faciēns, appellābātur? 9. Quam longē Caesaris milites iter faciēbant? 10. Cūr cōsumēbantur multī diēs? 11. Quālis erat eōrum diērum ōrdō agminis? 12. Quāle iter erat illis diēbus idōneum? 13. Quot diēs Caesar magna itinera faciēbat? 14. Quōmodo Caesar ad hostium castra paucis diēbus pervenire poterat?

DISCUSSION

436. In the sentence *Prima aciēs quattuor cohortēs habēbat*, in what case is *aciēs*? In the sentence *Militēs primae aciēi pīla gerēbant*, in what case is *aciēi*? What does the genitive singular ending tell about a noun? The genitive singular ending of this word is *-ēi*. What is the base? Nouns in *-ēs* whose genitive singular ends in *-ēi* or *-ei* belong to the fifth declension.

In the first paragraph of the story, find the dative, accusa-



Carri et iūmenta

tive, and ablative singular of *aciēs*. Give the ending of each case.

437. In the second paragraph of the story, find the nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative plural of *diēs*. Give the ending of each case.

438. There are very few nouns in the fifth declension. Only two nouns, *rēs* and *diēs*, have forms in all cases, singular and plural. *Aciēs* has all the forms of the singular, but only nominative and accusative in the plural. The genitive and dative singular end in *-ēi* if the preceding stem ends in a vowel, as the stem *di-* of *diēs*, *diēi*; otherwise in *-ei*, as in *rēs*, *rei*.

439. Most nouns of the fifth declension are feminine, but *diēs* is always masculine in the plural and usually so in the

singular. It is usually feminine when it denotes an appointed or specified day.

440. Learn the following paradigms of nouns in the fifth declension:

diēs, diēi, m. or f., base di-, day

rēs, rei, f., base r-, thing

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diēi	diērum	rei	rērum
<i>Dat.</i>	diēi	diēbus	rei	rēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
<i>Abl.</i>	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

441. In the sentence *Interdum aciēs triplex circiter octingentōs pedēs pertinēbat*, what phrase tells how far this triple battle line extended? In what case are these words? The phrase means *for eight hundred feet or eight hundred feet*. An accusative so used expresses the extent of space, and answers the question *how far?* Compare this accusative with the accusative of duration of time (see § 272), which answers the question *how long?* The Latin phrase for *how far?* is *quam longē?* The phrase for *how long (a time)?* is *quam diū?*

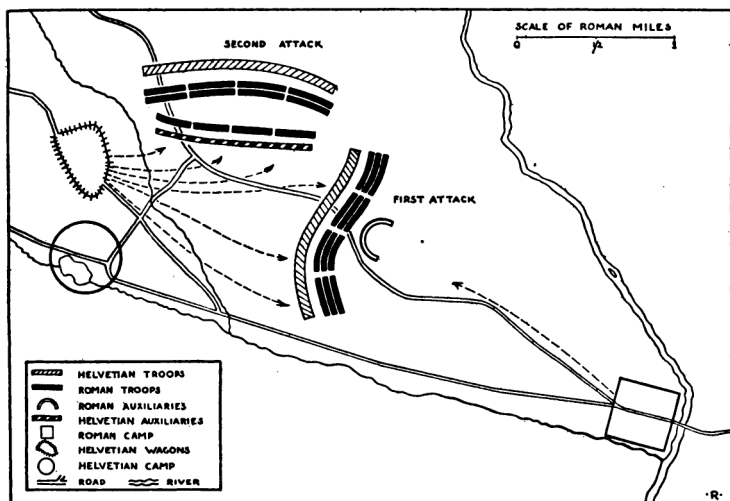
442. In the phrase *mille passūs*, the word *mille* is an indeclinable adjective modifying *passūs*, and means *a thousand*. *Mille passūs* means *a thousand paces*; that is, a Roman mile, which was about 150 yards less than an English mile. A *passus* was the distance which we should call two steps: the distance, in ordinary walking, between the points at which either foot leaves the ground and is placed upon the ground again; that is, about five feet.

To express the plural, *miles*, the phrase *mīlia passuum*, *thousands of paces*, is used. In this phrase *mīlia* is a noun, and its case depends upon its use in the sentence; *passuum* is a genitive of the whole. The plural *mīlia* is a neuter i-stem

noun of the third declension and is declined as follows:
mīlia, mīlium, mīlibus, mīlia, mīlibus.

RULE

443. *Accusative of extent of space.* Extent of space may be expressed by the accusative.



READING LESSON

444.

DĒ PROELIŌ RŌMANŌ

Caesar aciem in colle instruēbat quod mīlītēs ā superiōre locō pīla in hostēs facilius mittere poterant. Clārissimō proeliō Helvēticō Caesar maiōrem partem collis mīlitibus complēvit. In colle mediō triplicem aciem instrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum. In summō colle duās legiōnēs quās proximē cōscripserat atque auxilia conlocāvit.

Iam Helvētīl prīmae aciēi Caesaris appropinquant. Quod hostēs nōn longē absunt, Caesar signum dat. Statim mīlītēs



Ad impedimenta pugnātum est

On this occasion, the Helvetian women, who had been left with the baggage, seized weapons and bravely opposed the advancing Romans

prīmae aciēi pīla in Helvētiōs venientēs mittunt. Tum omnēs militēs gladiis diū atque ācriter pugnant.

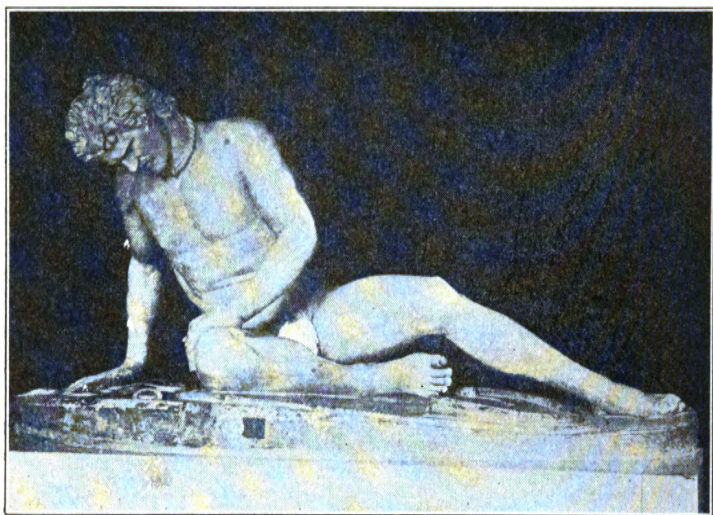
Tandem Helvētīi vulneribus dēfessī ad proximum collem sē recipiunt. Eō in colle aciem instruunt. Sed Rōmānī victoriā audācēs ad eum collem currunt et impetum iterum faciunt.

Auxilia Helvētiōrum quae erant in novissimō agmine et in primō proeliō nōn pugnaverant, Rōmānōs ad eum collem currentēs vident. Poteruntne circumvenīre Rōmānōs in colle pugnantēs? Maximā celeritatē ab novissimō agmine militibus Rōmānīs appropinquant. Nunc Rōmānī sunt inter cōpiās hostium. Sed magna est virtūs Caesaris exercitūs. Prīma et secunda aciēs cum Helvētiīs ācriter pugnat. Tertia aciēs sē vertit et cum Helvētiōrum auxiliīs venientibus pugnat.

Tandem Helvētīi impetūs Rŏmānŏrum nŏn diūtius sustinēre possunt. Alterī in summum collem sē recipiunt; alterī ad impedimenta fugiunt. Etiam ibi fortēs Helvētīi tēla in Rŏmānŏs appropinquantēs mittunt. Tandem Rŏmānī Helvētiŏs superant. Propter hanc victŏriām Caesar imperātor appellātur.

VOCABULARY XLII

- **aciēs, aciēi, f., line of battle*
- **agmen, agminis, n., line of march, column*
- **aliter, adv., otherwise, differently*
- **circiter, adv., about*
circumveniō, -ire, circumvēnī, circumventus, surround, encircle
- **claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus, close*
- **cohors, cohortis, cohortium, f., cohort, a tenth part of a legion, containing about 360 men*
- **collis, collis, collium, m., hill*
- **complūrēs, -a or -ia, pl., several*
- **cōscribō, -ere, cōscripsī, cōscriptus, enroll, enlist*
- **diēs, diēi, m. or f., day*
ēdūcō, -ere, ēdūxī, ēductus, lead out
- Helvētius, -a, -um, Helvetian; as a noun, Helvētius, Helvēti, m., a Helvetian*
- **impedimentum, -i, n., hindrance, interference; impedimenta, -ŏrum, n. pl., heavy baggage, baggage*
- **instruō, -ere, instrūxī, instructus, draw up, arrange*
militāris, -e, military
- **ōrdō, ōrdinis, m., order, rank, row*
- **passus, passūs, m., pace*
proximē, adv., last, nearest, most recently
- recipiō, -ere, recēpī, receptus, take back, receive*
- **repentinus, -a, -um, sudden, unexpected*
- **rēs, rei, f., thing, affair, event, matter*
- **sustineō, -ēre, sustinui, sustentus, check, withstand, sustain*
triplex, triplicis, triple
- **vertō, -ere, vertī, versus, turn, change*
- veterānus, -a, -um, old, veteran*



Gallus moriēns

Idioms

primum agmen, *van, advance guard*
novissimum agmen, *rear, rear guard*
agmen claudere, *to bring up the rear*
magnum iter, *a forced march*
aliter sē habēre, *to be arranged differently*
castra mūnīre, *to build a camp*
in mediō colle, *halfway up the hill*
rēs militāris, *warfare, military science*
inter sē dare, *to exchange*
sē recipere, *to retreat*
sē vertere, *to face about*

445. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. Pick out the Latin words with which the following are associated: *circumvent, conscription, recipient, sustenance.*

II. *In re* means *in the matter (of), concerning, with regard (to)*. It is used especially as a legal term, to introduce the subject of a remark or as a title or heading to a portfolio of papers bearing on a given case; as, *In re* the railroad's claim for damages.

Sine die means *without a day*. It is used especially of the adjournment of an assembly without any specified day for meeting again, or of the adjournment of a committee meeting when the committee has done its work and expects to be discharged, and hence will not meet again. In law, when a prisoner is permitted to go *sine die* he is virtually discharged.

It is customary to pronounce such Latin phrases according to English rules of pronunciation. Thus *re* rhymes with *tea*, *sine* with *shiny*; and *die* is pronounced *dye-ee*.

DRILL

I. *Decline the Latin phrases for the following:*

Short day, military science, small band, long row, light feather, great hindrance.

II. *Write the Latin for the following phrases showing extent of space:*

A mile, two miles, three miles, four miles, ten miles, twenty miles, ten feet, three feet, fourteen feet.

III. *Supply the proper case endings:*

1. Centuriō Rōmānus erat peritissimus r.... militāris.
2. Multās r.... dixit.
3. Eō di.... exercitus quīndecim mil.... pass.... iter fēcit.
4. Eae r.... militibus nūtiābantur.
5. Tōtum di.... tertia aciēs nōn pugnāvit.
6. Paucīs di.... militēs domum pervenient.
7. Multa dē mōribus illōrum di.... scripta sunt.
8. Duōs di.... fābulās dē mōribus Rōmānōrum lēgimus.

EXERCISE XLII

Write in Latin:

1. Caesar led his legions out of camp and drew up a triple line of battle on the hill. 2. The veteran soldiers, skilled in military science, were placed in the first rank. 3. The cohorts of the third line of battle served as (were for) a protection to the second line of battle. 4. The enemy (*pl.*) will not be able to surround our (men) because they cannot withstand their sudden attacks. 5. And so they face about and retreat about a mile.

6. The line of march of those days extended for several miles. 7. The veteran soldiers marched in the van. 8. Those who had been last enrolled brought up the rear. 9. The baggage of a legion was placed behind it. 10. At this time the line of march was arranged differently, because Caesar was approaching the enemy.



Imperātor

CHAPTER XLIII

IRREGULAR VERBS *EŌ, FERŌ, FĪŌ* SUBJECTIVE AND OBJECTIVE INFINITIVES THE DEMONSTRATIVE *ĪDEM*

446. DĒ GALLIĀ OMNĪ I

Lūcius et Aulus hodiē ad lūdum libenter *eunt* quod magister fābulam dē Caesare nārrābit. Paedagōgus libenter *it*, nam fābulae magistri eum quoque dēlectant. Tēla quae frāter Mārcus ā Galliā attulit pueri ad lūdum *ferunt*; Lūcius scūtum Gallicum *fert* et Aulus galeam Gallicam *fert*. In lūdō discipulī sunt dīligentēs et omnia magnā cum celeritāte *fiunt*. Mox stilī tabellaeque dēpōnuntur et silentium *fit*. Tum magister incipit:

“Ad multās terrās Caesar *iit* et multōs annōs cum incolīs eārum terrārum bellum gessit. Ā Galliā Rōmam multa spolia *tulit* et propter magnās victōriās imperātor *factus est*. Fortasse vōs quoque, mei discipulī, *fiētis* magni ducēs. Tum ad terrās extrēmās *ibitis* et cum hostibus bellum gerētis. Multa spolia et clārōs obsidēs Rōmam *ferētis*.”

Iam diū mōs est discipulōs multārum terrārum commentariōs bellī Gallicī ā Caesare ipsō scriptōs *legere*; semper eōs iuvat Caesaris verba *legere*. Iam difficile est eius sententiās *intelligere*; iam facile est. Hodiē est magnum gaudium in lūdō Americānō, nam magister fābulam ā Caesare scriptam leget. Magister iubet discipulōs stilōs tabellāsque *dēpōnere*. “Erit necesse,” inquit magister, “operam dare, quod multae sententiae sunt difficiliōrēs. In lūdō Rōmānō magister fābulās nārrābat; tum discipulī eās verbis isdem reddēbant. Nōn necesse erit vōbīs eadem agere.” Deinde

iubet omnēs maximā cum dīligentiā verba accipere et incipit:

“Gallia est omnis dīvisā in partēs trēs; quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam Gallī. Hī omnēs linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquitānīs Garumna flūmen dīvidit; eōs ā Belgīs flūmina Matrona et Sēquana dīvidunt.”



Rōmānī in Galliam ineunt

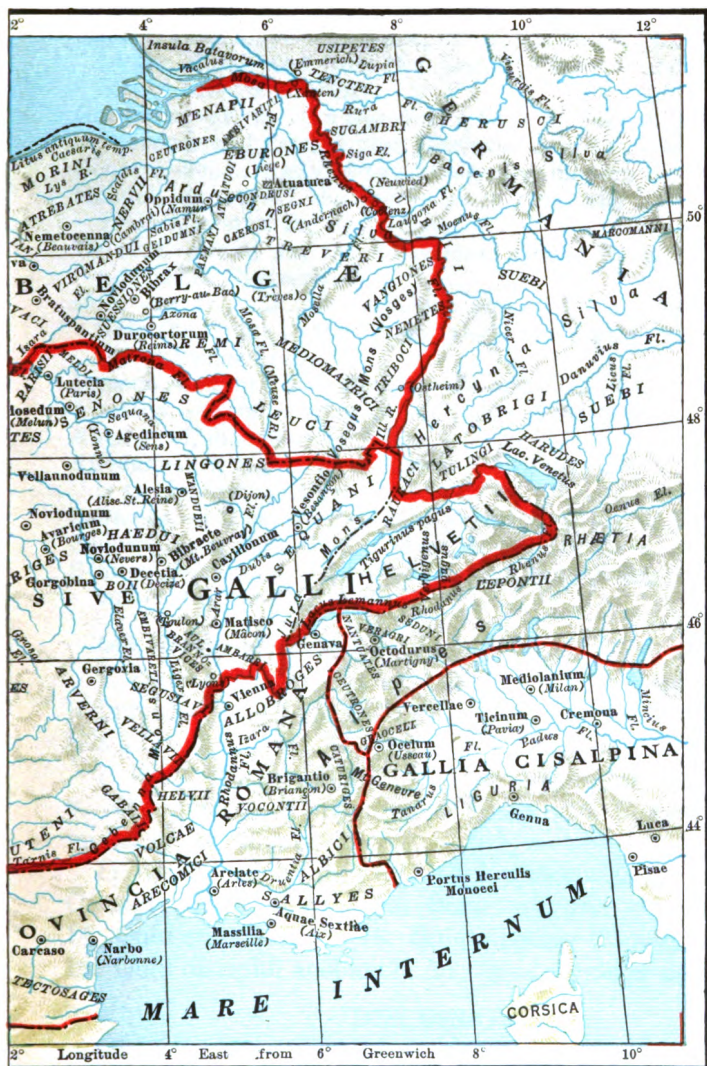
Nōtā bene

Eōs iuvat Caesaris verba legere, *it pleases them to read Caesar's words; that is, they like to read Caesar's words.*

447. The following proper nouns are of common occurrence in Caesar (see map):

Aquitānī, -ōrum, m., the *Aquitanians*, who inhabited that part of France now called Gascony, in the extreme southwestern corner.





© The John C. Winston Co.

Belgae, -ārum, m., the *Belgians*, who occupied a territory much larger than modern Belgium, extending roughly from the Seine to the Rhine and from the English Channel and the North Sea to Rheims and Trier.

Garumna, -ae, m., the *Garonne*, a river of France, rising in the Pyrenees and flowing past Bordeaux into the Bay of Biscay.

Genava, -ae, f., a city of the Allobroges, modern *Geneva*.

Haedui, -ōrum, m., the *Haeduans*, a tribe who lived in central France, west of the Sequanians.

Helvētīi, -ōrum, m., the *Helvetians*, a tribe living in Helvetia, now called Switzerland.

Iūra, -ae, m., the *Jura*, or *Jura Mountains*, a range extending from the Rhine to the Rhone, along the northwestern boundary of Switzerland.

Lemannus, -ī, m., *Lake Geneva*, still called *Lake Leman*.

Matrona, -ae, m., a river of Gaul, now called *Marne*.

Rhēnus, -ī, m., the river *Rhine*.

Rhodanus, -ī, m., the river *Rhone*. Note that in Latin the accent is on the first syllable.

Santonēs, -um, m., the *Santones*, a tribe north of the Aquitanians.

Sēquana, -ae, m., a river of Gaul, now called *Seine*.

Sēquani, -ōrum, m., the *Sequanians*, a tribe living to the north and east of the Helvetians.

448. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Quid agunt Lūcius et Aulus? 2. Cūr paedagōgus ad lūdum libenter it? 3. Quid puerī ad lūdum ferunt? 4. Quis tēla ā Galliā attulit? 5. Quōmodo omnia fiunt? 6. Quid fit?

7. Quid Caesar ēgit? 8. Cūr imperātor factus est? 9. Nōnne discipulī magnī ducēs fient? 10. Nōnne discipulī multa spolia Rōmam ferent?

11. Quid iam diū mōs est? 12. Estne difficile sentiētiās Caesaris intellegere? 13. Quid magister hodiē iubet? 14. Quid erit necesse? 15. Quid magister Rōmānus agēbat? 16. Quid discipulī agēbant? 17. Quid magister nunc iubet?

DISCUSSION

449. In the first paragraph of the story *Dē Galliā Omnī I*, what is the person and number of the verb *eunt*? of the

verb it? Do these forms show that they are the third singular and plural of the same verb? What tense and voice are they? Do these forms have a regular stem vowel before the personal endings?

450. What is the tense, voice, person, and number of the verb forms *fert* and *ferunt*? Do they have a regular stem vowel before the personal endings?

451. What is the tense, voice, person, and number of the verb forms *fit* and *fiunt*? The verb *fiō* means properly *grow*, *become*, and its endings are like those of any other active verb. The infinitive, *fierī*, is the only passive form. The meaning of *fiō*, however, fits the translation of the passive of *faciō*; and so *fiō*, though it is an active verb, is used instead of the passive forms of *faciō* throughout the present system. *Fiō* is not used except in the present system.

452. What other tenses of these verbs are shown in the second paragraph of the story? The three verbs just mentioned are irregular, and all the tenses built on the present stem must be carefully memorized. The tenses of the perfect system (except of *fiō*) are regular.

453. In the sentence *Iam difficile est eius sententiās intellegere*; *iam facile est*, what is difficult? What is easy? What is the subject of the verb *est*? What part of speech is *difficile*? *facile*? Of what gender are these words? How are they used? What then is the gender of the infinitive *intellegere*? The infinitive may serve as the subject of the verbs *est*, *iuvat*, and various impersonal verbs; when so used, the infinitive is considered to be a noun of the neuter gender.

454. In the sentence *Iam diū mōs est discipulōs multārum terrārum commentāriōs bellī Gallicī legere*; *semper eōs iuvat Caesaris verba legere*, what has long been the custom? What relation has the clause *discipulōs . . . legere* to the verb *est*? What relation has *mōs* to the verb *est*? What

part of speech is *legere*? What case is *discipulōs*? A word used as the subject of an infinitive in a construction of this kind is in the accusative case.

455. How is the infinitive clause *discipulōs . . . legere* used? How is the infinitive clause *Caesaris verba legere* used? An infinitive with or without a subject accusative may be used as the subject of another verb; when so used it is called a *subjective infinitive*. Such an infinitive is often used as the subject of *est*, with *mōs* or a neuter adjective in the predicate. The corresponding English construction uses *it* as apparent subject, the real subject following the verb; as, *It is easy to read Caesar's Commentaries*.



In Galliā antīquā

456. In the sentence *Magister iubet discipulōs stilōs tabellāsque dēpōnere*, what does the schoolmaster order? What relation does the phrase *discipulōs . . . dēpōnere* bear to the main verb? What part of speech is *dēpōnere*? What is the subject of *dēpōnere*? How is the infinitive clause used? An infinitive may be used as the object of a verb; when so used it is called an *objective infinitive*.

457. Learn the paradigms of the following irregular verbs:

eō, ire, īi (or īvi), itūrus, go
fiō, fieri, —, —, grow, become, be made
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, carry

Present

<i>Active</i>	<i>Active</i>	<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive</i>
<i>eō</i>	<i>fiō</i>	<i>ferō</i>	<i>feror</i>
<i>is</i>	<i>fīs</i>	<i>fers</i>	<i>ferris</i>
<i>it</i>	<i>fit</i>	<i>fert</i>	<i>fertur</i>
<i>imus</i>	<i>fīmus</i>	<i>ferimus</i>	<i>ferimur</i>
<i>itis</i>	<i>fītis</i>	<i>fertis</i>	<i>feriminī</i>
<i>eunt</i>	<i>fiunt</i>	<i>ferunt</i>	<i>feruntur</i>

Imperfect

<i>ībam</i>	<i>fiēbam</i>	<i>ferēbam</i>	<i>ferēbar</i>
<i>ibās</i>	<i>fiēbās</i>	<i>ferēbās</i>	<i>ferēbāris</i>
<i>ībat</i>	<i>fiēbat</i>	<i>ferēbat</i>	<i>ferēbātur</i>
<i>ibāmus</i>	<i>fiēbāmus</i>	<i>ferēbāmus</i>	<i>ferēbāmur</i>
<i>ibātis</i>	<i>fiēbātis</i>	<i>ferēbātis</i>	<i>ferēbāmini</i>
<i>ībant</i>	<i>fiēbant</i>	<i>ferēbant</i>	<i>ferēbantur</i>

Future

<i>ībō</i>	<i>fīam</i>	<i>feram</i>	<i>ferar</i>
<i>ibis</i>	<i>fīēs</i>	<i>ferēs</i>	<i>ferēris</i>
<i>ībit</i>	<i>fīet</i>	<i>feret</i>	<i>ferētur</i>
<i>ībimus</i>	<i>fīēmus</i>	<i>ferēmus</i>	<i>ferēmur</i>
<i>ībitis</i>	<i>fīētis</i>	<i>ferētis</i>	<i>ferēmini</i>
<i>ībunt</i>	<i>fīent</i>	<i>ferent</i>	<i>ferentur</i>

458. The perfect of *eō* is regular, except that in the second singular and second plural the two *i*'s usually contract to *ī*: *īi, īstī (or iistī), iit; iimus, īstis (or iistis), iērunt*. A *v* is occasionally found in some forms, as *īvi*. The pluperfect and future perfect are regular: *ieram, etc., and ierō, etc.* (See § 622.)

There are no forms of *fiō* in the perfect tenses. The regular passive forms of *faciō* are used instead: *factus sum*, *factus eram*, *factus erō*.

The perfect tenses of *ferō* are regular (see its principal parts): *tulī, tuleram, tulerō* in the active, *lātus sum, lātus eram, lātus erō* in the passive. (See § 618.)

459. The demonstrative *idem, eadem, idem, same*, was used in the story *Dē Galliā Omnī I*. This word is both adjective and pronoun. It is an adjective when used to modify a noun: *discipulī eās verbīs isdem reddēbant*. It is a pronoun when used instead of a noun: *Nōn necesse erit vōbīs eadem agere*.

Learn the following forms:

			<i>Singular</i>
	M.		F. N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>idem</i>		<i>eadem idem</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>		<i>eiusdem</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>eīdem</i>		<i>eīdem</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eundem</i>		<i>idem</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eōdem</i>		<i>eōdem</i>
			<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>eīdem, iīdem,</i> or <i>īdem</i>		<i>eaedem eadem</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>		<i>eārundem eōrundem</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>eīsdem, iīsdem,</i> or <i>īsdem</i>		<i>eīsdem, iīsdem,</i> or <i>īsdem</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eōsdem</i>		<i>eadem</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eīsdem, iīsdem,</i> or <i>īsdem</i>		<i>eīsdem, iīsdem,</i> or <i>īsdem</i>

RULE

460. The infinitive with or without subject accusative may be used as the subject or object of a verb.

READING LESSON

461.

DĒ GALLIĀ OMNĪ II

Multae gentēs Galliam incolunt. Helvētīi, Sēquanī, Haeduī sunt potentēs gentēs Gallicae. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Helvētīi. Finēs eōrum autem angustī sunt et undique continentur: ūnā ex parte, flūmine Rhēnō quī



Mōns Iūra quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs

agrōs Helvētiōrum ā Germānīs dividit; alterā ex parte, monte Iūrā quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā ex parte, lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō quī prōvinciam Rōmānam ab Helvētiīs dividit. Īsdem causīs mercātōrēs eōs facile adire nōn possunt neque Helvētīi dē finibus facile exīre possunt. Sunt bellicōsissimī et pericula libenter subeunt. Cum Germānīs bellum saepe gerunt; nam aut in Germānōrum finēs eunt et proeliō contendunt aut ipsī

ā finibus Germānōs prohibent. Est difficile autem propter angustōs finēs multis finitimīs bellum inferre; quā dē causā magnō dolōre afficiuntur. Prō multitūdine hominum et prō glōriā bellī finēs sunt minōrēs et principēs eōs iubent lātiōrēs agrōs petere. Orgetorix potēns princeps est rēgni cupidus. Ab eō multī nōbilēs cōferuntur.

VOCABULARY XLIII

- afficiō, -ere, affēcī, affectus, *afflict, trouble, weaken*
 bellicōsus, -a, -um, *warlike*
 commentārii, -ōrum, m. pl., *records, commentaries*
 dēpōnō, -ere, dēposuī, dēpositus, *put aside, lay down*
 *eō, ire, ii or ivi, itūrus, *go*
 *adeō, -ire, adiī, aditūrus, *come near, approach; visit*
 exeō, -ire, exiī, exitūrus, *go out, withdraw, depart*
 subeō, -ire, subiī, subitūrus, *go under, undergo, suffer*
 *facilis, facile, *easy*
 *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *bear, bring, carry*
 afferō, -ferre, attulī, allātus, *bring to, convey*
 cōferō, -ferre, contulī, conlātus, *collect, gather*
 *differō, -ferre, distulī, dilātus, *carry away; differ*
 inferō, -ferre, intulī, inlātus, *bring in*
 *fiō, fierī, —, —, *be made, be done, happen (used in the present system as the passive of faciō)*
 Gallicus, -a, -um, *Gallic, of Gaul*
 *idem, eadem, idem, *the same*
 *incipiō, -ere, incēpī, inceptus, *begin, undertake*
 *incolō, -ere, incoluī, —, *inhabit, dwell*
 institūtum, -ī, n., *practice, custom*
 *intellegō, -ere, intellēxi, intellēctus, *understand*
 *iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus, *order, bid*
 lacus, lacūs, m., *lake*
 *necesse, adj. (only in n., nom. and acc. sing.), *necessary*
 Orgetorix, Orgetorigis, m., *Orgetorix, a Helvetian chief*
 *reddo, -ere, reddidī, redditus, *give back, return*
 *silentium, silentī, n., *silence*

Idioms

affici magnō dolōre, *to be greatly annoyed*

isdem verbis reddere, *to repeat*

bellum inferre, *to make war (upon)*: generally used with the dative

inter sē differre, *to differ from one another*

operam dare, *to pay attention, take pains*

prō multitudīne hominū, *in proportion to the population*

ūnā ex parte, *on one side*

462.

LATIN IN DAILY LIFE



Vēxillārius Gallus

The pig was a favorite Gallic symbol

I. Explain from the vocabulary the meaning of the italicized words in the following sentences:

1. The disease was discovered in the *incipient* stage.

2. *Identical* dresses had been bought by the sisters.

3. His message was not *intelligible*.

4. He was a *dilatory* pupil.

5. The king was *deposed* by the revolutionaries.

6. The theater *exits* were marked with red lights.

II. Write down all the English words you can think of derived from the Latin verb **ferō** and its compounds.

DRILL

I. Give the present active and passive infinitives of the Latin verbs for the following:

begin	give	collect	afflict
fortify	give back	prohibit	see

II. Give a synopsis of each of the following Latin verbs, in the person, number, and voice indicated:

subeō, third plural, active

inferō, third singular, active and passive

fiō, third plural

afficiō, first singular, active and passive

iubeō, second singular, active and passive

petō, first singular, active and passive

impediō, second singular, active and passive

vocō, first plural, active and passive

volō (*wish*), third plural

possum, third singular

III. Give five Latin expressions which are often used with a subjective infinitive. Give five verbs which are used with a complementary infinitive. Name one verb that is used with an objective infinitive. In what case is the subject of an infinitive?

IV. Supply the Latin for the italicized words and state what kind of infinitive is used in each case:

1. Est necesse discipulōs diligenter *to work*.
2. Magister iussit tabellās *to be put aside*.
3. Verba magistrī *to understand* poterāmus.
4. Paedagōgus quoque eāsdem fābulās *to hear* voluit.
5. Erat difficile Gallōs *to conquer*.
6. Magister fābulam nārrat; debēmus *to pay attention*.



Vēxillārius Gallus

V. *Decline the Latin phrases for the following:*

the same language	that custom
this lake	the same day

EXERCISE XLIII

Write in Latin:

1. The pupils put aside their writing tablets because the teacher has ordered them to pay attention.

2. The pupils like to hear (it pleases the pupils to hear) the story; silence falls, for the teacher is beginning to speak.

3. "Caesar collected many legions and went to Gaul. 4. He visited the territory of the Gauls and brought many spoils to Rome. 5. In his commentaries Caesar wrote many things about the tribes who lived in Gaul. 6. All these differed in language and customs; for all Gaul was divided into three parts.



Militēs Galli

7. The Helvetians' territory was hemmed in by rivers, mountains, and a lake. 8. They were greatly annoyed because they could not make war upon many neighbors. 9. Although it was necessary to undergo great dangers, they decided to go out from home."

10. The pupils understand the story and repeat it.

CHAPTER XLIV

INDIRECT DISCOURSE ALL INFINITIVES ACTIVE AND PASSIVE

463. DĒ ORGETORIGE I

Apud Helvėtiōs Orgetorix est princeps longē nōbilissimus et potentissimus. Is, rēgnī cupiditāte adductus, coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis facit. Cuius coniūrātiōnis dux esse vult. Ad nōbilēs hanc ōrātiōnem habet:

“Cīvitās¹ Helvētia, nostra patria, locī nātūrā continētur.¹ Helvētiū² undique flūminibus montibusque continentur.² Helvētiū,³ hominēs maximae audāciae, sunt³ bellī cupidī, sed propter angustōs finēs finitimīs bellum nōn facile inferre possunt.⁴ Glōria⁵ bellī et fortitudinis quondam fuit⁵ maxima sed mox minima erit.⁶ Helvētiū⁷ sine difficultāte dē finibus suis exīre et lātiōrēs finēs petere possunt.⁷ Sic finēs sibi magis idōneōs obtinēbunt.⁸

“Rōmānī⁹ autem magnam partem Galliae iam superāvērunt.⁹ Principātum tōtius Galliae obtinēre volunt.¹⁰ Rōmānī¹¹ fortasse ab itinere nōs prohibēre temptābunt.¹¹ Multae nātiōnēs¹² autem ab Helvētiīs victae sunt.¹² Exercitus¹³ Rōmānus quidem ab eis quondam victus est.¹³ Sine dubiō cōpiae¹⁴ Helvētiōrum eum iterum vincent.”¹⁴

Alius Helvētiūs, frāter Orgetorigis, Rōmānis amicus, hanc ōrātiōnem audit et Caesarī dēfert:

“Orgetorix dicit cīvitātem¹ Helvētiam locī nātūrā continēri.¹ Dēmōnstrat Helvētiōs² undique flūminibus et montibus continēri.² Cōfirmat Helvētiōs,³ hominēs maximae audāciae, bellī esse³ cupidōs sed propter angustōs finēs finitimīs bellum nōn facile inferre posse.⁴ Nōbilibus nostrīs

nārrat eōrum glōriam⁵ bellī et fortitūdinis fuisse⁶ maximam sed mox futūram esse⁶ minimam. Putat Helvētiōs⁷ sine difficultāte dē finibus suis exīre et finēs lātiōrēs petere posse⁷; sīc sibi finēs magis idōneōs obtentūrōs⁸ esse. Dīcit Rōmānōs⁹ ipsōs magnam partem Galliae iam superāvissē⁹ et principātum tōtius Galliae obtinēre velle.¹⁰ Putat Rōmānōs¹¹ fortasse eōs ab itinere prohibēre temptātūrōs esse.¹¹ Scit autem multās nātiōnēs¹² ab Helvētiīs victās esse¹² et exercitum¹³ Rōmānum quidem ab eīs quondam victum esse.¹³ Spērat cōpiās¹⁴ Helvētiōrum Rōmānōs iterum victūrās esse.”¹⁴

Nōtā bene

Cuius coniūrātiōnis, *of this league*. See § 431.

Coniūrātiō sometimes means *conspiracy*; but *league* is often a better translation.

464. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Quōmodo Helvētia continētur? 2. Quōmodo Helvētiī continentur? 3. Quālēs sunt Helvētiī? 4. Quā dē causā finitimīs bellum nōn facile īferre possunt? 5. Quālis fuit glōria bellī et fortitūdinis? 6. Quālis erit glōria bellī et fortitūdinis? 7. Quid Helvētiī sine difficultāte agere possunt? 8. Quid petere possunt? 9. Quid obtinēbunt? 10. Quid Rōmānī iam superāvērunt? 11. Quid obtinēre volunt? 12. Quid agere temptābunt? 13. Nōne multae nātiōnēs ab Helvētiīs victae sunt? 14. Nōne exercitus Rōmānus ab eīs victus est? 15. Quid cōpiae Helvētiōrum iterum vincent?

16. Quid Orgetorīx dīcit dē cīvitatē Helvētiā? 17. Quid dē Helvētiīs dēmōnstrat? 18. Quid cōnfirmat dē Helvētiīs? 19. Putatne Helvētiōs finitimīs bellum īferre posse? 20. Quid nārrat dē glōriā bellī et fortitūdinis? 21. Putatne Helvētiōs dē finibus exīre posse? 22. Putatne Helvētiōs finēs lātiōrēs petere posse? 23. Quid putat Orgetorīx Helvētiōs obtentūrōs esse? 24. Quid dīcit Orgetorīx dē Rōmānīs? 25. Quid scit Orgetorīx? 26. Quid spērat?



In terrā Helvētiōrum
The Saint Gotthard road in the upper Rhone Valley

(373)

DISCUSSION

465. The second and third paragraphs of the story *Dē Orgetorige I* contain the actual words of Orgetorix. Simple statements of fact are made, in present, past, and future time. The principal verbs in these paragraphs are numbered in the text with the small numbers 1, 2, 3, etc., the subjects, when expressed, having corresponding numbers.

466. Make three wide columns on a sheet of paper, headed respectively *Present tense*, *Perfect tense*, and *Future tense*, and enter the principal verbs of these two paragraphs, with their subjects, in the columns which correspond to their tenses. Write down the number of each entry according to its number in the text. Leave two blank lines under each verb, to be used for later entries. In which case is the subject of each verb?

467. In the last paragraph of the story, the speech of Orgetorix is being reported to Caesar. The exact words of Orgetorix are not used, but each sentence is introduced by a word meaning *say*, *think*, *perceive*, or the like. Compare the first sentence of the last paragraph with the first sentence of the second paragraph. In what words do changes occur? To what case has *cīvitās Helvētia* been changed? To what form has *continētur* been changed? Write *cīvitātem Helvētiam continērī* in the first column under *cīvitās Helvētia continētur*. In the second sentence what changes occur? Place these forms under the original forms in the first column. In the third sentence to what case is *glōria* changed? To what forms are *fuit* and *erit* changed? Place these forms under the corresponding original forms. Continue this comparison throughout the story, and place the new forms under the original forms in their respective columns.

468. In the first column to what case has the nominative case been changed? To what form has the verb in the

indicative mood been changed? The nominative case has become accusative, and the present indicative has become present infinitive. The infinitive is active or passive according to the voice of the indicative verb.

469. In the second column the subjects have again become accusatives and the verbs have again become infinitives. In what tense were the original verbs? What is the tense of the infinitives in this column? The perfect active infin-



Equitēs Galli

itives have what ending? Upon what stem are they made? The perfect passive infinitives are made in what way? What is the agreement of the participial part of the infinitive?

470. In the third column find four future active infinitive forms corresponding to the future indicative active forms. How are they made? How does the participial part of the infinitive agree?

471. Words or thoughts of a person quoted without change are said to be *direct discourse*; as, *Orgetorix dicit, "Helvētīi sunt bellī cupidī," Orgetorix says, "The Helvetians are anxious for war."* Words or thoughts of a person, if

made to depend upon a verb of saying, thinking, or the like, are said to be *indirect discourse*, or *in indirect discourse*; as, **Orgetorix dicit Helvētiōs bellī esse cupidōs**, *Orgetorix says that the Helvetians are anxious for war*. Specifically, if a clause originally in the form of a statement is changed to indirect discourse, it is called an *indirect statement*. (Indirect questions are discussed in § 517.)

472. The verb in indirect statement is in the infinitive, and its subject is in the accusative. The infinitive must have the tense it would have had if used in a direct statement; as, **continētur** becomes **continērī**; **victae sunt** becomes **victās esse**; **vincent** becomes **victūrōs esse**.

473. Observe that the tense of the infinitive is relative to that of the main verb. That is, if the action of the infinitive occurs at the same time as the action of the main verb, the tense of the infinitive must be present; if the action of the infinitive takes place before the action of the main verb, the tense of the infinitive must be perfect; and if the action of the infinitive is to take place after the time of the main verb, the tense of the infinitive must be future. The following sentences illustrate this principle:

- I **Dicit virum venīre**, *He says (that) the man is coming.*
Dixit virum venīre, *He said (that) the man was coming.*
- II **Dicit virum vēnisse**, *He says (that) the man has come.*
Dixit virum vēnisse, *He said (that) the man had come.*
- III **Dicit virum ventūrum esse**, *He says (that) the man will come.*
Dixit virum ventūrum esse, *He said (that) the man would come.*

474. In the English translation of a clause in indirect discourse, an introductory word *that* is sometimes used, sometimes not used: *He says the man is coming*. In Latin,

when the infinitive is used, there is no word corresponding to *that*.

475. The rules for forming the infinitives are as follows:

*Active**Passive***Present**

(Given as one of the principal parts of the verb)

Change final **-e** of the active infinitive to **-ī**, except in the third conjugation, where the final **-ere** is changed to **-ī**

portāre, to carry

portārī, to be carried

vidēre, to see

vidērī, to be seen

mittere, to send

mittī, to be sent

capere, to take

capī, to be taken

audire, to hear

audīrī, to be heard

esse, to be

Future

Combine the future active participle with the infinitive **esse**

Combine the supine (which is like the accusative singular neuter of the perfect passive participle) with the form **irī**

portātūrus esse, to be about to carry

portātum irī, to be about to be carried

visūrus esse, to be about to see

visum irī, to be about to be seen

missūrus esse, to be about to send

missum irī, to be about to be sent

captūrus esse, to be about to take

captum irī, to be about to be taken

audītūrus esse, to be about to hear

audītum irī, to be about to be heard

futūrus esse, to be about to be

Perfect

Add -isse to the perfect stem Combine the perfect passive participle with the infinitive *esse*.

portāvisse, to have carried

portātus esse, to have been carried

vīdisse, to have seen

vīsus esse, to have been seen

mīsisse, to have sent

missus esse, to have been sent

cēpisse, to have taken

captus esse, to have been taken

audīvisse, to have heard

audītus esse, to have been heard

• *fuisse, to have been*

476. In the perfect passive infinitive and the future active infinitive, which are made up of a participle and *esse*, the participial part is inflected and must agree in gender, number, and case with its subject; as, *putat Rōmānōs temptātūrōs esse*; *spērat cōpiās victūrās esse*; *scit exercitum victum esse*. The future active infinitive is often written without *esse*; as, *putat Rōmānōs temptātūrōs*; *spērat cōpiās victūrās*. In the future passive infinitive, the supine, ending in -um, is not inflected: *captum iri*. This infinitive is seldom used.

RULE

477. *Indirect statement.* The infinitive with subject accusative is used with verbs of saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving.

READING LESSON

478.

DĒ ORGETORIGE II

Helvētīi hāc ōrātiōne adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōtī omnibus cum cōpiīs dē finibus suis exīre cōstituērunt. Putāvērunt necesse esse cum proximīs cīvitatibus pācem et

amīcitiā cōfirmāre. Orgetorix ipse ad proximās cīvitatēs iit. Is ad nōbilēs ōratiōnem habuit et coniūratiōnem fēcit. Casticus, princeps Sēquanōrum, sē rēgnū in cīvitatē suā occupātūrum esse cōfirmāvit. Dumnorix, Haeduus, dixit sē quoque rēgnū in suā cīvitatē obtentūrum esse. Orgetorix illis probāvit esse facile haec perficere. Dixit sē suae



cīvitātis imperium obtentūrum esse; tum suis cōpiis suōque exercitū illis rēgna sē conciliātūrum esse cōfirmāvit. Hī trēs nōbilēs sē principātum tōtius Galliae obtinēre posse spērāvērunt.

Brevi tempore Helvētīi intellēxērunt Orgetorīgem coniūratiōnem fēcisse et rēgem fieri spērāre. Crēdidērunt eum esse hostem; itaque cōstituērunt necesse esse supplicio eum afficere. Sed paulō post Orgetorix perterritus dē vitā dēcessit. Omnēs sēnsērunt eum sibi mortem cōscivisse.

VOCABULARY XLIV

amīcitia , -ae, f., <i>friendship</i>	*nātūra , -ae, f., <i>nature, character</i>
conciliō , -āre, -āvī, ātus, <i>secure, win</i>	nōbilitās , nōbilitātis, f., <i>nobility, the nobles</i>
coniūratiō , coniūratiōnis, f., <i>league, conspiracy</i>	*ōratiō , ōratiōnis, f., <i>speech</i>
cōnsciscō , -ere, cōnscīvī, cōnscītus, <i>decree, determine</i>	permovēō , -ēre, permōvī, permōtus, <i>move, influence, induce</i>
*crēdō , -ere, crēdidī, crēditus, <i>believe</i> (see § 505)	*principātus , -ūs, m., <i>leadership, the first place</i>
dēcēdō , -ere, -cessī, -cessurus, <i>go away, withdraw</i>	quondam , adv., <i>formerly, once</i>
*dēferō , dēferre, dētulī, dēlātus, <i>carry down; report</i>	*sentiō , -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, <i>feel, perceive, realize, experience</i>
difficultās , difficultātis, f., <i>difficulty, trouble</i>	*spērō , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>hope, expect</i>
dubius , -a, -um, <i>doubtful</i>	*supplicium , supplicī, n., <i>punishment, penalty, distress</i>
fortitūdō , fortitūdinis, f., <i>bravery, courage</i>	

Idioms

suppliciō afficere , <i>to subject to penalty, punish</i>	
sibi mortem cōnsciscere , <i>to commit suicide</i>	
ōratiōnem habēre , <i>to make a speech</i>	sine dubiō , <i>doubtless</i>
dē vitā dēcēdere , <i>to die</i>	nātūra locī , <i>natural features, topography</i>

479.

LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Explain the meaning of the italicized words in the following sentences:

1. The man was naturally *credulous*, but even to him the story was *incredible*.

2. Mary's *sentiment* was pleasing, but Jane's *sentimentality* was boring.

3. It is pleasant to meet with *quondam* friends.
4. It was a rather *dubious* compliment that he received.

DRILL

I. Give and translate all the infinitives of the following verbs (do not give passive forms for *eō*, *sum*, *possum*, and *volō*):

putō	perterreō	dicō	dō
habeō	cōgō	sentiō	ferō
eō	possum	volō (<i>wish</i>)	sum

II. Write in Latin:

1. I realize that he is coming. 2. You feel that she will come. 3. He thinks that they will come. 4. We thought that they had been won. 5. You thought that they would come. 6. I thought that they were being won. 7. She knows that he is withdrawing. 8. I shall see that he has gone. 9. I hope that the town will be beautiful. 10. We understood that the nobility were willing to go.

EXERCISE XLIV

Write in Latin:

1. Did you realize that the Helvetians had always been hemmed in by natural features (nature of the place)? 2. Orgetorix says that the bravery of the Helvetians is very great. 3. He hoped that they would withdraw from their country. 4. He thinks that he can win the leadership of all Gaul. 5. Does he think that he will win the friendship of the enemy without difficulty?

6. A messenger reported that the nobility had been summoned and that a league was being made. 7. The nobles, moved by his speech, felt that they ought to go out from home as quickly as possible. 8. The Helvetians believed without a doubt that the wretched man had committed suicide.

CHAPTER XLV
DEPONENT VERBS
ABLATIVE WITH DEPONENTS
ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE



480. DĒ HELVĒTIŌRUM PROFECTIONĒ

Post Orgetorigis mortem nihilō minus Helvētī cōsilia perficere cōnantur; nam sē maiōre parte Galliae facile potitūrōs esse spērant. Itaque cum omnibus cōpiīs domō proficīscī cōstituunt. Sunt hominēs maximae audāciae; neque angustīas itineris neque hostēs bellicōsōs verentur. Ubi sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppīda sua

(382)

omnia, vicōs omnēs, privāta aedificia incendunt. Finitimī eōdem cōsiliō ūti et unā cum Helvētiis proficisci cōstituunt. Sunt omninō itinera duo: ūnum angustum et difficile inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum pertinet; alterum multō facilius per prōvinciam Rōmānam pertinet.

Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātis Helvētiī diem dīcunt. Omnēs pollicentur sē eā diē ad ripam Rhodanī conventūrōs esse.

Caesar, *his rēbus nūtiātis*, Rōmā proficiscitur et maximis itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit. Brevi tempore ad flūmen Rhodanum pervenit. Maximō militum numerō conlātō pontem quī est in Rhodanō dēlērī iubet.

Caesaris adventū cognitō Helvētiī celeriter concilium convocant, et lēgātōs ad Caesarem nōbilissimōs civitātis mittunt. Lēgātī dicunt Helvētiōs, *Caesare volente*, iter per prōvinciam Rōmānam facere velle. Eīs auditis Caesar negat sē posse iter per prōvinciam ūllī dare. *Caesare invitō*, Helvētiī tamen flūmen trānsire cōnantur. Id facere nōn possunt.

Relinquitur ūna per Sēquanōs via. *Sēquanīs invitīs*, autem, ire nōn poterunt. Dumnorix apud Sēquanōs plūrimum potest et Helvētiis est amicus. Helvētiī spērant *Dumnorige* duce Sēquanōs sibi iter datūrōs esse. Nōn frūstrā spērant; nam Sēquanī Helvētiōs ire patiuntur.

481. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Quid Helvētiī agere cōnantur? 2. Quid Helvētiī spērant? 3. Unde proficisci cōstituunt? 4. Num hostēs bellicōsōs verentur? 5. Quid finitimī agere cōstituunt?

6. Quō factō Caesar Rōmā proficiscitur? 7. Quō factō Caesar pontem dēlērī iubet? 8. Quō factō Helvētiī celeriter concilium convocant? 9. *Caesare volente* quid Helvētiī agere volunt? 10. *Caesare invitō* quid Helvētiī facere cōnantur? 11. *Dumnorige* duce quid Helvētiī spērant? 12. Nōne Sēquanī Helvētiōs ire patiuntur?



Genava nova

The Helvetians gathered near here before setting out on their disastrous journey

Nōtā bene

Quō factō, *under what circumstances?* Literally, *what having been done? after what has been done?*

DISCUSSION

482. In the sentence *Post Orgetorigis mortem nihilō minus Helvētī cōnsilia perficere cōnantur*, is *cōnantur* active or passive in form? In what conjugation is it? Does the meaning as expressed in English correspond to the form? In the sentence *Itaque cum omnibus cōpiis domō*

proficisci cōstituunt, is **proficisci** active or passive in form? In what conjugation is it? Does the meaning as expressed in English have a corresponding form? Find other verbs in the first paragraph of **Dē Helvētiŏrum Profectione** that have passive forms with active meanings. State the conjugation of each verb.

483. Such verbs are called *deponent verbs*, or simply *deponents*. A deponent verb is one in which the personal forms are passive, but the meaning is active. The future infinitive and future active participle of deponents are active in both form and meaning. A deponent has no perfect indicative active, and therefore has only three principal parts; the conjugation, as with other verbs, is indicated by the infinitive, though the infinitive endings for the various conjugations are passive in form: -ārī, -ērī, -ī, -irī. Deponent verbs are conjugated regularly according to the forms of the passive voice in their respective conjugations.

The principal parts of deponent verbs are given as follows:

	<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>
I.	cōnor	cōnārī	cōnātus sum
II.	vereor	verērī	veritus sum
III.	ūtor	ūtī	ūsus sum
-iō III.	patior	patī	passus sum
IV.	potior	potīrī	potītus sum

484. In the sentence **Helvētīi sē maiōre parte Galliae facile potītūrōs esse spērant**, what phrase tells what the Helvetians hope to obtain? In what case is **parte**? In the sentence **Finitimī eōdem cōsiliō ūtī cōstituunt**, what words tell what the neighbors decide to use? In what case is **cōsiliō**? The deponents **ūtor** and **potior** govern the ablative. A few other less common deponents also govern the ablative. Such an ablative, though it is translated into English as if it were the direct object of a verb, is really



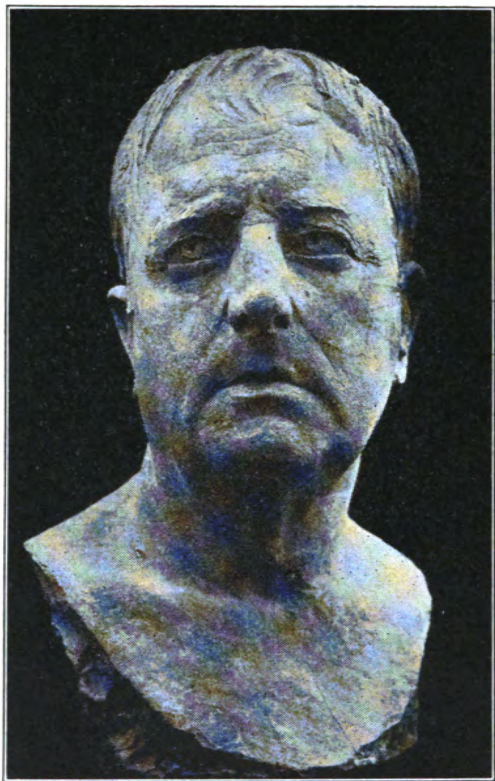
Relinquitur ūna per Sēquanōs via

an ablative of means. Thus *eōdem cōsiliō ūtuntur* means literally *they benefit themselves by the same plan*; *maiōre parte Galliae potiuntur* means *they make themselves powerful by the greater part of Gaul*.

485. In the sentence *Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātis Helvētiī diem dīcunt*, what phrase tells under what circumstances the Helvetians appoint the day? What part of speech is *rēbus*? *comparātis*? In what case are these words? In the sentence *Lēgātī dīcunt Helvētiōs, Caesare volente, iter per prōvinciam Rōmānam facere velle*, what phrase tells under what condition the Helvetians wish to march through the Roman province? What part of speech is *Caesare*? *volente*? In what case are these words? In the sentence *Caesare invītō, Helvētiī tamen flūmen trānsire cōnantur*, what phrase tells in spite of what the

Helvetians attempt to cross? What part of speech is *Caesare*? *invītō*? In what case are these words? In the sentence *Helvētii spērant Dumnorige duce Sēquanōs sibi iter datūrōs esse*, what phrase tells under what circumstances the Sequanians will give the Helvetians permission to pass? What part of speech is *Dumnorige*? *duce*? In what case are these words?

486. Each of these ablative constructions tells the time, circumstances, or conditions under which or in spite of which the action of the main verb takes place. An ablative so used is called an *ablative absolute*. The ablative absolute often consists of a noun and a



Museum of Fine Arts, Boston, Mass.

Cīvis Rōmānus

The Romans are famous for their lifelike portrait sculpture, of which this is one of the best examples.

participle; as, *omnibus rēbus comparātis*, or *Caesare volente*. It may also consist of a noun and an adjective, as *Caesare invītō*, or a noun and a second noun, as *Dumnorige duce*. The noun, or the first noun if there are two, may be con-

sidered the subject of the phrase. A pronoun may be used as subject instead of a noun. The subject in an ablative absolute denotes a different person or thing from the subject or object of the main verb.

487. An ablative absolute can often be translated by a clause denoting time (introduced by *when*, *after*, *while*); cause (introduced by *because*, *since*); opposition (introduced by *although*); or condition (introduced by *if*).

1. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātis, Helvētīi diem dicunt.

<i>All things having been prepared for the departure,</i>	} <i>the Helvetians name the day.</i>
<i>When all things have been prepared for the departure,</i>	

2. Helvētīi spērant, Dumnorīge duce, Sēquanōs iter datūrōs esse.

<i>The Helvetians hope that,</i>	} <i>the Sequani will give permission to pass.</i>
<i>if Dumnorix is the leader, under the leadership of Dumnorix,</i>	

3. Caesare invītō, Helvētīi flūmen transīre cōnantur.

<i>Caesar being unwilling,</i>	} <i>the Helvetians attempt to cross the river.</i>
<i>Although Caesar is unwilling,</i>	

RULES

488. *Ablative with deponents.* The ablative of means is used with *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vēscor*, and their compounds.

489. *Ablative absolute.* A noun or pronoun in the ablative, with a participle or adjective in agreement, or with another noun in apposition, may be used to denote the time or circumstance of an action.

The word *absolute* means "grammatically independent," or "standing outside the usual grammatical relationships." The ablative absolute is so called because it is not dependent in any of the usual ways upon any other word in the sentence in which it stands.

VOCABULARY XLV

adventus, -ūs, m., arrival, approach	*polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum, promise, offer (fol- lowed by a future infin- itive with subject accusa- tive)
*angustiae, angustiārum, f.pl., narrowness; defile, a pass	*potior, potirī, potītus sum, obtain, get possession or control of
*arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, think, suppose, consider	*privātus, -a, -um, private
*concilium, concilī, n., coun- cil, assembly	*profectiō, profectiōnis, f., departure
*cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, at- tempt, try	*proficīscor, proficīscī, pro- fectus sum, set out, depart, start
convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, summon, assemble, call together	trānseō, -īre, trānsī, trāns- itūrus, go over, cross
*invītus, -a, -um, unwilling	*ūnā, adv., together
*negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, deny, say not	*ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, use, employ
*omnīnō, adv., in all, only	*vereor, verērī, veritus sum, fear
*patior, patī, passus sum, allow, permit, suffer (fol- lowed by an infinitive with subject accusative)	*vīcus, -ī, m., village

Idioms

plūrimum posse, to have very great influence, to be very powerful

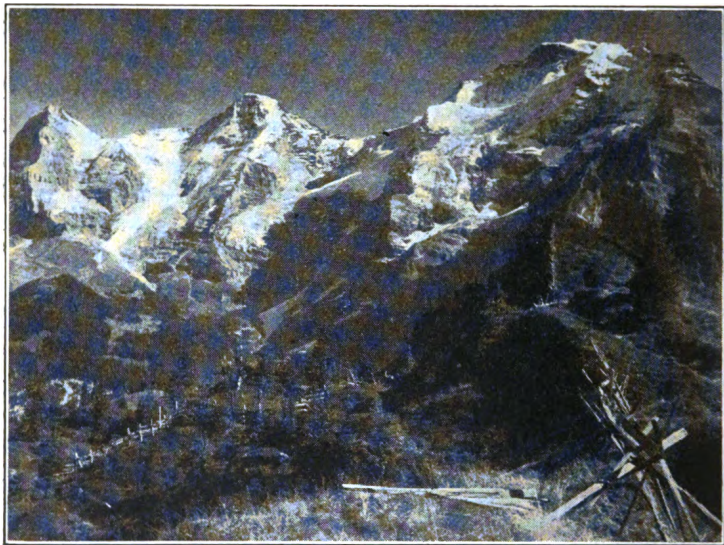
nihilō minus, none the less, nevertheless

ūnā cum, along with, together with

490. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Explain the meaning of the italicized words in the following sentences:

1. A committee upon boundaries was appointed to *arbitrate* the claims of the two countries.



Alpēs

2. At the weekly *convocation* the University students hear distinguished speakers.

3. By rapid *transit* the suburban population is brought quickly into the heart of the city.

4. The *advent* of spring brings joy to the people of northern lands.

5. The families were very *patient* while the work was being done.

6. They did not know how to *utilize* the old equipment.

DRILL

I. Give a synopsis of the following verbs in the person and number indicated:

- | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. arbitror, 1st plural | 4. potior, 3d plural |
| 2. polliceor, 2d plural | 5. patior, 3d plural |
| 3. proficiscor, 3d singular | 6. ūtor, 3d singular |

II. Write all the infinitive and participial forms of these verbs, with English meanings.

III. Supply the proper case endings:

- Galli et Germānīdem lingu.... nōn ūtuntur.
- Barbarī castr.... hostium potentur.
- Sign.... dat...., militēs in hostēs dēcurrērunt.
- Quibus r.... cognit...., cōpiae flūmen trānsīre cōnātae sunt.
- Helvētīi frūment.... mult.... ūsī erant.
- Caesar.... duc...., militēs nūllōs hostēs verentur.
- Vic.... et aedifici.... incēns...., gentēs profectae sunt.
- Militēs gladi.... ūtentēs diū atque ācritēr pugnant.

EXERCISE XLV

Write in Latin:

1. When the council had been called, the chiefs promised that they would obtain a larger part of Gaul. 2. They think that they will burn all the villages and private buildings. 3. When the grain has been prepared for the departure, all will set out. 4. There are two routes in all; the leaders deny, however, that there will be any difficulty. 5. If the neighbors are unwilling, the Helvetians will not use that route because of the defile. 6. When the Helvetians' arrival had been learned, Caesar destroyed the bridge which was over the Rhone River. 6. Therefore it will be very difficult to cross the river. 7. Nevertheless the leaders do not fear the danger and they order the Helvetians to try to cross the river. 8. Caesar will not permit the warlike Helvetians to march through the Roman province.

CHAPTER XLVI¹

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, PRESENT AND IMPERFECT DATIVE WITH VERBS OF SPECIAL MEANING

I. Clauses of purpose with *ut, nē, quō, quī*

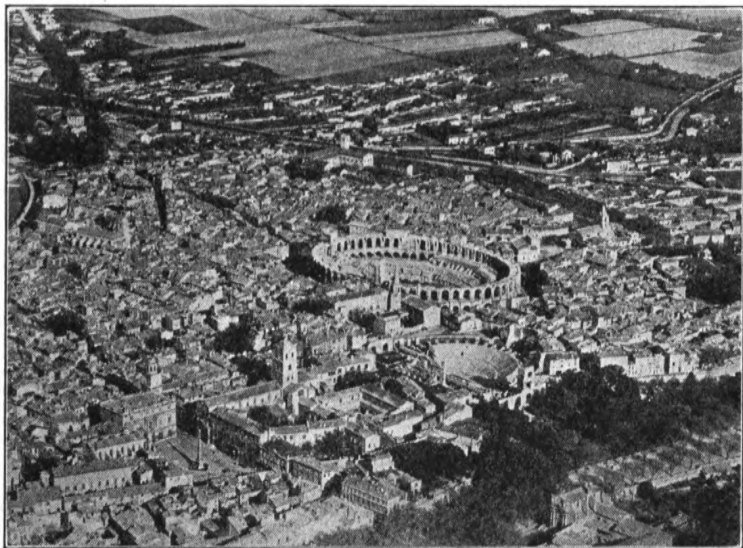
491. DĒ ORGETORIGIS CŌNSILIIS I

Helvētīi multa dīlīgenter comparant quod ē patriā exīre cōstituērunt. Sēmentēs quam maximās faciunt nē inopia frūmentī in itinere *sit*. Iūmentōrum et carrōrum maximum numerum emunt ut omnia sēcum facile *portent*. Nūntiōs ad cīvitatēs proximās mittunt ut eae gentēs quoque cōsilia *audiant* et auxilium *mittant*. Fortasse cīvitatēs sē sociōs iungent et ē finibus ibunt. Helvētīi patriam relinquunt ut novōs agrōs *videant* et finēs multitudinī hominum idōneōs *capiant*. Magna est eōrum spēs.

Orgetorix, nōbillissimus Helvētiōrum, erat cīvitatibus proximīs amicus. Dux igitur dēlēctus est ut finitimī cōsilia Helvētiōrum benignē *audirent* et auxilium *mitterent*. Ad cīvitatēs iit ut prīncipēs *vidēret* et cum eis cōsilia *caperet*. Helvētīi cum finitimīs pācem et amicitiam cōfirmāre voluērunt ut omnia per eōrum finēs sine difficultāte *portārentur*. Erat mōs gentēs obsidēs inter sē dare nē iniūria *esset*.

Helvētīi cum cīvitatibus proximīs pācem et amicitiam cōfirmāre cōstituerant *quō* facilius per eōrum finēs iter facere possent. Itaque Orgetorigem miserant *quī* eās rēs

¹The following lessons on the *Subjunctive Mood* and the *Periphrastic Conjugations* have been written for those teachers who wish to teach these subjects as a part of the first-year work. The reading matter is based upon the first part of the Helvetian War, and therefore some of the subject matter of the preceding chapters relating to Orgetorix and his schemes has been repeated. These lessons are an excellent bridge to Caesar and should be used before Caesar is taken up.



Aedificia antiqua quae hodiē videntur

Conquered Gaul was quickly Romanized, and fine buildings were erected in the flourishing towns. Some of these buildings may still be seen in the center of modern Arles, which the Romans called Arelātē

cōnficeret. Sed Orgetorix rēgnī cupiditāte adductus alia cōnsilia cēpit.

492. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Quid Helvētīi agunt? 2. Quō cōnsiliō sēmentēs faciunt? 3. Quō cōnsiliō iūmentōrum et carrōrum maximum numerum emunt? 4. Quō cōnsiliō nūntiōs mittunt? 5. Quō cōnsiliō patriam relinquunt?

6. Quō cōnsiliō Orgetorix dux dēlēctus est? 7. Quō cōnsiliō ad civitātēs ivit? 8. Quō cōnsiliō Helvētīi cum finitimis pācem cōfirmāre voluērunt?

Nōtā bene

Quō cōnsiliō, *with what plan in mind? for what purpose?*

DISCUSSION

493. In the first and second paragraphs of the story *Dē Orgetorigis Cōnsiliis* I are several clauses answering the question *quō cōnsiliō*? What words introduce these clauses? How do these words differ in meaning? List the verbs in these clauses in two columns, one for the first paragraph, and one for the second. Are the verbs in the indicative mood?



Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art

Pōculum Gallicum

Gladiatorial combats were very popular in Romanized Gaul, as the size of the amphitheater on page 393 shows. On this cup, of molded yellow glass, scenes from the arena are depicted

shows *purpose*, and the verb is in the *subjunctive* mood. Such clauses of purpose require the subjunctive mood, and the tense of their verbs is dependent on the tense of the main verb. If the main verb refers to past time, the verb in the purpose clause is in the imperfect subjunctive; otherwise, it is in the present subjunctive. This dependence of the tense of a subjunctive verb upon the tense of the main, indicative verb is called *sequence of tenses* (see §§ 657–659).

495. A clause of purpose is usually introduced by the conjunction *ut*, *that*, *in order that*, or *nē*, *lest*, *in order that . . . not*. If, however, the purpose clause contains the

494. These clauses, introduced by *ut* and *nē*, are dependent clauses and state the purpose of the action of the verbs in the principal clauses. The verb in the principal clause is called the *main* verb; it states a fact and is in the indicative mood.

The dependent clause shows *purpose*, and the verb is in the *subjunctive* mood. Such clauses of purpose require the sub-

comparative of an adjective or adverb, *quō* is substituted for *ut*. The relative pronoun *quī*, *quae*, *quod* may introduce a purpose clause, especially when the pronoun has an antecedent in the main clause.

496. In the first paragraph of the story, the verbs in the purpose clauses are in the present subjunctive; in the second paragraph the verbs are in the imperfect subjunctive. These two tenses may be formed from the present stem as follows:

Present Subjunctive

First Conjugation: change the stem vowel, which is *ā*, to *ē* (*e*) and add the personal endings; as, *port-e-m*, *port-e-r*.

Second and Fourth Conjugations: shorten the stem vowel, which is *ē* or *ī*, and add *ā* (*a*) and the personal endings; as, *vide-a-m*, *vide-a-r*; *audi-a-m*, *audi-a-r*.

Third Conjugation: change the stem vowel, which is *e*, to *ā* (*a*) and add the personal endings; as, *mitt-a-m*, *mitt-a-r*.

Third Conjugation, -iō verbs: the same as the fourth conjugation; as, *capi-a-m*, *capi-a-r*.

Imperfect Subjunctive

For all conjugations, add the personal endings to the present active infinitive:

portāre-m, *portāre-r*
vidēre-m, *vidēre-r*
mittere-m, *mittere-r*
capere-m, *capere-r*
audire-m, *audire-r*



Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art

Pöculum Gallicum

Another view of the cup shown on the opposite page

497. Learn the paradigms for the subjunctive mood of the model verbs *portō, videō, mittō, capiō, audiō, cōnor*, etc., found in §§ 630–633, 639. Learn also the present and imperfect subjunctive of *sum* and the irregular verbs (§§ 634–638).

498. In translating a purpose clause into English, the auxiliaries *may* and *might* are frequently used — *may*, if the present subjunctive is used; *might*, if the imperfect is used. However, it is often simpler to translate the purpose clause by the English infinitive. Observe the following:

Helvētīi patriam relinquunt ut finēs novōs petant.

<i>The Helvetians are leaving their fatherland</i>	{	<i>in order that they may seek new territory.</i> <i>in order to seek new territory.</i> <i>to seek new territory.</i>
--	---	--

RULE

499. Clauses of purpose. A clause expressing purpose is introduced by *ut* (negative *nē*), and has the verb in the subjunctive. If the main verb shows past time, the imperfect subjunctive is used in the purpose clause; otherwise, the present subjunctive is used.

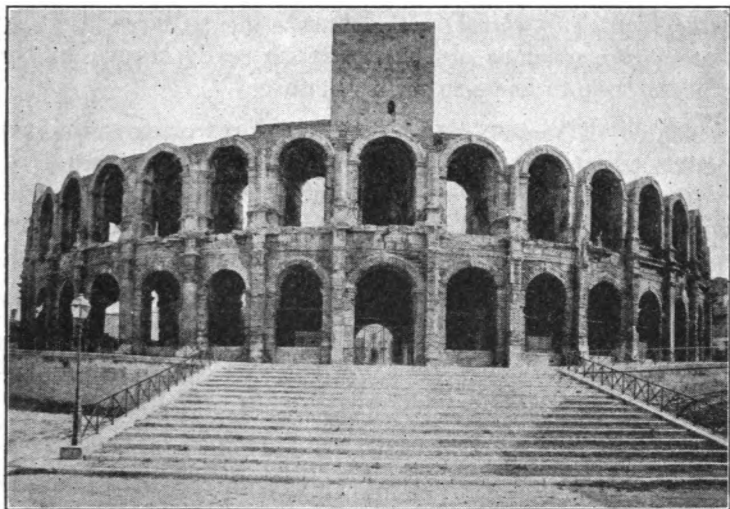
II. Substantive clauses after verbs of persuading, commanding, etc.

500. DĒ ORGETORĪGIS CŌNSILIIS II

Nōbilēs Helvēticī Orgetorīgī persuādent ut lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscipiat. Eī imperant ut sine morā proficiscātur. Ducēs Orgetorīgem monent ut ad cīvitātēs proximās eat. Ab eō maximē postulant ut pācem et amicitiam cum Sēquanīs et Haeduīs, finitimīs potentissimīs, cōnfirmet.

Sed Orgetorix in illō itinere patriae oblītus erat. Ipse rēx tōtīus Galliae fierī voluit. Iit igitur ad Sēquanōs et Haeduōs

et a nōbilibus quaesivit ut sēcum coniūratiōnem facerent. In itinere filiō principis Sēquanī persuāsit ut rēgnū in cīvitātē suā occupāret; itemque Dumnorigī, nōbilissimō Haeduō, ut idem cōnārētur persuāsit. Utrique iuvenī probāvit sē suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrum esse; Helvētiōs tōtius Galliae plūrimū posse cōfirmāvit. Dixit



Amphitheātrum

This is a closer view of one of the buildings shown in the picture on page 393. This amphitheater is still used for public spectacles, such as bull fights

autem sē iuvenibus rēgna conciliātūrum esse et eōs monuit ut suās cōpiās et suū exercitū expectārent. Eis imperāvit nē cuiquam cōnsilia ostenderent neu metum habērent.

Nōtā bene

Neu metum habērent, *and that they should not be afraid, or and not to be afraid.* Neu is used to introduce a second clause, following one introduced by nē, and means *nor, and that . . . not.*

DISCUSSION

501. In the first paragraph of the story are several dependent clauses. What word introduces each clause? What is the mood of each verb? List the main verbs upon which the clauses depend. Clauses depending upon verbs of persuading, commanding, advising, requesting, etc., are really objects of the main verb, and are often called *substantive clauses* or *noun clauses*. *Substantive* means *noun*; that is, the clause which is object of a verb really stands in the place of a noun and serves as a noun.

502. With *persuādeō*, *imperō*, and some other verbs, the person toward whom the action is directed is in the dative; with *moneō*, *ōrō*, and *rogō* the person is in the accusative; with *petō*, *postulō*, and *quaerō*, and many other verbs of requesting, the person is in the ablative with *ā*.

503. In the second paragraph of the story, identify the substantive clauses, explaining the tense of the verbs and the case of the person toward whom the action is directed.

RULES

504. Substantive clauses. The verbs *persuādeō*, *imperō*, *moneō*, *postulō*, *quaerō*, may be followed by a substantive clause introduced by *ut* or *nē*, with the verb in the subjunctive.

505. Dative with verbs of special meaning. Many verbs, among them *persuādeō*, *imperō*, *crēdō*, *noceō*, take the dative case.

Observe that, though the usual English translations of these verbs are transitive verbs, and hence take a direct object, the Latin verbs are *intransitive*. Thus, *persuādeō* may be translated *to be convincing*; *imperō*, *to give orders*; *crēdō*, *to give credence*; *noceō*, *to do harm*.

VOCABULARY XLVI

- carrus, -ī, m., *cart, wagon*
 *cōnficiō, -ere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus, *accomplish, finish*
 *emō, -ere, ĕmī, ĕmptus, *buy*
 *imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *command, order, bid*
 *item, adv., *thus, likewise, besides*
 iūmentum, -ī, n., *beast of burden*
 *iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūctus, *join, unite*
 *lēgatiō, -ōnis, f., *embassy, legation*
 *metus, -ūs, m., *fear, anxiety*
 *nē, conj. (used to introduce a negative clause of purpose), *lest, that . . . not*
 *neu, conj., *and that . . . not, nor* (see § 500, Note)
 *ostendō, -ere, ostendī, ostentus, *disclose, show, make known*
 *persuādeō, -ēre, persuāsī, persuāsūrus, *be convincing, persuade*
 *quaerō, -ere, quaesivī (-siī), quaesītus, *seek, ask, inquire*
 *quisquam, quicquam, *anyone* (see § 600)
 sēmentis, -is, -ium, f., *sowing, crops*
 *spēs, -eī, f., *hope*
 *suscipiō, -ere, suscepī, susceptus, *take up, undertake*
 *ut, conj. (used to introduce a clause of purpose), *in order that, that*
 *uterque, utraque, utrumque, *each, both* (see §§ 354, 356)

506.

LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Pick out the Latin words in the vocabulary with which the following English words are associated: *junction, ostentatious, redeem, requisition, susceptible.*

DRILL

I. Give the present and imperfect subjunctive of the following verbs:

cōnficiō	iungō	persuādeō	imperō
mūniō	sum	possum	cōnor
eō	volō (<i>wish</i>)	ūtor	emō

II. *After what tenses of the indicative is the present subjunctive used? After what tenses of the indicative is the imperfect subjunctive used?*



Miles Gallus

III. *Complete the verb forms and translate into English:*

1. Multōs carrōs ēmērunt quō facilius patriam relinqu.....
2. Magnās sēmentēs facient ut cōpiam frūmentī hab.....
3. Eī imperāverant ut ad civitātēs finitimās i.....
4. Finitimis quoque persuādent ut eōdem cōsiliō ūt.....
5. Lēgatiōnem ad civitātēs misērunt quae cōsilia ostend.....

EXERCISE XLVI

Write in Latin:

1. They will ask the neighbors to join (themselves) as allies and to go out of their territory.
2. They had made their sowings as large as possible in order that there might not be a lack of grain.
3. He is advising each noble to undertake the matter (thing).
4. He made this conspiracy in order to accomplish his plans more easily.
5. Orgetorix's hope was great; but his enemies (*inimīcī*) sent a messenger to disclose the conspiracy.

CHAPTER XLVII

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD; CLAUSES OF RESULT

507. DĒ HELVĒTIŌRUM CŌNSILIIS

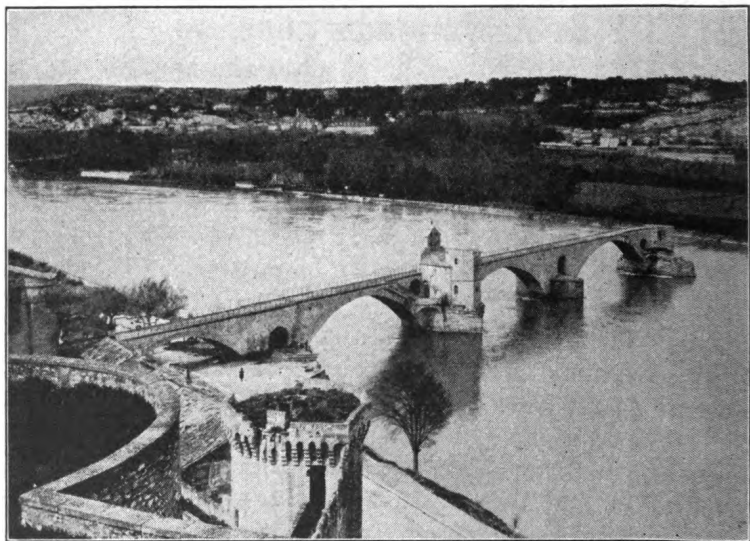
Tam bene dicit Orgetorix ut iuvenēs nōbilēs coniūrātiōnem faciant et rēgna in cīvitatibus suis occupāre cōstituant. Inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant. Tam audacēs sunt ut pericula nōn timeant. Etiam spērant sē tōtius Galliae imperiō potiri posse. Tanta est Orgetorigis cupiditās rēgni ut patriam trādere velit.

Ea rēs, paulō post, Helvētiis ēnūntiāta est. Helvētīi Orgetorigem hostem esse sēnsērunt et ita incitātī sunt ut eum ex vinculis causam dīcere cōgerent. Orgetorix amīcōrum magnum numerum habēbat et eius audācia erat tanta ut ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undique convocāret; per eōs sē ēripere posse spērāvit. Sed cīvitas, ob eam rem incitāta, armis iūs suum exsecūta est multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs ad iūdicium coēgērunt. Orgetorix perterritus dē vitā dēcessit.

Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētīi patriam relinquere cupivērunt. Quārē accidit ut cōnsilia exsequerentur. Magnae sēmentēs factae erant; carrī et iūmenta ēmpta erant; fēminae liberīque conlāti erant. Sed spem domum reditiōnis tollere necesse erat. Fiēbat ut oppida sua omnia, vicōs omnēs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incenderent. Etiam frūmentum omne praeter id quod sēcum portāre necesse erat incendērunt. Hōc modō effēcērunt ut omnis spēs domum reditiōnis tollerētur. Effēcērunt praetereā ut finitimī eōdem cōnsiliō ūsī ūnā cum eis proficiscerentur.

508. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Quam bene dicit Orgetorix? 2. Quam audacēs sunt iuvenēs? 3. Quanta est Orgetorigis cupiditās?
4. Nōne Helvētīi incitātī sunt? 5. Quanta erat Orgetorigis audācia? 6. Quid civitās ēgit?

**Pōns Rōmānus**

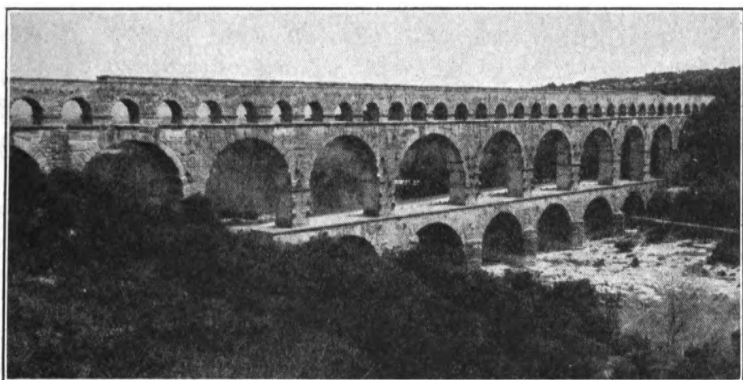
This bridge was built by the Romans across the Rhone at Avignon

7. Quid post Orgetorigis mortem accidit? 8. Quid fiēbat?
9. Quid Helvētīi effēcērunt?

DISCUSSION

509. List the dependent clauses introduced by *ut* in the first paragraph of the story. Give the mood and tense of each verb. Do these clauses show the purpose of the action of the main verb? These clauses show the *result* of the action

of the main verb. The words *tam*, *so*, *tantus*, *so great*, and *ita* and *sic*, *so*, are frequently used in the principal clause and suggest that a result clause may follow. A clause of result is usually introduced by *ut*, *so that*, or *ut . . . nōn*, *so that . . . not*, and requires the subjunctive mood, either present or imperfect, according to the time of the main verb.



Aquae ductus

A relic from the time when Gaul was a Roman province. By means of a pipe embedded in the masonry above the arches, water was led across rivers and ravines

510. In the second paragraph, identify the clauses of result, and pick out the words in the principal clauses which suggest that a result clause may follow.

511. In the third paragraph, list the dependent clauses introduced by *ut* and the main verbs upon which they depend. Clauses depending upon verbs of *happening*, *occurring*, *resulting*, and upon verbs of *effecting* and *accomplishing*, express result. A clause depending upon the verb *fit* or *accidit* is regarded as the *subject* of the verb. A clause depending upon *faciō* or its compounds is regarded

as the *object* of the verb. Such clauses are often called substantive clauses of result.

512. In translating a purpose clause into English, the auxiliaries *may* and *might* are often used; in translating a result clause into English, *may* and *might* are never used. A result clause is stated as a simple fact. Compare the following sentences:

Purpose: Orgetorix magnum numerum hominum coëgit ut sē ēriperet. Orgetorix collected a large number of men that he might escape, or for the purpose of escaping.

Result: Orgetorix tantum numerum hominum coëgit ut sē ēriperet. Orgetorix collected so large a number of men that he escaped; that is, he accomplished his purpose.

It can be seen from these examples that a result clause often states the accomplishment of a purpose.

RULE

513. Clauses of result. A clause expressing result is introduced by *ut* (negative *ut . . . nōn*), and its verb is in the subjunctive.

READING LESSON

514. DĒ HELVĒTIŌRUM PROFECTIONE

Read the Latin of these paragraphs carefully. Determine the constructions (form and use) of the words in italics. Then translate the story into English.

Helvētī multa comparāverant ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiis *exirent*. Multis *finitimis* quoque persuāserant ut *oppidīs vicisque incēsis* ūnā cum eīs *proficiscerentur*. Id fēcerant quō tūtius per hostium finēs iter *facerent*. Sed civitās Helvētia flūminibus montibusque ita continēbātur ut Helvētī duōbus omnīnō itineribus domō *exire possent*. Ūnum per Sēquanōrum finēs, alterum per prōvin-

ciam Rōmānam pertinēbat. Iter autem per Sēquanōrum finēs, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, erat tam angustum ut sine maximā difficultāte Helvētī iter facere nōn possent. Veritī sunt autem nē paucī hostēs itinere prohibēre possent. Sed iter per prōvinciam Rōmānam erat multō facilius quod inter finēs Helvētiŏrum et Allobrogum, quī erant sociī Rōmānōrum, Rhodanus fluit. Helvētī scīvērunt sē id flūmen paucīs locīs vadō trānsire posse. Sic spērāvērunt sē iter per prōvinciam Rōmānam facere posse. His rēbus fiēbat ut Helvētī facilius iter dēli-
gerent.



Allobrogēs ā

Eques

Rōmānīs nūper victī erant; itaque Helvētī crēdebant eōs nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum esse. Ex oppidō extrēmō Allobrogum, Genavā nōmine, ad Helvētiŏrum finēs pōns pertinēbat. Helvētī existimābant sē Allobrogibus persuāsūrōs esse ut per suōs finēs eōs ire paterentur. Itaque nūntiōs quī eās rēs cōnficerent mittere cōstituērunt. Sed Caesar effēcit ut cōnsilia exsequī nōn possent.

Nōtā bene

Verbs of fearing are followed by substantive clauses in the subjunctive, introduced by nē (affirmative), ut or nē ... nōn (negative).

The words locō and locīs generally do not have the preposition in expressions of place where.

VOCABULARY XLVII

- ***accidō, -ere, accidī, —, fall**
upon; happen, occur
- ***efficiō, -ere, effēcī, effectus,**
bring about, cause, effect
- ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,**
assert, disclose
- ēripiō, -ere, ēripiū, ēreptus,**
take away
- ***existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,**
reckon, think
- exsequor, exsequi, exsecūtus**
sum, follow up, execute
- ***familia, -ae, f., household,**
kindred
- ***fidēs, -ei, f., faith, trust,**
belief
- iūdicium, -ī, n., judgment,**
trial
- ***iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī,**
n., oath
- ***magistrātus, -ūs, m., civil**
office or officer; magistrate
- nūper, adv., recently, lately,**
just
- ***ob, prep. (with acc.), on ac-**
count of, because of
- ***praeter, prep. (with acc.), be-**
sides, except
- reditiō, -ōnis, f., return**
- ***tam, adv., so, in such a**
degree
- ***tantus, -a, -um, so great,**
such
- ***tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus,**
lift, take away, remove,
carry off
- ***vadum, -ī, n., shallow place,**
ford
- vinculum, -ī, n., bond, fetter,**
chain

Idioms

bonō animō, well disposed (toward): used with **in** and the accusative

causam dicere, to plead a case **sē ēripere, to escape**

515.

LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Answer the following questions:

1. What is an *accident*?
2. What does an *efficient* secretary do?
3. Why should the radio announcer be careful of his *enunciation*?
4. What is a business *executive*?
5. What are the duties of the *judiciary* department?

DRILL

I. *In the Reading Lesson find examples of the following clauses:*

(1) clause of purpose, (2) substantive clause with a verb of persuading, (3) substantive clause with a verb of fearing, (4) relative clause of purpose, (5) clause of purpose containing a word in the comparative degree, (6) clause of result, (7) substantive clause of result with a verb of happening, (8) substantive clause of result with a verb of accomplishing.

II. *Complete the verb forms, and state the type of dependent clause, in each sentence, and translate the sentence into English:*

1. Orgetorigis ōrātiō iuvenēs ita commōvit ut fidem et iūs iūrandum d.....

2. Accidit ut inimicus Helvētiūs coniūrātiōnem ēnūnti.....

3. Helvētiī effēcērunt ut Orgetorīx ex vinculis causam dīc.....

4. Orgetorīx nūntiōs mittit quī familiam ad iūdicium cōg.....

5. Id facit ut sē ērip.....

6. Cīvītās magistrātibus imperat ut magnum numerum hominum convoc.....

7. Magistrātūs multītūdinem hominum cōēgērunt quō celerius iūs exsequ.....

8. Hīs rēbus fit ut Orgetorīx perterr.....

9. Orgetorīx timet nē suppliciō affic..... (passive).

10. Cīvītātī persuādēre nōn poterat ut sē liber.....

EXERCISE XLVII

Write in Latin:

1. The Helvetians recently burned everything in order to take away hope of return. 2. They are so desirous of new territories that they are willing to undergo great dangers. 3. They thought that they could easily be kept from their journey on account of the defile. 4. The fords made it

possible for them to cross the river (brought it about that they could cross the river). 5. Their boldness was so great that they tried to influence Roman allies. 6. And so it happened that they marched toward the territory of the Allobroges.



Miles Gallus

CHAPTER XLVIII

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT INDIRECT QUESTIONS

516. DE FĀMĀ AMICŌRUM CAESARIS

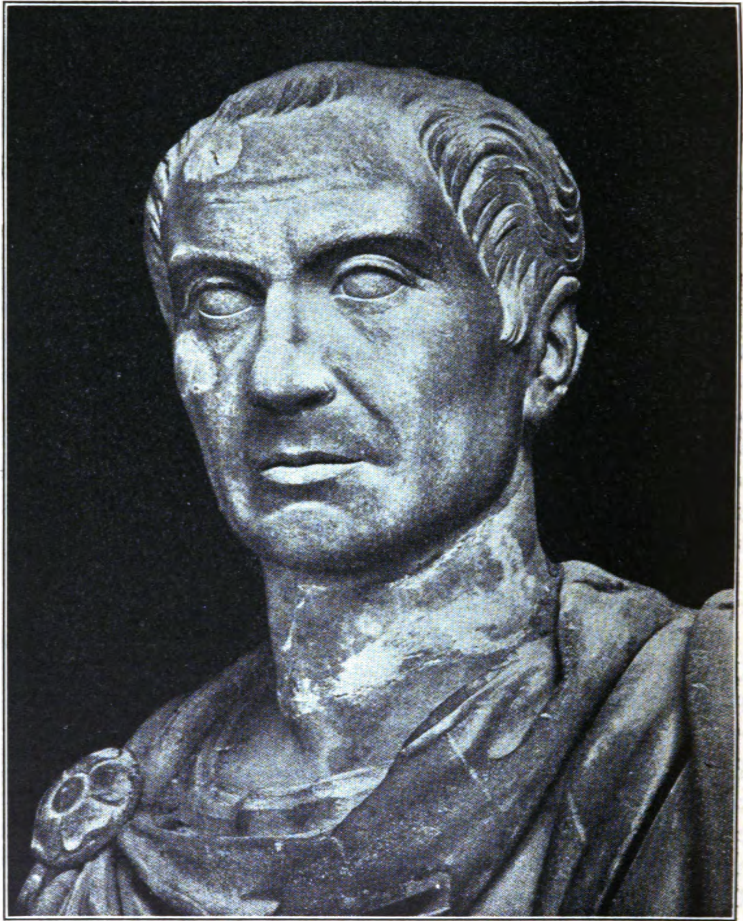
Amicī Caesaris cōnsilia Helvētiōrum animadvertunt atque maximē perturbantur. Intellegunt Helvētiōs ex finibus suis ēgredi statuisse. Cognōscunt eōs multis aliis gentibus persuādere ut sē sociōs coniungant et ex finibus suis ēgrediantur. Sentiunt Helvētiōs per prōvinciam Rōmānam iter facere cōnātūrōs esse. Timent nē Helvētīi sociīs Rōmānis maximē noceant. Itaque magnā cum celeritāte Rōmam contendunt ut cum Caesare conloquantur.

“Cūr tam celeriter ex Galliā vēnistis?” quaesivit Caesar. “Cūr perturbāmini?”

“Cūr *perturbāmur*? Multa apud Helvētiōs cōspeximus, Caesar. Libenter tē certiōrem faciēmus cūr *perturbēmur*. Helvētīi ex finibus suis ēgredi statuērunt et magnum numerum carrōrum et iūmentōrum ēmērunt. Rogāsne cūr Helvētīi ēgredi *statuerint*? Rogāsne quantum numerum carrōrum et iūmentōrum ēmerint? Primō nōn intellēximus cūr ex suis finibus ēgredi *statuissent*, et cūr tantum numerum carrōrum et iūmentōrum ēmissent. Itaque ā nostris amicis Helvēticis quaesivimus quae Helvētīi facerent.”

Tum Caesar ipse perturbātus quaesivit quae repperissent.

“Helvētīi, Caesar, existimant suōs finēs angustiōrēs esse prō multitudīne hominum; cōstituērunt igitur domō exire ut regiōnibus sibi idōneis potirentur. Ad novās regiōnēs eunt. Rogāsne num per prōvinciam Rōmānam eant? Amicī nostrī nōs certiōrēs nōn fēcērunt quō irent. Lātiōrēs tamen



Iūlius Caesar

Victor Galliae, et imperātor Rōmānōrum

regiōnēs petunt atque sine dubiō per prōvinciam Rōmānam
iter facere cōnābuntur. Itaque ad tē contendimus ut tē
dē hīs rēbus certiōrem facerēmus.”

DISCUSSION

517. In the third paragraph of the story *Dē Fāmā Amīcōrum Caesaris*, compare the verbs *perturbāmur* and *perturbēmur*. What is the mood and tense of each? What kind of word introduces these two verbs? How does the clause containing *perturbēmur* differ from the clause containing *perturbāmur*? Upon what kind of verb does the clause containing *perturbēmur* depend? A clause introduced by an interrogative word and depending upon a verb of telling, asking, knowing, wondering, or the like, is called an *indirect question*, and the verb is in the *subjunctive* mood. Indirect questions are originally questions which are made to depend upon another verb, just as clauses of indirect statement are statements which depend upon another verb. The essential difference between indirect question and indirect statement is the fact that the former is introduced by an interrogative word.

518. The verb *perturbēmur* is in the present subjunctive because it depends upon *certiōrem faciēmus* and expresses an action unfinished at the time of the main verb.

519. In the same paragraph compare the verbs *statuērunt* and *statuerint*. Upon what verb does *statuerint* depend? What word introduces the clause in which *statuerint* occurs? What kind of clause is it?

The verb *statuerint* is in the perfect subjunctive because it depends upon *rogās* and shows an action finished at the time of the main verb.

520. The present subjunctive, representing an unfinished act, and the perfect, representing a finished act, are used after main verbs not referring to past time (§ 659).

521. In the sentence *Itaque ā nostrīs amicīs quaesivimus quae Helvētīi facerent*, the verb *facerent* is in the imperfect subjunctive because it depends upon *quaesivimus* and expresses an action unfinished at the time of the main verb.

522. In the sentence *Tum Caesar quaesivit quae repperissent*, the verb *repperissent* is in the pluperfect subjunctive because it depends upon *quaesivit* and expresses an action finished at the time of the main verb. Similarly, in the sentence *Primō nōn intellēximus cūr ex suis finibus ēgredi statuisent*, the verb *statuisent* is in the pluperfect subjunctive.

523. After a main verb referring to past time, the imperfect subjunctive is used to represent an act as unfinished, and the pluperfect to represent an act as finished. (See § 658.)



Miles Gallus

524. Find examples of other indirect questions in the story and explain the tense of the verbs. List the verbs in the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive. What stem is used in making these forms? What is the tense sign of each? What endings are added?

525. The perfect and pluperfect tenses of the subjunctive mood, active voice, are formed as follows:

Perfect: to the perfect stem add the tense sign *-erī-* and the personal endings.

Pluperfect: to the perfect stem add the tense sign *-issē-* and the personal endings. Long vowels in both tenses are shortened before the endings *-m*, *-t*, and *-nt*.

526. The perfect and pluperfect passive of the subjunctive mood are formed by combining the perfect passive participle with the present and imperfect subjunctive of *sum*. (For the active and passive forms see §§ 632–639.)

RULES

527. Indirect question. An indirect question is a substantive clause used after a verb of asking, telling, knowing, wondering, or the like, and is introduced by an interrogative word — adverb, pronoun, or adjective. The verb is in the subjunctive.

528. Tenses. When the main verb does not refer to past time, the present subjunctive is used in the dependent clause to indicate an unfinished act, the perfect subjunctive to indicate a finished act.

When the main verb refers to past time, the imperfect subjunctive is used in the dependent clause to indicate an unfinished act, the pluperfect subjunctive to indicate a finished act.

· VOCABULARY XLVIII

***animadvertō, -ere, -vertī,**
-versus, *turn the mind to,*
notice

***atque (ac), conj., and**

***certus, -a, -um, certain, sure**
coniungō, -ere, coniūnxī,
coniūctus, join, unite

conloquor, conloquī, conlo-
cūtus sum, talk, converse,
confer

***cōspiciō, -ere, -spexī,**
-spectus, *perceive, observe*
ēgredior, -gredi, -gressus
sum, go out, march out

***noceō, -ēre, nocuī, nocitū-**
rus (with dat.), be harm-
ful or injurious, do harm

***num, interrog. adv., whether:**
used to introduce an in-
direct question

***perturbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus,**
disturb, confuse

***quantus, -a, -um, interrog.**
adj., how great? how much?

***quis, quid, interrog. pron.,**
who? what? (for declen-
sion, see § 599)

***regiō, -ōnis, f., region, terri-**
tory; direction

***reperiō, -īre, repperī, reper-**
tus, find, find out

***statuō, -ere, statui, statūtus,**
decide, determine; set in
place

Idiom

certiorem facere, to inform

529. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Explain the meaning of the italicized words in the following sentences:

1. Many mothers demand *certified* milk for their children.



2. A *conjunction* is a part of speech that connects words, clauses, or sentences.

3. The *colloquy* lasted a short time.

4. A well-bred person never makes himself *conspicuous* in public places.

5. The state has many *statutes* that need to be revised.

DRILL

I. Give the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive of the following verbs:

sum	perturbō	noceō	statuō
reperiō	cōnor	conloquor	ēgredior
potior	persuādeō	agō	audiō

II. Give a synopsis in the indicative and subjunctive, active and passive, of the following verbs:

coniungō, 3d person singular	cōspiciō, 1st person plural
dēleō, 3d person plural	dō, 2d person plural
ferō, 1st person singular	reperiō, 3d person singular

III. *State the form and explain the use of the italicized verbs in the following sentences:*

- A. 1. Amicus Caesaris maximē *perturbātur*.
 2. Caesar scit suum amicum maximē *perturbārī*.
 3. Caesar scit suum amicum maximē *perturbātum esse*.
 4. Caesar scīvit suum amicum maximē *perturbārī*.
 5. Caesar scīvit suum amicum maximē *perturbātum esse*.
- B. 1. Amicus Caesaris maximē *perturbātur*.
 2. Caesar scit cūr amicus *perturbētur*.
 3. Caesar scit cūr amicus *perturbātus sit*.
 4. Caesar scīvit cūr amicus *perturbārētur*.
 5. Caesar scīvit cūr amicus *perturbātus esset*.
- C. 1. Caesar repperit Helvētiōs ex finibus suis *ēgredi*.
 2. Caesar repperit cūr Helvētīi ex finibus suis *ēgrederentur*.

EXERCISE XLVIII

Write in Latin:

1. The Helvetians will harm their neighbors if they march through new regions. 2. We decided to find out where the Helvetians were going. 3. Did you observe how great was the number of carts? 4. First we shall confer with our friends and inform them about the departure. 5. They noticed that the Helvetians had gone out of their territory. 6. You will find out who joined (with them) as allies. 7. They asked whether the plans which had been formed (having-been-formed plans) had been carried out. 8. We shall tell them what has been accomplished.

CHAPTER XLIX

TEMPORAL CLAUSES WITH *CUM* *CUM* CIRCUMSTANTIAL, CAUSAL, CONCESSIVE



530. DĒ CAESARE ET HELVĒTIIS

Caesarī *cum* cōsilia Helvētiōrum nūntiāta essent, Rōmā celeriter profectus est. Magnīs itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genavam pervēnit. Militum quam maximum numerum coēgit atque pontem quī erat ad Genavam dēlēri iussit. *Cum* Caesar mīlitēs ex prōvinciā cōgeret, Helvētīi lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt. Lēgātī rogāvērunt ut eius voluntāte Helvētiis iter per prōvinciam facere licēret.

Caesar *cum* memoriā tenēret Helvētiōs quondam exercitum Rōmānum sub iugum mīsisse, eis iter dare dubitāvit. Sēnsit autem quālēs essent Helvētīi, neque hominēs bellīcōsōs sine iniūriā iter per prōvinciam factūrōs esse existi-



Militēs castellum commūniunt

mābat. *Cum* satis magnum numerum militum in Galliā nōn *habēret*, eō tempore contrā Helvētiōs bellum gerere nōluit. Itaque lēgātōs post aliquot diēs reverti iussit.

Interim Caesar et legiō decima ripam Rhodanī multa mīlia passuum mūrō fossāque mūnīre coepērunt. Militēs, superiōribus proeliis exercitī, brevissimō tempore rem perfēcērunt. Ubi lēgātī Helvētīi diē cōstitutā ad Caesarem revertērunt, sē Helvētiīs iter per prōvinciam dare posse negāvit.

Cum Caesar eis iter nōn *dedisset*, tamen Helvētīi vī flūmen trānsire coepērunt. Aliī nāvibus, aliī vadīs flūmen trānsire ausī sunt. Magnus fuit labor Helvētiōrum at frūstrā ausī sunt. Helvētīi *cum* diē noctūque mūnitiōnem perrumpere cōnārentur, id tamen perficere nōn potuērunt. Tandem, mūnitiōne et militum tēlis repulsi, cessērunt.

Nōtā bene

Ad Genavam pervēnit, *came into the neighborhood of Geneva.*
Post aliquot diēs, *after several days.*

531. Respondē Latinē:

1. Quibus temporibus Caesar Rōmā profectus est?
2. Ad quem locum pervēnit? 3. Quid ibi ēgit? 4. Quibus temporibus Helvētiī lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt?
5. Cūr Caesar eis iter dare dubitāvit? 6. Cūr bellum contrā Helvētiōs gerere nōluit? 7. Quid lēgātōs facere iussit?
8. Quid Caesar et legiō decima agere coepērunt?
9. Quandō Caesar Helvētiīs iter dare posse negāvit?
10. Cum Caesar eis iter nōn dedisset, quid tamen Helvētiī fēcērunt?
11. Quōmodo Helvētiī flūmen trānsire ausī sunt?
12. Cum Helvētiī mūnitiōnem perrumpere cōnārentur, quid tamen perficere nōn potuērunt?

Nōtā bene

Quibus temporibus, *under what circumstances?*

DISCUSSION

532. In the story **Dē Caesare et Helvētiīs**, there are many dependent clauses introduced by the conjunction **cum**. What mood is used in all these clauses? The conjunction **cum** may be translated *when*, *since*, or *although*; it occasionally takes the indicative, but more often the subjunctive.

Cum, *when*, referring to present or future time, always takes the indicative, and is called **cum temporal**.

Cum, *when*, referring to past time, takes the indicative if it shows merely the time at which the action occurred, and is also called **cum temporal**. **Cum** with the indicative, however, is not very common, because even when the English translation would be *when*, the clause introduced usually refers to circumstance, cause, or the like, and hence falls under one of the following heads.

Cum, *when*, introducing a clause which shows the circumstances under which the action of the main verb occurred, takes the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, and is called *cum circumstantial*.

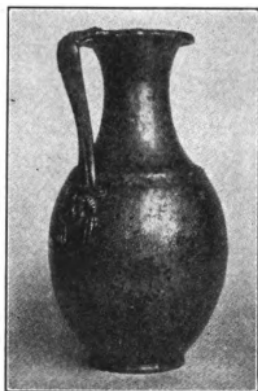
Cum, *since*, introducing a clause which shows the reason or cause for the action of the main verb, takes the subjunctive and is called *cum causal*.

Cum, *although*, introducing a clause which shows in spite of what the action of the main verb occurs, takes the subjunctive and is called *cum concessive* or *cum adversative*.

Find examples of the different *cum* clauses in the story.

533. The impersonal verb *licet*, *it is permitted*, *may*, takes the following constructions:

- (1) the infinitive with or without subject accusative
- (2) the dative and the infinitive
- (3) the subjunctive without *ut*

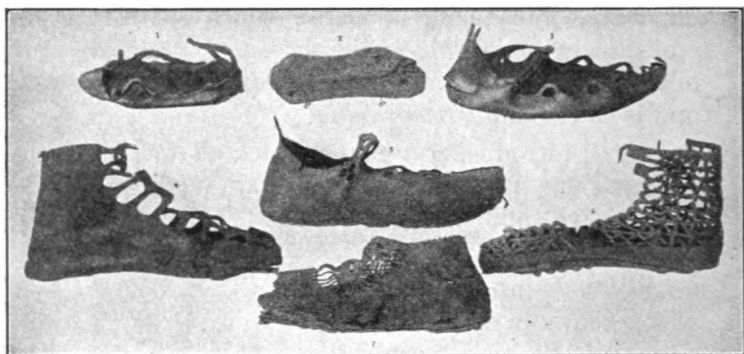


Ūrna aēnea

A bronze jar found in the ruins of a Roman frontier camp

534. The verb *revertor*, *return*, is a semideponent; the present, imperfect, and future tenses are deponent, but the perfect system has the regular active forms and is built from the perfect indicative form *reverti*. A synopsis in the third singular has the following forms: *pres.*, *revertitur*; *imp.*, *revertēbātur*; *fut.*, *revertētur*; *perf.*, *revertit*; *plup.*, *reverterat*; *fut. perf.*, *reverterit*.

535. The verb *audeō*, *audēre*, *ausus sum*, *dare*, is also a semideponent, but in this verb the present system is active and the perfect system is passive, though in all tenses the translation is active.



Calcei

Leather shoes found in the ruins of a Roman frontier camp

536. The verb *coepī, coepisse, coeptus, began*, is a defective verb—that is, the present system is lacking; and so only the tenses built on the perfect stem are used. The translation for the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect is *I have begun (began), I had begun, I shall have begun*.

RULES

537. *Cum* clauses

- I. *Cum, when*, referring to present or future time, takes the indicative.
- II. *Cum, when*, referring to past time, and showing pure time, takes the indicative.
- III. *Cum, when*, referring to past time, and showing circumstance, takes the subjunctive, either imperfect or pluperfect.
- IV. *Cum, since*, takes the subjunctive.
- V. *Cum, although*, takes the subjunctive.

VOCABULARY XLIX

- ***at**, conj., *but, but on the other hand*
 ***audeō**, -ēre, ausus sum, *dare*
 ***cēdō**, -ere, cessī, cessūrus, *go away; give way, yield*
 ***coepī**, coepisse, coeptus, *began*
 ***contrā**, prep. (with acc.), *against, opposite to*
 ***dubitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *doubt, hesitate*
 ***exerceō**, -ēre, exercuī, exercitus, *train, practice*
 ***iugum**, -ī, n., *yoke, ridge*
 ***labor**, -ōris, m., *toil, effort*
 ***licet**, licēre, licuit, *impersonal verb, it is permitted, may*
perrumpō, -ere, perrūpī, perruptus, *break through, force a way through*
repellō, -ēre, reppulī, repulsus, *drive back, repulse, ward off*
 ***revertor**, revertī (infinitive), revertī (perfect), **reversus** (perf. passive part.), *turn back, return, go back (present system is deponent; perfect system is built on the perfect active stem)*
 ***satis**, adv., *sufficiently, enough*
 ***sub**, prep. (with acc.), *under, beneath*
 ***ulterior**, -ius, comp. adj., *farther, further*
 ***vis**, acc. vim, abl. vī, f., *force, violence (see § 566)*
 ***voluntās**, -tātis, f., *wish, good will*

538.

LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

I. Give the meaning of the adjectives in the following phrases: a *voluntary* offering, an *ulterior* motive, a *contrary* opinion, a *repellent* force, a *licensed* operator.

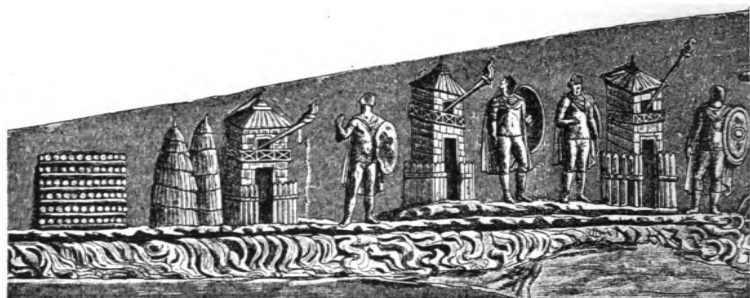
II. *Labor Day*. This day, usually the first Monday in September, is a holiday set apart for, and in recognition of, laborers as a class.

DRILL

I. Give a synopsis of the following verbs:

audeō, third singular, indicative and subjunctive

revertor, third plural, indicative and subjunctive



Militēs castra custōdiunt

Notice the watch towers, and the torches which illumine them

cēdō, first plural, indicative and subjunctive
coepī, third singular, indicative and subjunctive

II. Write the following sentence in three ways, using the verb *licet*: They were not permitted to leave the Helvetian state.

III. Complete the verb in each clause by supplying the proper word or ending, and translate the sentence into English:

1. Cum Helvētīi dē Caesaris adventū certiōrēs factī, lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt.
2. Cum Helvētīi bellicōsī, Caesareīs iter dare dubitat.
3. Ducēs Helvētīis imperāvērunt ut flūmen vī trāns.....
4. Cum Helvētīi flūmen trānsire ausī, tamen mūnitiōnem perrumpere nōn poterant.
5. Mūnitiō effēcit ut Helvētīi iter per prōvinciam facere nōn poss.....
6. Scimus cūr Helvētīi cess.....
7. Intellēximus quis quondam Rōmānōs sub iugum mīs.....

EXERCISE XLIX

Write in Latin:

1. When Caesar had been informed of the Helvetians' plans, he came into Farther Gaul.
2. The Helvetians wished

to march through the Roman province with Caesar's good will. 3. He began to fortify the banks of the Rhone in order to repulse the Helvetians more easily. 4. Although the effort was great, the trained soldiers accomplished the task very quickly. 5. Since Caesar does not have a sufficiently large number of soldiers in Gaul, he does not dare to wage war against the Helvetians. 6. But he quickly returned to Italy in order to collect several legions.



Gallus

This man was a Gallo-Roman; that is, an inhabitant of Romanized Gaul

CHAPTER L

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE ACTIVE AND PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC DATIVE OF AGENT

Gerund and gerundive

539. DE HELVETIÖRUM ITINERE I

Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs ire nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte Helvētīī persuādēre nōn possent, cum Dumnorige Haeduō, amicō suō, conlocūtī sunt. Dumnorix erat cupidus *rēgnandī*. Apud Sēquanōs plūrimū poterat quod magnās facultātēs ad *largiendū* comparāverat. Helvētīī Dumnorigem certiōrem fēcērunt omnia esse parāta ad *ēgrediendū*. Dixērunt sē Caesarem neque *ōrandō* neque *pugnandō* addūcere potuisse. Dumnorigem ōrāvērunt ut perficeret ut Sēquanī Helvētīīs iter per finēs suōs darent. Dumnorix eōs rogāvit ut finem *dicendī* facerent; dixit sē Sēquanīs persuādēre cōnātūrum esse.

Dumnorix Sēquanīs persuāsīt ut per finēs suōs Helvētīōs in Santonum finēs prōgredi paterentur. Caesari cum id nūntiātum esset, Helvētīōs itinere prohibēre statuit. Iūdicāvit enim magnō cum periculō prōvinciae futūrum esse ut Helvētīī in Santonum finibus essent. Itaque eī mūnitiōnī quam fēcērat T. Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcīt. Dēcima legiō quoque in Galliā *ad mūnitiōnem dēfendendam* mānsit. Caesar ipse in Italiā magnīs itineribus contendit ad plūrēs legiōnēs cōgendās. Brevī tempore cum quīnque legiōnibus in ulteriōrem Galliā rediit et in finibus Segusiāvōrum cōsēdit.

Interim Helvētīī per finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Haeduōrum finēs pervēnerant eōrumque

agrōs vāstābant. Haedui cum sē ab eīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt ad auxilium petendum. Dixērunt sē auxilium petere *liberōrum cōservandōrum atque oppidōrum tuendōrum causā*.

Nōtā bene

Suā sponte, of their own accord. T., Titum, acc. of Titus.



Proelium

540. Respondē Latīnē:

1. Quae via relinquēbātur? 2. Cūr Helvētīi cum Dumnorīge conlocūtī sunt? 3. Cuius rei erat Dumnorīx cupidus? 4. Quid comparāverat? 5. Quō cōsiliō erant omnia parāta? 6. Quōmodo Caesarem addūcere cōnātī sunt? 7. Quid Dumnorīx eōs rogāvit?

8. Quid Dumnorīx Sēquanīs persuāsit? 9. Quid Caesar agere statuit? 10. Quō cōsiliō legiō decima in Galliā mānsit? 11. Quō cōsiliō Caesar in Italiā contendit? 12. Quō cōsiliō Haedui lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt? 13. Quō cōsiliō Haedui auxilium petiērunt?

DISCUSSION

541. In the sentence *Dumnorix erat cupidus rēgnandī*, in what case and number is *rēgnandī*? What is its declension? From what verb is it made? What stem is used? *Rēgnandī* is called a *gerund*. A gerund expresses the action of a verb but has the form of a noun. The gerund for all conjugations is formed by shortening the stem vowel of the present stem and adding *-nd-* or *-end-* and the endings of a neuter noun of the second declension. (See § 139.) The gerund is found only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular. The dative is rarely used and the nominative is lacking, this form being supplied by the present infinitive. The gerund may usually be translated by an English noun in *-ing*, and is active in meaning. (See §§ 616, 620, 624, 629.)

Identify the other gerunds in the first paragraph of the story and explain the case of each.

542. In the sentence *Decima legiō quoque in Galliā ad mūnitiōnem dēfendendam mānsit*, in what case, gender, and number is *dēfendendam*? Is *dēfendendam* a gerund? Is it used as a noun or an adjective? *Dēfendendam* is an adjectival form of the verb, called a *gerundive*. The gerundive for all conjugations is formed by shortening the stem vowel of the present stem and adding *-nd-* or *-end-* and the endings of an adjective of the first-and-second declension. (See § 147.) It is found in all genders, numbers, and cases, and must agree with the noun it modifies.

543. The gerund is sometimes, though not often, used with a direct object, as in *cupidus urbem capiendī*, *desirous of taking the city*; a gerundive construction is preferred, in which the noun that receives the action is in the case required by the context, with the gerundive in agreement with the noun, as in the expression *cupidus urbis capiendae*, which means the same thing. In this construction, the words

urbis capiendae are somewhat like a compound noun; the expression is equivalent to *desirous of city-taking*; that is, *desirous of taking the city*; *ad mūnitiōnem dēfendendam* means *for fortification-defending*; that is, *for defending the fortification*.

544. List the gerundive constructions in the second and third paragraphs of the story. What does each phrase tell



Captivī interficiuntur

about the main verb? How are these phrases made up? The gerundive construction is frequently used to show purpose; so also is the gerund. Purpose is expressed by *ad* and the accusative, or by the genitive with *causā*.

Periphrastic conjugations; dative of agent

545. DE HELVETIORUM ITINERE II

Lēgātis quī plūra dictūrī erant Caesar respondit:

"Helvētiī prōvinciae atque sociīs magnopere nocent.

Omnia sua oppida vicōsque incendērunt. Finēs eōrum vāstātī sunt; domī nihil est. Finēs finitimōrum autem nōn vāstandī sunt. Domum Helvētiīs redeundum est. Līberī enim sociōrum Rōmānōrum in servitūtem abdūcī nōn dēbent. Līberī vestrī cōservandī sunt. Oppida sociōrum Rōmānōrum expugnārī nōn dēbent. Oppida vestra tuenda sunt. *Mihi, vērō, bellum gerendum erit.* Cōpiae Helvētiōrum itinere prohibendae erunt. Socii Rōmānī ab iniuriā tuendī sunt.”

Hōc dictō Caesar lēgātōs dīmīsīt. Simul ac discessērunt Caesar sibi nōn morandum esse statuit. Putāvit Helvētiōs sine morā superandōs esse. Itaque Helvētiōs secūtus est.

Flūmen erat Arar quod per finēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum inflūxit. Id Helvētiīs trānseundum erat. Helvētīi iam trēs partēs cōpiārum id flūmen trādūxerant. Quārta pars trānsitūra erat. Caesar eōs Helvētiōs qui impeditī flūmen trānsitūrī erant aggressus magnam partem eōrum occidit. Reliqui sēsē fugae mandāvērunt.

DISCUSSION

546. In the sentence *Finēs finitimōrum nōn vāstandī sunt*, what are the two parts of the verb *vāstandī sunt*? What is *vāstandī*? With what does it agree? The gerundive combined with a form of *sum* is used to denote an action which is to be done, has to be done, or must be done. The gerundive combined with the forms of *sum* makes the *passive periphrastic* conjugation. (See §§ 643–645.) This conjugation denotes obligation or necessity and is always passive in meaning; as, *Finēs nōn vāstandī sunt*, *The territory is not to be devastated*, or *The territory must not be devastated*.

547. In the sentence *Mihi bellum gerendum erit*, in what tense is *erit*? What is its subject? Is the doer (or agent) expressed in this sentence? What is the case of *mihi*? With the passive periphrastic conjugation the agent is usually in the dative, called the *dative of agent*. The literal trans-

lation of this sentence is: *For me there will be war to be waged*; but it is usually translated: *I shall have to wage war*. Thus the dative of agent is translated as the subject.

548. When an intransitive verb is used in the passive periphrastic, the form of *sum* must be third person singular, as if the verb were impersonal; as, *Helvētiūs redeundum est*, *The Helvetians must return*.

549. List the other passive periphrastic forms in the story and give the tense of each. Pick out the subject of each and state the agent when expressed.

550. In the clause *quī plūra dictūrī erant*, what are the two parts of the verb *dictūrī erant*? What is *dictūrī*? With what does it agree? What is the literal meaning of *dictūrī erant*? The future active participle combined with a form of *sum* is used to denote an action which is about to take place. The future active participle combined with the forms of *sum* makes the *active periphrastic* conjugation. (See §§ 640-642) This conjugation denotes intention or futurity and is always active; as, *dictūrī erant*, *they were about to speak*, or *they were intending to speak*.

RULES

551. Purpose. Purpose may be expressed by *ad* followed by the accusative of the gerund or of the gerundive.

Purpose may be expressed by the genitive of the gerund or of the gerundive followed by *causā*.

552. Active periphrastic. The active periphrastic is used to express intention or futurity.

553. Passive periphrastic. The passive periphrastic is used to express obligation or necessity.

554. Dative of agent. The dative is used with the passive periphrastic to denote agency.

VOCABULARY L

abdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, <i>lead away, carry off</i>	*moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, <i>delay, wait</i>
*aggredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, <i>approach; attack</i>	*praeſciō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (with dat.), <i>put in charge of, set over</i>
cōſervō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>keep safe, preserve</i>	prōgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, <i>go forth, proceed, advance</i>
*cōſidō, -ere, -ſēdī, -ſeſſū- rus, <i>take a seat, encamp</i>	*quā, adv., <i>where</i>
dīmittō, -ere, -mīſī, -miſſus, <i>send forth, dismiss</i>	*redeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, <i>re- turn, go back</i>
*enim, conj. (postpositive), <i>for</i>	*ſequor, ſequī, ſecūtus sum, <i>follow</i>
*expugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>capture, take by assault</i>	*ſimul, adv., <i>at the same time;</i> ſimul ac (ſimul atque be- fore a vowel), <i>as soon as</i>
*facultās, -tātis, f., <i>oppor- tunity; resources; ability</i>	trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (with two accusatives), <i>lead across</i>
iñfluō, -ere, -flūxī, -flūxus, <i>flow in</i>	*tueor, -ērī, tūtus sum, <i>watch over, guard</i>
*iūdicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>judge</i>	*vāſtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>lay waste, devastate</i>
largior, -irī, -ītus sum, <i>bribe</i>	
*mandō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>commit, hand over</i>	

555. LATIN IN DAILY LIFE

Explain the meaning of the italicized words:

1. We are studying *simultaneous* equations in algebra.
2. Harold is very *aggressive*, but he is not at all *progressive*.
3. The *abduction* of the little boy was never explained.
4. In English public schools older boys act as *prefects*.

DRILL

I. Decline the gerund of the following:

aggredior cōſervō tueor dīmittō largior

II. Give the gerundive of the same verbs in the nominative singular.

III. Complete the following sentences by using either a gerund or gerundive construction for the words in parentheses:

1. Vēnimus (to pray).
2. Sumus cupidī (of delaying).
3. Multa (by progressing) vincimus.
4. Lēgātōs (to capture the camp) mīsit. (Two ways.)
5. Spēs (of saving the fields) erat magna.

IV. Translate into Latin, using the periphrastic conjugations:

1. The Helvetians must be led across.
2. The Helvetians had to be led across.
3. The Helvetians are about to lead their troops across the river.



HI Gallī servī nōn erunt

The Gauls often preferred to die rather than become captives and slaves

4. We were about to hand over the hostages.
5. The Helvetians must lead us across.
6. We must return to guard our fields.
7. Dumnorix was about to speak.
8. The Romans had to fortify their camp.

V. Write the following sentences in as many ways as possible:

1. The enemy have come to carry off our children.
2. We shall follow them in order to save our territory.

EXERCISE L

Write in Latin:

1. Caesar had put Labienus in charge of the Roman forces. 2. For he judged that the enemy would try to capture the fortifications. 3. As soon as he had done (did) this he hurried into Italy. 4. Caesar was desirous of conquering the Helvetians. 5. They ought not to send their children into slavery nor to attack their towns. 6. Dumnorix's opportunity for (of) bribing was very great. 7. When Caesar had decided to attack the Helvetians he dismissed the envoys. 8. Do you know into what river this river flows? 9. Since the enemy had encamped here he cut them down. 10. Caesar thought that he must not delay.



Arcus triumphālis

Romans built this arch in southern France, at Orange, ancient Arausiō, probably to commemorate a victory over the Gauls

APPENDIX

SUMMARY OF FORMS

DECLENSION OF NOUNS

FIRST DECLENSION

556. puella, f., girl

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	puella	puellae
<i>Gen.</i>	puellae	puellārum
<i>Dat.</i>	puellae	puellis
<i>Acc.</i>	puellam	puellās
<i>Abl.</i>	puellā	puellis

SECOND DECLENSION

557. servus, m., slave filius, m., son puer, m., boy ager, m., field templum, n., temple

	<i>Singular</i>				
<i>Nom.</i>	servus	filius	puer	ager	templum
<i>Gen</i>	servī	fili	puerī	agrī	templī
<i>Dat.</i>	servō	filiō	puerō	agrō	templō
<i>Acc.</i>	servum	filium	puerum	agrum	templum
<i>Abl.</i>	servō	filiō	puerō	agrō	templō

The ending of the vocative singular of nouns in -us is -e; of filius, and proper names in -ius, it is -i; as, serve, fili, Cornēli.

	<i>Plural</i>				
<i>Nom.</i>	servī	filiī	puerī	agrī	templa
<i>Gen.</i>	servōrum	filiōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	templōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	servīs	filiīs	puerīs	agris	templis
<i>Acc.</i>	servōs	filiōs	puerōs	agrōs	templa
<i>Abl.</i>	servīs	filiīs	puerīs	agris	templis

THIRD DECLENSION

Consonant Stems

558.	dux, m., <i>leader</i>	mīles, m., <i>soldier</i>	lēx, f., <i>law</i>
------	----------------------------------	-------------------------------------	-------------------------------

Singular

<i>Nom.</i>	dux	mīles	lēx
<i>Gen.</i>	ducis	militis	lēgis
<i>Dat.</i>	duci	militi	lēgi
<i>Acc.</i>	ducem	mīlitem	lēgem
<i>Abl.</i>	duce	mīlite	lēge

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	ducēs	mīlitēs	lēgēs
<i>Gen.</i>	ducum	mīlitum	lēgum
<i>Dat.</i>	ducibus	mīlitibus	lēgibus
<i>Acc.</i>	ducēs	mīlitēs	lēgēs
<i>Abl.</i>	ducibus	mīlitibus	lēgibus

559.	cōsul, m., <i>consul</i>	imperātor, m., <i>commander in chief</i>	frāter, m., <i>brother</i>
------	------------------------------------	--	--------------------------------------

Singular

<i>Nom.</i>	cōsul	imperātor	frāter
<i>Gen.</i>	cōsulis	imperātōris	frātris
<i>Dat.</i>	cōsuli	imperātōrī	frātrī
<i>Acc.</i>	cōsulem	imperātōrem	frātrem
<i>Abl.</i>	cōsule	imperātōre	frātre

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	cōsulēs	imperātōrēs	frātrēs
<i>Gen.</i>	cōsulum	imperātōrum	frātrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cōsulibus	imperātōribus	frātribus
<i>Acc.</i>	cōsulēs	imperātōrēs	frātrēs
<i>Abl.</i>	cōsulibus	imperātōribus	frātribus

560.	legiō, f., <i>legion</i>	mōs, m., <i>custom</i>	homō, m. or f., <i>person</i>
-------------	------------------------------------	----------------------------------	---

Singular

<i>Nom.</i>	legiō	mōs	homō
<i>Gen.</i>	legiōnis	mōris	hominis
<i>Dat.</i>	legiōnī	mōrī	hominī
<i>Acc.</i>	legiōnem	mōrem	hominem
<i>Abl.</i>	legiōne	mōre	homine

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	legiōnēs	mōrēs	hominēs
<i>Gen.</i>	legiōnum	mōrum	hominum
<i>Dat.</i>	legiōnibus	mōribus	hominibus
<i>Acc.</i>	legiōnēs	mōrēs	hominēs
<i>Abl.</i>	legiōnibus	mōribus	hominibus

561.	certāmen, n., <i>contest</i>	corpus, n., <i>body</i>	mūnus, n., <i>gift</i>
-------------	--	-----------------------------------	----------------------------------

Singular

<i>Nom.</i>	certāmen	corpus	mūnus
<i>Gen.</i>	certāminis	corporis	mūneris
<i>Dat.</i>	certāminī	corporī	mūnerī
<i>Acc.</i>	certāmen	corpus	mūnus
<i>Abl.</i>	certāmine	corpore	mūnere

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	certāmina	corpora	mūnera
<i>Gen.</i>	certāminum	corporum	mūnerum
<i>Dat.</i>	certāminibus	corporibus	mūneribus
<i>Acc.</i>	certāmina	corpora	mūnera
<i>Abl.</i>	certāminibus	corporibus	mūneribus

I-stems			
562.	urbs, f., city	cīvis, m. or f., citizen	caedēs, f., slaughter
Singular			
Nom.	urbs	cīvis	caedēs
Gen.	urbis	cīvis	caedis
Dat.	urbī	cīvī	caedī
Acc.	urbem	cīvem	caedem
Abl.	urbe	cīve, -ī	caede
Plural			
Nom.	urbēs	cīvēs	caedēs
Gen.	urbium	cīvium	caedium
Dat.	urbibus	cīvibus	caedibus
Acc.	urbis, -ēs	cīvīs, -ēs	caedis, -ēs
Abl.	urbibus	cīvibus	caedibus
563.	mare, n., sea	animal, n., animal	
Singular			
Nom.	mare	animal	
Gen.	maris	animālis	
Dat.	marī	animālī	
Acc.	mare	animal	
Abl.	marī	animālī	
Plural			
Nom.	maria	animālia	
Gen.	marium	animālium	
Dat.	maribus	animālibus	
Acc.	maria	animālia	
Abl.	maribus	animālibus	

The plural of *mare* is given in full in order to show the typical paradigm; but the only common forms of this word in the plural are the nominative and accusative. A rare genitive plural *marum* is recorded.

FOURTH DECLENSION

564.	exercitus, m., army	cornū, n., horn; wing
------	------------------------	--------------------------

Singular

Nom.	exercitus	cornū
Gen.	exercitūs	cornūs
Dat.	exercituī	cornū
Acc.	exercitum	cornū
Abl.	exercitū	cornū

Plural

Nom.	exercitūs	cornua
Gen.	exercituum	cornuum
Dat.	exercitibus	cornibus
Acc.	exercitūs	cornua
Abl.	exercitibus	cornibus

FIFTH DECLENSION

565.	diēs, m. or f., day	rēs, f., thing
------	------------------------	-------------------

Singular

Nom.	diēs	rēs
Gen.	diēī	reī
Dat.	diēī	reī
Acc.	diem	rem
Abl.	diē	rē

Plural

Nom.	diēs	rēs
Gen.	diērum	rērum
Dat.	diēbus	rēbus
Acc.	diēs	rēs
Abl.	diēbus	rēbus

IRREGULAR DECLENSION

566.	deus, m., <i>god</i>	Iuppiter, m., <i>Jupiter</i>	vis, f., <i>strength</i>	iter, n., <i>journey</i>
-------------	--------------------------------	--	------------------------------------	------------------------------------

Singular

<i>Nom.</i>	deus	Iuppiter	vis	iter
<i>Gen.</i>	dei	Iovis	—	itineris
<i>Dat.</i>	deō	Iovī	—	itinerī
<i>Acc.</i>	deum	Iovem	vim	iter
<i>Abl.</i>	deō	Iove	vī	itinere

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	dei, diī, dī	—	vīrēs	itīnera
<i>Gen.</i>	deōrum, deum	—	vīrium	itinerum
<i>Dat.</i>	deīs, dīs	—	vīribus	itineribus
<i>Acc.</i>	deōs	—	vīrīs, -ēs	itīnera
<i>Abl.</i>	deīs, dīs	—	vīribus	itineribus

567.	Tiberis, m., <i>Tiber</i>	domus, f., <i>house</i>	nēmō, m., <i>no one</i>
-------------	-------------------------------------	-----------------------------------	-----------------------------------

Singular

<i>Nom.</i>	Tiberis	domus	nēmō
<i>Gen.</i>	Tiberis	domūs	(nūllīus)
<i>Dat.</i>	Tiberī	domuī, -ō	nēmini
<i>Acc.</i>	Tiberim	domum	nēminem
<i>Abl.</i>	Tiberī	domō, -ū	(nūllō)

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	—	domūs	—
<i>Gen.</i>	—	domuum, -ōrum	—
<i>Dat.</i>	—	domibus	—
<i>Acc.</i>	—	domōs, -ūs	—
<i>Abl.</i>	—	domibus	—

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES
FIRST-AND-SECOND DECLENSION

568. **magnus, -a, -um, large**

Singular

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	magnus	magna	magnum
<i>Gen.</i>	magnī	magnae	magnī
<i>Dat.</i>	magnō	magnae	magnō
<i>Acc.</i>	magnum	magnam	magnum
<i>Abl.</i>	magnō	magnā	magnō

The vocative singular masculine form is **magne**.

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	magnī	magnae	magna
<i>Gen.</i>	magnōrum	magnārum	magnōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs
<i>Acc.</i>	magnōs	magnās	magna
<i>Abl.</i>	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs

569. **pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, beautiful**

Singular

<i>Nom.</i>	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
<i>Gen.</i>	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
<i>Dat.</i>	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
<i>Acc.</i>	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
<i>Abl.</i>	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
<i>Gen.</i>	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
<i>Acc.</i>	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
<i>Abl.</i>	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

570. miser, misera, miserum, *wretched**Singular*

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	miser	misera	miserum
<i>Gen.</i>	miserī	miserae	miserī
<i>Dat.</i>	miserō	miserae	miserō
<i>Acc.</i>	miserum	miseram	miserum
<i>Abl.</i>	miserō	miserā	miserō

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	miserī	miserae	misera
<i>Gen.</i>	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
<i>Acc.</i>	miserōs	miserās	misera
<i>Abl.</i>	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

THIRD DECLENSION

Three Terminations

571. ācer, ācris, ācre, *spirited, keen, fierce**Singular*

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris
<i>Dat.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
<i>Abl.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Gen.</i>	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrīs, -ēs	ācrīs, -ēs	ācria
<i>Abl.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

Note that the ablative singular in all genders ends in -ī.

572. *celer, celeris, celere, swift, quick*

	M.	F.	N.
		<i>Singular</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>celer</i>	<i>celeris</i>	<i>celere</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>celeris</i>	<i>celeris</i>	<i>celeris</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>celerī</i>	<i>celerī</i>	<i>celerī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>celerem</i>	<i>celerem</i>	<i>celere</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>celerī</i>	<i>celerī</i>	<i>celerī</i>
		<i>Plural</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>celerēs</i>	<i>celerēs</i>	<i>celerīa</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>celerium</i>	<i>celerium</i>	<i>celerium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>celeribus</i>	<i>celeribus</i>	<i>celeribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>celeris, -ēs</i>	<i>celeris, -ēs</i>	<i>celerīa</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>celeribus</i>	<i>celeribus</i>	<i>celeribus</i>

The genitive plural of *celer* is given in order to show a typical paradigm; but this particular form was not used in Latin.

Two Terminations

573. *fortis, forte, brave**Singular*

	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>fortis</i>	<i>forte</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>fortis</i>	<i>fortis</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>fortī</i>	<i>fortī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>fortem</i>	<i>forte</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>fortī</i>	<i>fortī</i>

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>fortēs</i>	<i>fortia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>fortium</i>	<i>fortium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>fortibus</i>	<i>fortibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>fortis, -ēs</i>	<i>fortia</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>fortibus</i>	<i>fortibus</i>

One Termination

574.

audāx, daring, bold*Singular*

	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	audāx	audāx
<i>Gen.</i>	audācis	audācis
<i>Dat.</i>	audācī	audācī
<i>Acc.</i>	audācem	audāx
<i>Abl.</i>	audācī	audācī

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	audācēs	audācia
<i>Gen.</i>	audācium	audācium
<i>Dat.</i>	audācibus	audācibus
<i>Acc.</i>	audācis, -ēs	audācia
<i>Abl.</i>	audācibus	audācibus

DECLENSION OF PRESENT PARTICIPLE

575.

portāns, carrying*Singular*

	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	portāns	portāns
<i>Gen.</i>	portantis	portantis
<i>Dat.</i>	portanti	portanti
<i>Acc.</i>	portantem	portāns
<i>Abl.</i>	portante, -ī	portante, -ī

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	portantēs	portantia
<i>Gen.</i>	portantium	portantium
<i>Dat.</i>	portantibus	portantibus
<i>Acc.</i>	portantēs, -īs	portantia
<i>Abl.</i>	portantibus	portantibus

ADJECTIVES OF IRREGULAR DECLENSION

576. Nine Adjectives

ūnus, one ūllus, any uter, which (of two) alter, the other
sōlus, alone nūllus, none neuter, neither (of two) alius, another
tōtus, whole

577. *alius, alia, aliud, another**Singular*

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>alius</i>	<i>alia</i>	<i>aliud</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>(alterius)</i>	<i>(alterius)</i>	<i>(alterius)</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>aliī</i>	<i>aliī</i>	<i>aliī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>aliū</i>	<i>aliā</i>	<i>aliud</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>aliō</i>	<i>aliā</i>	<i>aliō</i>

Alter is declined in the plural like *miser*; *uter* and *neuter*, like *pulcher*; the others, except *ūnus*, like *magnus*.

578. *ūnus, ūna, ūnum, one*

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ūnus</i>	<i>ūna</i>	<i>ūnum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ūnīus</i>	<i>ūnīus</i>	<i>ūnīus</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>ūnī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>ūnam</i>	<i>ūnum</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ūnō</i>	<i>ūnā</i>	<i>ūnō</i>

579. *duo, duae, duo, two*

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>duae</i>	<i>duo</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>duōrum</i>	<i>duārum</i>	<i>duōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>duōs, duo</i>	<i>duās</i>	<i>duo</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>

Ambō is declined like *duo*, except that final *-ō* is long.

580.

trēs, tria, three

	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>trēs</i>	<i>tria</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>trium</i>	<i>trium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>trēs, trīs</i>	<i>tria</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>

581.

mille, thousand

	<i>Adjective (sing.)</i>	<i>Noun (pl.)</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>mille</i>	<i>mīlia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>mille</i>	<i>mīlium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mille</i>	<i>mīlibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mille</i>	<i>mīlia</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mille</i>	<i>mīlibus</i>

582.

NUMERALS

<i>Cardinals</i>			
1. <i>ūnus, -a, -um</i>	I	17. <i>septendecim</i>	XVII
2. <i>duo, duae, duo</i>	II	18. <i>duodēvigintī</i>	XVIII
3. <i>trēs, tria</i>	III	19. <i>ūndēvigintī</i>	XIX
4. <i>quattuor</i>	IV	20. <i>vīgintī</i>	XX
5. <i>quīque</i>	V		
6. <i>sex</i>	VI		<i>Ordinals</i>
7. <i>septem</i>	VII	<i>prīmus, -a, -um, first</i>	
8. <i>octō</i>	VIII	<i>secundus, -a, -um, second</i>	
9. <i>novem</i>	IX	<i>tertius, -a, -um, third</i>	
10. <i>decem</i>	X	<i>quārtus, -a, -um, fourth</i>	
11. <i>ūndecim</i>	XI	<i>quīntus, -a, -um, fifth</i>	
12. <i>duodecim</i>	XII	<i>sextus, -a, -um, sixth</i>	
13. <i>tredecim</i>	XIII	<i>septimus, -a, -um, seventh</i>	
14. <i>quattuordecim</i>	XIV	<i>octāvus, -a, -um, eighth</i>	
15. <i>quīndecim</i>	XV	<i>nōnus, -a, -um, ninth</i>	
16. <i>sēdecim</i>	XVI	<i>decimus, -a, -um, tenth</i>	

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

583.

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Regular</i> <i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
<i>lātē</i>	<i>lātius</i>	<i>lātissimē</i>
<i>miserē</i>	<i>miserius</i>	<i>miserrimē</i>
<i>fortiter</i>	<i>fortius</i>	<i>fortissimē</i>
<i>ācriter</i>	<i>ācrius</i>	<i>ācerrimē</i>
<i>audācter</i>	<i>audācius</i>	<i>audācissimē</i>
<i>diligenter</i>	<i>diligentius</i>	<i>diligentissimē</i>

584.

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Irregular</i> <i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
<i>bene</i>	<i>melius</i>	<i>optimē</i>
<i>male</i>	<i>peius</i>	<i>pessimē</i>
<i>magnopere</i>	<i>magis</i>	<i>maximē</i>
<i>multum</i>	<i>plūs</i>	<i>plūrimum</i>
<i>parum</i>	<i>minus</i>	<i>minimē</i>
<i>saepe</i>	<i>saepius</i>	<i>saepissimē</i>
<i>diū</i>	<i>diūtius</i>	<i>diūtissimē</i>
<i>facile</i>	<i>facilius</i>	<i>facillimē</i>

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

585.

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Regular</i> <i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
<i>clārus, -a, -um</i>	<i>clārior, clārius</i>	<i>clārissimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>fortis, forte</i>	<i>fortior, fortius</i>	<i>fortissimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>potēns</i>	<i>potentior, potentius</i>	<i>potentissimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>miser, misera, miserum</i>	<i>miserior, miserius</i>	<i>miserrimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>celer, celeris, celere</i>	<i>celerior, celerius</i>	<i>celerrimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum</i>	<i>pulchrior, pulchrius</i>	<i>pulcherrimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>ācer, ācris, ācre</i>	<i>ācrior, ācrius</i>	<i>ācerrimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>facilis, facile</i>	<i>facilior, facilius</i>	<i>facillimus, -a, -um</i>

586.

Irregular

bonus, -a, -um, <i>good</i>	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um, <i>bad</i>	peior, peius	pessimus, -a, -um
magnus, -a, -um, <i>great</i>	maior, maius	maximus, -a, -um
parvus, -a, -um, <i>small</i>	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um, <i>much</i> (sing.)	—, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
multi, -ae, -a, <i>many</i> (pl.)	plūrēs, plūra	plūrimī, -ae, -a
(inferus, -a, -um, <i>low</i>)	inferior, inferius	īfimus, -a, -um
(exter or exterus, <i>outside</i>)	exterior, exterius	īmū, -a, -um
(superus, -a, -um, <i>high</i>)	superior, superius	extrēmus, -a, -um
		extimus, -a, -um
		summus, -a, -um
		suprēmus, -a, -um

DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

587.

fortior, fortius, *braver*

<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i> fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
<i>Gen.</i> fortiōris	fortiōris	fortiōrum	fortiōrum
<i>Dat.</i> fortiōrī	fortiōrī	fortiōribus	fortiōribus
<i>Acc.</i> fortiōrem	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
<i>Abl.</i> fortiōre	fortiōre	fortiōribus	fortiōribus

588.

plūs, *more*

M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i> —	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
<i>Gen.</i> —	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
<i>Dat.</i> —	—	plūribus	plūribus
<i>Acc.</i> —	plūs	plūrēs -īs	plūra
<i>Abl.</i> —	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

PRONOUNS

589.

PERSONAL

<i>First person</i> ego, I	<i>Second person</i> tū, you	<i>Third person</i>
	<i>Singular</i>	
<i>Nom.</i> ego	tū	is, m., ea, f., id, n.
<i>Gen.</i> meī	tuī	(See § 592)
<i>Dat.</i> mihi	tibi	
<i>Acc.</i> mē	tē	
<i>Abl.</i> mē	tē	

Plural

<i>Nom.</i> nōs	vōs
<i>Gen.</i> nostrī, nostrum	vestrī, vestrum
<i>Dat.</i> nōbīs	vōbīs
<i>Acc.</i> nōs	vōs
<i>Abl.</i> nōbīs	vōbīs

590.

REFLEXIVE

Singular

<i>First person</i>	<i>Second person</i>	<i>Third person</i>
<i>Nom.</i> —	—	—
<i>Gen.</i> meī	tuī	suī
<i>Dat.</i> mihi	tibi	sibi
<i>Acc.</i> mē	tē	sē, sēsē
<i>Abl.</i> mē	tē	sē, sēsē

Plural

<i>Nom.</i> —	—	—
<i>Gen.</i> nostrī	vestrī	suī
<i>Dat.</i> nōbīs	vōbīs	sibi
<i>Acc.</i> nōs	vōs	sē, sēsē
<i>Abl.</i> nōbīs	vōbīs	sē, sēsē

591. The following possessive adjectives are derived from the personal and reflexive pronouns:

meus, mea, meum, my	noster, nostra, nostrum, our
tuus, tua, tuum, your (referring to one person)	vester, vestra, vestrum, your (referring to two or more persons)
suus, sua, suum, his, hers, its, their	

DEMONSTRATIVE

592. is, ea, id, *this, that, he, she, it*

<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>			
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	eī, iī	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

593. hic, haec, hoc, *this*

	<i>Singular</i>				<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	hic	haec	hoc		hī	hae	haec
<i>Gen.</i>	huius	huius	huius		hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	huic	huic	huic		hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc	hanc	hoc		hōs	hās	haec
<i>Abl.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc		hīs	hīs	hīs

594. ille, illa, illud, *that*

<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>			
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	ille	illa	illud	illi	illae	illa
<i>Gen.</i>	illius	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	illi	illi	illi	illis	illis	illis
<i>Acc.</i>	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
<i>Abl.</i>	illō	illā	illō	illis	illis	illis

595. iste, ista, istud, *that, those*

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
<i>Gen.</i>	istius	istius	istius	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	istī	istī	istī	istis	istis	istis
<i>Acc.</i>	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
<i>Abl.</i>	istō	istā	istō	istis	istis	istis

596. idem, eadem, idem, *the same**Singular*

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	idem	eadem	idem
<i>Gen.</i>	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem
<i>Dat.</i>	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
<i>Acc.</i>	eundem	eandem	idem
<i>Abl.</i>	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

Plural

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	eīdem	eaedem	eadem
<i>Gen.</i>	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>Dat.</i>	eīsdem, isdem	eīsdem, isdem	eīsdem, isdem
<i>Acc.</i>	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
<i>Abl.</i>	eīsdem, isdem	eīsdem, isdem	eīsdem, isdem

INTENSIVE

597. ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *self*

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
<i>Gen.</i>	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
<i>Acc.</i>	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
<i>Abl.</i>	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

RELATIVE

598. *quī, quae, quod, who, which, that*

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

INTERROGATIVE

599. *quis, quid, who? what?*

	Singular		Plural		
	M. and F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quis</i>	<i>quid</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quem</i>	<i>quid</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

600. The interrogative adjective *quī, quae, quod, which, what*, is declined like the relative pronoun *quī, quae, quod* (see § 598). The indefinite pronoun *quisquam, quicquam, anyone*, is made by adding *-quam* to the singular forms of the interrogative *quis, quid*, the *d* of *quid* changing to *c*.

CONJUGATION OF VERBS

REGULAR VERBS

601. Principal parts in the four conjugations

I.	<i>portō</i>	<i>portāre</i>	<i>portāvī</i>	<i>portātus</i>
II.	<i>videō</i>	<i>vidēre</i>	<i>vīdī</i>	<i>vīsus</i>
III.	<i>mittō</i>	<i>mittere</i>	<i>mīsī</i>	<i>missus</i>
iō-III.	<i>capiō</i>	<i>capere</i>	<i>cēpī</i>	<i>captus</i>
IV.	<i>audiō</i>	<i>audīre</i>	<i>audīvī</i>	<i>audītus</i>

602.

Present Indicative

*Active**I carry, am carrying, do carry, etc.**I see, am seeing, do see, etc.**I send, am sending, do send, etc.*

portō

videō

mittō

portās

vidēs

mittis

portat

videt

mittit

portāmus

vidēmus

mittimus

portātis

vidētis

mittitis

portant

vident

mittunt

*I take, am taking, do take, etc.**I hear, am hearing, do hear, etc.*

capiō

audiō

capis

audīs

capit

audit

capimus

audīmus

capitis

audītis

capiunt

audiunt

*Passive**I am carried, am being carried, etc.**I am seen, am being seen, etc.**I am sent, am being sent, etc.*

portor

videor

mittor

portāris

vidēris

mitteris

portātur

vidētur

mittitur

portāmur

vidēmur

mittimur

portāmini

vidēmini

mittimini

portantur

videntur

mittuntur

I am taken, am being taken, etc.

I am heard, am being heard, etc.

capior
caperis
capitur

audior
audiris
audītur

capimur
capimini
capiuntur

audimur
audimini
audiuntur

603.

Imperfect Indicative

Active

I was carrying, used to carry, etc.

I was seeing, used to see, etc.

I was sending, used to send, etc.

portābam
portābās
portābat

vidēbam
vidēbās
vidēbat

mittēbam
mittēbās
mittēbat

portābāmus
portābātis
portābant

vidēbāmus
vidēbātis
vidēbant

mittēbāmus
mittēbātis
mittēbant

I was taking, used to take, etc.

I was hearing, used to hear, etc.

capīēbam
capīēbās
capīēbat

audiēbam
audiēbās
audiēbat

capīēbāmus
capīēbātis
capīēbant

audiēbāmus
audiēbātis
audiēbant

Passive

I was carried, used to be carried, etc. *I was seen, used to be seen, etc.* *I was sent, used to be sent, etc.*

portābar	vidēbar	mittēbar
portābāris	vidēbāris	mittēbāris
portābātur	vidēbātur	mittēbātur
portābāmur	vidēbāmur	mittēbāmur
portābāminī	vidēbāminī	mittēbāminī
portābantur	vidēbantur	mittēbantur

I was taken, used to be taken, etc. *I was heard, used to be heard, etc.*

capiēbar	audiēbar
capiēbāris	audiēbāris
capiēbātur	audiēbātur
capiēbāmur	audiēbāmur
capiēbāminī	audiēbāminī
capiēbantur	audiēbantur

604.

Future Indicative

Active

I shall carry, etc. *I shall see, etc.* *I shall send, etc.*

portābō	vidēbō	mittam
portābis	vidēbis	mittēs
portābit	vidēbit	mittet
portābimus	vidēbimus	mittēmus
portābitis	vidēbitis	mittētis
portābunt	vidēbunt	mittent

I shall take, etc.

I shall hear, etc.

capiam	capiēmus	audiam	audiēmus
capiēs	capiētis	audiēs	audiētis
capiet	capiēt	audiet	audient

*Passive**I shall be carried,
etc.*portābor
portāberis
portābiturportābimur
portābimini
portābuntur*I shall be seen,
etc.*vidēbor
vidēberis
vidēbiturvidēbimur
vidēbimini
vidēbuntur*I shall be sent,
etc.*mittar
mittēris
mittēturmittēmur
mittēmini
mittentur*I shall be taken, etc. I shall be heard, etc.*capiar
capiēris
capiēturcapiēmur
capiēmini
capiēnturaudiar
audiēris
audiēturaudiēmur
audiēmini
audientur

605.

Perfect Indicative*Active**I have carried,
carried, did carry,
etc.*portāvi
portāvisti
portāvitportāvimus
portāvistis
portāverunt*I have seen, saw,
did see, etc.*vidi
vidisti
viditvidimus
vidistis
vidērunt*I have sent, sent,
did send, etc.*misi
misisti
misitmisimus
misistis
misērunt

*I have taken, did take,
took, etc.*

**cēpi
cēpisti
cēpit**

**cēpimus
cēpistis
cēpērunt**

*I have heard, did hear,
heard, etc.*

**audivi
audivisti
audivit**

**audivimus
audivistis
audivērunt**

Passive

*I have been carried,
was carried, etc.*

**portātus sum
portātus es
portātus est**

**portātī sumus
portātī estis
portātī sunt**

*I have been seen,
was seen, etc.*

**vīsus sum
vīsus es
vīsus est**

**vīsi sumus
vīsi estis
vīsi sunt**

*I have been sent,
was sent, etc.*

**missus sum
missus es
missus est**

**missī sumus
missī estis
missī sunt**

*I have been taken,
was taken, etc.*

**captus sum
captus es
captus est**

**captī sumus
captī estis
captī sunt**

*I have been heard,
was heard, etc.*

**auditus sum
auditus es
auditus est**

**audītī sumus
audītī estis
audītī sunt**

606.

Pluperfect Indicative

*Active**I had carried, etc.*

portāveram

portāverās

portāverat

portāverāmus

portāverātis

portāverant

I had seen, etc.

videram

viderās

viderat

viderāmus

viderātis

viderant

I had sent, etc.

miseram

miserās

miserat

miserāmus

miserātis

miserant

I had taken, etc.

cēperam

cēperās

cēperat

cēperāmus

cēperātis

cēperant

I had heard, etc.

audīveram

audīverās

audīverat

audīverāmus

audīverātis

audīverant

*Passive**I had been carried,
etc.*

portātus eram

portātus erās

portātus erat

portātī erāmus

portātī erātis

portātī erant

*I had been seen,
etc.*

vīsus eram

vīsus erās

vīsus erat

vīsi erāmus

vīsi erātis

vīsi erant

*I had been sent,
etc.*

missus eram

missus erās

missus erat

missi erāmus

missi erātis

missi erant

*I had been taken,
etc.*

captus eram

captus erās

captus erat

*I had been heard,
etc.*

audītus eram

audītus erās

audītus erat

capti erāmus
capti erātis
capti erant

auditi erāmus
auditi erātis
auditi erant

607.

Future Perfect Indicative

Active

I shall have carried,
etc.

portāverō
portāveris
portāverit

portāverimus
portāveritis
portāverint

I shall have seen,
etc.

vīderō
vīderis
vīderit

vīderimus
vīderitis
vīderint

I shall have sent,
etc.

miserō
miseris
miserit

miserimus
miseritis
miserint

I shall have taken,
etc.

cēperō
cēperis
cēperit

cēperimus
cēperitis
cēperint

I shall have heard,
etc.

audīverō
audīveris
audīverit

audīverimus
audīveritis
audīverint

Passive

I shall have been
carried, etc.

portātus erō
portātus eris
portātus erit

portātī erimus
portātī eritis
portātī erunt

I shall have been
seen, etc.

vīsus erō
vīsus eris
vīsus erit

vīsī erimus
vīsī eritis
vīsī erunt

I shall have been
sent, etc.

missus erō
missus eris
missus erit

missī erimus
missī eritis
missī erunt

*I shall have been
taken, etc.*

captus erō

captus eris

captus erit

capti erimus

capti eritis

capti erunt

*I shall have been
heard, etc.*

auditus erō

auditus eris

auditus erit

auditi erimus

auditi eritis

auditi erunt

608.

Present Imperative

Active

carry

Sing. portā

Plur. portāte

see

vidē

vidēte

send

mitte

mittite

take

cape

capite

hear

audi

audite

Passive

be carried

Sing. portāre

Plur. portāmini

be seen

vidēre

vidēmini

be sent

mittere

mittimini

be taken

capere

capimini

be heard

audire

audimini

609.

Present Infinitive

Active

to carry

portāre

to see

vidēre

to send

mittere

to take

capere

to hear

audire

Passive

to be carried

portārī

to be seen

vidērī

to be sent

mittī

to be taken

capī

to be heard

audīrī

610.

Perfect Infinitive

Active

*to have
carried*

portāvisse

*to have
seen*

vidisse

*to have
sent*

mīsisse

*to have
taken*

cēpisse

*to have
heard*

audīvisse

Passive

<i>to have been carried</i>	<i>to have been seen</i>	<i>to have been sent</i>
portātus esse	visus esse	missus esse
<i>to have been taken</i>	<i>to have been heard</i>	
captus esse	auditus esse	

611.

Future Infinitive*Active*

<i>to be about to carry</i>	<i>to be about to see</i>	<i>to be about to send</i>
portātūrus esse	visūrus esse	missūrus esse
<i>to be about to take</i>	<i>to be about to hear</i>	
captūrus esse	audītūrus esse	

Passive

<i>to be about to be loved</i>	<i>to be about to be seen</i>	<i>to be about to be sent</i>
portātum iri	visum iri	missum iri
<i>to be about to be taken</i>	<i>to be about to be heard</i>	
captum iri	audītum iri	

612.

Present Participle*Active*

<i>carrying</i>	<i>seeing</i>	<i>sending</i>	<i>taking</i>	<i>hearing</i>
portāns	vidēns	mittēns	capiēns	audiēns

613.

Future Participle

Active

<i>about to carry</i>	<i>about to see</i>	<i>about to send</i>	<i>about to take</i>	<i>about to hear</i>
portātūrus	vīsūrus	missūrus	captūrus	audītūrus

614.

Perfect Participle

Passive

<i>having been carried</i>	<i>having been seen</i>	<i>having been sent</i>	<i>having been taken</i>	<i>having been heard</i>
portātus	vīsus	missus	captus	audītus

615.

Gerundive

<i>to be prepared</i>	<i>to be seen</i>	<i>to be sent</i>
portandus, -a, -um	videndus, -a, -um	mittendus, -a, -um
<i>to be taken</i>	<i>to be heard</i>	
capiendus, -a, -um	audiendus, -a, -um	

616.

Gerund

<i>preparing</i>	<i>seeing</i>	<i>sending</i>
Gen. portandī	videndī	mittendī
Dat. portandō	videndō	mittendō
Acc. portandum	videndum	mittendum
Abl. portandō	videndō	mittendō

<i>taking</i>	<i>hearing</i>
capiendī	audiendī
capiendō	audiendō
capiendum	audiendum
capiendō	audiendō

IRREGULAR VERBS

617. *sum, I am**possum, I am able, can*

Principal parts

*sum, esse, fui, futūrus**possum, posse, potui, —*

Indicative

Present

I am, etc.

<i>sum</i>	<i>sumus</i>
<i>es</i>	<i>estis</i>
<i>est</i>	<i>sunt</i>

I am able, can, etc.

<i>possum</i>	<i>possumus</i>
<i>potes</i>	<i>potestis</i>
<i>potest</i>	<i>possunt</i>

Imperfect

I was, etc.

<i>eram</i>	<i>erāmus</i>
<i>erās</i>	<i>erātis</i>
<i>erat</i>	<i>erant</i>

I was able, could, etc.

<i>poteram</i>	<i>poterāmus</i>
<i>poterās</i>	<i>poterātis</i>
<i>poterat</i>	<i>poterant</i>

Future

I shall be, etc.

<i>erō</i>	<i>erimus</i>
<i>eris</i>	<i>eritis</i>
<i>erit</i>	<i>erunt</i>

I shall be able, etc.

<i>poterō</i>	<i>poterimus</i>
<i>poteris</i>	<i>poteritis</i>
<i>poterit</i>	<i>poterunt</i>

Perfect

I have been, was, etc.

<i>fui</i>	<i>fuimus</i>
<i>fuisti</i>	<i>fuistis</i>
<i>fuit</i>	<i>fuērunt</i>

I have been able, was able, etc.

<i>potui</i>	<i>potuimus</i>
<i>potuisti</i>	<i>potuistis</i>
<i>potuit</i>	<i>potuērunt</i>

Pluperfect

I had been, etc.

<i>fueram</i>	<i>fuērāmus</i>
<i>fuērās</i>	<i>fuērātis</i>
<i>fuerat</i>	<i>fuērant</i>

I had been able, etc.

<i>potueram</i>	<i>potuerāmus</i>
<i>potuerās</i>	<i>potuerātis</i>
<i>potuerat</i>	<i>potuerant</i>

*Future Perfect**I shall have been, etc.*

fuerō	fuerimus
fueris	fueritis
fuerit	fuerint

I shall have been able, etc.

potuerō	potuerimus
potueris	potueritis
potuerit	potuerint

Imperative*Sing.*
es*Plur.*
este**Infinitive***Present*

esse

posse

Perfect

fuisse

potuisse

Future

futūrus esse

Participle*Present*

potēns

Future

futūrus

618.

ferō, *I bear***Principal parts**

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus

Indicative*Active*

ferō	ferimus
fers	fertis
fert	ferunt

Passive

feror	ferimur
ferris	ferimini
fertur	feruntur

	<i>Imperfect</i>	
ferēbam, etc.		ferēbar, etc.
	<i>Future</i>	
feram, ferēs, etc.		ferar, ferēris, etc.
	<i>Perfect</i>	
tulī		lātus sum
	<i>Pluperfect</i>	
tuleram		lātus eram
	<i>Future Perfect</i>	
tulerō		lātus erō
	<i>Imperative</i>	
Sing. fer		ferre
Plur. ferte		ferimini
	<i>Infinitive</i>	
	<i>Present</i>	
ferre		ferri
	<i>Perfect</i>	
tulisse		lātus esse
	<i>Future</i>	
lātūrus esse		lātum iri
	<i>Participles</i>	
	<i>Present</i>	—
ferēns		
	<i>Future</i>	—
lātūrus		
	<i>Perfect</i>	lātus
—		

619.

Gerundive
ferendus, -a, -um

620.

Gerund

Gen. ferendī Dat. ferendō Acc. ferendum Abl. ferendō

621. volō, *I wish*; nōlō, *I am unwilling*; mālō, *I prefer*

Principal parts

volō, velle, voluī, —
 nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —
 mālō, mālle, māluī, —

Indicative

Singular

<i>Pres.</i>	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult

Plural

volumus	nolumus	mālumus
vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
volunt	nōlunt	mālunt

<i>Impf.</i>	volēbam, etc.	nōlēbam	mālēbam
<i>Fut.</i>	volam, volēs, etc.	nōlam, nōlēs, etc.	mālam, mālēs, etc.
<i>Perf.</i>	voluī	nōluī	māluī
<i>Plup.</i>	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

Imperative

Present

<i>Sing.</i>	—	nōlī	—
<i>Plur.</i>	—	nōlite	—

Infinitive

<i>Pres.</i> velle	nōlle	mālle
<i>Perf.</i> voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

Participle

<i>Pres.</i> volēns	nōlēns	—
---------------------	--------	---

622.

eō, *I go*

Principal parts

eō, ire, ii (ivī), itūrus

Indicative

<i>Present</i>		<i>Imperfect</i>		<i>Future</i>	
eō	imus	ibam	ibāmus	ibō	ibimus
is	itis	ibās	ibātis	ibis	ibitis
it	eunt	ibat	ibant	ibit	ibunt

<i>Perfect</i>		<i>Pluperfect</i>		<i>Future Perfect</i>	
ii (ivī)	iimus	ieram	ierāmus	ierō	ierimus
istī	istis	ierās	ierātis	ieris	ieritis
iit	iērunt	ierat	ierant	ierit	ierint

Imperative

Sing. ī*Plur.* ite

Infinitive

<i>Pres.</i> ire	<i>Perf.</i> īsse	<i>Fut.</i> itūrus esse
------------------	-------------------	-------------------------

Participles

<i>Pres.</i> iēns (<i>gen.</i> euntis)	<i>Fut.</i> itūrus
---	--------------------

623.

Gerundive
eundum

624.

Gerund

<i>Gen.</i> eundī	<i>Dat.</i> eundō	<i>Acc.</i> eundum	<i>Abl.</i> eundō
-------------------	-------------------	--------------------	-------------------

fiō, I become, I am made

625.

Principal parts

fiō, fieri, factus sum

As a guide to the synopsis, *factus sum* is given as the third principal part of *fiō*. But see § 458.

Indicative

<i>Pres. fiō</i>	<i>(fimus)</i>	<i>Imp. fiēbam,</i>	<i>Fut. fiam, fiēs,</i>
<i>fis</i>	<i>(fitis)</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>
<i>fit</i>	<i>fiunt</i>		

<i>Perf. factus sum,</i>	<i>Plup. factus eram,</i>	<i>Fut. Perf. factus erō,</i>
<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>

Infinitive

<i>Pres. fieri</i>	<i>Perf. factus esse</i>	<i>Fut. factum iri</i>
--------------------	--------------------------	------------------------

Perfect Participle

factus

DEPONENT VERBS

cōnor, I attempt
patior, I allow

vereor, I fear
potior, I obtain

ūtor, I use

626.

Principal parts

- I. *cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum*
- II. *vereor, verērī, veritus sum*
- III. *ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum*
- io-III. *patior, patī, passus sum*
- IV. *potior, potīrī, potītus sum*

627.

Indicative

<i>Pres.</i> cōnor	vereor	ūtor	patior	potior
cōnāris	verēris	ūteris	pateris	potūris
cōnātur	verētur	ūtitur	patitur	potitur
cōnāmur	verēmur	ūtimur	patimur	potimur
cōnāminī	verēminī	ūtiminī	patiminī	potiminī
cōnantur	verentur	ūtuntur	patiuntur	potiuntur
<i>Imp.</i> cōnābar	verēbar	ūtēbar	patiēbar	potiēbar
<i>Fut.</i> cōnābor	verēbor	ūtār,	patiar,	potiar,
		ūtēris	patiēris	potiēris
<i>Perf.</i> cōnātus	veritus	ūsus	passus	potitus
sum	sum	sum	sum	sum
<i>Plup.</i> cōnātus	veritus	ūsus	passus	potitus
eram	eram	eram	eram	eram
<i>Fut.</i> cōnātus	veritus	ūsus	passus	potitus
<i>Perf.</i> erō	erō	erō	erō	erō

Imperative

<i>Sing.</i> cōnāre	verēre	ūtēre	patere	potire
<i>Plur.</i> cōnāminī	verēminī	ūtiminī	patiminī	potiminī

Infinitive

<i>Pres.</i> cōnārī	verērī	ūtī	patī	potirī
<i>Perf.</i> cōnātus	veritus	ūsus	passus	potitus
esse	esse	esse	esse	esse
<i>Fut.</i> cōnātūrus	veritūrus	ūsūrus	passūrus	potitūrus
esse	esse	esse	esse	esse

Participles

<i>Pres.</i> cōnāns	verēns	ūtēns	patiēns	potiēns
<i>Perf.</i> cōnātus	veritus	ūsus	passus	potitus
<i>Fut.</i> cōnātūrus	veritūrus	ūsūrus	passūrus	potitūrus

628.

Gerundive

cōnandus,	verendus,	ūtendus,	patiendus	potiendus,
-a, -um	-a, -um	-a, -um	-a, -um	-a, -um

629.

Gerund

<i>Gen.</i> cōnandī	verendī	ūtendī	patiendī	potiendī
<i>Dat.</i> cōnandō	verendō	ūtendō	patiendō	potiendō
<i>Acc.</i> cōnandum	verendum	ūtendum	patiendum	potiendum
<i>Abl.</i> cōnandō	verendō	ūtendō	patiendō	potiendō

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

REGULAR VERBS

630.

Present Subjunctive

Active

portem	videam	mittam	capiam	audiam
portēs	videās	mittās	capiās	audiās
portet	videat	mittat	capiat	audiat
portēmus	videāmus	mittāmus	capiāmus	audiāmus
portētis	videātis	mittātis	capiātis	audiātis
portent	videant	mittant	capiant	audiant

Passive

porter	videar	mittar	capiar	audiar
portēris	videāris	mittāris	capiāris	audiāris
portētur	videātur	mittātur	capiātur	audiātur
portēmur	videāmur	mittāmur	capiāmur	audiāmur
portēmini	videāmini	mittāmini	capiāmini	audiāmini
portentur	videantur	mittantur	capiantur	audiantur

631.

Imperfect Subjunctive

Active

portārem	vidērem	mitterem	caperem	audirem
portārēs	vidērēs	mitterēs	caperēs	audirēs
portāret	vidēret	mitteret	caperet	audiret
portārēmus	vidērēmus	mitterēmus	caperēmus	audirēmus
portārētis	vidērētis	mitterētis	caperētis	audirētis
portārent	vidērent	mitterent	caperent	audirent

Passive

portārer	vidērer	mitterer	caperer	audirer
portārēris	vidērēris	mitterēris	caperēris	audirēris
portārētur	vidērētur	mitterētur	caperētur	audirētur
portārēmur	vidērēmur	mitterēmur	caperēmur	audirēmur
portārēmini	vidērēmini	mitterēmini	caperēmini	audirēmini
portārentur	vidērentur	mitterentur	caperentur	audirentur

632.

Perfect Subjunctive

Active

portāverim	vīderim	mīserim	cēperim	audīverim
portāveris	vīderis	mīseris	cēperis	audīveris
portāverit	vīderit	mīserit	cēperit	audīverit
portāverimus	vīderimus	mīserimus	cēperimus	audīverimus
portāveritis	vīderitis	mīseritis	cēperitis	audīveritis
portāverint	vīderint	mīserint	cēperint	audīverint

Passive

portatus sim	vīsus sim	missus sim
portātus sis	vīsus sis	missus sis
portātus sit	vīsus sit	missus sit
portātī simus	vīsī simus	missī simus
portātī sitis	vīsī sitis	missī sitis
portātī sint	vīsī sint	missī sint

captus sim
captus sis
captus sit

auditus sim
auditus sis
auditus sit

capti simus
capti sitis
capti sint

auditi simus
auditi sitis
auditi sint

633.

Pluperfect Subjunctive

Active

portāvissem
portāvissēs
portāvisset

vīdissem
vīdissēs
vīdisset

mīsissem
mīsissēs
mīsisset

portāvissēmus
portāvissētis
portāvissent

vīdissēmus
vīdissētis
vīdissent

mīsissēmus
mīsissētis
mīsissent

cēpisse
cēpissēs
cēpisset

audīvissem
audīvissēs
audīvisset

cēpissēmus
cēpissētis
cēpissent

audīvissēmus
audīvissētis
audīvissent

Passive

portātus essem
portātus essēs
portātus esset

vīsus essem
vīsus essēs
vīsus esset

missus essem
missus essēs
missus esset

portāti essēmus
portāti essētis
portāti essent

vīsi essēmus
vīsi essētis
vīsi essent

missi essēmus
missi essētis
missi essent

captus essem	auditus essem
captus essēs	auditus essēs
captus esset	auditus esset

capti essēmus	auditi essēmus
capti essētis	auditi essētis
capti essent	auditi essent

IRREGULAR VERBS

634. **sum, I am****possum, I am able, can**

Subjunctive

Present

sim	sīmus	possim	possīmus
sis	sītis	possis	possītis
sit	sint	possit	possint

Imperfect

essem	essēmus	possem	possēmus
essēs	essētis	possēs	possētis
esset	essent	posset	possent

Perfect

fuerim	fuerīmus	potuerim	potuerīmus
fueris	fueritis	potueris	potueritis
fuerit	fuerint	potuerit	potuerint

Pluperfect

fuissem	fuissēmus	potuissem	potuissēmus
fuissēs	fuissētis	potuissēs	potuissētis
fuisset	fuissent	potuisset	potuissent

635. *volō, I wish**nōlō, I am unwilling**mālō, I prefer***Subjunctive***Present*

velim	velimus	nōlim	nōlimus	mālim	mālimus
velis	velitis	nōlis	nōlitis	mālis	mālitis
velit	velint	nōlit	nōlint	mālit	mālint

Imperfect

vellem	nōllem	māllem
---------------	---------------	---------------

Perfect

voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
-----------------	-----------------	-----------------

Pluperfect

voluisssem	nōluisssem	māluisssem
-------------------	-------------------	-------------------

636.

*ferō, I bear***Subjunctive***Present**Active***feram, ferās, etc.***Passive***ferar, ferāris, etc.***Imperfect*

ferrem, etc.	ferrer, etc.
---------------------	---------------------

Perfect

tulerim, etc.	lātus sim, etc.
----------------------	------------------------

Pluperfect

tulisssem, etc.	lātus essem, etc.
------------------------	--------------------------

637.

*eō, I go***Subjunctive***Present*

eam	eāmus
eās	eātis
eat	eant

Imperfect

irem	irēmus
irēs	irētis
iret	irent

	<i>Perfect</i>		<i>Pluperfect</i>
ierim	ierimus	issem	issēmus
ieris	ieritis	issēs	issētis
ierit	ierint	isset	issent

638.

fiō, I become

Subjunctive

Present
fiam, etc.

Imperfect
fierem, etc.

<i>Perfect</i> factus sim, etc. (see § 458)	<i>Pluperfect</i> factus essem, etc. (see § 458)
--	---

DEPONENT VERBS

639.

Subjunctive

		<i>Present</i>		
cōner	verear	ūtar	patiar	potiar
		<i>Imperfect</i>		
cōnārer	verērer	ūterer	paterer	potīrer
		<i>Perfect</i>		
cōnatus sim	veritus sim	ūsus sim	passus sim	potītus sim
		<i>Pluperfect</i>		
cōnātus essem	veritus essem	ūsus essem	passus essem	potītus essem

ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC

640.

Indicative

Present

portātūrus sum, *I am about to carry*
 vīsūrus sum, *I am about to see*
 missūrus sum, *I am about to send*
 captūrus sum, *I am about to take*
 audītūrus sum, *I am about to hear*

Imperfect

portātūrus eram, I was about to carry, etc.

Future

portātūrus erō, I shall be about to carry, etc.

Perfect

portātūrus fui, I have been about to carry, etc.

Pluperfect

portātūrus fueram, I had been about to carry, etc.

Future Perfect

portātūrus fuerō, I shall have been about to carry, etc.

641.

Subjunctive*Present*

portātūrus sim, etc.

Imperfect

portātūrus essem, etc.

Perfect

portātūrus fuerim, etc.

Pluperfect

portātūrus fuisset, etc.

642.

Infinitive*Present*

portātūrus esse

Perfect

portātūrus fuisse

PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC

643.

Indicative*Present*

portandus sum, I am to be carried, I must be carried

videndus sum, I am to be seen, I must be seen

mittendus sum, I am to be sent, I must be sent

capiendus sum, I am to be taken, I must be taken

audiendus sum, I am to be heard, I must be heard

Imperfect

portandus eram, I was to be carried, I had to be carried, etc.

Future

portandus erō, I shall have to be carried, etc.

Perfect

portandus fui, I was to be carried, I had to be carried, etc.

Pluperfect

portandus fueram, I had had to be carried, etc.

Future Perfect

portandus fuerō, I shall have had to be carried, etc.

644.

Subjunctive*Present*

portandus sim, etc.

Imperfect

portandus essem, etc.

Perfect

portandus fuerim, etc.

Pluperfect

portandus fuisset, etc.

645.

Infinitive

Pres. portandus esse, to have to be carried

Perf. portandus fuisse, to have had to be carried

SUMMARY OF SYNTAX

646.

AGREEMENT

A verb agrees with its subject in person and number. (§ 106)

An adjective agrees with the noun it modifies in gender, number, and case. (§ 151)

A possessive adjective agrees with the noun it modifies in gender, number, and case. (§ 297)

A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person, but its case depends upon its use in the clause in which it occurs. (§ 309)

A participle is a verbal adjective and agrees with the noun it modifies in gender, number, and case. (§ 344)

NOUN SYNTAX

647. Nominative

The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative. (§ 14)

A predicate noun or predicate adjective is in the same case as the subject of the verb which it follows (usually the nominative). (§ 14)

When verbs of *naming*, *making*, *choosing*, *showing*, and *calling* are used in the passive voice, the sentence contains two nominatives—one a subject nominative, and the other a predicate nominative. (§ 322)

648. Genitive

The genitive is usually equivalent, in English, to a prepositional phrase introduced by *of*. It often denotes possession. (§ 38)

Genitive of the whole

The genitive is used to express the whole of which a part is taken. (§ 298)

Objective genitive with adjectives

Adjectives meaning *desirous, full, mindful, skilled, and their opposites*, govern the genitive. (§ 299)

Genitive of description

A phrase consisting of a noun in the genitive with a modifying adjective may be used to describe another noun. (§ 333)

649. Dative*Indirect object*

The dative is used to express the indirect object of a transitive verb. (§ 46)

Dative with adjectives

The dative is used with many adjectives denoting *likeness, fitness, friendliness, nearness, and their opposites*. (§ 52)

Dative of purpose

The dative is used with forms of **sum** and with verbs of motion to express purpose or service, and is often accompanied by another dative showing the person affected or interested. (§ 428)

Dative of agent

The dative is used with the passive periphrastic to express agency. (§ 554)

Dative of indirect object with certain verbs

A number of Latin verbs, owing to their meanings, take the dative case, just as in English they take the preposition *to* and the objective case. The most important of these are: **cēdō**, *yield*; **crēdō**, *trust*; **imperō**, *give orders*; **noceō**,

do harm; **parcō**, *be lenient*; **pareō**, *be obedient*; **placeō**, *be pleasing*; **studeō**, *be eager*; **(per)suādeō**, *be convincing* (hence, *persuade*). (§ 505)

650. Accusative

Direct object

The direct object of a verb is in the accusative. (§ 24)

Place to which

Place to which is usually expressed by the preposition **ad** and the accusative; place into which by the preposition **in** and the accusative. (§ 70)

Place to which with names of cities

With the names of cities, towns, and small islands, and also with the nouns **domus**, *home*, and **rūs**, *country*, place to which is expressed by the accusative without a preposition. (§ 76)

Duration of time

The accusative is used without a preposition to express duration of time. (§ 272)

Extent of space

The accusative is used without a preposition to express extent of space. (§ 443)

Predicate accusative

Verbs of *naming*, *making*, *choosing*, *showing*, and *calling* may take two accusatives, a direct object and a predicate accusative. (§ 322)

Cause with propter

The preposition **propter** followed by the accusative may be used to express cause. (§ 375)

Subject accusative

The subject of an infinitive is in the accusative. (§§ 472, 477)

651. Ablative*Place in which*

Place in which is usually expressed by the ablative with the preposition **in**. (§ 59) (See **Locative**, § 653.)

Place from which

Place from which, or place away from which, is usually expressed by the ablative with the preposition **ā** (**ab**); place out of which by the ablative with the preposition **ex** (**ē**). (§ 60)

Place from which with names of cities

With names of cities, towns, and small islands, and also with the nouns **domus**, *home*, and **rūs**, *country*, place from which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. (§ 76)

Accompaniment

Accompaniment is usually expressed by the ablative with the preposition **cum**. (§ 61)

Agent

The ablative with the preposition **ā** (**ab**) is used with a passive verb to express personal agent. (§ 172)

Means

The ablative without a preposition is used to show the instrument or the means by which an act is performed. (§ 173)

Means, with deponent verbs

The ablative of means is used with **ūtor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **potior**, **vēscor**, and their compounds. (§ 488)

Time

The ablative, usually without a preposition, is used to show time when. (§ 224)

Manner

The ablative with **cum** is used to express the manner in which an act is performed. **Cum** need not be used when the noun has a modifier. (§ 233)

Cause

The ablative, generally without a preposition, is used to express cause or reason. (§ 321)

Comparison

The ablative without **quam** may be used to express comparison, if the first of the two words compared is in the nominative or accusative. (§ 374)

Degree of difference

The ablative is used to express the degree of difference between two objects compared. (§ 386)

Separation

The ablative, sometimes with, sometimes without, a preposition, is used to express separation. (§ 387)

Description or quality

A noun in the ablative, modified by an adjective, is used to describe another noun. (§ 416)

Specification

The ablative without a preposition is used to show in what respect a term is to be applied or a statement is true. (§ 429)

Ablative absolute

A noun or pronoun in the ablative, with a participle or adjective in agreement, or a noun in apposition, may be used to denote the time or circumstance of an action. (§ 489)

652. Vocative

The vocative is used in direct address. It usually stands after one or more words in the sentence. (§ 85)

653. Locative

With singular names of cities, towns, and small islands, and also with the nouns *domus*, *home*, and *rūs*, *country*, place in which is expressed by the locative. (§§ 75, 76)

VERB SYNTAX**I. Indicative, imperative, infinitive****654. Indicative**

The indicative is used for direct statements and questions. (§ 163)

Direct questions are introduced by interrogative pronouns, adjectives, adverbs, or by the particles *-ne*, *nōnne*, and *num*.

When a question that suggests the answer *yes* is asked, the question word *nōnne* is used to introduce the question. (§ 31)

When a question that suggests the answer *no* is asked, the question word *num* is used to introduce the question. (§ 32)

When a question is asked that does not show whether *yes* or *no* is expected as the answer, the enclitic *-ne* is attached to the emphatic word of the question, usually the verb, and this emphatic word is placed first in the sentence. (§ 30)

655. Imperative

The imperative mood is used to express a command. (§ 163)

656. Infinitive*Complementary infinitive*

The infinitive is used to complete the meaning of certain verbs. (§ 398)

Subjective and objective infinitive

The infinitive with or without subject accusative may be used as the subject or object of a verb. (§ 460)

Infinitive of indirect statement

The infinitive with subject accusative is used with verbs of saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving. (§ 477)

II. Subjunctive in dependent clauses**Sequence of tenses (§ 494)**

657. The word *sequence* comes from Latin *sequor* and means *following*. Certain tenses of the subjunctive in dependent clauses follow certain tenses of the indicative in main clauses. The same thing is true in English when we say, "I think he may be there," "I thought he might be there."

658. When the main verb refers to past time, the subjunctive in the subordinate clause is pluperfect if it refers to time before that of the main verb. Otherwise it is imperfect. Thus: *Scīvit ubi fuissēs, He knew where you had been; Scīvit ubi essēs, He knew where you were.* *Scīvit* refers to past time and must therefore be followed by the pluperfect or the imperfect subjunctive. *Fuissēs* refers to time prior to that of *scīvit*; in other words it refers to something that happened before the time of *scīvit*. *Essēs* does not refer to time prior to *scīvit*. (§ 523)

659. When the main verb does not refer to past time, the subjunctive in the subordinate clause is perfect if it refers to time prior to that of the main verb. Otherwise it is present. Thus: *Scit ubi fueris, He knows where you have been; Scit ubi sis, He knows where you are.* (§ 528)

Clauses of purpose (§ 499)

660. A clause expressing purpose is introduced by *ut* (negative *nē*) and has the verb in the subjunctive. Thus: *Rōmānī pugnābant ut Gallōs vincerent, The Romans used to fight in order to conquer the Gauls.* (Note that *pugnābant*

refers to past time and is therefore followed by the imperfect subjunctive.) **Rōmānī pugnānt ut Gallōs vincant**, *The Romans are fighting in order to conquer the Gauls*. (Note that **pugnānt** does not refer to past time and is therefore followed by the present subjunctive.) It is obviously impossible to have the pluperfect or perfect subjunctive in a purpose clause, since those tenses refer to time prior to that of the main verb, and the very nature of the idea of purpose is that an effort is being made to bring about something which has not yet happened.

Clauses of result (§ 513)

661. A clause expressing result is introduced by **ut** (negative **ut . . . nōn**) and has its verb in the subjunctive. Thus: **Rōmānī tam ācritēr pugnābant ut Gallōs vincerent**, *The Romans used to fight so fiercely that they used to conquer the Gauls*. Note that result is simply accomplished purpose. In the preceding paragraph the sentences expressed the idea of Romans fighting for a certain purpose. Here we find that their purpose has been accomplished, according to the idea set forth in the example just given. Similarly, we might write: **Rōmānī tam ācritēr pugnānt ut Gallōs vincant**, *The Romans are fighting so fiercely that they are conquering the Gauls*. Words such as **tam**, *so*, **ita**, *in such a way*, **sic**, *thus*, *so*, **tantus**, *so great*, are usually found in the main clause upon which a result clause depends. Such words plainly point out that a result clause is to follow.

Substantive clauses

662. Substantive clauses (sometimes called *noun clauses*) are used in some noun constructions; *i.e.*, as subject or object of a verb. The most common types are as follows:

663. 1. Clauses used as the object of **persuādeō**, **imperō**, **moneō**, **petō**, **postulō**, **rogō**, **hortor**. For example: **Tibi**

imperō ut Rōmam currās, I give you instructions to run to Rome; Caesarem hortābar nē captivum interficeret, I urged Caesar not to kill the captive. (§ 504)

664. 2. Indirect questions, used with any expression upon which a question may depend. Thus: **Ab explorātōribus quaesivit ubi hostēs essent, He inquired of the scouts where the enemy were. (§ 527. Compare the examples under Sequence of tenses, § 658.)**

665. 3. As the object of a verb of fearing. Thus: **Timeō nē Caesar interficiātur, I am afraid that Caesar may be killed; Verēbātur ut milītēs pugnārent (or, verēbātur nē milītēs nōn pugnārent), He was afraid that the soldiers might not fight. Note also the different use of the words ut and nē which introduce these clauses. (§ 514, Note)**

666. 4. As the subject or object of **accidit, fit, faciō, efficiō, accēdit**, and some other verbs which mean *happen, bring about, accomplish*. Thus: **Effēcit ut oppidum caperētur, He brought it about that the town was captured; Accidit ut nēmō pugnet, It happens that no one is fighting. (§ 511)**

667. Cum clauses

Clauses introduced by **cum**, *when, since, although*, are divided into three classes according to the use of **cum**. (§ 537)

668. 1. Cum temporal

If **cum** means *when*, it introduces a clause which refers to time, and is therefore called **cum temporal** and the clause is called a temporal clause. **Cum temporal** takes the indicative mood in the present or future tense but in the past tenses it usually describes the circumstances under which an act took place, and when so used it is followed by the subjunctive. Thus: **Cum Caesar in Galliam veniret, Galli coniūratiōnem fecerunt, When Caesar came into Gaul,**

the Gauls made a league. The **cum** clause describes the circumstances under which the Gauls formed a league. Such a clause is usually described, therefore, as a **cum** circumstantial clause, or a **cum** clause of situation. (§ 532)

669. 2. *Cum* causal

If **cum** means *since*, it takes the subjunctive. The tense is in accord with the usual sequence of tenses. Clauses introduced by **cum** meaning *since* are called **cum** causal clauses. (§ 532)

670. 3. *Cum* concessive or adversative

If **cum** means *although*, it takes the subjunctive. The tense is in accord with the usual sequence of tenses. Clauses introduced by **cum** meaning *although* are called **cum** adversative clauses. (§ 532)

III. Gerund and Gerundive.

671. Gerund

A gerund expresses the action of a verb but has the form of a noun. It has only four cases, the genitive, dative, accusative, ablative. The accusative of the gerund is used with **ad** to express purpose. Purpose may also be expressed by the genitive of the gerund with **causā**. (§§ 541, 551)

672. Gerundive

The gerundive is a verbal adjective and agrees with the noun it modifies in gender, number, and case.

The gerundive is used to express purpose in phrases consisting of **ad** and the accusative and in phrases consisting of the genitive with **causā**. (§§ 542, 543, 551)

IDIOMS AND PHRASES

- ab equō pugnāre**, *to fight on horseback*, 23
affici magnō dolōre, *to be greatly annoyed*, 43
agmen claudere, *to bring up the rear*, 42
aliū in aliam partem, *some in one direction, others in another;*
some one way, others another, 36
aliter sē habēre, *to be arranged differently*, 42
augurium capere (or **augurium agere**), *to take the augury,*
consult the omens, 33
bellum inferre, *to make war (upon)*, 43: generally with the dat.
bonō animō, *well disposed (toward)*, 47: with in and the acc.
castra mūnīre, *to build a camp*, 42
castra pōnere, *to pitch camp*, 18
causam dīcere, *to plead a case*, 47
certiōrem facere, *to inform*, 48
cōsiliū capere, *to form a plan*, 35
dē vitā dēcēdere, *to die*, 44
diū atque ācritēr pugnātum est, *they fought long and also*
fiercely, 36
extrēmus pōns, *the end of the bridge*, 38 (see § 239)
grātiās agere, *to thank*, 31: with the dative of person thanked
impetum facere, *to make a charge or attack*, 41
in custōdiam trādere, *to put under arrest*, 32
īnīmus mōns, *the bottom of the mountain*, 38 (see § 382)
in mātīmōnium dūcere, *to marry*, 30
in mediō colle, *halfway up the hill*, 42 (see § 239)
inter sē dare, *to exchange*, 42
inter sē differre, *to differ from one another*, 43
īsdem verbis reddere, *to repeat*, 43
iter facere, *to march*, 26

- magnitūdō corporis**, *stature*, 25
magnum iter, *a forced march*, 42
maior nātū, *older, or the elder*, 32
mediā nocte, *at midnight*, 33
memoriā tenēre, *to remember*, 36
nātūra locī, *natural features, topography*, 44
nāvis longa, *warship*, 27
nihilō minus, *none the less, nevertheless*, 45
novissimum agmen, *rear, rear guard*, 42
operam dare, *to pay attention, take pains*, 43
ōratiōnem habēre, *to make a speech*, 44
orbis terrārum, *the world*, 41
paulō post, *a little later*, 32
pedibus pugnāre, *to fight afoot*, 23
plūrimum posse, *to have great influence, be very powerful*, 45
primā lūce, *at daybreak*, 33
primum agmen, *van, advance guard*, 42
proelium committere, *to begin (join) battle*, 22
prō multitūdine hominum, *in proportion to the population*, 43
quā dē causā, *for what reason? (interrogative); for which reason (relative)*, 37
rēs militāris, *warfare, military science*, 42
sē ēripere, *to escape*, 47
sē recipere, *to retreat*, 42
sē vertere, *to face about*, 42
sibi mortem cōnsciscere, *to commit suicide*, 44
sine dubiō, *doubtless*, 44
sine morā, *without delay*, 37
suī oblītus, *self-sacrificing, forgetful of self*, 31 (note)
summus mōns, *the top of the mountain*, 33. (See §§ 239, 382.)
suppliciō afficere, *to punish*, 44
terrā marique, *on land and sea, by land and sea*, 27
ūnā cum, *along with, together with*, 45
ūnā ex parte, *on one side*, 43

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY¹

Numbers refer to chapters, except in a few cases in which a page or paragraph number is specified.

A

- ***ā** (ab), *prep. with abl.*, from, away from, 7; by, 18
abacus, -ī, *m.*, reckoning board, abacus, 36
abdūcō, -ere, **abdūxī**, **abductus**, lead away, carry off, 50
absum, **abesse**, **āfui**, **āfutūrus**, be distant, be absent, 27
Acca, -ae, *f.*, Acca, the wife of Faustulus, 32
acceptus, -a, -um, pleasing, acceptable, 25
***accidō**, -ere, **accidī**, —, fall upon; happen, occur, 47
***accipiō**, -ere, **accēpi**, **acceptus**, receive, accept, take, 22
accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, accuse, reproach, 30
***acer**, **ācris**, **ācre**, spirited, keen, fierce, 34
Achillēs, **Achillis**, *m.*, Achilles, a Greek hero, 18
***aciēs**, **aciēi**, *f.*, line of battle, 42
ācriter, *adv.*, fiercely, eagerly, bitterly, 36
***ad**, *prep. with acc.*, to, toward, 8
addō, -ere, **addidī**, **additus**, **add**, 36

- †addūcō**, -ere, **addūxī**, **adductus**, lead to, move, influence, 33
†adeō, -ire, **adii**, **aditūrus**, come near, approach, visit, 43
adiuvō, -āre, **adiūvī**, **adiūtus**, aid, help, assist, 29
admoneō, -ēre, **admonui**, **admonitus**, advise, admonish, 29
adōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, worship, 14
***adsum**, **adesse**, **adfui**, **adfutūrus**, be present, 33
***adulēscēns**, **adulēscētis**, *m.*, youth, young man, 28
adultus, -a, -um, grown up, full-grown, 12
†adventus, **adventūs**, *m.*, arrival, approach, 45
adytum, -ī, *n.*, the shrine, or inmost and holiest part of a temple, § 3
***aedificium**, **aedifici**, *n.*, building, 21
aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, build, 17
***aeger**, **aegra**, **aegrum**, sick, ill, 17
Aenēās, **Aenēae** (reg. except in nom.), *m.*, Aeneas, a prince of Troy, 28
aēneus, -a, -um, made of brass, copper, or bronze, 49

¹ Words included in the College Entrance Examination Board's *Latin Word List* for the first and second years are marked with an asterisk [*]. The Board's *List*, however, omits many common simple words and compounds admittedly necessary to the beginner, because their meanings are supposedly obvious or easily inferred. Such words are marked here with a dagger [†].

- **aequus*, -a, -um, level, even, equal, 33
- **aestās*, *aestātis*, *f.*, summer, 24
- aeternus*, -a, -um, eternal, p. 5
- afferō*, -*ferre*, *attulī*, *allātus*, bring to, convey, 43
- afficiō*, -*ere*, *affēcī*, *affectus*, afflict, trouble, weaken, 43
- Āfrica*, -*ae*, *f.*, Africa, 8
- **ager*, *agri*, *m.*, field, 13
- †*aggredior*, *aggredi*, *agressus sum*, approach, attack, 50
- **agmen*, *agminis*, *n.*, line of march, column, 42; *novissimum agmen*, the rear; *primum agmen*, the van
- **agō*, -*ere*, *ēgī*, *actus*, do, drive, 17; *triumphum agere*, to hold a triumph, 23
- agricola*, -*ae*, *m.*, farmer, 3
- agricultūra*, -*ae*, *f.*, agriculture, 3
- āla*, -*ae*, *f.*, wing, 39
- Alba Longa*, *Albae Longae*, *f.*, Alba Longa, a town of Latium, founded by Ascanius, 30
- Albānī*, -*ōrum*, *m. pl.*, the Albans, the people of Alba Longa, 32
- albus*, -a, -um, white, 4
- **aliēnus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, foreign, strange, 30; *as a noun*, *aliēnus*, -*i*, *m.*, a stranger
- **aliter*, *adv.*, otherwise, differently, 42
- **alius*, *alia*, *aliud*, another, 36
- Allobrogēs*, *Allobrogum*, *m. pl.*, the Allobroges, a Gallic tribe living near Lake Geneva, 47
- Alpēs*, -*ium*, *f. pl.*, the Alps, 45
- **alter*, *altera*, *alterum*, the other (of two); the second (of a group), 36
- **altus*, -a, -um, high, tall, deep, 13
- ambō*, *ambae*, *ambō* (see § 579), both, 36
- ambulō*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātus*, walk, 4
- Americānus*, -a, -um, American, 1
- amethystus*, -*i*, *f.*, an amethyst, 6
- amica*, -*ae*, *f.*, friend, 11
- †*amicitia*, -*ae*, *f.*, friendship, 44
- **amicus*, -*i*, *m.*, friend, 13
- **amicus*, -a, -um, friendly, 6
- **āmittō*, -*ere*, *āmisī*, *āmissus*, lose; send away, 28
- amō*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātus*, love, like, 2
- amor*, *amōris*, *m.*, love, 33
- amphitheatrum*, -*i*, *n.*, amphitheater, an oval building used for public spectacles, 21
- amphora*, -*ae*, *f.*, jar, 5
- **amplus*, -a, -um, spacious, roomy, 8
- Amūlius*, *Amūli*, *m.*, Amulius, brother of Numitor, 32
- Anchisēs*, -*ae* (reg. except in nom.), *m.*, Anchises, father of Aeneas, 28
- ancilla*, -*ae*, *f.*, maidservant, maid, 3
- **angustiae*, -*arum*, *f. pl.*, narrowness; defile, a pass, 45
- **angustus*, -a, -um, narrow, 21
- **animadvertō*, -*ere*, -*verti*, -*versus*, turn the mind to, notice, 48
- animal*, *animālis*, *animālium*, *n.*, animal, 34
- **animus*, -*i*, *m.*, mind, feeling, 36
- Anna*, -*ae*, *f.*, Anna, 6
- **annus*, -*i*, *m.*, year, 29
- **ante*, *prep. with acc.*, before, in front of, 26
- **antiquus*, -a, -um, old, ancient, 2
- **aperiō*, -*ire*, *aperuī*, *apertus*, open, 17

- †apertus, -a, -um, open, 1
 *appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, call by name, address, entitle, call, 27
 *appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, approach, draw near (*with dat., or ad and acc.*), 41
 *apud, *prep. with acc.*, among, 18
 *aqua, -ae, *f.*, water, 3
 Aquitānī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Aquitanians, a tribe living in southern Gaul, 43
 āra, -ae, *f.*, altar, 14
 Arar, Araris, *m.*, the Arar, a river of Gaul, now the *Saône*, 50
 arātrum, -ī, *n.*, a plow, 9
 *arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, think, suppose, consider, 45
 *arbor, arboris, *f.*, tree, 32
 arca, -ae, *f.*, chest, box, 32
 arceō, -ēre, arcuī, —, keep at a distance, keep away, 29
 arcus, arcūs, *m.*, arch, 50
 arēna, -ae, *f.*, arena; sand, 21
 argenteus, -a, -um, made of silver, 6
 *arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, arms, armor, weapons, 14
 armātūra, -ae, *f.*, armor, equipment, 41
 †armātus, -a, -um, armed, 12
 armilla, -ae, *f.*, bracelet, armlet, 36
 ars, artis, artium, *f.*, art, skill, trick; device, 39
 Ascanius, Ascanī, *m.*, Ascanius, the son of Aeneas and Creusa, and founder of Alba Longa, 28
 †ascendō, -ere, ascendī, ascēsus, climb, ascend, 17
 Asia, -ae, *f.*, Asia, 8
 asyllum, -ī, *n.*, refuge, 34
 *at, *conj.*, but, but on the other hand, 49
 Athēnae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, Athens, a city of Greece, 9
 *atque, *ac, conj.*, and, 48
 *auctōritās, auctōritātis, *f.*, power, influence, authority, 23
 audācia, -ae, *f.*, boldness, 37
 audācter, *adv.*, boldly, 40
 *audāx, *gen. audācis*, daring, bold, 34
 *audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, dare, 49
 *audiō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, hear, listen to, heed, 17
 *augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus, increase, 27
 augurium, augurī, *n.*, augury, omen, 33
 Augustus, -ī, *m.*, Augustus, a title given to Octavius Caesar when he was emperor, and approximately equivalent to "his majesty" or the like, 24
 Aulus, -ī, *m.*, Aulus, a Roman name, 12
 aureus, -a, -um, golden, 35
 auriga, -ae, *m.*, charioteer, driver, 20
 aurum, -ī, *n.*, gold, 14
 *aut, *conj.*, or; aut . . . aut, either . . . or, 25
 *autem, *conj. (postpositive)*, however, but, furthermore, 28
 *auxilium, auxiliī, *n.*, aid, help; *pl.*, reinforcements, auxiliary troops, 14
 Aventinus, -ī, *m.*, the Aventine, one of the seven hills of Rome, 33
 avis, avis, avium, *f.*, bird, 33
 avus, -ī, *m.*, grandfather, 32
 Axona, -ae, *m.*, a river of Belgic Gaul, now the *Aisne*, 42

B

- ***barbarus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, uncivilized, barbarous, 22; *as a noun*, barbarus, -ī, *m.*, a barbarian
Belgae, -ārum, *m. pl.*, the Belgians, a warlike tribe of northern Gaul, 43
bellicōsus, -a, -um, warlike, 43
***bellum**, -ī, *n.*, war, 14; **bellum gerere**, to wage war, 17; **bellum inferre** (*with dat.*), to make war (upon), 43
***bene**, *adv.*, well, fine, 20
***beneficium**, **benefici**, *n.*, kindness, favor, benefit, 40
benignē, *adv.*, kindly, 29
benignus, -a, -um, kind, 4
bigae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, span of two horses, chariot with team, 20
***bonus**, -a, -um, good, 1
***brevis**, **breve**, short, brief, 34
Britannia, -ae, *f.*, Britain, Great Britain, 14
Britannus, -a, -um, *adj.*, British; *as a noun*, **Britannus**, -ī, *m.*, a Briton, 14

C

- C.**, abbr. for **Gāius** (see § 403)
***cadō**, -ere, **cecidī**, **cāsūrus**, fall; fall down, 30
***caedēs**, **caedis**, **caedium**, *f.*, slaughter, massacre, 27
***caedō**, -ere, **cecidī**, **caesus**, cut down, slay, 36
caelum, -ī, *n.*, sky, 33
Caesar, **Caesaris**, *m.*, Caesar, a general and statesman, 24
calceus, -ī, *m.*, shoe, 49
callidus, -a, -um, shrewd, skilful, 39

- Camilla**, -ae, *f.*, Camilla, a Roman name, 5
***capiō**, -ere, **cēpī**, **captus**, take, seize, 22; **cōnsilium capere**, to form a plan, 35
Capitōlium, **Capitōli**, *n.*, the Capitoline hill, one of the seven hills of Rome, 35
***captivus**, -a, -um, captive, 18
***caput**, **capitis**, *n.*, head; capital, 26
carrus, -ī, *m.*, cart, wagon, 46
cārus, -a, -um, dear, 6
casa, -ae, *f.*, cottage, hut, 3
***castellum**, -ī, *n.*, fortress, 49
Casticus, -ī, *m.*, Casticus, a chief of the Sequanians, 44
castigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, punish, reprove, beat, 13
***castra**, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, camp, 14
***causa**, -ae, *f.*, cause, reason, 19
***cēdō**, -ere, **cessī**, **cessūrus**, go away, depart, yield; grant, concede, 49
celebrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, celebrate; throng, 20
***celer**, **celeris**, **celere**, quick, swift, 34
†celeritās, **celeritātis**, *f.*, quickness, speed, 25
celeriter, *adv.*, swiftly, quickly, 14
cēna, -ae, *f.*, dinner, 7
***centuriō**, **centuriōnis**, *m.*, centurion (an officer in the Roman army), 41
cēra, -ae, *f.*, wax, 39
***cernō**, -ere, **crēvi**, **crētus**, detect, distinguish, 25
certāmen, **certāminis**, *n.*, contest, strife, race, 25
certē, *adv.*, certainly, surely, 3
***certus**, -a, -um, certain, sure, 48

- **cēteri*, -ae, -a, *pl.*, the rest of, the other(s), 38
Cicero, *Cicerōnis*, *m.*, Cicero, a famous Roman orator and writer, § 5
 **circiter*, *adv.*, about, 42
circulus, -ī, *m.*, a circle, circular figure, 36
 **circum*, *prep. with acc.*, around, 13
 **circumdō*, -āre, *circumdedī*, *circumdat*, encircle, surround, 40
circumstō, -āre, *circumstetī*, —, surround, encircle, 15
circumveniō, -īre, *circumvēnī*, *circumventūrus*, surround, encircle, 42
circus, -ī, *m.*, circus, 20
Circus Maximus, *Circi Maximī*, the Circus Maximus at Rome, a race course, situated between the Palatine and Aventine hills, 20
 **cīvis*, *cīvis*, *cīvium*, *m.* or *f.*, citizen, 27
 **cīvitās*, *cīvitātis*, *f.*, state, 24
 **clam*, *adv.*, secretly, 35
 **clāmō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, call out, shout, exclaim, 12
 †*clāmōr*, *clāmōris*, *m.*, shout, cry, 24
clārus, -a, -um, bright, famous, renowned, 7
 **classis*, *classis*, *classium*, *f.*, fleet; class, 27
Claudia, -ae, *f.*, Claudia, a Roman name, 5
Claudius, *Claudī*, *m.*, Claudius, a Roman name, 36
 **claudō*, -ere, *clausī*, *clausus*, close, 42; *agmen claudere*, to bring up the rear, 42
 †*clausus*, -a, -um, closed, 1
coclear, *cocleāris*, *cocleārium*, *n.*, spoon, 7
 **coepī*, *coepisse*, *coeptus*, began, 49
 **cōgitō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, consider, weigh, think, 35
cognōmen, *cognōminis*, *n.*, surname, 40
 **cognōscō*, -ere, *cognōvī*, *cognitus*, learn about, understand, 29
 **cōgō*, -ere, *coēgī*, *coāctus*, collect; compel, 17
 **cohors*, *cohortis*, *cohortium*, *f.*, cohort, a tenth part of a legion, 42
cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, encourage, exhort, 41
 **collis*, *collis*, *collium*, *m.*, hill, 42
Colossēum, -ī, *n.*, the Colosseum, a famous amphitheater, 21
color, *colōris*, *m.*, color, 25
columna, -ae, *f.*, column, pillar, 3
comes, *comitis*, *m.*, companion, comrade, 38
commentārii, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, records, commentaries, 43
 **committō*, -ere, -misi, -missus, join, begin, 22; *proelium committere*, begin battle, 22
commoveō, -ēre, *commōvī*, *commōtus*, stir up, move deeply, alarm, 38
communiō, -īre, -īvi or -īi, -ītus, fortify, 49
 **commūnis*, *commūne*, common, general, joint, 34
 †*comparō*, -āre, *comparāvī*, *comparātus*, make ready, prepare; procure, 29
 †*compleō*, -ēre, *complēvī*, *complētus*, fill, cover, 25

- **complūrēs, complūra or complūria*, *pl.*, several, quite a number, many, 42
conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, secure, win, 44
 **concilium, concilī, n.*, council, assembly, 45
condō, -ere, condidī, conditus, found, establish, 30
 †*cōnferō, -ferre, contulī, conlātus*, collect, gather, 43
 **cōnficiō, -ere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus*, accomplish, finish, perform, 46
 **cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus*, strengthen, declare, 36
 †*coniungō, -ere, coniūnxī, coniūnc-tus*, join, unite, 48
coniūnx, coniugis, m. or f., husband or wife, 30
coniūrātiō, coniūrātiōnis, f., league, conspiracy, 44
 **conlocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus*, place, 13
 †*conloquor, conloquī, conlocūtus* sum, talk, converse, confer, 48
 **cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum*, attempt, try, 45
cōnsciscō, -ere, cōnscivī, cōnscī-tus, decree, determine, 44;
sibi mortem cōnsciscere, to commit suicide, 44
 **cōnscribō, -ere, cōnscriptī, cōn-scriptus*, enroll, enlist, 42
 †*cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus*, keep safe, preserve, 50
 **cōnsidō, -ere, cōnsēdī, cōnsessū-rus*, take a seat, encamp, 50
 **cōnsilium, cōnsilī, n.*, plan, purpose, 19
 **cōnsistō, -ere, cōnstitī, —*, stand, take a position, 41
 **cōnspiciō, -ere, cōnspexi, cōn-spectus*, perceive, observe, 48
 **cōnstituō, -ere, cōnstitui, cōnsti-tūtus*, establish, station, decide, 29
 **cōnsul, cōnsulis, m.*, consul, 24
 **cōnsūmō, -ere, cōnsūmpsī, cōn-sūptus*, consume, destroy, 40
 **contendō, -ere, contendī, con-tentus*, hasten, fight, 37
 **contineō, -ēre, continui, contentus*, hold fast, hem in, 32
 **contrā, prep. with acc.*, against, opposite to, 49
 †*conveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ven-tūrus*, come together, assemble, gather, 34
convivium, convivi, n., feast, banquet, 40
convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, summon, assemble, 45
 **cōpia, -ae, f.*, abundance, plenty; *in pl.*, troops, forces, 14
corbula, -ae, f., little basket, 4
Cornēlia, -ae, f., Cornelia, a Roman name, 1
Cornēliānus, -a, -um, of or be-longing to Cornelius, Corne-lian, 3
Cornēlius, Cornēli, m., Cornelius, a Roman name, 12
 **cornū, cornūs, n.*, horn; wing (of an army), 41
corōna, -ae, f., garland, wreath, 4
 **corpus, corporis, n.*, body, 25
 **cotidiē, adv.*, daily, 6
crās, adv., tomorrow, 20
 **crēber, crēbra, crēbrum*, dense, frequent, 32
 **crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditus*, believe (*with dat.*), 44

- Crēta, -ae, *f.*, Crete, an island in the Mediterranean Sea, 6
 Crētēnsis, Crētēnse, Cretan, 39
 Creūsa, -ae, *f.*, Creusa, Trojan wife of Aeneas, 28
 crūdēlis, crūdēle, cruel, severe, 37
 *cum, *prep. with abl.*, with, 7; *conj.*, when, since, although, 49
 cūnctus, -a, -um, the whole, all, 38
 cupiditās, cupiditātis, *f.*, longing, desire, 35
 *cupidus, -a, -um, desirous, eager, 31
 *cupiō, -ere, cupivī, cupītus, desire, be eager, long for, 33
 *cūr, *adv.*, why? 2
 *cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, care for, 5
 *currō, -ere, cucurri, cursūrus, run, 21
 currus, currūs, *m.*, chariot, 38
 custōdia, -ae, *f.*, custody, guard, 32; in custōdiam trādere, to put under arrest
 custōdiō, -ire, -ivī, -ītus, guard, watch, protect, 19
 *custōs, custōdis, *m.*, guard, defender, 39

D

- Daedalus, -ī, *m.*, Daedalus, an Athenian architect who was exiled to Crete, 39
 damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, condemn, convict, 39
 *dē, *prep. with abl.*, about, concerning; from, down from, 11
 dea, -ae, *f.*, goddess, 4
 *dēbeō, -ēre, dēbui, dēbitus, owe, ought, 39
 dēcēdō, -ere, dēcēssī, dēcēssūrus, go away, withdraw, 44
 *decem, *indecl. numeral*, ten, 36
 *decimus, -a, -um, tenth, 24, 36
 dēcurrō, -ere, dēcucurri or dēcurre, dēcursūrus, run down, run, 38
 *dēfendō, -ere, dēfendi, dēfēnsus, defend, guard, 38
 *dēferō, -ferre, dētuli, dēlātus, carry down; report, 44
 *dēfessus, -a, -um, tired, exhausted, 7
 dēiciō, -ere, dēiēcī, dēiectus, throw down, 22
 *deinde, *adv.*, then, afterwards, thereupon, 32
 dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, please, delight, charm, 2
 *dēleō, -ēre, dēlēvī, dēlētus, destroy, 28
 *dēligō, -ere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus, choose, elect, 24
 *dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, point out, show, 5
 dēmum, *adv.*, at length, at last, 39
 dēpōnō, -ere, dēposui, dēpositus, put aside, lay down, 43
 *dēsiderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, desire, long for, want, 5
 dēsignō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, mark out, designate, 33
 dēsiliō, dēsilire, dēsilui, dēsultus, leap down, 38
 *deus, -ī, *m.* (see § 566), god, 13
 dēvoveō, -ēre, dēvōvī, dēvōtus, devote, vow, sacrifice, 31
 *dexter, dextra, dextrum, right, right hand, 23
 Diāna, -ae, *f.*, Diana, goddess of the moon, 5
 *dicō, -ere, dixi, dictus, say, tell, express, 21
 Didō, Didōnis, *f.*, Dido, a queen who founded Carthage, 29

- *diēs, diēi, *m.* or *f.*, day, 42
- *differō, -ferre, distulī, dilātus, carry away; differ, be different, 43
- *difficilis, difficile, difficult, hard, 34
- *difficultās, difficultātis, *f.*, difficulty, trouble, 44
- digitus, -i, *m.*, finger, 36
- *diligēns, *gen.*, diligentis, careful, diligent, 36
- diligenter, *adv.*, diligently, carefully, 11
- diligentia, -ae, *f.*, diligence, care, 31
- †dimittō, -ere, dimisī, dimissus, send forth, dismiss, 50
- †discēdō, -ere, discessī, discessurus, withdraw, go away, depart, 40
- discipulus, -i, *m.*, pupil, 12; discipula, -ae, *f.*, 1
- discordia, -ae, *f.*, discord, quarrel, 19
- dissentiō, -ire, dissēnsī, dissēnsus, disagree, differ, 33
- *diū, *adv.*, for a long time, 18
- diūtius, *adv.*, longer, 32
- *diversus, -a, -um, different, diverse, 29
- *dividō, -ere, divisī, divisus, divide, separate, 26
- *dō, dare, dedī, datus, give, bestow, 5
- *doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctus, teach, 11
- †dolor, doloris, *m.*, grief, sorrow, 34
- domicilium, domicilī, *n.*, dwelling, home, 14
- dominus, -i, *m.*, master, 12; domina, -ae, *f.*, mistress, 3
- *domus, domūs, *f.* (see § 567), house, 41; domī, at home, 9; domum, home(ward), 9; domō, from home, 9
- dōnum, -i, *n.*, gift, offering, 17
- *dubitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, doubt, hesitate, 49
- dubius, -a, -um, doubtful, uncertain, 44
- *dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductus, lead, guide, 17
- ductus, ductūs, *m.*, a leading, 47; aquae ductus, aqueduct
- Dumnorix, Dumnorigis, *m.*, Dumnorix, a Haeduan chief, 44
- *duo, duae, duo (see § 579), two, 36
- duodecim, *indecl. numeral*, twelve, 33
- duodēviginti, *indecl. numeral*, eighteen, 36
- duplex, duplicis, double, two-fold; deceitful, § 6
- *dux, ducis, *m.*, leader, 23

E

*ē, see ex

†ēducō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, rear, train, educate, 34

ēducō, -ere, ēdūxi, ēductus, lead out, 42

*efficiō, -ere, effēcī, effectus, bring about, cause, effect, 47

effugiō, -ere, effūgī, —, escape, 39

*ego, mei, *personal pron.*, I, 11; *pl.*, we, 31

†ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgressus sum, go out, march out, 48

*emō, -ere, ēmi, emptus, buy, 46

*enim, *conj.*, for, 50

- enūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, assert,**
 disclose, 47
***eō, ire, ii or ivi, itūrus, go, 43**
***eques, equitis, m., horseman; pl.,**
 cavalry, 23
***equitātus, equitātūs, m., cavalry, 41**
***equus, -i, m., horse, 12**
†ēripiō, -ere, ēripiui, ēreptus, take
 away, 47
errō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, wander,
 roam, 29
***et, conj., and, 1; *et . . . et,**
 both . . . and, 2
***etiam, adv., even, also, 14**
Etrūria, -ae, f., Etruria, a country
 in north central Italy, now
 called Tuscany, 40
Etrūscus, -a, -um, adj., Etruscan;
 as a noun, Etrūscus, -i, m., an
 Etruscan, 37
***ex (ē), prep. with abl., out of, 7**
excēdō, -ere, excessi, excessūrus,
 go out, 40
†exeō, -ire, exii, exitūrus, go out,
 withdraw, depart, 43
***exerceō, -ēre, exercui, exercitus,**
 train, practice, 49
***exercitus, exercitūs, m., army, 41**
***existimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, reckon,**
 think, 47
expellō, -ere, expuli, expulsus,
 drive out, expel, 37
***expugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, cap-**
 ture, take by assault, 50
exsequor, exsequi, exsecūtus
 sum, follow up, execute, 47
***expectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, await,**
 expect, wait for, 21
***extrā, prep. with acc., outside of, 13**
***extrēmus, -a, -um, most remote,**
 far distant, 8

F

- fābula, -ae, f., story, 5**
***facilis, facile, easy, 43**
***faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, make, do,**
 perform, 22
factum, -i, n., deed, act, 34
***facultās, facultātis, f., opportu-**
 nity, resources, ability, 50
***fāma, -ae, f., fame, reputation,**
 report, 14
***famēs, famis, f., hunger, famine,**
 40
***familia, -ae, f., household, kin-**
 dred, 47
fātum, -i, n., fate, 28
Faustulus, -i, m., Faustulus, a
 shepherd, 32
fēmina, -ae, f., woman, 1
fenestra, -ae, f., window, 1
***ferē, adv., almost, nearly, 12**
***ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, bear, bring,**
 carry, 43
***ferrum, -i, n., iron, sword, 38**
fibula, -ae, f., pin, brooch, 21
***fidēs, fidei, f., faith, trust, belief,**
 47
filia, -ae, f., daughter, 3
***filius, fili, m., son, 12**
***finis, finis, m., end; finēs,**
 finium, m. pl., boundaries, ter-
 ritory, 36
***finitimus, -a, -um, adj., neighbor-**
 ing; as a noun, finitimī, -ōrum,
 m. pl., neighbors, 34
***fiō, fieri, —, —, become,**
 happen, come to pass, 43
***firmus, -a, -um, firm, sturdy,**
 8
fistula, -ae, f., pipe, tube, water
 pipe, 27
***flūmen, flūminis, n., river, 27**

- *fluō, fluere, flūxī [*perf. part.*
flūxus used as *adj.*], flow, 27
foculus, -ī, *m.*, brazier, 3
forceps, forcipis, *m.* or *f.*, tongs,
pincers, 3
fortasse, *adv.*, perhaps, 11
*fortis, forte, brave, strong, 34
fortiter, *adv.*, bravely, 40
fortitūdō, fortitūdinis, *f.*, bravery,
courage, 44
*fortūna, -ae, *f.*, fortune, 40
forum, -ī, *n.*, a market place;
Forum, in Rome, an open space
between the Capitoline and
Palatine hills, 20
*fossa, -ae, *f.*, ditch, trench, 18
fragor, fragōris, *m.*, crashing,
noise, 38
*frāter, frātris, *m.*, brother, 24
frēnum, -ī, *n.*, bridle, curb, bit, 26
*frūmentum, -ī, *n.*, grain, 14
*frūstrā, *adv.*, in vain, to no pur-
pose, 35
*fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight, 33
*fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, flee, 28

G

- Gāius, Gāī, *m.*, Gaius, a Roman
name, abbreviated C., 40
Galba, -ae, *m.*, Galba, a Roman
name, 5
galea, -ae, *f.*, helmet, 22
Gallia, -ae, *f.*, Gaul, 12
Gallicus, -a, -um, Gallic, of Gaul,
43
Gallus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Gallic, 22;
as a *noun*, Gallus, -ī, *m.*, a Gaul
Garumna, -ae, *m.*, a river of
southwestern Gaul, now the
Garonne, 43
gaudium, gaudī, *n.*, joy, 26

- gāza, -ae, *f.*, treasure, riches,
wealth, § 5
gemini, -ae, -a, *adj.* twin, 24; as
a *noun*, gemini, *m. pl.*, twins
Genava, -ae, *f.*, Genava, modern
Geneva, a city of the Allobroges,
on Lake Leman, 43
*gēns, gentis, gentium, *f.*, race,
tribe, 27
*genus, generis, *n.*, kind, class, 26
Germānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, German;
as a *noun*, Germānus, -ī, *m.*,
a German, 22
*gerō, -ere, gessi, gestus, carry on,
wear, 17; with *refl.*, conduct
(oneself), 32; bellum gerere, to
wage war
gladiātor, -ōris, *m.*, gladiator, 25
gladiātōrius, -a, -um, gladia-
torial, 25
*gladius, gladi, *m.*, sword, 12
*glōria, -ae, *f.*, glory, 21
Graecia, -ae, *f.*, Greece, 6
Graecus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Greek; as
a *noun*, Graecus, -ī, *m.*, a
Greek, 17
*grātia, -ae, *f.*, favor, esteem, 31;
tibi grātiās agō, I thank you
*grātus, -a, -um, pleasing, 6
*gravis, grave, heavy, 41
graviter, *adv.*, violently, vehe-
mently, 30

H

- *habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, have, hold, 2
habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, live,
dwell, 7
Haeduus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Haeduan;
as a *noun*, Haeduus, -ī, *m.*, a
Haeduan, 43
hasta, -ae, *f.*, spear, 18

- Helena**, -ae, *f.*, Helen, a beautiful Greek woman, 18
Helveticus, -a, -um, of the Helvetians, Helvetian, 24
Helveticus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Helvetian; as a noun, **Helveticus**, **Helveti**, *m.*, a Helvetian, 42
heri, *adv.*, yesterday, 19
Herminius, **Hermini**, *m.*, Herminius, a Roman name, 38
heu, *interj.*, an exclamation of pain, oh! alas! § 4
***hiberna**, -orum, *n. pl.*, winter quarters, 22
hic, *adv.*, here, in this place, 19
***hic**, **haec**, **hoc**, *demonstrative adj. and pron.*, this, 33
***hiems**, **hiemis**, *f.*, winter, 24
hodiē, *adv.*, today, 5
***homō**, **hominis**, *m. or f.*, person, man, 24
***honor**, **honoris**, *m.*, honor, esteem, 40
***hōra**, -ae, *f.*, hour, 36
Horatius, **Horatī**, *m.*, Horatius, a Roman name; **Horatius Cocles**, **Horatī Coclitis**, the Roman hero who defended the bridge, 37
hortus, -i, *m.*, garden, 12
Hostilius, **Hostilī**, *m.*, Hostilius, a Roman commander, 36
***hostis**, **hostis**, **hostium**, *m.*, an enemy (referring to one person), 27; *in pl.*, the enemy
***hūc**, *adv.*, hither, 36; **hūc et illūc**, hither and thither, 36
***humilis**, **humile**, lowly, humble, 37
- I
- *iaciō**, -ere, **iēcī**, **iactus**, throw, hurl, 22
***iam**, *adv.*, already, now, 40; **iam diū**, now for a long time, 40
Ianiculum, -i, *n.*, the Janiculum, a hill situated across the Tiber from the Forum, 37
iānuā, -ae, *f.*, door, 1
Iānus, -i, *m.*, the god Janus, 1
***ibi**, *adv.*, there, in that place, 17
Icarus, -i, *m.*, Icarus, the son of Daedalus, 39
***idem**, **eadem**, **idem**, *demonstrative adj. and pron.*, the same, 43
***idōneus**, -a, -um, suitable, convenient, fit, 33
igitur, *adv. (postpositive)*, therefore, 8
ignifer, **ignifera**, **igniferum**, fire-bearing, 3
***ignis**, **ignis**, **ignium**, *m.*, fire, 28
ignōtus, -a, -um, unknown, unnoticed, 40
***ille**, **illa**, **illud**, *demonstrative adj. and pron.*, that, 33
illūc, *adv.*, thither, to that place, 36
illūminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, light up, illuminate, 26
imāgō, **imāginis**, *f.*, image, 26
imber, **imbris**, **imbrum**, *m.*, rain, 32
īmmortālis, **īmmortāle**, immortal, 40
***impedimentum**, -i, *n.*, hindrance, interference; **impedimenta**, -orum, *n. pl.*, heavy baggage, baggage, 42
***impediō**, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, hinder, impede, 17
īmpeditus, -a, -um, burdened, hindered, 38

- †*imperator*, *imperatoris*, *m.*, commander, emperor, 24
- **imperium*, *imperī*, *n.*, power, command, 24
- **impero*, -*are*, -*avi*, -*atus*, command, order, give orders (*with dat.*), 46
- **impetus*, *impetūs*, *m.*, attack, assault, 41
- impluvium*, *impluvī*, *n.*, impluvium, rain basin, 15
- **in*, *prep. with abl.*, in, on, 7; over, 37; *with acc.*, into, upon, 8
- **incendō*, -*ere*, *incendi*, *incensus*, burn, set fire to, 17
- **incipiō*, -*ere*, *incipi*, *inceptus*, begin, undertake, 43
- **incitō*, -*are*, -*avi*, -*atus*, urge, incite, arouse, 35
- incola*, -*ae*, *m. or f.*, inhabitant, 8
- **incolō*, -*ere*, *incolui*, —, inhabit, dwell, 43
- induō*, -*ere*, *indui*, *indutus*, put on, 18
- **ineō*, -*ire*, -*ivi* or -*ii*, -*itus*, to go into, enter, 43
- infans*, *infantis*, *m. or f.*, a little child, infant, 10
- †*inferō*, -*ferre*, *intuli*, *inlatus*, bring in, 43
- **infimus*, -*a*, -*um*, lowest, 38
- influō*, -*ere*, *influi*, *influxus*, flow in, 50
- ingenium*, *ingeni*, *n.*, disposition, ability, 34
- **inimicus*, -*a*, -*um*, unfriendly, 30
- **iniūria*, -*ae*, *f.*, wrong, injury, insult, 37
- **inopia*, -*ae*, *f.*, scarcity, lack, 40
- **inquit*, he says, he said, 20
- **insidiae*, -*arum*, *f. pl.*, plot, ambushade, wiles, 35
- institutum*, -*i*, *n.*, practice, custom, 43
- instrumentum*, -*i*, *n.*, a tool, implement, instrument, 36
- **instruō*, -*ere*, *instrui*, *instructus*, draw up, arrange, 42
- **insula*, -*ae*, *f.*, island, 6
- **intellegō*, -*ere*, *intellēxi*, *intellēctus*, understand, 43
- **inter*, *prep. with acc.*, between, among, 19
- intercipiō*, -*ere*, *intercēpi*, *interceptus*, intercept, 22
- interdum*, *adv.*, sometimes, 5
- **interficiō*, -*ere*, *interfici*, *interfectus*, kill, 26
- **interim*, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime, 17
- **intermittō*, -*ere*, *intermisi*, *intermissus*, leave off, interrupt, stop, 35
- **intrā*, *prep. with acc.*, within, inside, 14
- intrō*, -*are*, -*avi*, -*atus*, enter, go into, 5
- invalidus*, -*a*, -*um*, weak, feeble, 28
- **inveniō*, -*ire*, *invēni*, *inventus*, find, discover, 28
- inviolātus*, -*a*, -*um*, inviolable, unhurt, 27
- **invitus*, -*a*, -*um*, unwilling, 45
- invocō*, -*are*, -*avi*, -*atus*, call upon, invoke, 36
- iō*, *interjection*, hurrah! oh! look! 24; *iō triumphe*, hurrah for the triumphal celebration! 24
- **ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*, *intensive pron.*, self, 33
- irātus*, -*a*, -*um*, angry, 13

*is, ea, id, *demonstrative adj.* and *pron.*, this, that; he, she, it; *pl.*, they, 32

*iste, ista, istud, *demonstrative adj.* and *pron.*, that (of yours), 33

*ita, *adv.*, thus, so, 40

Italia, -ae, *f.*, Italy, 6

Italicus, -a, -um, Italian, 8

itaque, *conj.*, and so, therefore, 5

*item, *adv.*, likewise, besides, 46

*iter, itineris, *n.* (see § 566), journey, march, route, 26; iter facere, to march, 26

iterum, *adv.*, again, 7

*iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus, order, bid, 43

iūdex, iūdicis, *m.*, judge, 26

iūdicium, iūdicī, *n.*, judgment, trial, 47

*iūdicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, judge, 50

*iugum, -ī, *n.*, yoke, ridge, 49

Iūlia, -ae, *f.*, Julia, a Roman name, 1

Iūlius, Iūli, *m.*, Julius, a Roman name, 48

iūmentum, -ī, *n.*, beast of burden, 46

*iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūctus, join, unite, 46

Iūnō, Iūnōnis, *f.*, Juno, the queen of the gods, 29

Iuppiter, Iovis, *m.* (see § 566), Jupiter, the chief of the gods, 36

Iūra, -ae, *m.*, Jura, a range of mountains in Gaul, 43

*iūs, iūris, *n.*, right, law, justice, 27

*iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, *n.*, oath, 47

iuvenis, iuvenis, iuvenum, *m.*, young man, youth, 40

*iuvō, -āre, iūvi, iūtus, help; iuvat, *impersonal*, it pleases, 39

K

Karthāginiēnsēs, Karthāginiēnsium, *m. pl.*, the Carthaginians, people of Carthage, 27

Karthāgō, Karthāginis, *f.*, Carthage, a city of northern Africa, 29

L

Labiēnus, -ī, *m.*, Labienus, a Roman name, 12; Titus Labiēnus, a lieutenant of Caesar, 50

*labor, labōris, *m.*, toil, effort, difficulty, 49

*labōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, work, 3

labyrinthus, -ī, *m.*, a labyrinth, 39

lacrimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, weep, cry, 13

lacus, lacūs, *m.*, lake, 43

Laeca, -ae, *m.*, Laeca, a Roman name, 7

laetē, *adv.*, joyfully, 40

laetus, -a, -um, happy, cheerful, 4

*lapis, lapidis, *m.*, stone, 23

largior, largirī, largītus sum, bribe, 50

Lārs, Lārtis, *m.*, a title which the Etruscans used for the eldest son; Lārs Porsena, a king of the Etruscans, 37

Lartius, Lartī, *m.*, Lartius, a Roman name, 38

latibulum, -ī, *n.*, den, 32

Latinus, -a, -um, Latin, 11

Latinus, -ī, *m.*, Latinus, king of the Laurentians, 30

latrō, latrōnis, *m.*, robber, 34

*lātus, -a, -um, wide, broad, 3

*latus, lateris, *n.*, side, 33

*laudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, praise, 5

- Laurentum**, -i, *n.*, Laurentum, a maritime town in Latium, 30
***laus**, laudis, *f.*, praise, glory, 36
Lāvīnia, -ae, *f.*, Lavinia, daughter of Latinus and Italian wife of Aeneas, 30
Lāvinium, Lāvīnī, *n.*, Lavinium, a town of Latium founded by Aeneas and named in honor of his wife Lavinia, 30
lectica, -ae, *f.*, litter, sedan chair, 10
***lēgātiō**, lēgātiōnis, *f.*, embassy, legation, 46
***lēgātus**, -i, *m.*, lieutenant; envoy, 12
***legiō**, legiōnis, *f.*, legion, 24
legiōnārius, -a, -um, of a legion, legionary, 41
legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, choose, read, 21
Lemannus, -i, *m.*, the Lake of Geneva, 43
***levis**, leve, light, 39
***lēx**, lēgis, *f.*, law, 23
libenter, *adv.*, gladly, 8; (**libenter nāvīgat**, he likes to sail)
***liber**, libera, liberum, free, 15
liber, librī, *m.*, book, 12
***liberī**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, children, 15
***liberō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, free, 38
libertās, libertātis, *f.*, liberty, freedom, 33
***licet**, licēre, licuit, — (*impersonal*), it is permitted, may, 49
līctor, līctoris, *m.*, lictor, 24
līgneus, -a, -um, wooden, 17
lingua, -ae, *f.*, tongue, language, 11
***littera**, -ae, *f.*, a letter of the alphabet, § 3
***locus**, -i, *m.*, place, location; *in pl.*, region, 33; locī nātūrā, natural features, topography, 44
longē, *adv.*, far, 27; longē lātēque, far and wide, 40
***longus**, -a, -um, long, 2
lōrica, -ae, *f.*, corselet, armor, 23
lucerna, -ae, *f.*, lamp, 40
Lūcia, -ae, *f.*, Lucia, a Roman name, 11
Lūcius, Lūcī, *m.*, Lucius, a Roman name, 12
lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsus, play, frolic, 17
lūdus, -i, *m.*, school; game, 13
lūna, -ae, *f.*, moon, 5
lupa, -ae, *f.*, wolf, she-wolf, 32
***lūx**, lūcis, *f.*, light, 33; primā lūce, at daybreak, 33

M

- *magis**, *adv.*, more, 38
magister, magistri, *m.*, master, schoolmaster, 13
magistra, -ae, *f.*, teacher, schoolmistress, 1
***magistrātus**, magistrātūs, *m.*, civil office; magistrate, 47
†magnitūdō, magnitūdinis, *f.*, size, 25; magnitūdō corporis, stature, physique, 25
magnopere, *adv.*, greatly, exceedingly, 40
***magnus**, -a, -um, large, great, 1
male, *adv.*, poorly, badly, 36
***mālō**, mälle, mālui, —, wish more, prefer, 39
***malus**, -a, -um, bad, wicked, 32
mandātum, -i, *n.*, command, order, 29

- ***mandō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, commit, hand over, 50
māne, *adv.*, in the morning, 11
 ***maneō**, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, remain, stay, 20
 ***manus**, manūs, *f.*, hand, band; troops, 41
Marcella, -ae, *f.*, Marcella, a Roman name, 4
Mārcus, -ī, *m.*, Marcus, a Roman name, 12
 ***mare**, maris, *n.* (see § 563), sea, 27; **Mare Inferum**, the Lower, or Tuscan, Sea; **Mare Superum**, the Upper, or Adriatic, Sea, 27
Maria, -ae, *f.*, Mary, a Roman name, 15
maritimus, -a, -um, pertaining to the sea, of the sea, 28
Mārs, Mārtis, *m.*, Mars, god of war, 24
 ***māter**, mātris, *f.*, mother, 24
mātrimōnium, mātrimōnī, *n.*, marriage, 30
mātrōna, -ae, *f.*, matron, 11
Matrona, -ae, *m.*, a river of Gaul, now the *Marne*, joining the *Sequana* near Paris, 43
mātūrē, *adv.*, early, 17
maximē, *adv.*, especially, very greatly, 6
 †**maximus**, -a, -um, greatest, very great, 19
 ***medius**, -a, -um, middle, middle of, 26
memor, *gen.* memoris, mindful, heedful, 36
 ***memoria**, -ae, *f.*, memory, 36; **memoriā tenēre**, to remember, 36
 ***mēns**, mentis, *f.*, the mind, § 5
mēnsa, -ae, *f.*, table, desk, 1
 ***mēnsis**, mēnsis, mēnsium, *m.*, month, 29
 ***mercātor**, mercātōris, *m.*, merchant, 26
Mercurius, Mercurī, *m.*, Mercury, messenger of the gods, 13
mēta, -ae, *f.*, goal, 26
 ***metus**, metūs, *m.*, fear, anxiety, 46
 ***meus**, -a, -um, *poss. adj.*, my, mine, 11, 31
 ***miles**, militis, *m.*, soldier, 23
 †**militāris**, militāre, military, 42
 ***mille**, *indecl. adj.*, a thousand, 42; *pl.*, mīlia, mīlium, *n.*, *noun*, thousands, 36 (see § 442)
Minerva, -ae, *f.*, Minerva, goddess of wisdom, 9
Mīnōs, Mīnōis, *m.*, Minos, the king of Crete, 39
 ***miser**, misera, miserum, wretched, unhappy, 15
miser cordia, -ae, *f.*, pity, 48
 ***mittō**, -ere, mīsī, missus, send, 17
 ***modus**, -ī, *m.*, measure; manner, way, 39
mola, -ae, *f.*, millstone; *in pl.*, mill, 16
 ***moneō**, -ēre, monuī, monitus, advise, warn, 19
monile, monilis, *n.*, necklace, collar, 6
 ***mōns**, montis, montium, *m.*, mountain, 33
 ***mora**, -ae, *f.*, delay, 37
morior, morī, mortuus sum, die, 42
 ***moror**, morārī, morātus sum, delay, wait, 50
 ***mors**, mortis, mortium, *f.*, death, 37
mortuus, -a, -um, dead, 38

- **mōs, mōris, m.*, custom, manner, 24
 **moveō, -ēre, mōvi, mōtus*, move, disturb, 35
mox, adv., soon, 21
Mūcius, Mūci, m., Mucius, a Roman name; C. Mūcius Scaevola, the Roman who attempted to assassinate Porsena, 40
 †*multitūdō, multitudinis, f.*, multitude, 24
multo, adv., much, 38
 **multus, -a, -um*, much, many, 3
 **mūniō, -ire, -ivī, -itus*, fortify, defend, 17
 †*mūnitiō, mūnitiōnis, f.*, fortification, rampart, 35
 **mūnus, mūneris, n.*, reward, gift, 25
 **mūrus, -i, m.*, wall, 13

N

- **nam, conj.*, for, 19
nārrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, tell, 5
Nāsica, -ae, m., Nasica, a Roman name, 9
 **nātiō, nātiōnis, f.*, race, tribe, nation, 41
 **nātūra, -ae, f.*, nature, character, 44; *loci nātūrā*, natural features, topography, 44
nauta, -ae, m., sailor, 3
nāvālis, -e, naval, 8
nāvicula, -ae, f., little boat, skiff, 7
 **nāvigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus*, sail, 7
 **nāvis, nāvis, nāvium, f.*, ship, 27
 **nē, conj.*, in clauses of purpose, that . . . not, lest, 46; *nē . . . quidem*, not even, 36
 **-ne, enclitic*, sign of a question, 3
 **necesse, neuter adj., nom. and acc. only*, necessary, 43
 **necō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus*, kill, 18
 **negō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus*, deny, say not, 45
 **negōtium, negōti, n.*, business, task, 21
 **nēmō (nūllius), dat. nēmini, acc. nēminem, m. or f.*, no one, 40
 **neque, conj.*, nor, and not; **neque . . . neque*, neither . . . nor, 2;
nesciō, -ire, -ivī, —, not to know, be ignorant, 36
 **neu, conj.*, and that . . . not, nor, 46
 **neuter, neutra, neutrum*, neither (of two), 36
 **nihil, n. (indecl.)*, nothing, 35
 **nisi, conj.*, unless, if not, 27
 **nōbilis, nōbile*, renowned, noble, 35
nōbilitās, nōbilitātis, f., nobility, the nobles, 44
 **noceō, -ēre, nocui, nocitūrus*, injure, harm (*with dat.*), 48
 **noctū, adv.*, at night, 7
 **nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, —*, be unwilling, 39
 **nōmen, nōminis, n.*, name, 26
 **nōn, adv.*, not, 1
 **nōndum, adv.*, not yet, 12
nōnne, interrog. adv., not: used when the answer "yes" is expected, 3
nōn solum . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also, 35
 **nōnus, -a, -um*, ninth, 36
 †*nōs, nostrum (nostrī), personal pron.*, we, 11, 31
 **noster, nostra, nostrum, poss. adj.*, our, ours, 11, 31
nōtus, -a, -um, renowned, well-known, 34

- **novem, indecl. adj.*, nine, 36
 **novus, -a, -um*, new, fresh, recent, 2
 **nox, noctis, noctium, f.*, night, 33
 **nūllus, -a, -um*, none, 36
 **num, interrog. adv.*, used when the answer "no" is expected, 3; whether: used to introduce indirect question, 48
 **numerus, -i, m.*, number, 13
 Numitor, Numitōris, *m.*, Numitor, grandfather of Romulus and Remus, 32
 nummus, -i, m., a coin, 27
 **numquam, adv.*, never, 19
 **nunc, adv.*, now, 7
 **nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus*, announce, report, 12
 **nūntius, nūnti, m.*, messenger, message, 12
 **nūper, adv.*, recently, just, 47

O

- **ob, prep. with acc.*, on account of, because of, 47
 **oblītus, -a, -um*, unmindful, forgetful, 31
 **obses, obsidis, m. or f.*, hostage, 23
 **obsideō, -ēre, obsēdi, obsessus*, besiege, 40
 **obtineō, obtinēre, obtinui, obtentus*, occupy, possess, 39
 **occāsus, occāsūs, m.*, a fall, destruction, 17
 **occidō, -ere, occidī, occisus*, kill, slay, cut down, 30
 **occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus*, seize, take possession, 36
 **octāvus, -a, -um*, eighth, 36
 **octō, indecl. adj.*, eight, 36
 **oculus, -i, m.*, eye, 37
 **olīva, -ae, f.*, olive, 8
 Olympia, *-ae, f.*, Olympia, an ancient place in southern Greece, the scene of the Olympic games and the site of a celebrated temple and statue of Zeus, 19
 Olympus, *-i, m.*, Olympus, a celebrated mountain of northern Greece, formerly regarded as the home of the gods, 19
 **omnīnō, adv.*, in all, only, 45
 **omnis, omne*, all, every, 34
 **onerāria, -ae, f.*, merchant ship, transport, 8
 **oppidum, -i, n.*, town, 14
 **opprimō, -ere, oppressi, oppressus*, weigh down, overwhelm, oppress, 35
 **oppugnātiō, oppugnātiōnis, f.*, siege, attack, 23
 **oppugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus*, assault, besiege, storm, 17
 **optimus, -a, -um*, best, *superl. of bonus*, 19
 **opus, operis, n.*, work, labor; composition, 36
 **ōra, -ae, f.*, coast, shore, 7
 **ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis, f.*, speech, 44; *ōrātiōnem habēre*, to make a speech, 44
 Orbilius, Orbili, *m.*, Orbilius, a Roman name, 13
 orbis, orbis, orbium, *m.*, circle, 41; orbis terrarum, world, universe, 41
 **ōrdō, ōrdinis, m.*, order, rank, row, 42
 Orgetorix, Orgetorigis, *m.*, Orgetorix, a Helvetian nobleman, 43

- ōrnāmentum**, -ī, *n.*, decoration; equipment, trappings, 35
ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, adorn, decorate, 4
***ōrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, pray, plead, beg, 35
ōs, **ōris**, *n.*, mouth, face, 27
***ostendō**, -ere, **ostendī**, **ostentus**, show, declare, disclose, 46
ōtium, **ōtī**, *n.*, leisure, rest, 21
- P**
- paedagōgus**, -ī, *m.*, attendant, tutor, 13
***paene**, *adv.*, almost, nearly, hardly, 6
Palātium, **Palāti**, *n.*, the Palatine hill, one of the hills of Rome, 32
palla, -ae, *f.*, cloak, mantle, 8
palma, -ae, *f.*, palm leaf, sign of victory, 25
pānis, **pānis**, **pānium**, *m.*, bread, loaf, 16
Pānsa, -ae, *m.*, Pansa, a Roman name, 15
***pār**, *gen. paris*, equal, 41
†parātus, -a, -um, ready, 39
Parcae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, the Fates, 29
***parō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, prepare, 7
***pars**, **partis**, **partium**, *f.*, part, direction, 30
Parthenōn, -ōnis, *m.*, the Parthenon, a temple in Athens, 14
***parvus**, -a, -um, small, little, 1
***passus**, **passūs**, *m.*, pace, step, 42
pāstor, **pāstōris**, *m.*, shepherd, 32
***pater**, **patris**, *m.*, father, 24
patera, -ae, *f.*, dish, saucer, 4
***patior**, **patī**, **passus sum**, allow, permit, suffer: followed by an infinitive with subject *acc.*, 45
patria, -ae, *f.*, native land, country, 6
Patrōclus, -ī, *m.*, Patroclus, a famous Greek warrior, friend of Achilles, 18
***pauci**, -ae, -a, *pl.*, few, 6
†paulō, *adv.*, a little, 32; **paulō** *post*, a little later, 32
***pāx**, **pācis**, *f.*, peace, 23
***pecūnia**, -ae, *f.*, money, wealth, 5
***pedes**, **peditis**, *m.*, foot soldier; *pl.*, infantry, 23
Pēleus, -eī, *m.*, Peleus, father of Achilles, 18
***pellō**, -ere, **pepulī**, **pulsus**, drive, drive out, 18
pendeō, -ēre, **pendī**, —, be suspended, hang down, 41
penna, -ae, *f.*, feather, 39
***per**, *prep. with acc.*, through, 21
***perficiō**, -ere, **perfēcī**, **perfectus**, accomplish, perform, 40
***periculum**, -ī, *n.*, danger, 14
peristylum, -ī, *n.*, peristyle, 15
***peritus**, -a, -um, experienced, skilled, 39
permōveō, -ēre, **permōvī**, **permōtus**, move, influence, 44
perrumpō, -ere, **perrūpī**, **perrup-tus**, break through, force a way through, 49
***persuādeō**, -ēre, **persuāsī**, **persuāsūrus**, persuade (*with dat.*), 46
†perterreō, -ēre, **perterrui**, **perterritus**, terrify, thoroughly alarm, 36
***pertineō**, -ēre, **pertinui**, —, extend, pertain, 40
***perturbō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, disturb, confuse, 48

†perveniō, -īre, pervēnī, perven-
tūrus, arrive, come up, 28

*pēs, pedis, *m.*, foot, 23

*petō, -ere, petivī or -īī, petitus,
seek, ask, 34

phalanx, phalangis, *f.*, a compact
body of heavy-armed men in
battle array, § 5

Philippus, -ī, *m.*, a king of Mace-
don, § 5

pictūra, -ae, *f.*, picture, 7

piger, pigra, pigrum, lazy, 13

*pilum, -ī, *n.*, javelin, 22

Piraeus, -ī, *m.*, the port of Athens,
39

pistor, pistoris, *m.*, miller, bread
maker, baker, 16

pistrīna, -ae, *f.*, bakehouse, 16

pīus, -a, -um, devoted, faithful,
conscientious, 28

plēnus, -a, -um, full, 4

pōculum, -ī, *n.*, drinking cup,
goblet, 39

poēta, -ae, *m.*, poet, 7

*polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum,
promise, offer: followed by a
future infinitive with subject
acc., 45

pompa, -ae, *f.*, procession, parade,
21

Pompeianus, -a, -um, belonging
to Pompeii, 21

*pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, put,
place, 18; castra pōnere, to
pitch camp, 18

*pōns, pontis, pontium, *m.*, bridge,
37

*populus, -ī, *m.*, people, nation, 23
Porsena, -ae, *m.*, Lars Porsena,
an Etruscan king, 37

*porta, -ae, *f.*, gate, 17

*portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, carry,
bring, 4

*portus, portūs, *m.*, harbor, port,
39

*possum, posse, potuī, —, be
able, can, 39

*post, *prep. with acc.*, after, behind,
26

*postea, *adv.*, afterwards, later
on, 8

*postquam, *conj. with perf. ind.*,
after, 30

postrēmus, -a, -um, last, 37

*postulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, demand,
request, 35

*potēns, *gen. potentis*, powerful, 34

*potestās, potestātis, *f.*, power, 27

*potior, potiri, potitus sum, obtain,
get possession of (*with abl.*), 45

*praeficiō, -ere, praeefēcī, praefec-
tus, put in charge of, set over
(*with dat.*), 50

*praemium, praemī, *n.*, reward, 31

*praesidium, praesidī, *n.*, garrison,
protection, 41

*praeter, *prep. with acc.*, besides,
except, 47

*praeterea, *adv.*, besides, further-
more, moreover, 33

Priamus, -ī, *m.*, Priam, the last
king of Troy, 18

primō, *adv.*, at first, 27

*primus, -a, -um, first, 24, 36

*princeps, principis, *m.*, chief, 23

*principātus, principātūs, *m.*, lead-
ership, the first place, 44
principium, principī, *n.*, beginning,
24

*privātus, -a, -um, private, 45

*prō, *prep. with abl.*, in behalf of,
for, 18

**probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus*, approve, 40
Proca, -ae, m., Proca, a king of the Albans, 32

prōcēdō, -ere, prōcessī, prōcessūrus, go before, advance, proceed, 40

**proelium, proeli, n.*, battle, 14

**profectiō, profectionis, f.*, departure, 45

**proficiscor, proficiscī, profectus sum*, set out, depart, 45

†*prōgredior, prōgredi, prōgressus sum*, go forth, proceed, 50

**prohibeō, -ēre, prohibuī, prohibitus*, keep off, prohibit, prevent, 33

**prope, prep. with acc.*, near, 21; *adv.*, near by, 40

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, hasten, hurry, 7

propior, propius, nearer, 39

proprius, -a, -um, one's own, special, particular, § 6

**propter, prep. with acc.*, on account of, 37

**prōvincia, -ae, f.*, province, 6

proximē, adv., next, nearest, last, 42

†*proximus, -a, -um*, next, very near, near by, 6

Pūblius, Pūbli, m., Publius, a Roman name, 12

puella, -ae, f., girl, 1

**puer, puerī, m.*, boy, 12

pugil, pugilis, m., boxer, pugilist, 20

**pugna, -ae, f.*, battle, fight, 12

†*pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus*, fight, contend, 12

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, beautiful, handsome, fair, 3, 13

pupa, -ae, f., doll, 4

**putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus*, think, consider, 29

Q

**quā, adv.*, where, 50

quadrigae, -ārum, f. pl., team of four horses, chariot with team, 21

**quaerō, -ere, quaesivī or -sī, quaesitus*, seek, ask, inquire, 46
quālis, quāle, what kind of, what, 1

**quam, conj.*, than, 37; *interrog. adv.*, how? how much? 37

quamquam, conj., although, 40

quandō, interrog. adv., when? 24

**quantus, -a, -um, interrog. adj.*, how great? how much? 48

quārē, interrog. adv., wherefore? why? 39

**quārtus, -a, -um*, fourth, 36

**quattuor, indecl. adj.*, four, 36

quattuordecim, indecl. adj., fourteen, 36

**-que, conj.*, and: always attached to the second of two connected words, 12

**quī, quae, quod, rel. pron.*, who, which, that, 32 -

**quidem, adv.*, indeed, certainly, at least; *nē . . . quidem*, not even, 36

quīndecim, indecl. adj., fifteen, 36

**quīque, indecl. adj.*, five, 36

**quīntus, -a, -um*, fifth, 36

**quis, quid, interrog. pron.*, who? what? 1, 48 (see § 599)

**quisquam, quicquam, indef. pron.*, any, anyone, 46

**quō, adv.*, whither? 8

**quod, conj.*, because, 2

quōmodo, *adv.*, how? 18
 quondam, *adv.*, formerly, once, 44
 *quoque, *conj.*, also, too: used
 after emphatic word, 1
 quot, *indecl. interrog. adj.*, how
 many? 36
 quotannis, *adv.*, every year,
 yearly, 22

R

rāmus, -i, *m.*, branch, 32
 *rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptus, snatch,
 seize, carry off, steal, 28
 rārō, *adv.*, seldom, 6
 rebellō, -āre, āvī, -ātus, rebel, 27
 †recipiō, -ere, recēpī, receptus,
 take back; *with sē*, retreat, 42
 *reddō, -ere, reddidī, redditus,
 give back, return, 43; *isdem*
verbis reddere, to repeat, 43
 *redeō, redire, rediī, reditūrus, re-
 turn, go back, 50
 reditiō, reditiōnis, *f.*, return, 47
 redundō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, over-
 flow, 32
 rēgia, -ae, *f.*, palace, 32
 rēgina, -ae, *f.*, queen, 29
 *regiō, regiōnis, *f.*, region, terri-
 tory, direction, 48
 rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, reign,
 rule, 30
 *rēgnum, -i, *n.*, kingdom, royal
 power, 32
 *regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus, guide,
 direct, control, rule, 19
 rēiciō, -ere, rēiēcī, rēiectus, throw
 back, hurl back, 22
 *relinquō, -ere, reliquī, relictus,
 leave, abandon, 17
 *reliquus, -a, -um, remaining, rest
 of, 17

rēmex, rēmigis, *m.*, rower, oars-
 man, 8
 Remus, -i, *m.*, Remus, the brother
 of Romulus, 24
 repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsus,
 drive back, repulse, 49
 *repentinus, -a, -um, sudden, un-
 expected, 42
 *reperiō, -ire, repperī, repertus,
 find, find out, 48
 reprehendō, -ere, reprehendī, re-
 prehēnsus, seize; blame, cen-
 sure, 36
 *rēs, rei, *f.*, thing, affair, event,
 matter, 42
 *respondeō, -ēre, respondi, respōn-
 sus, reply, answer, 12
 reveniō, -ire, revēnī, reventūrus,
 return, come back, 28
 *revertor, revertī (*inf.*), reverti
 (*perf.*), reversus (*perf. part.*,
deponent), turn back, return,
 go back, 49
 *rēx, rēgis, *m.*, king, 23
 Rhēa Silvia, Rhēae Silviae, *f.*,
 Rhea Silvia, the mother of
 Romulus and Remus, 24
 Rhēnus, -i, *m.*, the river *Rhine*,
 43
 Rhodanus, -i, *m.*, the river *Rhone*,
 43
 *ripa, -ae, *f.*, bank (of river), 32
 *rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, ask, ques-
 tion, 12
 Rōma, -ae, *f.*, Rome, 9
 Rōmānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Roman,
 12; *as a noun*, Rōmānus, -i,
m., Rōmāna, -ae, *f.*, a Roman
 Rōmulus, -i, *m.*, Romulus, the
 founder and first king of Rome,
 24

rosa, -ae, *f.*, rose, 4
Rosa, -ae, *f.*, Rose, a name, 6
ruber, *rubra*, *rubrum*, red, 5
ruīna, -ae, *f.*, ruin, 27
rūpēs, *rūpis*, *rūpium*, *f.*, cliff,
 rock, 38
rūs, *rūris*, *n.*, the country, 9
rūsticus, -a, -um, rustic, rural, 15
Rutulī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, Rutulians,
 an ancient people of Latium, 30

S

- Sabīnus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, Sabine; *as*
 a noun, *Sabīnus*, -ī, *m.*, a
 Sabine, 34
sacerdōs, *sacerdōtis*, *m.* or *f.*,
 priest, priestess, 32
sacrārium, *sacrārī*, *n.*, shrine, 16
sacrificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, make a
 sacrifice, 19
**saepe*, *adv.*, often, 4
**sagitta*, -ae, *f.*, arrow, 18
sagittārius, *sagittārī*, *m.*, archer, 41
**salūs*, *salūtis*, *f.*, safety, health, 35
salūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, greet, 8
(salvēō), -ēre, —, —, be well,
 be in good health, 11
Santonēs, *Santonum*, *m. pl.*, San-
 tones, a people living north of
 Aquitania, 43
sapientia, -ae, *f.*, wisdom, intelli-
 gence, 9
**satis*, *adv.*, sufficiently, enough, 49
schola, -ae, *f.*, school, 1
**sciō*, -īre, *scīvī*, *scītus*, know, 36
scriba, -ae, *m.*, secretary, scribe, 40
**scribō*, -ere, *scrīpsī*, *scrīptus*,
 write, 31
**scūtum*, -ī, *n.*, shield, 21
Secunda, -ae, *f.*, Secunda, a
 Roman name, 3
**secundus*, -a, -um, second, 36
**sed*, *conj.*, but, 1
sēdecim, *indecl. adj.*, sixteen, 36
sedeō, -ēre, *sēdī*, *sessūrus*, sit,
 10
Segusiāvī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the
 Segusiavi, a people of eastern
 Gaul, 50
sella, -ae, *f.*, chair, seat, 1
sēmentis, *sēmentis*, *sēmentium*,
f., sowing, crops, 46
**semper*, *adv.*, always, 4
senātor, *senātōris*, *m.*, senator, 40
**sententia*, -ae, *f.*, thought, opin-
 ion, 21
**sentiō*, -īre, *sēnsī*, *sēnsus*, feel,
 perceive, realize, 44
**septem*, *indecl. adj.*, seven, 36
septendecim, *indecl. adj.*, seven-
 teen, 36
**septimus*, -a, -um, seventh, 36
Sēquana, -ae, *f.*, the principal
 river of northern Gaul, now
 the *Seine*, 43
Sēquanus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Sequa-
 nian; *as a noun*, *Sēquanus*,
 -ī, *m.*, a Sequanian, 43
**sequor*, *sequī*, *secūtus sum*, fol-
 low, 50
serva, -ae, *f.*, slave girl, 6
**servitūs*, *servitūtis*, *f.*, slavery,
 servitude, 38
Servius, *Servī*, *m.*, Servius, a
 Roman name, 12
**servō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, save, pro-
 tect, 20
**servus*, -ī, *m.*, manservant, slave,
 12
sevērus, -a, -um, severe, stern, 11
**sex*, *indecl. adj.*, six, 33
**sextus*, -a, -um, sixth, 36

- Sextus**, -i, *m.*, Sextus, a Roman name, 15
- ***sī**, *conj.*, if, 13
- Sibylla**, -ae, *f.*, prophetess, sibyl, 33
- ***sic**, *adv.*, thus, in this manner, 14
- signatus**, -a, -um, stamped, 32
- ***significō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, express, indicate, 35
- ***signum**, -i, *n.*, signal, 26
- ***silentium**, silenti, *n.*, silence, stillness, 43
- ***silva**, -ae, *f.*, forest, woods, 3
- ***similis**, simile, like, similar, 37
- ***simul**, *adv.*, at the same time, 50; simul ac (simul atque before a vowel), as soon as, 50
- ***sine**, *prep. with abl.*, without, 37
- ***singuli**, -ae, -a, one at a time, individual, 41
- ***sinister**, sinistra, sinistrum, left, left hand, 23
- ***socius**, soci, *m.*, companion, comrade, ally, 17
- ***sōl**, sōlis, *m.*, sun, 26
- solea**, -ae, *f.*, sandal, 6
- solum**, soli, *n.*, throne, 19
- ***sōlus**, -a, -um, alone, only, 36
- solvō**, -ere, solvi, solūtus, unbind, dissolve, 39
- ***spatium**, spatī, *n.*, space, 26
- spectāculum**, -i, *n.*, spectacle, exhibition, 21
- spectātor**, spectātōris, *m.*, spectator, 25
- ***spectō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, look at, watch, 5
- speculum**, -i, *n.*, mirror, 6
- ***spērō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, hope, 44
- ***spēs**, spei, *f.*, hope, 46
- spina**, -ae, *f.*, spina, the "spine," 26
- spolium**, spoli, *n.*, booty, spoil, 23
- ***statim**, *adv.*, at once, immediately, 32
- statua**, -ae, *f.*, statue, 4
- ***statuō**, -ere, statui, statūtus, decide, determine, set in place, 48
- stēlla**, -ae, *f.*, star, 7
- stilus**, -i, *m.*, stylus, a pointed instrument for writing on waxed tablets, 13
- ***stō**, stāre, steti, stātūrus, stand, 1
- ***studeō**, -ēre, studui, —, be eager, study, 11
- †**studium**, studi, *n.*, zeal, eagerness, 25
- ***sub**, *prep. with abl.*, under, at the foot of, 32; *with acc.*, under (with verbs of motion), 49
- subeō**, -ire, subii, subitūrus, go under, undergo, suffer, 43
- ***subitō**, *adv.*, suddenly, unexpectedly, 17
- sublicius**, -a, -um, built upon piles, 37
- subsellium**, subselli, *n.*, bench, seat, 21
- ***sui** (*gen.*), *reflexive pron.*, (of) himself, etc., 31
- ***sum**, esse, fui, futūrus, be, 1, 11
- ***summus**, -a, -um, highest, top of, 26
- super**, *prep. with acc.*, over, above, 26
- superbē**, *adv.*, haughtily, 40
- superbus**, -a, -um, haughty, proud, 27
- ***superō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, overcome, surpass, defeat, conquer, 41
- ***supplicium**, supplicī, *n.*, punishment, distress, suffering, 44
- surgō**, -ere, surrēxi, surrēctūrus, rise, stand up, 35

- ***suscipiō**, -ere, **suscēpi**, **susceptus**, take up, undertake, 46
 ***sustineō**, -ēre, **sustinui**, **sustentus**, check, withstand, sustain, 42
 ***suus**, -a, -um, *reflexive poss. adj.*, his, her, its, their, 31

T

- tabella**, -ae, *f.*, writing tablet, 12
taberna, -ae, *f.*, shop, 5
tabernāculum, -i, *n.*, tent, 18
tabula, -ae, *f.*, picture, painting, 28
tālis, **tāle**, such, 40
tālus, -i, *m.*, ankle bone, knuckle-bone, 11
 ***tam**, *adv.*, so, in such a degree, 47
 ***tamen**, *adv.*, nevertheless, still, 18
tandem, *adv.*, finally, at length, 7
 ***tangō**, -ere, **tetigi**, **tāctus**, touch, 32
 ***tantus**, -a, -um, so great, such, 47
 ***tardus**, -a, -um, slow, tardy, 21
Tarpeia, -ae, *f.*, Tarpeia, daughter of Tarpeius, 34
Tarpeius, **Tarpei**, *m.*, Tarpeius, the commander of the Roman soldiers who guarded the Capitol from the Sabines, 35
Tarquinius, **Tarquini**, *m.*, Tarquinius Superbus, the last king of Rome, 37
Tatius, **Tati**, *m.*, Tatius, king of the Sabines, 35
 †**tēctus**, -a, -um, covered, inclosed, 2
 ***tegō**, -ere, **tēxi**, **tēctus**, cover, protect, 25
 ***tēlum**, -i, *n.*, weapon, 18
 ***tempestās**, **tempestātis**, *f.*, storm, weather, 29

- templum**, -i, *n.*, temple, 14
 ***temptō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, try, attempt, 39
 ***tempus**, **temporis**, *n.*, time, 26
 ***teneō**, -ēre, **tenui**, —, hold, grasp, 12
Terentia, -ae, *f.*, Terentia, a Roman name, 4
terminus, -i, *m.*, end, 26
 ***terra**, -ae, *f.*, land, earth, 3
 ***terreō**, -ēre, **terruī**, **territus**, frighten, terrify, 39
terror, **terrōris**, *m.*, terror, great fear, 37
Tertia, -ae, *f.*, Tertia, a Roman name, 11
 ***tertius**, -a, -um, third, 36
Tiberis, **Tiberis**, *m.* (see § 567), the Tiber, 27
 ***timeō**, -ēre, **timui**, —, fear, 14
 †**timor**, **timōris**, *m.*, fear, 35
Titus, -i, *m.*, Titus, a Roman name, 31
tolerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, endure, 40
 ***tollō**, -ere, **sustuli**, **sublātus**, lift, carry away, remove, 47
 ***tot**, *indecl. adj.*, so many, 23
 ***tōtus**, -a, -um, whole, 36
 ***trādō**, -ere, **trādidī**, **trāditus**, hand over, surrender, betray, 32; in **custōdiam** **trādere**, to put under arrest, 32
 †**trādūcō**, -ere, **trādūxi**, **trāductus**, lead across (*with two accusatives*), 50
 ***trahō**, -ere, **trāxi**, **trāctus**, drag, draw, 17
 ***trāns**, *prep. with acc.*, across, 27
 †**trānseō**, -īre, **trānsii**, **trānsitūrus**, go over, cross, 45

- trānsillō*, -ire, *trānsilui*, —, leap across, jump over, 33
trecenti, -ae, -a, three hundred, 30
tredecim, *indecl. adj.*, thirteen, 36
**trēs*, *tria*, three, 36
**tribuō*, -ere, *tribui*, *tributus*, assign, attribute, 35
triplex, *gen. triplicis*, threefold, triple, 42
triumphālis, *triumphāle*, *triumphal*, 50
triumphus, -i, *m.*, triumph, 23; *triumphum agere*, to hold a triumph, 23
Troia, -ae, *f.*, Troy, 17
Troiānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Trojan; as a noun, *Troiānus*, -i, *m.*, a Trojan, 17
**tū*, *tui*, *personal pron.*, you (*sing.*), 11, 31
**tueor*, -ēri, *tātus sum*, watch over, guard, 50
Tullia, -ae, *f.*, Tullia, a Roman name, 3
**tum*, *adv.*, then, thereupon, 5
tunica, -ae, *f.*, tunic, 4
Turnus, -i, *m.*, Turnus, a king of the Rutulians, killed by Aeneas, 30
**turris*, *turris*, *turrium*, *f.*, tower, 35
**tūtus*, -a, -um, safe, secure, 38
**tuus*, -a, -um, *poss. adj.*, your (referring to one person), 11, 31

U

- *ubi*, *adv.*, where? 7; *conj.*, used with *perf. indic.*, when, 28
**ūllus*, -a, -um, any, 36
**ulterior*, -ius (*comparative adj.*), farther, further, 49
**ultrō*, *adv.*, voluntarily, 29

34

- umerus*, -i, *m.*, shoulder, 28
**umquam*, *adv.*, ever, 37
**ūnā*, *adv.*, together, 45; *ūnā cum*, along with, 45
**unde*, *adv.*, whence, 7
ūndecim, *indecl. adj.*, eleven, 36
ūndēviginti, *indecl. adj.*, nineteen, 36
**undique*, *adv.*, on all sides, from all parts, 35
**ūnus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, one, 36
urbānus, -a, -um, pertaining to the city, urban, 15
**urbs*, *urbis*, *urbium*, *f.*, city, 27
ūrna, -ae, *f.*, water jar, urn, 8
**ūsus*, *ūsus*, *m.*, use, service, experience, 41
**ut*, *conj.*, as, 33; *ut*, *conj.* (*with subjunctive*), in order that, 46
**uter*, *utra*, *utrum*, which (of two), 36
**uterque*, *utraque*, *utrumque*, each, both, 46
**ūtor*, *ūti*, *ūsus sum*, use, employ, 45
utrimque, *adv.*, on both sides, from each side, 30
ūva, -ae, *f.*, grape, 8
**uxor*, *uxoris*, *f.*, wife, 28

V

- *vadum*, -i, *n.*, shallow place, ford, 47
**vāllum*, -i, *n.*, rampart, fortification, 14
varius, -a, -um, various, manifold, 29
**vāstō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, lay waste, devastate, 50
**vel*, *conj.*, or, 41
**veniō*, -ire, *vēni*, *ventūrus*, come, 17

- *ventus, -i, *m.*, wind, 39
 verbum, -i, *n.*, word, 19; *isdem*
verbis reddere, to repeat, 43
- *vereor, -ēri, veritus *sum*, fear, 45
 Vergilius, Vergili, *m.*, Vergil, a
 Roman poet, 30
- †vērō, *adv.* (*postpositive*), truly,
 indeed, 19
- *vertō, -ere, verti, versus, turn,
 change, 42
- *vērus, -a, -um, true, 19
- †vespere, in the evening: *used as*
adv., 13
- Vesta, -ae, *f.*, Vesta, the goddess
 of household fire, 32. A fire
 was kept constantly burning in
 her temple in the Forum by the
 Vestal Virgins
- *vester, vestra, vestrum, *poss. adj.*,
 your (referring to two or more
 persons), 11, 31
- vestigium, vestigi, *n.*, trace, foot-
 print, 24
- veterānus, -a, -um, old, veteran,
 42
- vetō, -āre, vetui, vetitus, forbid, 40
- vēxillārius, -i, *m.*, a standard
 bearer, 43
- *via, -ae, *f.*, road, street, way, 5
 Via Appia, Viae Appiae, *f.*, the
 Appian Way, a well-known
 highway from Rome to the
 south of Italy, 10
- viātor, viātōris, *m.*, traveler, way-
 farer, 27
- victor, victōris, *m.*, victor, 24
- †victōria, -ae, *f.*, victory, 17
- *vicus, -i, *m.*, village, hamlet, 45
- *videō, -ēre, vidi, visus, see, 5; *in*
the passive, *videor, -ēri, visus
sum, be seen, seem, seem best,
 37
- *viginti, *indecl. adj.*, twenty, 36
- villa, -ae, *f.*, villa, country house,
 3
- *vincō, -ere, vici, victus, conquer,
 subdue, 17
- vinculum, -i, *n.*, bond, fetter,
 chain, 47
- *vir, viri, *m.*, man, 12
- *virēs, virium, *f. pl.*, strength, 34
- virgō, virginis, *f.*, maiden, 34
- *virtūs, virtūtis, *f.*, courage, valor,
 23
- *vis, —, vim, vi, *f.* (see § 566), force,
 violence, 49
- visiō, visiōnis, *f.*, vision, 37
- *vita, -ae, *f.*, life, 4
- *vivō, -ere, -vixi, victus, live, § 5
- *vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, call, sum-
 mon, 5
- volō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, fly, 21
- *volō, velle, volui, —, wish, be
 willing, 39
- *voluntās, voluntātis, *f.*, wish,
 good-will, 49
- †vōs, vestrum (vestri), *personal*
pron., you (*pl.*), 11, 31
- vulnerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, wound,
 injure, 18
- *vulnus, vulneris, *n.*, wound, 26
- vultur, vulturis, *m.*, vulture, 33

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

Numbers refer to chapters

A

ability, ingenium, ingenī, *n.*, 34
able, be able, possum, posse, potuī,
 —, 39
about, dē, *prep. with abl.*, 11; cir-
 citer, *adv.*, 42
above, super, *prep. with acc.*, 26
abundance, cōpia, -ae, *f.*, 14
Acca, Acca, -ae, *f.*, 32
accomplish, perficiō, -ere, perfēcī,
 perfectus, 40; cōficiō, -ere,
 cōfēcī, cōfectus, 46
(account), on account of, propter,
prep. with acc., 37; ob, *prep.*
with acc., 47
across, trāns, *prep. with acc.*, 27
add, addō, -ere, addidī, additus, 36
advise, moneō, -ēre, monuī, moni-
 tus, 19; admoneō, -ēre, admonuī,
 admonitus, 29
Aeneas, Aenēās, Aenēae, *m. (reg.*
except in nom. sing.), 28
afflict, afficiō, -ere, affēcī, affectus,
 43
after, post, *prep. with acc.*, 26;
 postquam, *conj. with perfect*
indicative, 30
afterwards, postea, *adv.*, 8; deinde,
adv., 32
again, iterum, *adv.*, 7
against, contrā, *prep. with acc.*, 49
aid, auxilium, auxiliī, *n.*, 14
Alba Longa, Alba Longa, Albae
 Longae, *f.*, 30

all, omnis, -e, 34; (whole), tōtus,
 -a, -um, 36; cūctus, -a, -um, 38
ally, socius, soci, *m.*, 17
almost, paene, *adv.*, 6; ferē, *adv.*, 12
already, iam, *adv.*, 40
also, quoque, *conj. (placed after em-*
phatic word), 1; etiam, *adv.*, 14
altar, āra, -ae, *f.*, 14
although, quamquam, *conj.*, 40;
 cum, *conj. with subjunctive*, 49
always, semper, *adv.*, 4
American, Americānus, -a, -um, 1
among, apud, *prep. with acc.*, 18
Amulius, Amūlius, Amūli, *m.*, 32
ancient, antiquus, -a, -um, 2
and, et, *conj.*, 1; -que, *conj.*
(enclitic), 12; atque (ac), *conj.*,
 48; **and not**, neque, *conj.*, 2; **and**
that . . . not, neu, *conj.*, 46; **and**
so, itaque, *conj.*, 5
angry, Irātus, -a, -um, 13
animal, animal, animālis, animā-
 lium, *n.*, 34
Anna, Anna, -ae, *f.*, 6
announce, nūtiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,
 12
(annoyed), to be greatly annoyed,
 affici magnō dolōre, 43
answer, respondeō, -ēre, respondi,
 respōsus, 12
any, ūllus, -a, -um, 36
anyone, quisquam, quicquam, 46
approach, appropinquō, -āre, -āvī,
 -ātus, 41

approve, probō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 40

arena, arēna, -ae, *f.*, 21

armed, armātus, -a, -um, 12

armor, arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, 14; armātūra, -ae, *f.*, 41

arms, arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, *defensive armor, as lorica, galea, scutum, gladius*, 14

army, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*, 41

around, circum, *prep. with acc.*, 13

arouse, incitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 85 (arranged), to be arranged differently, aliter sē habere, 42

(arrest), put under arrest, in custodiam tradere, 32

arrival, adventus, -ūs, *m.*, 45

arrive, perveniō, -ire, pervēni, perventurus, 28

arrow, sagitta, -ae, *f.*, 18

art, ars, artis, artium, *f.*, 39

as, ut, *conj.*, 33

as soon as, simul atque, *conj.*, 50

ask, rogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 12; querō, -ere, quaesivi, quaesitus, 46

assault, oppugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 17; take by assault, expugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 50

assemble, conveniō, -ire, convēni, conventurus, 34

assign, tribuō, -ere, tribui, tributus, 35

at first, primō, *adv.*, 27; at length, tandem, *adv.*, 7; demum, *adv.*, 39; at the same time, simul, *adv.*, 50

Athens, Athēnae, -arum, *f. pl.*, 9

attack, impetus, -ūs, *m.*, 41; make an attack or charge, impetum facere, 41; aggredior, -gredi, aggressus sum, 50

attendant, paedagōgus, -i, *m.*, 13 (attention), pay attention, operam dare, 43

augury, augurium, auguri, *n.*, 33; take the augury, augurium capere (or agere), 33

Aulus, Aulus, -i, *m.*, 12

authority, auctoritās, auctoritātis, *f.*, 23

auxiliary troops, auxilia, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, 14

Aventine (hill), Aventinus, -i, *m.*, 33

await, expectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 21

B

bad, malus, -a, -um, 32

badly, male, *adv.*, 36

(baggage), heavy baggage, impedimenta, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, 42

band (of soldiers), manus, manūs, *f.*, 41

bank (of river), ripa, -ae, *f.*, 32

barbarian, *adj.*, barbarus, -a, -um; *noun*, a barbarian, barbarus, -i, *m.*, 22

basket, little, corbula, -ae, *f.*, 4

battle, pugna, -ae, *f.*, 12; proelium, proeli, *n.*, 14

be, sum, esse, fui, futurus, 1; be able, possum, posse, potui, —, 39; be far from, absum, abesse, āfui, āfuturus, 27; be present, adsum, adesse, adfui, adfuturus, 33

bear, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, 43

beast of burden, iumentum, -i, *n.*, 46

beat, castigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 13

beautiful, pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, 3, 13

because, quod, *conj.*, 2
 before, ante, *prep. with acc.*, 26
 begin, incipio, -ere, incipio, incep-
 tus, 43; committō, -ere, com-
 missi, commissus, 22; begin battle,
 proelium committere, 22; began,
 coepi, coepisse, coeptus, 49
 beginning, principium, principi, n.,
 24
 behind, post, *prep. with acc.*, 26
 believe, credō, -ere, credidi, credi-
 tus, 44
 bench, subsellium, subseili, n., 21
 benefit, beneficium, benefici, n., 40
 besiege, obsideō, -ēre, obsedi,
 obsessus, 40
 bestow, dō, dare, dedi, datus, 5
 betray, tradō, -ere, tradidi, tra-
 ditus, 32
 between, inter, *prep. with acc.*, 19
 big, magnus, -a, -um, 1
 bird, avis, avis, avium, f., 33
 bitterly, acriter, *adv.*, 36
 blame, reprehendō, -ere, reprehendi,
 reprehensus, 36
 boat, little boat, nāvicula, -ae, f., 7
 body, corpus, corporis, n., 25
 bold, audāx, *gen.*, audācis, 34
 boldly, audacter, *adv.*, 40
 boldness, audācia, -ae, f., 37
 book, liber, libri, m., 12
 both, ambō, ambae, ambō, 36;
 both . . . and, et . . . et, *conjs.*,
 22
 (bottom), the bottom of the moun-
 tain, infimus mōns, 38
 boy, puer, pueri, m., 12
 branch, rāmus, -i, m., 32
 brave, fortis, -e, 34
 bravery, fortitūdō, fortitūdinis, f.,
 44

break through, perrumpō, -ere, per-
 rūpi, perruptus, 49
 bribe, largior, -iri, -itus sum, 50
 bridge, pōns, pontis, pontium, m.,
 37
 bright, clārus, -a, -um, 7
 bring, portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 4;
 ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, 43; bring
 in, inferō, -ferre, intuli, inlātus,
 43; bring to, afferō, -ferre, attuli,
 allātus, 43; bring up the rear,
 agmen claudere, 42
 Britain, Britannia, -ae, f., 14
 British, Britannus, -a, -um, 14
 Briton, Britannus, -i, m., 14
 brooch, fibula, -ae, f., 21
 brother, frāter, frātris, m., 24
 build, aedificō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 17
 building, aedificium, aedifici, n., 21
 built upon piles, sublicius, -a, -um,
 37
 burdened, impeditus, -a, -um, 38
 burn, incendō, -ere, incendi, incen-
 sus, 17
 business, negōtium, negōti, n., 21
 but, sed, *conj.*, 1; autem, *conj.*
 (*postpositive*), 28; at, *conj.*, 49
 buy, emō, -ere, ēmi, ēemptus, 46
 by, ā (ab), *prep. with abl.*, 18

C

Caesar, Caesar, Caesaris, m., 24
 call, vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 5;
 call out, clamō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus,
 12; call by name, appellō, -āre,
 -āvi, -ātus, 27; call together,
 convocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 45;
 call upon, invocō, -āre, -āvi,
 -ātus, 36
 Camilla, Camilla, -ae, f., 5
 camp, castra, -ōrum, n. pl., 14

- can, possum, posse, potui, —, 39
 Capitoline (hill), Capitōlium, Capitōli, *n.*, 35
 captive, captivus, -a, -um, 18
 capture (*a town*), expugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 50
 care for, cūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 5
 carefully, diligenter, *adv.*, 11
 carry, portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 4;
 carry off, abducō, -ere, abduxī, abductus, 50; carry on (*war*), gerō, -ere, gessi, gestus (*with bellum*), 17
 Carthage, Karthāgō, Karthāginis, *f.*, 29
 cart, carrus, -i, *m.*, 46
 cause, *noun*, causa, -ae, *f.*, 19; *verb*, efficiō, -ere, effeci, effectus, 47
 cavalry, equitēs, equitum, *m. pl.*, 23; equitatus, -ūs, *m.*, 41
 celebrate, celebrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 20
 centurion, centuriō, centuriōnis, *m.*, 41
 certainly, certē, *adv.*, 3
 chain, vinculum, -i, *n.*, 47
 chair, sella, -ae, *f.*, 1
 charioteer, aurīga, -ae, *m.*, 20
 chest, arca, -ae, *f.*, 32
 chief, princeps, principis, *m.*, 23
 children, liberī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, 15
 choose, legō, -ere, lēgi, lēctus, 21;
 delīgō, -ere, delēgi, delēctus, 24
 circle, orbis, orbis, orbium, *m.*, 41
 circus, circus, -i, *m.*, 20; Circus Maximus, Circus Maximus, Circi Maximī, *m.*, 20
 citizen, civis, civis, civium, *m. or f.*, 27
 city, *noun*, urbs, urbis, urbium, *f.*, 27; *adj.*, urbānus, -a, -um, 15
 cliff, rūpēs, rūpis, rūpium, *f.*, 38
 climb, ascendō, -ere, ascendi, ascēsus, 17
 cloak, palla, -ae, *f.*, 8
 close, claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus, 42
 closed, clausus, -a, -um, 1
 cohort, cohors, cohortis, cohortium, *f.*, 42
 collect, cōgō, -ere, cōēgi, cōactus, 17; cōferō, -ferre, contulī, cōlātus, 43
 color, color, colōris, *m.*, 25
 column, columna, -ae, *f.*, 3
 come, veniō, -ire, vēnī, ventūrus, 17
 command, mandātum, -i, *n.*, 29
 commander, imperātor, imperātoris, *m.*, 24
 commentaries, commentārii, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, 43
 common, communis, commune, 34
 companion, socius, soci, *m.*, 17; comes, comitis, *m.*, 38
 compel, cōgō, -ere, cōēgi, cōactus, 17
 composition, opus, operis, *n.*, 36
 condemn, damnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 39
 confer, conloquor, conloquī, conlocūtus sum, 48
 conquer, vincō, -ere, vici, victus, 17; superō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 41
 consider, cōgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 35
 conspiracy, coniūratiō, coniūratiōnis, *f.*, 44
 consul, cōsul, cōsulis, *m.*, 24
 contest, certāmen, certāminis, *n.*, 25
 control, rule, regō, -ere, rēxi, rēctus, 19
 Cornelia, Cornēlia, -ae, *f.*, 1

Cornelian, Cornēliānus, -a, -um, 3
Cornelius, Cornēlius, Cornēli, *m.*,

12

corselet, lōrica, -ae, *f.*, 23

cottage, casa, -ae, *f.*, 3

council, concilium, concilī, *n.*, 45

(country), native country, patria,
-ae, *f.*, 6; (*opposite of city*), rūs,

rūris, *n.*, 9; in the country, rūrī,

9

courage, virtūs, virtūtis, *f.*, 23

cover, tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctus, 25

crashing, fragor, fragōris, *m.*, 38

Crete, Crēta, -ae, *f.*, 6

Creusa, Creūsa, -ae, *f.*, 28

cross, go across, trānseō, trānsire,
trānsī, trānsitūrus, 45

cruel, crūdēlis, -e, 37

cry, lacrimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 13

custody, custōdia, -ae, *f.*, 32

custom, mōs, mōris, *m.*, 24; Insti-
tūtum, -ī, *n.*, 43

cut down, occidō, -ere, occidī,
occisus, 30

D

Daedalus, Daedalus, -ī, *m.*, 39

daily, cotidie, *adv.*, 6

danger, periculum, -ī, *n.*, 14

dare, audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, 49

daring, audāx, *gen.* audācis, 34

daughter, filia, -ae, *f.*, 3

day, diēs, diēī, *m.* or *f.* (see § 439), 42
(daybreak), at daybreak, primā

lūce, 33

dear, cārus, -a, -um, 6

death, mors, mortis, mortium, *f.*, 37

decide, cōstituō, -ere, cōstituī,
cōstitutus, 29; statuō, -ere,

statuī, statutus, 48

decorate, ōrnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 4

decree, cōsciscō, -ere, cōscivī,
cōscitus, 44

deed, factum, -ī, *n.*, 34

defend, dēfendō, -ere, dēfendī,
dēfensus, 38

defile, angustiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, 45

delay, *noun*, mora, -ae, *f.*, 37; *verb*,
moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, 50

delight, dēlectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 2

demand, postulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus,
35

den, latibulum, -ī, *n.*, 32

deny, negō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 45

depart, exeō, -īre, exī, exitūrus, 43

departure, profectiō, profectiōnis,
f., 45

desire, dēsiderō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 5

destroy, dēleō, -ēre, dēlēvī, dēlētus,
28; cōsumō, -ere, cōsumpsi,

cōsumptus, 40

devastate, vāstō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus,
50

devote, dēvoveō, -ēre, dēvōvī,
dēvōtus, 31

devoted to the gods, pius, -a, -um,
28

Diana, Diāna, -ae, *f.*, goddess of the
moon, 5

Dido, Didō, Didōnis, *f.*, queen of
Carthage, 29

die, dē vitā dēcēdere, 44

differ, differō, -ferre, distulī, dilā-
tus, 43; differ from one another,

inter sē differre, 43

differently, aliter, *adv.*, 42; be
arranged differently, aliter sē

habēre, 42

difficult, difficilis, -e, 34

difficulty, difficultās, difficultātis,
f., 44

diligence, diligētia, -ae, *f.*, 31

diligent, diligēns, *gen. diligentis*, 36
 diligently, diligenter, *adv.*, 11
 dinner, cēna, -ae, *f.*, 7
 direct, regō, -ere, rēxi, rēctus, 19
 direction, pars, partis, partium, *f.*, 30
 disagree, dissentiō, -ire, dissēnsi, dissēnsus, 33
 disclose, ostendō, -ere, ostendi, ostentus, 46; ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 47
 discord, discordia, -ae, *f.*, 19
 dismiss, dimittō, -ere, dimisi, dimissus, 50
 dissolve, solvō, -ere, solvi, solūtus, 39
 distinguish, cernō, -ere, crēvi, (crētus), 25
 disturb, perturbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 48
 ditch, fossa, -ae, *f.*, 18
 diverse, diversus, -a, -um, 29
 divide, dividō, -ere, divisi, divisus, 26
 do, agō, agere, ēgi, āctus, 17; faciō, -ere, fēci, factus, 22
 door, iānuā, -ae, *f.*, 1
 doubt, dubitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 49
 doubtful, dubius, -a, -um, 44
 doubtless, sine dubiō, 44
 drag, trahō, -ere, trāxi, trāctus, 17
 draw up, instruō, -ere, instrūxi, instructus, 42
 drive, agō, -ere, -ēgi, āctus, 17; drive out, pellō, -ere, pepuli, pulsus, 18; expello, -ere, expuli, expulsus, 37
 driver, auriga, -ae, *m.*, 20
 Dumnorix, Dumnorix, Dumnorigis, *m.*, 44
 dwelling, domicilium, domicili, *n.*, 14

E

each, uterque, utraque, utrumque (§§ 576, 577), 46; from each side, utrimque, 30
 eager, cupidus, -a, -um (*with gen.*), 81; be eager, studeō, -ēre, studei, —, 11
 early, mātūrē, *adv.*, 17
 easily, facile, *adv.*, 40
 effort, labor, labōris, *m.*, 49
 either . . . or, aut . . . aut, *conjs.*, 25
 elder, maior natū, 32
 elect, dēligō, -ere, dēlēgi, dēlēctus, 24
 embassy, lēgatiō, -ōnis, *f.*, 46
 emperor, imperātor, imperātōris, *m.*, 24
 encamp, cōnsidō, -ere, cōnsēdi, cōnsessurus, 50
 end, limit, finis, finis, finium, 36; terminus, -i, *m.*, 26
 endure, tolerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 40
 enemy, an enemy, hostis, hostis, *m.*; the enemy, hostēs, hostium, *m. pl.*, 27
 enroll, cōscribō, -ere, cōscripsi, cōscriptus, 42
 enter, intrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 5
 envoy, lēgātus, -i, *m.*, 12
 equal, pār, *gen. paris*, 41
 escape, effugiō, -ere, effūgi, —, 39; sē ēripere, 47
 especially, maximē, *adv.*, 6
 establish, cōstituō, -ere, cōstitui, cōstitutus, 29; condō, -ere, condidi, conditus, 30
 Etruscan, *adj.*, Etrūscus, -a, -um; *noun*, an Etruscan, Etrūscus, -i, *m.*, 37
 even, etiam, *adv.*, 14
 evening, in the evening, vespere, *adv.*, 13

ever, *umquam*, *adv.*, 37
 every day, *cotidiē*, *adv.*, 6; every
 year, *quotannis*, *adv.*, 22
 exchange, *inter sē dare*, 42
 exhibition, *spectāculum*, -i, *n.*, 21
 experience, *ūsus*, -ūs, *m.*, 41
 express (*an opinion*), *dīco*, -ere,
dixi, *dictus*, 21
 extend, *pertineō*, -ēre, *pertinui*,
 —, 40
 eye, *oculus*, -i, *m.*, 37

F

face, *ōs*, *ōris*, *n.*, 27; to face about,
sē vertere, 42
 faith, *fidēs*, -ei, *f.*, 47
 fall (*in battle*), *cadō*, -ere, *cecidī*,
cāsūrus, 30
 fame, *fāma*, -ae, *f.*, 14
 famine, *famēs*, *famis*, *f.*, 40
 famous, *clārus*, -a, -um, 7
 far, *longē*, *adv.*, 27; far distant,
extrēmus, -a, -um, 8
 farmer, *agricola*, -ae, *m.*, 3
 farther, *ulterior*, *ulterius*, 49
 fast, *celeriter*, *adv.*, 14
 fate, *fātum*, -i, *n.*, 28
 father, *pater*, *patris*, *m.*, 24
 favor, *grātia*, -ae, *f.*, 31
 fear, *noun*, *timor*, *timōris*, *m.*, 35;
metus, -ūs, *m.*, 46; *verb*, *timeō*,
 -ēre, *timui*, —, 14; *vereor*,
verērī, *veritus sum*, 45
 feather, *penna*, -ae, *f.*, 39
 feel, *sentiō*, -ire, *sēnsi*, *sēnsus*, 44
 few, *pauci*, -ae, -a, *pl.*, 6
 field, *ager*, *agri*, *m.*, 13
 fierce, *ācer*, *ācris*, *ācre*, 34
 fight, *pugnō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 12;
contendō, -ere, *contendī*, *con-*
tentus, 37

fill, *compleō*, -ēre, *complēvī*, *com-*
plētus, 25
 finally, *tandem*, *adv.*, 7
 find, *inveniō*, -ire, *invēnī*, *inventus*,
 28; find out, *reperiō*, -ire, *re-*
peri, *reperitus*, 48
 finger, *digitus*, -i, *m.*, 36
 fire, *ignis*, *ignis*, *ignium*, *m.*, 28
 first, *primus*, -a, -um, 24
 flee, *fugiō*, -ere, *fūgi*, *fugitūrus*, 28
 fleet, *classis*, *classis*, *classium*, *f.*, 27
 flight, *fuga*, -ae, *f.*, 33
 flow, *fluō*, -ere, *flūxi*, *flūxus*, 27;
 flow in, *inflūō*, -ere, *inflūxi*,
inflūxus, 50
 fly, *volō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 21
 follow, *sequor*, *sequi*, *secūtus sum*,
 50; follow up, *exsequor*, *exse-*
qui, *exsecūtus sum*, 47
 foot, *pēs*, *pedis*, *m.*; to fight afoot,
pedibus pugnāre, 23; foot sol-
 dier, *pedes*, *peditis*, *m.*, 23; at the
 foot of, *sub*, *prep. with abl.*, 32
 for, *prō*, *prep. with abl.*, 18; *nam*,
conj., 19; *enim*, *conj. (postposi-*
tive), 50
 forbid, *vetō*, -āre, *vetui*, *vetitus*, 40
 forces, *cōpiae*, -ārum, *f. pl.*;
 auxiliary forces, *auxilia*, -ōrum,
n. pl., 14
 ford, *vadum*, -i, *n.*, 47
 forest, *silva*, -ae, *f.*, 3
 forgetful, *oblītus*, -a, -um, *with*
gen., 31
 former, the former, *ille*, *illa*, *illud*,
 33; the former . . . the latter, *ille*,
illa, *illud* . . . *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*, 33
 formerly, *quondam*, *adv.*, 44
 fortification, *mūnitō*, *mūnitōnis*,
f., 35
 fortify, *mūniō*, -ire, -ivī, -itus, 17

fortune, *fortūna*, -ae, *f.*, 40
 forum, *forum*, -i, *n.*, 20
 found, *condō*, -ere, *condidi*, *conditus*, 30
 four-horse team, *quadrigae*, -ārum, *f. pl.*, 21
 free, *liber*, *libera*, *liberum*, 15; set free, *liberō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 38
 frequent, *crēber*, *crēbra*, *crēbrum*, 32
 friend, *amicus*, -ae, *f.*, 11; *amicus*, -i, *m.*, 13
 friendly, *amicus*, -a, -um, 6
 friendship, *amicitia*, -ae, *f.*, 44
 frighten, *terreō*, -ēre, *terruī*, *territus*, 39
 from, away from, *ā* (*ab*), *prep. with abl.*, 7; down from, *dē*, *prep. with abl.*, 11; out from, *ex* (*ē*), *prep. with abl.*, 7
 full, *plēnus*, -a, -um, 4
 further, *ulterior*, -ius, 49
 furthermore, *praeterea*, *adv.*, 33

G

Galba, *Galba*, -ae, *m.*, 5
 Gallic, *Gallus*, -a, -um, 22; *Gallus*, -a, -um, 43
 game, *lūdus*, -i, *m.*, 13
 garden, *hortus*, -i, *m.*, 12
 garland, *corōna*, -ae, *f.*, 4
 garrison, *praesidium*, *praesidi*, *n.*, 41
 gate, *porta*, -ae, *f.*, 17
 Gaul (*the country*), *Gallia*, -ae, *f.*, 12
 Gaul, a Gaul, *Gallus*, -i, *m.*, 22
 German, *adj.*, *Germānus*, -a, -um; *noun*, a German, *Germānus*, -i, *m.*, 22
 gift, *dōnum*, -i, *n.*, 17

girl, *puella*, -ae, *f.*, 1
 give, *dō*, *dare*, *dedī*, *datus*, 5; give back, *reddo*, -ere, *reddidī*, *redditus*, 43
 gladiatorial, *gladiatōrius*, -a, -um, 25
 gladly, *adv.*, *libenter*, 8
 glory, *glōria*, -ae, *f.*, 21
 go, *eō*, *Ire*, *ī* or *ivī*, *itūrus*, 43; go into, *intrō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 5; go out, *excēdō*, -ere, *excessī*, *excessūrus*, 40; *exeō*, -ire, *exiī*, *exitūrus*, 43; *ēgredior*, -gredi, *ēgressus sum*, 48
 goal, *mēta*, -ae, *f.*, 26
 god, *deus*, -i, *m.*, 13
 goddess, *dea*, -ae, *f.*, 4
 gold, *aurum*, -i, *n.*, 14
 golden, *aureus*, -a, -um, 35
 good, *bonus*, -a, -um, 1
 good will, *voluntās*, *voluntātis*, *f.*, 49
 grain, *frūmentum*, -i, *n.*, 14
 grandfather, *avus*, -i, *m.*, 32
 grape, *ūva*, -ae, *f.*, 8
 grasp, *teneō*, -ēre, *tenuī*, —, 12
 grave, *gravis*, -e, 41
 great, *magnus*, -a, -um, 1
 greatest, *maximus*, -a, -um, 19
 greatly, *maximē*, 6
 Greece, *Graecia*, -ae, *f.*, 6
 Greek, *adj.*, *Graecus*, -a, -um; *noun*, a Greek, *Graecus*, -i, *m.*, 17
 greet, *salūtō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 8
 grief, *dolor*, *dolōris*, *m.*, 34
 grown up, *adultus*, -a, -um, 12
 guard, *verb.*, *custōdiō*, -ire, -ivī, -ītus, 19; *tueor*, -ēri, *tūtus sum*, 50; *noun*, *custōs*, *custōdis*, *m.*, 39

H

hail, salūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 8;
meaning how do you do? salvē
 (sing.), salvēte (pl.), 11
hand, manus, -ūs, f., 41; **hand over**,
 mandō, -āre -āvī, -ātus, 50
hang, hang down, pendeō, -ēre,
 pependī, —, 41
happen, fiō, fierī, —, —, 43;
 accidō, -ere, accidī, —, 47
happy, laetus, -a, -um, 4
harin, noceō, -ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus
 (with dat.), 48
hasten, properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 7;
 contendō, -ere, contendī, con-
 tentus, 37
haughty, superbus, -a, -um, 27
have, habeo, -ēre, habuī, habitus, 2
he, is, 32: *often not expressed*
head, caput, capitis, n., 26
hear, heed, audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, 17
Helen, Helena, -ae, f., 18
helmet, galea, -ae, f., 22
help, noun, auxilium, auxili, n., 14;
verb, adiuvō, -āre, adiuvī, adiūtus,
 29; iuvō, -āre, iuvī, iūtus, 39
Helvetian, adj., Helvēticus, -a, -um,
 24; *noun*, a Helvetian, Helvētius,
 Helvētī, m., 42
hem in, contineō, -ēre, continuī,
 contentus, 32
her, reflexive, suus, -a, -um, 31; *not*
reflexive, eius, 32
here, in this place, hīc, adv., 19
herself, reflexive, suī, 31; *intensive*,
 ipse, 33
high, altus, -a, -um, 13
hill, collis, collis, collium, m., 42
himself, reflexive, suī, 31; *intensive*,
 ipse, 33
hinder, impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, 17

hindrance, impedimentum, -ī, n., 42
his, reflexive, suus, -a, -um, 31; *not*
reflexive, eius, 32
hither and thither, hūc et illūc, 36
hold, teneō, -ēre, tenuī, —, 12;
hold fast, contineō, -ēre, con-
 tinuī, contentus, 32
home, domicilium, domicilī, n., 14;
 domus, -ūs, f., 9; **at home**, domī;
from home, domō; **home (home-**
ward), domum, 9
honor, honor, honoris, m., 40
hope, verb, spēō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,
 44; *noun*, spēs, -ei, f., 46
Horatius, Horātius, Horātī, m., 37
horn, cornū, cornūs, n., 41
horse, equus, -ī, m., 12; **horseman**,
 eques, equitis, m., 23; **fight on**
horseback, ab equō pugnāre, 23
hostage, obses, obsidis, m. or f., 23
hour, hōra, -ae, f., 36
house, domus, domūs, f., 41
how do you do, salvē (sing.), salvēte
 (pl.), 11
how great? quantus, -a, -um, 48
how many? quot (*indeclinable*), 36
however, autem, conj., 28
hurry, properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 7
husband, coniūnx, coniugis, m., 30

I

I, ego, mei, 11, 31: *often not ex-*
pressed
Icarus, Icarus, -ī, m., 39
if, si, conj., 13
image, imāgō, imāginis, f., 26
immediately, statim, adv., 32
immortal, immortalis, -e, 40
in, in, prep. with abl., 7; **in all**,
 omnīnō, adv., 45; **in front of**,
 ante, prep. with acc., 26

inclosed, tēctus, -a, -um, 2
 increase, augeō, -ēre, auxi, auctus, 27
 indeed, vērō, *adv.*, 19; quidem, 36
 indicate, significō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 35
 infantry, peditēs, peditum, *m. pl.*, 23
 influence, adducō, -ere, adduxi, adductus, 38
 inform, certiōrem facere, 48
 inhabit, incolō, -ere, incolui, —, 43
 inhabitant, incola, -ae, *m. or f.*, 8
 inside, intrā, *prep. with acc.*, 14
 insult, iniūria, -ae, *f.*, 37
 intelligence, sapientia, -ae, *f.*, 9
 intercept, intercipiō, -ere, intercēpi, interceptus, 22
 into, in, *prep. with acc.*, 8
 inviolable, inviolātus, -a, -um, 27
 iron, ferrum, -i, *n.*, 38
 island, insula, -ae, *f.*, 6
 it, id, 32: *often not expressed*
 Italian, Italicus, -a, -um, 8
 Italy, Italia, -ae, *f.*, 6

J

jar, amphora, -ae, *f.*, 5; ūrna, -ae, *f.*, 8
 javelin, pilum, -i, *n.*, 22
 join, iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūctus, 46;
 coniungo, -ere, coniūnxī, con-
 iūctus, 48
 joint, common, commūnis, -e, 34
 joy, gaudium, gaudi, *n.*, 26
 joyfully, laetē, *adv.*, 40
 judge, *noun*, iūdex, iūdicis, *m.*, 26;
 verb, iūdicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 50
 Julia, Iūlia, -ae, *f.*, 1
 jump over, trānsiliō, -ire, trānsilui, —, 33

K

keep away, arceō, arcēre, arcui, —, 29
 keep off, prohibeō, -ēre, prohibui, prohibitus, 33
 kill, necō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 18;
 interficiō, -ere, interfēcī, inter-
 fectus, 26; occidō, -ere, occidi, occisus, 30
 kind, *noun*, genus, generis, *n.*, 26;
 adj., amicus, -a, -um, 6; benignus, -a, -um, 4
 kindly, benignē, *adv.*, 29
 kindred, familia, -ae, *f.*, 47
 king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*, 23
 kingdom, rēgnum, -i, *n.*, 32
 know, sciō, -ire, -ivi, -itus; not to
 know, nesciō, -ire, -ivi, —, 36

L

Labienus, Labiēnus, -i, *m.*, 12, 50
 lack, inopia, -ae, *f.*, 40
 Laeca, Laeca, -ae, *m.*, 7
 lake, lacus, -ūs, *m.*, 43
 land, terra, -ae, *f.*, 3; on land and
 sea, terrā marique, 27
 language, lingua, -ae, *f.*, 11
 large, magnus, -a, -um, 1
 Lars Porsena, Lārs Porsena, Lārtis
 Porsenae, *m.*, 37
 last, *adj.*, postrēmus, -a, -um, 37;
 adv., proximē, 42
 later on, postea, *adv.*, 8; a little
 later, paulō post, 32
 Latin, Latinus, -a, -um, 11
 Latinus, Latinus, -i, *m.*, 30
 latter, the latter, hic, haec, hoc;
 the former . . . the latter, ille,
 illa, illud . . . hic, haec, hoc, 33
 Laurentum, Laurentum, -i, *n.*, 30

Lavinia, *Lāvinia*, -ae, *f.*, daughter of *Latinus*, wife of *Aeneas*, 30

Lavinium, *Lāvinium*, *Lāvinī*, *n.*, a city of *Latium* founded by *Aeneas*, 30

law, *lēx*, *lēgis*, *f.*, 23

lazy, *piger*, *pigra*, *pigrum*, 13

lead, *dūcō*, -ere, *dūxi*, *ductus*, 17;

lead out, *ēdūcō*, -ere, *ēdūxi*,

ēductus, 42; lead across, *trā-*

dūcō, -ere, *trādūxi*, *trāductus*, 50

leader, *dux*, *ducis*, *m.*, 23; *prin-*
ceps, *principis*, *m.*, 23

leadership, *principātus*, -ūs, *m.*, 44

league, *coniūratiō*, -ōnis, *f.*, 44

leap down, *dēsiliō*, -ire, *dēsilui*,
dēsultus, 38

learn about, *cognōscō*, -ere, *cog-*
nōvi, *cognitus*, 29

leave, *relinquō*, -ere, *reliqui*, *relic-*
tus, 17

left, *sinister*, *sinistra*, *sinistrum*;
left hand, *sinistra*, -ae, *f.*, 23

legion, *legiō*, *legiōnis*, *f.*, 24

legionary, *legiōnārius*, -a, -um, 41

leisure, *ōtium*, *ōti*, *n.*, 21

lest, *nē*, *conj.*, 46

level, *aequus*, -a, -um, 33

liberty, *libertās*, *libertātis*, *f.*, 33

lieutenant, *lēgātus*, -i, *m.*, 12

life, *vita*, -ae, *f.*, 4

light, *noun*, *lūx*, *lūcis*, *f.*, 33; *adj.*,
levis, -e, 39

light up, *illūminō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus,
26

like, *verb*, *amō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 2;
adj., *similis*, -e, 37; like to, with

a verb, use *libenter*, *gladly*, 8

line of battle, *aciēs*, *aciēi*, *f.*, 42

line of march, *agmen*, *agminis*, *n.*,
42

listen to, *audiō*, -ire, -ivi, -itus, 17

litter, *lectica*, -ae, *f.*, 10

little, *adj.*, *parvus*, -a, -um, 1; *adv.*,

paulō, 32

live, *habitō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 7;

incolō, -ere, *incolui*, —, 43

location, *locus*, -i, *m.*; (*loca*, -ōrum,
n. pl.), 33

look at, *spectō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 5

long, *longus*, -a, -um, 2

long for, *dēsiderō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus,
5; *cupiō*, -ere, *cupivi*, *cupitus*, 33

longing, *cupiditās*, *cupiditātis*, *f.*,
35

lose, *āmittō*, -ere, *āmisi*, *āmissus*, 28

love, *verb*, *amō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 2;
noun, *amor*, *amōris*, *m.*, 33

lowest, *infimus*, -a, -um, 38

Laelius, *Lūcius*, *Lūci*, *m.*, 12

M

magistrate, *magistrātus*, -ūs, *m.*, 47

maid, *maidservant*, *ancilla*, -ae,
f., 3

maiden, *virgō*, *virginis*, *f.*, 34

make, *faciō*, -ere, *fēci*, *factus*, 22;
make war, *bellum inferre* (*with*
dat.), 43

man, *vir*, *virī*, *m.*, 12; *homō*,
hominis, *m.*, 24

manservant, *servus*, -i, *m.*, 12

many, *multi*, -ae, -a, 3

Marcella, *Marcella*, -ae, *f.*, 4

march, *noun*, *iter*, *itineris*, *n.*, 26;
verb, *iter facere*, 26

Marcus, *Mārcus*, -i, *m.*, 12

mark out, *dēsignō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus,
33

marriage, *mātrimōnium*, -i, *n.*, 30

marry, in *mātrimōnium dūcere*, 30

Mars, *Mārs*, *Mārtis*, *m.*, 24

master (*of a house*), dominus, -i, m., 12; (*of a school*), magister, magistrī, m., 13

matron, mātŕōna, -ae, f., 11

matter, thing, rēs, rei, f., 42

meanwhile, in the meantime, interim, adv., 17

memory, memoria, -ae, f., 36

merchant, mercātor, mercātōris, m., 26

merchant ship, onerāria, -ae, f., 8

Mercury, Mercurius, Mercurī, m., 13

messenger, nūntius, nūntī, m., 12

middle, middle of, medius, -a, -um, 26

(midnight), at midnight, mediā nocte, 33

mile, a mile, mille passūs; miles, milia passuum, 42

military, militāris, -e, 42; military science, rēs militāris, 42

mind, animus, -i, m., 36

mindful, memor, gen., memoris, 36

mistress, domina, -ae, f., 3

modern, novus, -a, -um, 2

money, pecūnia, -ae, f., 5

month, mēnsis, mēnsis, mēnsium, m., 29

moon, lūna, -ae, f., 5

more, magis, adv., 38

(morning), in the morning, māne, adv., 11

mother, māter, mātŕis, f., 24

mountain, mōns, montis, montium, m., 33

mouth, ōs, ōris, n., 27

move, addūcō, -ere, addūxī, adductus, 33; moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, 35; permoveō, -ēre, permōvī, permōtus, 44

much, adj., multus, -a, -um, 3; adv., multō, 40

Mucius, Mūcius, Mūci, m., 40

multitude, multitūdō, multitudinis, f., 24

my, meus, -a, -um, 11, 31

myself, reflexive, mei, 31; intensive, ipse, -a, -um, 33

N

name, nōmen, nōminis, n., 26

narrow, angustus, -a, -um, 21

nation, nātiō, nātiōnis, f., 41

native land, patria, -ae, f., 6

nature, nātūra, -ae, f., 44; natural features, nātūra locī, 44

near, prope, prep. with acc., 21; adv., 40; near by, very near, proximus, -a, -um, 6

nearer, propior, propius, 39

necessary, necesse (*neuter adj., in nom. and acc. only*), 43

neighboring, finitimus, -a, -um, 34; neighbors, finitimī, -ōrum, m. pl., 34

neither, neque, 2

never, numquam, adv., 19

nevertheless, tamen, adv., 18; nihilō minus, 45

new, novus, -a, -um, 2

next, proximus, -a, -um, 6

night, nox, noctis, noctium, f., 33; at night, noctū, adv., 7

no one, nēmō (nullius), dat. nēmini, acc. nēminem, m. or f., 40

noble, nōbilis, -e, 35

nobility, nōbilitās, nōbilitātis, f., 44

nor, and not, neque, conj.; neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque, 2; neu, conj., 46

not, *nōn, conj.*, 1; not even, *nē . . . quidem, adv.*, 36; not only . . . but also, *nōn solum . . . sed etiam*, 35; not yet, *nōndum, adv.*, 12

nothing, *nihil, n. (indecl.)*, 35

notice, *animadvertō, -ere, animadvertī, animadversus*, 48

now, *nunc, adv.*, 7; iam, *adv.*, 40

number, *numerus, -i, m.*, 13

Numitor, *Numitor, Numitoris, m.*, 32

O

oath, *iūs iurandum, iūris iurandī, n.*, 47

observe, *spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus*, 5; *cōspiciō, -ere, cōspexī, cōnspectus*, 48

obtain, *potior, potiri, potitus sum (with abl.)*, 45

often, *saepe, adv.*, 4

olive, *olīva, -ae, f.*, 8

Olympia, *Olympia, -ae, f.*, 19

Olympus, *Mount, Olympus, -i, m.*, 19

omen, *augurium, augurī, n.*, 33

on, in, *prep. with abl.*, 7; on account of, *propter, prep. with acc.*, 37; ob, *prep. with acc.*, 47

one at a time, *singulī, -ae, -a, pl.*, 41

open, *adj.*, *apertus, -a, -um*, 1; *verb.*, *aperiō, -ire, aperuī, apertus*, 17

opinion, *sententia, -ae, f.*, 21

opportunity, *facultās, facultātis, f.*, 50

oppress, *opprimō, -ere, oppressī, oppressus*, 35

or, aut, *conj.*, 25; vel, *conj.*, 41

Orbilus, *Orbilus, Orbili, m.*, 13

order, *iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus*, 43; *imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (with dative; followed by ut (nē) and subjunctive)*, 46

Orgetorix, *Orgetorix, Orgetorigis, m.*, 43

ornament, *ōrnāmentum, -i, n.*, 35

other(s), *cēteri, -ae, -a, pl.*, 38

ought, *dēbeō, -ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus*, 39

our, *noster, nostra, nostrum*, 11, 31

out of, *ex (ē), prep. with abl.*, 7

outside of, *extrā, prep. with acc.*, 13

over, across, *trāns, prep. with acc.*, 27

overcome, *vincō, -ere, vici, victus*, 17

overflow, *redundō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus*, 32

P

pace, *passus, passūs, m.*, 42

Palatine (hill), *Palātium, Palāti, n.*, 32

palm leaf, *palma, -ae, f.*, 25

parade, *pompa, -ae, f.*, 21

part, *pars, partis, partium, f.*, 30

peace, *pāx, pācis, f.*, 23

people, *populus, -i, m.*, 23; *hominēs, hominum, m. or f.*, 24

perform, *faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus*, 22; *perficiō, -ere, perfēcī, perfectus*, 40; *cōficiō, -ere, cōfēcī, cōnfectus*, 46

perhaps, *fortasse, adv.*, 11

peristyle, *peristylum, -i, n.*, 15

permit, *patior, pati, passus sum*, 45; it is permitted, *licet, -ēre, licuit, — (impersonal)*, 49

person, *homo, hominis, m. or f.*, 24

persuade, *persuādeō, -ēre, persuāsī, persuāsūrus*, 46

picture, pictūra, -ae, *f.*, 7; tabula, -ae, *f.*, 28
pitch camp, castra pōnere, 18
place, *noun*, locus, -i, *m.*, 33; *verb*, pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, 18; conlocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 13
plan, cōsiliū, cōsili, *n.*, 19
play, lūdō, lūdere, lūs, lūsus, 17
plead, ōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 35
please, dēlectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 2; *impersonal*, iuvō, -āre, -iūvi, iūtus, 39
pleasing, grātus, -a, -um, 6; acceptus, -a, -um, 25
plenty, cōpia, -ae, *f.*, 14
plot, Insidiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, 35
poet, poēta, -ae, *m.*, 7
point out, dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 5
Porsena, Porsena, -ae, *m.*, 37
possess, obtineō, -ēre, obtinui, obtentus, 39
power, imperium, imperi, *n.*, 24; auctōritās, auctōritātis, *f.*, 23; potestās, potestātis, *f.*, 27
powerful, potēns, *gen.* potentis, 34; to be very powerful, plūrimum posse, 45
praise, *noun*, laus, laudis, *f.*, 36; *verb*, laudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 5
prefer, mālō, mälle, mālui, —, 39
prepare, parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 7; comparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 29
preserve, cōservō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 50
prevent, prohibeō, -ēre, prohibui, prohibitus, 33
priest, priestess, sacerdos, sacerdotis, *m. or f.*, 32
private, privātus, -a, -um, 45
Proca, Proca, -ae, *m.*, 32

proceed, prōcēdō, -ere, prōcessi, prōcessurus, 40; prōgredior, -gredi, prōgressus sum, 50
procession, pompa, -ae, *f.*, 21
promise, polliceor, pollicēri, pollicitus sum, 45
protect, servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 20
protection, praesidium, praesidi, *n.*, 41
proud, superbus, -a, -um, 27
province, prōvincia, -ae, *f.*, 6
Publius, Pūblius, Pūbli, *m.*, 12
punish, castigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 13; suppliciō afficere, 44
punishment, supplicium, supplici, *n.*, 44
pupil, discipula, -ae, *f.*, 1; discipulus, -i, *m.*, 12
put an end (*to*), finem facere, 36
put aside, dēpōnō, -ere, dēposui, dēpositus, 43
put in charge, praeficiō, -ere, praefēcī, praefectus, 50
put on, induō, -ere, indui, indūtus, 18

Q

queen, rēgina, -ae, *f.*, 29
quick, celer, celeris, celere, 34
quickly, celeriter, *adv.*, 14
quickness, celeritās, celeritātis, *f.*, 25

R

race, tribe, gēns, gentis, gentium, *f.*, 27
race, contest, certāmen, certāminis, *n.*; chariot race, certāmen quadrigārum, 25
rain, imber, imbris, imbrium, *m.*, 32
rampart, vāllum, -i, *n.*, 14
rank, ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.*, 42
read, legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, 21

ready, parātus, -a, -um, 39
realize, sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus,
44

(rear), bring up the rear, agmen
claudere, 42; rear guard, novis-
simum agmen, 42

receive, accipiō, -ere, accēpi, accep-
tus, 22; recipiō, -ere, recēpi,
receptus, 42

recently, nūper, *adv.*, 47

red, ruber, rubra, rubrum, 5

refuge, asyllum, -ī, *n.*, 34

region, regiō, -ōnis, *f.*, 48

reign, rēgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 30

remain, manēō, -ēre, mānsī, mān-
sūrus, 20

remember, memoriā tenēre, 36

Remus, Remus, -ī, *m.*, 24

renowned, nōtus, -a, -um, 34

repeat, Isdem verbis reddere, 43

reply, respondeō, -ēre, respondi,
respōsus, 12

report, dēferō, -ferre, dētuli, dēla-
tus, 44

reproach, accūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus,
30

repulse, repellō, -ere, reppuli,
repulsus, 49

reputation, fāma, -ae, *f.*, 14

rest of, remaining, reliquus, -a,
-um, 17; cēteri, -ae, -a, 38

retreat, sē recipere, 42

return, *noun*, reditiō, reditiōnis, *f.*,
47; *verb*, reveniō, -īre, revēni,
reventūrus, 28; revertor, reverti,
reversus sum, 49; redeō, -īre, -iī,
-itūrus, 50

reward, mūnus, mūneris, *n.*, 25;
praemium, -ī, *n.*, 31

Rhone, Rhodanus, -ī, *m.*, 43

ridge, iugum, -ī, *n.*, 49

35

right, *noun*, iūs, iūris, *n.*, 27; *adj.*,
dexter, dextra, dextrum 23; right
hand, dextra, -ae, *f.*, 23

river, flūmen, flūminis, *n.*, 27

road, via, -ae, *f.*, 5

robber, latrō, latrōnis, *m.*, 34

Roman, *adj.*, Rōmānus, -a, -um,
2, 12; *noun*, a Roman, Rōmānus,
-ī, *m.*, 12; Rōmāna, -ae, *f.*, 2

Rome, Rōma, -ae, *f.*, 9

Romulus, Rōmulus, -ī, *m.*, 24

roomy, amplus, -a, -um, 8

rose, rosa, -ae, *f.*, 4

route, iter, itineris, *n.*, 26

ruin, ruīna, -ae, *f.*, 27

rule (*reign*), rēgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus,
30; (*guide*), regō, -ere, rēxi,
rēctus, 19

run, currō, -ere, cucurri, cursūrus,
21; run down, dēcurrō, -ere, dē-
curri or dēcucurri, dēcursūrus, 38

rustic, rūsticus, -a, -um, 15

S

Sabine, *adj.*, Sabīnus, -a, -um;
noun, a Sabine, Sabīnus, -ī, *m.*, 43

safe, tūtus, -a, -um, 38

safety, salūs, salūtis, *f.*, 35

sail, nāvīgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 7

sailor, nauta, -ae, *m.*, 3

same, Idem, eadem, idem, 43

sandal, solea, -ae, *f.*, 6

save, servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 20

say, dicō, -ere, dixi, dictus, 21;
says or said, *with direct quota-
tion*, inquit, 20

Scaevola, Scaevola, -ae, *m.*, 40

school, schola, -ae, *f.*, 1; lūdus, -ī,
m., 13

schoolmaster, magister, magistrī,
m., 13

- sea**, *noun*, mare, maris, *n.*, 27;
 pertaining to the sea, maritimus,
 -a, -um, 28
seat, subsellium, subselli, *n.*, 21
second, secundus, -a, -um, 36
secretary, scriba, -ae, *m.*, 40
secretly, clam, *adv.*, 35
Secunda, Secunda, -ae, *f.*, 3
see, videō, -ēre, vidī, visus, 5
seek, petō, -ere, petivī or -īi,
 petitus, 34
seem, seem best, videor, vidēri,
 visus sum, 39
seize, rapiō, -ere, rapui, raptus, 28;
 reprehendō, -ere, reprehendi,
 reprehensus, 36; **seize** (*a town*),
 occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 36
seldom, rārō, *adv.*, 6
self, ipse, -a, -um, 33
senator, senātor, senātoris, *m.*, 40
send, mittō, -ere, misi, missus, 17
servant, serva, -ae, *f.*, 6; servus,
 -ī, *m.*, 12
Servius, Servius, Servi, *m.*, 12
set out, proficiscor, proficisci, pro-
 fectus sum, 45
seven, septem, 24
several, complūrēs, complūra or
 complūria, *pl.*, 42
severe, severus, -a, -um, 11
she, ea, 32: *often not expressed*
shepherd, pāstor, pāstoris, *m.*, 32
shield, scūtum, -ī, *n.*, 21
ship, nāvis, nāvis, nāvium, *f.*, 27
shop, taberna, -ae, *f.*, 5
shore, ōra, -ae, *f.*, 7
short, brevis, -e, 34
shoulder, umerus, -ī, *m.*, 28
shout, *noun*, clāmor, clāmōris, *m.*,
 24; *verb*, clāmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus,
 12
show, dēmōstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 5
shrewd, callidus, -a, -um, 39
sick, aeger, aegra, aegrum, 17
side, latus, lateris, *n.*, 33; **from each**
 side, utrimque, *adv.*, 30; **on all**
 sides, undique, *adv.*, 35; **on one**
 side, ūnā ex parte, 43
signal, signum, -ī, *n.*, 26
silence, silentium, silenti, *n.*, 43
since, cum, *conj. with subjunctive*, 49
sit, sedēō, -ēre, sēdi, sessurus, 10
six, sex, 33
size, magnitūdō, magnitudinis, *f.*,
 25
skilled, perītus, -a, -um, 39
sky, caelum, -ī, *n.*, 33
slaughter, caedēs, caedis, caedium,
f., 27
slave, servus, -ī, *m.*, 12; serva, -ae,
f., 6
slavery, servitūs, servitūtis, *f.*, 38
slay, caedō, -ere, cecidi, caesus, 36
small, parvus, -a, -um, 1
so, tam, *adv.*, 47; **so great**, tantus,
 -a, -um, 47; **so many**, tot (*inde-*
clinable), 23
soldier, miles, militis, *m.*, 23
some . . . others, aliī . . . aliī, 36
sometimes, interdum, *adv.*, 5
son, filiū, fili, *m.*, 12
soon, mox, *adv.*, 21
sowing, sēmentis, sēmentis, sēmen-
 tium, *f.*, 46
space, spatium, spatī, *n.*, 26
spear, hasta, -ae, *f.*, 18
spectacle, spectāculum, -ī, *n.*, 21
spectator, spectātor, spectātōris,
m., 25
speech, ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis, *f.*, 44;
make a speech, ōrātiōnem ha-
 bēre, 44

speed, *celeritās, celeritātis, f.*, 25
 spina, *spīna, -ae, f.*, 26
 spirited, *ācer, ācris, ācre*, 34
 spoil, *spolium, spoli, n.*, 23
 stand, *stō, stāre, steti, statūrus, 1*;
 cōsistō, -ere, cōstiti, —, 41;
 stand up, *surgō, -ere, surrēxi, surrēctūrus, 35*
 star, *stēlla, -ae, f.*, 7
 state, *civitās, civitātis, f.*, 24
 statue, *statua, -ae, f.*, 4
 stature, *magnitūdō corporis*, 25
 stay, *maneō, -ēre, mānsi, mānsūrus, 20*
 steal, *rapio, -ere, rapui, raptus, 28*
 steep, *altus, -a, -um, 13*
 still, *tamen, adv.*, 18
 stir, move deeply, *commoveō, -ēre, commōvi, commōtus, 38*
 stone, *lapis, lapidis, m.*, 23
 stop, *intermittō, -ere, intermisi, intermissus, 35*
 storm, *noun, tempestās, tempestātis, f.*, 29; *verb, oppugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 17*
 story, *fābula, -ae, f.*, 5
 strange, *aliēnus, -a, -um, 30*
 street, *via, -ae, f.*, 5
 strength, *virēs, virium, f. pl.*, 34
 strengthen, *cōfirmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 36*
 study, *studeō, -ēre, studui, —, 11*
 sturdy, *firmus, -a, -um, 8*
 stylus, *stilus, -i, m.*, 13
 such, *tālis, -e, 40*
 sudden, *repentinus, -a, -um, 42*
 suddenly, *subitō, adv.*, 17
 sufficiently, *satis, adv.*, 49
 (suicide), *commit suicide, sibi mortem cōnsciscere, 44*
 suitable, *idōneus, -a, -um, 33*

summer, *aestās, aestātis, f.*, 24
 summon, *vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 5*
 sun, *sōl, sōlis, m.*, 26
 sure, *certus, -a, -um, 48*
 surely, *certē, adv.*, 3
 surname, *cognōmen, cognōminis, n.*, 40
 surpass, *superō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 41*
 surrender, *trādō, -ere, trādidī, trādītus, 32*
 surround, *circumstō, -āre, circumsteti, —, 15*; *circumdō, -are, circumdedi, circumdatus, 40*; *circumveniō, -ire, circumvēni, circumventūrus, 42*
 swift, *celer, celeris, celere, 34*
 sword, *gladius, gladi, m.*, 12

T

table, *mēsa, -ae, f.*, 1
 (tablet), writing tablet, *tabella, -ae, f.*, 12
 take, *capiō, -ere, cēpi, captus, 22*;
 take an augury, *augurium agere, 33*; take away, *ēripiō, -ere, eripuī, ēreptūs, 47*; *tollō, tollere sustulī, sublātus, 47*; take a position, stand, *cōsistō, -ere, cōstiti, —, 41*; take a walk, walk, *ambulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 4*
 talk, *dicō, -ere, dixi, dictus, 21*
 tardy, *tardus, -a, -um, 21*
 Tarpeia, *Tarpeia, -ae, f.*, 34
 Tarquinius, *Tarquinius, Tarquini, m.*, 37
 task, *negōtium, negōti, n.*, 21
 teach, *doceō, -ēre, docui, doctus, 11*
 teacher, *magistra, -ae, f.*, 1;
 magister, *magistri, m.*, 13
 team of four horses, *quadrigae, -arum, f. pl.*, 21

- tell, nārrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 5
 temple, templum, -ī, *n.*, 14
 tent, tabernāculum, -ī, *n.*, 18
 tenth, decimus, -a, -um, 24
 Terentia, Terentia, -ae, *f.*, 4
 terrify, perterreō, -ēre, perterrui, perterritus, 36
 territory, finēs, finium, *m. pl.*, 36
 terror, terror, terrōris, *m.*, 37
 than, quam, *conj.*, 37
 thank, give thanks, grātiās agere (*with dat.*), 31
 that, those, ille, illa, illud, 33; is, ea, id, 32; that of yours, iste, ista, istud, 33; that, so that, in order that, ut, *conj.*, 46
 their, reflexive, suus, -a, -um, 31; not reflexive, eōrum, eārum, 32
 then, tum, *adv.*, 5; deinde, *adv.*, 32
 there, ibi, *adv.*, 17
 therefore, igitur, *adv.* (*postpositive*), 8
 they, ei, eae, ea, 32: often not expressed
 thing, rēs, rei, *f.*, 42
 think, putō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 29; existimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 47; cōgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 35; arbitror, -ārī, arbitrātus sum, 45
 third, tertius, -a, -um, 36
 this, these, hic, haec, hoc, 33; is, ea, id, 32
 thousands, milia, milium, *n. pl.* (*with gen.*), 36
 three, trēs, tria, 36
 three hundred, trecentī, -ae, -a, *pl.*, 30
 throne, solium, soli, *n.*, 19
 through, per, *prep. with acc.*, 21
 throw, iaciō, -ere, -iēcī, iactus, 22; throw back, reiciō, -ere, reieci, reiectus, 22; throw down, deicio, -ere, deieci, deiectus, 22
 thus, sic, *adv.*, 14; item, *adv.*, 46
 Tiber, Tiberis, Tiberis (*dat. -ī, acc. -im, abl. -ī*), *m.*, 27
 time, tempus, temporis, *n.*, 26; a long time, diū, *adv.*, 18
 tired, defessus, -a, -um, 7
 Titus, Titus, -ī, *m.*, 31
 to, toward, ad, *prep. with acc.*, 8
 today, hodiē, *adv.*, 5
 together, unā, *adv.*, 45; together with, unā cum, 45
 tomorrow, crās, *adv.*, 20
 too, quoque, *adv.*, 1
 top of, summus, -a, -um, 26
 touch, tangō, -ere, tetigi, tactus, 32
 tower, turris, turris, turrium, *f.*, 35
 town, oppidum, -ī, *n.*, 14
 trace, vestigium, vestigi, *n.*, 24
 train, educō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 34; exerceō, -ēre, exercui, exercitus, 49
 transport, onerāria, -ae, *f.*, 8
 traveler, viātor, viātoris, *m.*, 27
 tree, arbor, arboris, *f.*, 32
 trial, iudicium, iudici, *n.*, 47
 tribe, gens, gentis, gentium, *f.*, 27
 triple, triplex, *gen. triplicis*, 42
 triumph, triumphus, -ī, *m.*, 23; to hold a triumph, triumphum agere, 23
 Trojan, *adj.*, Troiānus, -a, -um; *noun*, a Trojan, Troiānus, -ī, *m.*, 17
 troops, cōpiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, 14; auxiliary troops, auxilia, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, 14
 Troy, Troia, -ae, *f.*, 17

true, *vērus*, -a, -um, 19
truly, *vērō*, *adv.*, 19
try, *temptō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 39;
 cōnor, -ārī, *cōnātus sum*, 45
Tullia, *Tullia*, -ae, *f.*, 3
tunic, *tunica*, -ae, *f.*, 4
turn, *vertō*, -ere, *verti*, *versus*, 42
Turnus, *Turnus*, -ī, *m.*, 30
twelve, *duodecim*, 33
twin, *geminī*, -ae, -a, *pl.*, 24
two, *duo*, *duae*, *duo*, 24, 86

U

under, *sub*, *prep. with abl. and acc.*, 32
undergo, *subeō*, -īre, *subiī*, *subitūrus*, 43
understand, *intelligō*, -ere, *intellēxi*, *intellēctus*, 43
undertake, *suscipiō*, -ere, *suscēpi*, *susceptus*, 46
unfriendly, *inimicus*, -a, -um, 30
unhappy, *miser*, *miserā*, *miserum*, 15
unknown, *ignōtus*, -a, -um, 40
unless, *nisi*, *conj.*, 27
unmindful, *oblītus*, -a, -um (*with the gen.*), 31
unwilling, *invītus*, -a, -um, 45; *be unwilling*, *nōlō*, *nōlle*, *nōlui*, —, 39
upon, *in*, *prep. with acc.*, 8
urban, *urbānus*, -a, -um, 15
urn, *ūrna*, -ae, *f.*, 8
use, *ūtōr*, *ūtī*, *ūsus sum* (*with abl.*), 45

V

vain, *in vain*, *frūstrā*, *adv.*, 35
van, *primum agmen*, 42
various, *varius*, -a, -um, 29
vehemently, *graviter*, *adv.*, 30

very great, *maximus*, -a, -um, 19;
 very greatly, *maximē*, *adv.*, 6
very near, *proximus*, -a, -um, 6
veteran, *veterānus*, -a, -um, 42
victor, *victor*, *victōris*, *m.*, 24
victory, *victōria*, -ae, *f.*, 17
villa, *villa*, -ae, *f.*, 3
village, *vīcus*, -ī, *m.*, 45
violence, *vis* (*acc. vim, abl. vi*), *f.*, 94
vision, *visiō*, *visiōnis*, *f.*, 37
visit, *adeō*, -īre, *adiī*, *aditūrus*, 43
voluntarily, *ultrō*, *adv.*, 29
vulture, *vultur*, *vulturis*, *m.*, 33

W

wage war, *bellum gerere*, 17
wait, *expectō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 21
walk, *ambulō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 4
wall, *mūrus*, -ī, *m.*, 13
wander, *errō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 29
want, *dēsiderō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 5
war, *bellum*, -ī, *n.*, 14
warlike, *bellicōsus*, -a, -um, 43
warn, *moneō*, -ēre, *monui*, *monitus*, 19
warship, *nāvis longa*, *nāvis longae*, *nāvium longārum*, *f.*, 27
watch, look at, *spectō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 5
water, *aqua*, -ae, *f.*, 3
wax, *cēra*, -ae, *f.*, 39
way, *via*, -ae, *f.*, 5; *modus*, -ī, *m.*, 39; *in this way*, *sic*, 14; *hōc modō*, 39
we, *nōs*, *nostrum* (*nostrī*), 11, 31;
 often not expressed
weak, *invalidus*, -a, -um, 28
weapon, *tēlum*, -ī, *n.*, 18
wear, *gerō*, -ere, *gessi*, *gestus*, 17
weigh down, *opprimō*, -ere, *oppressi*, *oppressus*, 35

well, fine, bene, *adv.*, 20; be well, salveō, ēre, —, —, 11
 when, ubi, *conj. with perfect indicative*, 28; cum, *conj. with subjunctive*, 49
 whence, unde, *adv.*, 7
 where, ubi, *adv.*, 7; quā, *adv.*, 50
 whether, introducing indirect question, num, *conj.*, 48
 which, quī, quae, quod, *rel. pron.*, 32; which (of two), *interrogative*, uter, utra, utrum, 36
 white, albus, -a, -um, 4
 whither, quō, *adv.*, 8
 who, quī, quae, quod, *rel. pron.*, 32; quis, quid, *interrog. pron.*, 48
 whole, cūctus, -a, -um, 38
 why, cūr, *adv.*, 2; quārē, *adv.*, 39
 wicked, malus, -a, -um, 32
 wide, lātus, -a, -um, 3
 wife, uxor, uxōris, *f.*, 28; coniūnx, coniugis, *f.*, 30
 (willing), be willing, volō, velle, volui, —, 39
 win, conciliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 44
 wind, ventus, -i, *m.*, 39
 window, fenestra, -ae, *f.*, 1
 wing, āla, -ae, *f.*, 39; wing of an army, cornū, -ūs, *n.*, 41
 winter, hiems, hiemis, *f.*, 24; winter quarters, hiberna, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, 22
 wisdom, sapientia, -ae, *f.*, 9
 wish, volō, velle, volui, —, 39
 with, cum, *prep. with abl.*, 7
 withdraw, discēdō, -ere, discessi, discessurus, 40; dēcēdō, -ere, dēcessi, dēcessurus, 44
 within, intrā, *prep. with acc.*, 14

without, sine, *prep. with abl.*, 37
 withstand, sustineō, -ēre, sustinui, sustentus, 42
 wolf, she-wolf, lupa, -ae, *f.*, 32
 woman, fēmina, -ae, *f.*, 1
 wooden, ligneus, -a, -um, 17
 woods, silva, -ae, *f.*, 3
 word, verbum, -i, *n.*, 19
 work, labōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 3
 world, orbis terrārum, 41
 worship, adōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 14
 wound, *noun*, vulnus, vulneris, *n.*, 26; *verb*, vulnerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 18
 wreath, corōna, -ae, *f.*, 4
 wretched, miser, misera, miserum, 15
 write, scribō, -ere, scripsi, scriptus, 31

Y

year, annus, -i, *m.*, 29
 yesterday, herī, *adv.*, 19
 yield, cēdō, -ere, cessi, cessurus, 49
 you, tū, tuī (*sing.*); vōs, vestrum (vestri), (*pl.*), 11, 31: often not expressed
 young man, adulēscēns, adulēscētis, *m.*, 28; iuvenis, iuvenis, iuvenum, *m.*, 40
 your, tuus, -a, -um (*referring to one person*); vester, vestra, vestrum (*referring to more than one person*), 11, 31
 youth, adulēscēns, adulēscētis, *m.*, 28; iuvenis, iuvenis (*gen. pl. iuvenum*), *m.*, 40

Z

zeal, studium, studi, *n.*, 25

INDEXES

INDEX TO TEXT

The numbers refer to paragraphs

- a, ab, 57, 60, 169, 171, 172
- ablative, absolute, 486, 487, 489
 - of accompaniment, 57, 61, 417 (note)
 - of agent, 169, 171, 172
 - of cause, 319, 321
 - of comparison, 371, 374
 - of degree of difference, 384, 386
 - of manner, 232, 233
 - of means, 170, 171, 173
 - of place from which, 57, 60, 75-78
 - of place in which, 57, 59, 75-77, 514 (note)
 - of quality (description), 415, 416
 - of separation, 385, 387
 - of specification, 427, 429
 - of time, 223, 224
 - with deponents, 484, 488
 - with verbs of requesting, 346, 502
- ablative, summary of uses, 651
- accent, 7, 118, 130
- accompaniment, 57, 61, 417 (note)
- accusative, after ad and in, 66-70
 - direct object, 19, 23, 24
 - of cause, with propter, 372, 375
 - of duration of time, 267, 272
 - of extent of space, 441, 443
 - of place to which and into which, 66-70, 75, 76
- predicate, 320, 322
- subject of infinitive, 454, 460, 472, 477
- with moneō, ōrō, and rogō, 502
- accusative, summary of uses, 650
- ad, prep. with acc., 66-68, 70
 - with the gerund, 551
 - with the gerundive, 551
- adjectives, agreement, 10, 120, 145, 146, 150, 151
 - comparison, regular, 361, 362, 363, 585
 - irregular, 379-381, 586
 - of adjectives in -er and -lis, 367-369, 585
- comparative, declension of, 364, 365
- dative with, 51, 52
- declension of, 568-574
 - in first-and-second declension, 147-149
 - in third declension, 328-331
- genitive with, 290, 299
- possessive, 288, 294, 296, 297, 305, 591
- predicate, 10, 14
- special and irregular, 354-356, 576-581
- adverbs, comparison of, 411-414, 583, 584
 - formation of, 405-410
- adversative clause with cum, 532, 537
- agent, ablative of, 169, 171, 172
- dative of, 547, 554
- agreement, of adjectives, 10, 120, 145, 146, 150, 151

- of participles, 281, 337, 344
- of possessive adjectives, 294, 297
- of the relative pronoun, 307, 309
- of verbs, 106
- alius*, 354, 356, 577
- alphabet, Latin, 2-5
- alter*, 354, 356, 577
- ambulance*, 40
- antecedent of relative pronoun, 307, 309
- antepenult, 6, 7
- Arbor Day*, 310
- arena*, 199
- article, not expressed in Latin, 10
- audeō*, 535
- barbarous*, 204
- base, of nouns, 81, 82, 131, 207, 209
 - of adjectives, 132, 148
- C. meaning *Gaius*, 403
- capiō*, 202, 203
- cardinal numerals, 350, 355, 582
- case, 81, 86
- causā*, with genitive of gerund and gerundive, 544, 551
- causal clause, with *cum*, 532, 537
- cause, ablative of, 319, 321
- cause, with *propter*, 372, 375
- coepi*, 536
- comparative, 364, 365, 587, 588
- comparison, ablative of, 371, 374
 - of adjectives
 - regular, 361, 362, 363, 585
 - irregular, 379-381, 586
 - in -er and -lis, 367-369, 585
 - of adverbs, 411-414, 583, 584
 - with *quam*, 370, 373
- complementary infinitive, 393, 397, 398
- concessive clause, with *cum*, 532, 537
- conjugations, 94, 101
 - how distinguished, 100, 102, 103, 160, 161
 - (See *first*, *second*, *third*, *iō-third*, *fourth*; see also irregular verbs: *sum*, *possum*, *volō*, *mālō*, *nālō*, *eō*, *ferō*, *fiō*)
- consonants, pronunciation of, 5
- cum*, conjunction, with indicative, 532, 537
 - with subjunctive, 532, 537
- cum*, enclitic, 293, 308
- cum*, preposition, 57, 61
- dative, of agent, 547, 554
 - of indirect object, 43, 44, 46
 - of purpose, 424-426, 428
 - of reference, 425, 426, 428
 - with adjectives, 51, 52
 - with verbs of persuading, etc., 502, 505
- dea*, dative and ablative plural, 45, 58
- declension, defined, 81, 83
 - of adjectives, see *adjectives*
 - of nouns, see *first declension*, etc.
 - of pronouns, see *pronouns*
- deponent verbs, 483, 484, 626-629, 639
- deus*, 566
- dido*, use in English, 285
- difference, ablative of degree of, 384, 386
- diphthongs, pronunciation of, 4
- direct address, 85
- direct object, 19, 23, 24
- domus*, 76, 78, 421, 567
- duo*, 355, 579
- duration of time, 267, 272

- ē (ex)** with ablative, 57, 60, 62
 (note)
- ego**, 295, 589
- egotism**, 109
- enclitic**, -ne, 27, 28, 30
 -que, 117
 cum, 298, 308
- eo**, 457, 622-624, 637
- extent of space**, 441, 443
- extra**, 134
- extrēmus**, 380-382
- fearing**, clauses used with verbs of,
 514 (note), 665
- ferō**, 457, 458, 618-620, 636
- fifth declension**, 438-440, 565
- filia**, dative and ablative plural, 45,
 58
- filius**, 118, 130
- fiō**, 451, 457, 625, 638
- first conjugation**, gerund, 616
 gerundive, 615
 imperative, 108, 163, 608
 indicative, 602-607
 present active, 98, 100-102
 present passive, 176
 imperfect active, 181, 183
 imperfect passive, 181, 183
 future active, 187, 189, 192
 future passive, 191, 192
 perfect active, 254, 261
 perfect passive, 281-283
 pluperfect active, 268, 270,
 273, 275
 pluperfect passive, 281-283
 future perfect active, 269-271,
 274, 275
 future perfect passive, 281-283
- infinitive**, 102, 394, 395, 609-611
- participles**, 281, 337-341, 343,
 612-614
- subjunctive**, 496, 525, 526, 630-
 633
- first declension**, 10, 81, 556
- Forum**, 193
- fourth conjugation**, indicative, 602-
 607
 present active, 161, 162
 present passive, 176
 imperfect active, 181, 183
 imperfect passive, 181, 183
 future active, 196, 197
 future passive, 196, 197
 perfect active, 254, 261
 perfect passive, 281-283
 pluperfect active, 268, 270,
 273, 275
 pluperfect passive, 281-283
 future perfect active, 269-271,
 274, 275
 future perfect passive, 281-283
- imperative**, 163, 608
- infinitive**, 394, 395, 609-611
- participle**, 281, 337-344, 612-614
- subjunctive**, 496, 525, 526, 630-
 633
- fourth declension**, 421-423, 564
- future infinitive**, 473, 475
- future participle**, 338, 343
- future perfect tense**, 270, 274, 281
- future tense**, 189, 195, 196
- gender**, how determined, 87, 122
 of adjectives, 146
 of first declension, 88
 of second declension, 121, 122,
 137
 of third declension, 238
 of fourth declension, 421, 422
 of fifth declension, 439
 of infinitive, 453
 of participle, 337, 344

- of relative pronoun, 307, 309
 genitive, objective, with adjectives, 290, 299
 of description, 332, 333, 648
 of nouns in *-ius*, 130
 of possession, 37, 38
 of the whole, 289, 298, 417 (note)
 with *milia*, 442
 gerund, 541, 543, 544, 551, 616, 671
 gerundive, 542, 543, 544, 551, 615, 672

hic, 314, 316, 318, 593

iam diū, with present tense, 403
idem, 459, 596
idōneus, comparison of, 383
igitur, 71 (note)
ille, 313, 316, 318, 594
 imperative mood, 108, 163
in, with the ablative, 57, 59, 67, 514 (note)
in, with the acc., 67-70
 indicative mood, 163
 indirect discourse, 472, 477
 indirect object, 43, 44, 46
 indirect question, 517, 527
infimus, 380-382
 infinitive, formation of, 102, 394, 395, 475, 476
 complementary, 393, 397, 398
 in indirect discourse, 472, 477
 objective, 456, 460
 subjective, 455, 460
 intensive pronoun, 317, 597
 interest (reference), dative of, 425, 426, 428
 interrogative pronoun, 527, 599;
 adjective, 600
iō-verbs of the third conjugation, 201-203, 601-616, 630-633

ipse, 317, 597
 irregular comparison of adjectives, 379-381, 586; adverbs, 411-414
 irregular nouns, 566, 567
 irregular verbs, see *sum*, *possum*, *volō*, *mālō*, *nōlō*, *eō*, *ferō*, *fiō*
is, 302-305, 592
i-stem nouns, 243-247, 562, 563
iste, 315, 318, 595
iter, 566
iubeō, with objective infinitive, 456
Iuppiter, 357 (note), 566

January, derivation, 15

 Latin, how to read, 17, 28 (note)
 pronunciation of, 1-5
 value of study of, pages xv, xvi
libenter, 71 (note)
liberī, 143
licet, constructions with, 533
 locative, 75-78, 81, 653
locō, *locīs*, in expressions of place in which, 514 (note)

mālō, 396, 397, 399, 621, 635
 manner, ablative of, 232, 233
 means, ablative of, 170, 171, 173
medius, 239
milia, 442
 months, names of, 358
 mood, see *indicative*, etc.

 names of months, 358
 names, proper, in Caesar, 447
 names, Roman, 34
nē, conjunction, 495, 499
-ne, enclitic, 27, 28, 30
neu, 500 (note)

- neuter, declension of, 354, 356, 577
 nōlō, conjugation of, 396, 397, 399,
 621, 635
 nominative
 predicate noun or adjective, 10,
 14
 subject, 10, 14
 with passive verb, 320, 322
 nōnne, 27, 28, 31
 nōs, 287-290, 295, 589, 590
 nouns, see *first declension*, etc.
 nullus, declension of, 354, 356
 num, 27, 28, 32
 number
 in adjectives, 145, 146, 151
 in nouns, 10, 13
 in verbs, 106
 numerals, 350, 351, 355, 578-582

 object, see *direct* or *indirect*
 objective infinitive, 456, 460
 order of words, 44, 85
 ordinal numerals, 351, 355, 582
 ōrō, 346

palace, 310
 paradigm, 81
 parisyllables, 244, 246
 participial stem, 259
 participles, 344, 612-614
 present active, 340-343, 575
 perfect passive, 337, 342-343
 in perfect tenses, 281-283
 future active, 338, 343
 of deponent verbs, 483
 in ablative absolute, 486, 489
 partitive genitive, see *genitive of
 the whole*
 passive voice, 168
 present, 175, 176
 imperfect, 181, 183

 future, 191, 192, 195-197
 perfect, 281-283
 pluperfect, 281-283
 future perfect, 281-283
pastor, 310
pecuniary, 48
peninsula, 54
 penult, 6, 7, 54
penult, 54
 perfect infinitive
 formation of, 475, 476
 use of, 473
 perfect passive participle, 337, 342,
 343
 perfect stem, 257, 259
 periphrastic conjugation
 active, 550, 552, 640-642
 passive, 546-548, 553, 554, 643-
 645
persona grata, 54
 personal endings, 98, 175, 254
 personal pronouns, 287-290, 292-
 295, 589
 petō, 346
 place
 from which, 57, 60
 with names of cities, 75-78
 to which, 66-68, 70
 with names of cities, 75-78
 where (in which), 57, 59
 with names of cities, 75-78
 plus, 417 (note)
 possession, genitive of, 37, 38
 possessive adjective, 288, 294, 296,
 297, 305, 591
 possum, 391-394, 617, 634
 postulō, 346
 potior, with ablative, 484, 488
 predicate accusative, 320, 322
 predicate nominative, 10, 14, 320,
 322

- present active participle, 389-343
 present infinitive
 formation of, 102, 394, 395, 475
 use of, 393, 397, 398, 472, 473, 477
 present stem, 100, 102, 160, 161, 257, 259
 present stem, 100, 102, 160, 161, 257, 259
 principal parts, 258-260
procrastinate, 193
 pronouns, declension of, 30, 304, 308, 318, 459, 597
 demonstrative, *hic*, *ille*, *iste*, 312-316, 318, 593-595
 idem, 459, 596
 is, 302-305, 592
 intensive, 317, 597
 interrogative, 599
 personal, 287-290, 292-295, 589
 reflexive, 291-295, 590
 relative, 307-309, 598
 pronunciation, 1-5, 445
propter, with accusative, 372, 375
 purpose, dative of, 425, 426, 428
 expressed by the gerund and the gerundive, 544, 551
 subjunctive of, 494-496, 498, 499

quā dē causā, 375
quam, with comparative, 870, 373
 with superlative, 417
 as interrogative, 360 (note)
 quantity of vowels, 3
-que, 117
quī, 308, 598
 at beginning of sentence, 431, 432
 with clauses of purpose, 495
quis, *quid*, 599
quisquam, 600
quō, in purpose clauses, 495

 read, how to, 17, 28 (note)
 relative at beginning of sentence, 431, 432
 relative clause of purpose, 495
 result clauses, 509-513, 661
 reverter, tenses of, 534
rogō, 346
rūs, 76, 78

salvē, *salvēte*, 108
 second conjugation
 indicative, 602-607
 present active, 103, 105
 present passive, 176
 imperfect active, 181, 183
 imperfect passive, 181, 183
 future active, 188, 189, 192
 future passive, 191, 192
 perfect active, 254, 261
 perfect passive, 281-283
 pluperfect active, 268, 270, 273, 275
 pluperfect passive, 281-283
 future perfect active, 269-271, 274, 275
 future perfect passive, 281-283
 imperative, 108, 163, 608
 infinitives, 394, 395, 609-611
 participle, 281, 337-341, 343, 612-614
 subjunctive, 496, 525, 526, 630-633
 second declension, 557
 masculine nouns, 112-115, 118, 119, 121, 126-131
 neuter nouns, 137-139
 separation, ablative of, 385, 387
 sequence of tenses, of infinitives, 472, 473
 in subordinate clauses, 494, 499, 523, 657-659

- sine die*, 445
- sōlus*, 354, 356
- sounds of letters, 3-5
- space, accusative of extent of, 441, 443
- statement, indirect, *see* *indirect discourse*
- stems of verbs
 - present, 100, 102, 103, 160, 161, 257, 259
 - perfect, 257, 259
 - participial, 259
- subject, of finite verbs, 10, 14
 - of infinitives, 454, 460, 472, 477
- subjective infinitive, 455, 460
- subjunctive mood, 494
 - formation, of present, 496
 - of imperfect, 496
 - of perfect, 525, 526
 - of pluperfect, 525, 526
 - use of, 657-670
 - conjugation of, 630-639
 - constructions
 - indirect question, 517, 527, 664
 - purpose, 494-495, 498, 499, 660
 - result, 509-513, 661
 - with verbs of fearing, 514 (note), 665
 - with verbs of happening, etc., 511, 666
 - with *cum* causal, circumstantial, concessive, 532, 537, 667-670
 - of deponents, 639
 - of irregular verbs, 634-638
- substantive clauses, 501, 504, 662-666
- suī*, declension of, 291, 295
- sum*, 95, 182, 183, 192, 261, 275, 617, 634
- summus*, 239, 381, 382
- superlative, of regular adjectives, 361, 363, 366
 - of adjectives in -er and -lis, 367-369
 - of irregular adjectives, 379-383
 - of adverbs, 412-414
- suus* and *eius*, use of, 305
- syllabification, 6
- synopsis, 276
- syntax, summary of, 646-672
- tandem*, 63
- tense, present, 104
 - imperfect, 180-182
 - future, 189, 195, 196
 - perfect, 253, 254, 257, 281
 - pluperfect, 270, 273, 281
 - future perfect, 270, 274, 281
- tenses, sequence of, 494, 499, 523, 657-659
- tense sign, imperfect, 180, 181
 - future, 189, 195
 - pluperfect, 270
 - future perfect, 270
- third conjugation
 - indicative, 602-607
 - present active, 160, 162
 - present passive, 176
 - imperfect active, 181, 183
 - imperfect passive, 181, 183
 - future active, 195, 197
 - future passive, 195, 197
 - perfect active, 254, 255, 261
 - perfect passive, 281-283
 - pluperfect active, 268, 270, 273, 275
 - pluperfect passive, 281-283
 - future perfect active, 269-271, 274, 275
 - future perfect passive, 281-283
 - imperative, 163, 608

- infinitive, 394, 395, 609-611
 participle, 281, 337-341, 343, 612-614
 subjunctive, 496, 525, 526, 630-633
 third conjugation in -iō, 201-203, 602-616, 630-633
 third declension, 558-563
 consonant stems, paradigms of, 210, 216, 222, 231
 summary of, 237
 i-stems, 243-247
 adjectives, 328-331
 time, ablative of, 223, 224
 duration of, 267, 272
 tōtus, declension of, 354, 356
 tradition, 310
 trēs, declension of, 355
 tū, declension of, 295
 ūllus, declension of, 354, 356
 ultima, name of syllable, 6
 ūnus, declension of, 354, 356
 ut, in clauses of purpose, 494, 495, 499, 660
 in clauses of result, 509, 513, 661
 with verbs of fearing, 514 (note), 665
 uter, 354, 356, 577
 ūtor, 484, 488
 vocative, of nouns of second declension, 112, 115, 118, 119, 130, 137-139
 position of, 85
 voice, 168
 volō, 396-397, 399, 621, 635
 vōs, 287-290, 295, 589, 590
 vowels, pronunciation of, 3

INDEX TO ILLUSTRATIONS

Numbers refer to pages

- abacus, 286
 Acca, 251
 Achilles, 143
 Acropolis, 105
 Aeneas, 220, 222, 223, 224
 agriculture, Roman, 26
 alphabet, Roman, 2, 3
 Alps, 390
 amethyst necklace, 44
 amphitheater: at Arles, 393, 397; at Pompeii, 167
 animals: in house decoration, 121; farm, 65
 Appian Way, 69, 76, 84, 91
 aqueduct, 403
 arch, at Orange, 432
 archers, 344
 arena, 193, 196
 Arles, modern, 393
 army, Roman, 348
 Athens, modern, 319
 augury: by observing animals, 259; by observing birds, 263
 Augustus, emperor, 184
 baby, Roman, 72
 baggage, military, 351
 baker's shop, 129
 bakery, 125, 126
 banquet, Etruscan, 335
 barbarians, 414, 427; see also *Britons*, *Gauls*, *Helvetians*
 battle, 171, 425; line, threefold, 350; naval, 60, 61; plan, 353; storming a town, 177; with Britons, 109; with Helvetians, 354
 beating schoolboy, 103
 bit, horse's, 204
 boat, 47, 55, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61
 books, Roman, 16, 17, 162, 217
 booty, 181
 boxer, 160
 boy, Roman, 91, 92, 93, 133, 161, 169, 217
 bracelets, 290
 brazier, 28, 29
 bread, 127
 bridge, at Avignon, 402
 Britain, wall, 110
 Britons, 109
 butcher shop, 39

- Caesar, Julius, 410
 camp, Roman, 109;
 guarded by soldiers,
 422
 captives executed, 427
 Carthaginian soldiers,
 210
 cavalry, 95
 centurion, 345
 chariot, 157, 168, 203,
 279, 284, 313
 chariot race, 198, 202
 charioteer, 168, 203,
 279, 284
 Circus Maximus, 191,
 198
 coins: an *as*, showing
 Janus, 13; cattle
 money, 41; of rebel-
 lious allies, 214; of
 Syracuse, showing
 chariots, 168; sixty-
 sesterce piece, 42;
 showing: Aeneas,
 223; Horatius, 312;
 labyrinth, 316;
 Romulus and Re-
 mus, 255
 Colosseum, 166
 compass, 288
 Cretan merchants, 317
 cup: Gallic, 394, 395;
 Greek, 325
 Daedalus, 314, 323
 Diana, 40
 Dido, 224, 231
 dish, Roman, 35
 doll, 34
 Etruria, mountains,
 329
 Etruscan: banquet,
 335; chariot, 313;
 lamp, 337; soldiers,
 307; woman, 297
 family, Roman, 96, 155
 farm, Roman, 23, 25, 26
 farmer, 62, 63
 Fates, the Three, 226
 Faustulus, 25; on
 coin, 255
 fire tongs, 30
 fish plate, 35
 fortress, built by sol-
 diers, 417
 Forum, 159, 164
 freight boats, 58, 59
 galley slaves, 57
 Gallo-Roman, 423
 games: entertainment
 for Sabines, 274, 278,
 279, 284; "hockey,"
 240; knucklebones,
 87; sham battle, 169
 garden, 88, 96
 Gaul: ancient, 363;
 cup of, 394, 395; en-
 tered by Romans,
 360
 Gauls: ancient, 363;
 chieftain, 174; dy-
 ing, 356, 431; Gallo-
 Roman, 423; sol-
 diers, 368, 369, 370,
 375, 400, 408, 412
 general, 358; address-
 ing soldiers, 180,
 341; petitioned by
 barbarians, 414
 Geneva, 384
 girl, Roman, 10, 11,
 31, 33, 77, 82, fron-
 tispiece
 gladiators, 193, 195,
 196
 Greek: cup, 325; sol-
 diers, 135, 144, 145
 Hadrian's villa, 49
 Helen, 139, 141
 Helvetians: country,
 373; crossing river,
 416; in battle, 354;
 on the march, 382;
 plan of battle with,
 353; trying Orge-
 torix, 379
 Hercules, 38
 "hockey," 240
 Horatius: at bridge,
 305; on coin, 312
 horse, Trojan, 135
 horsemen: Gallic, 375;
 Roman, 91, 95, 339,
 405
 house: Roman, 88;
 interior, 49, 75, 77,
 82, 112, 118, 120,
 130; of Pansa, 114,
 115; plan, 115; see
 also *hut*, *villa*
 hut: ancient, 266; of
 Romulus, 268
 Icarus, 314, 323
 impluvium, 120
 Italian soldiers, 294,
 298
 Italy, coast of, 246
 Janus, 13
 jar, 38, 419
 Julius Caesar, 410
 Juno, 230; temple of,
 206
 Jupiter, 149
 Jura mountains, 366
 knucklebones, 87
 labyrinth, 316
 lamp, Etruscan, 337
 Lavinium, founding
 of, 236, 237
 lictors, 182, 183
 line: of battle, 350; of
 march, 348
 litter, 69
 magistrate, Roman,
 182, 183, 199
 man, Roman, 79, 91,
 387
 Mars, 42, 154
 master, Roman, 79
 merchants, 36, 39, 43,
 129, 317
 Mercury, 98
 mill, of bakery, 126
 Minerva, 64, 107
 mirror, 46

- mistress, Roman, 79;
 with daughters, 77,
 82; with servants, 51,
 75; see also *woman*
 money, Roman, 13,
 41, 42, 214, 223,
 255, 312, 316
 mosaics, ancient, 25,
 26, 121
 mountains: Alps, 390;
 in Etruria, 329;
 Jura, 366
 Mucius, C., 327, 334
 necklace, 44
 Olympia, 148
 Orgetorix, 379
 palace, of Diocletian,
 254
 Pansa, house of, 114,
 115
 Parthenon, 104, 105,
 107
 peristyle, 118, 130
 pipe, lead, 213
 Piraeus, 321
 platter, 35
 plow, 63
 Pompeii: amphitheater,
 167; paintings,
 10, 11, 52, 60, 61;
 street, 212
 Priam, 141
 procession: festival,
 150; of boys, 244,
 245; religious, 159;
 triumphal, 186, 189
 pupils, 7, 15, 19, 20,
 21, 80, 101, 103, 238
 race, chariot, 198, 202
 reading: a book, 162;
 a story, 217
 Remus, see *Romulus*
 and *Remus*
 road: Roman, 302;
 St. Gotthard, 373;
 through Sequanian
 territory, 386; see
 also *street*
 Romans: boys, 91, 92,
 93, 133, 161, 169,
 217; girls, 10, 11, 31,
 33, 77, 82, frontis-
 piece; women, 70,
 79, 82, 161; men, 79,
 91, 887, and see
 also *family*, *soldiers*,
 Mucius, etc.
 Rome, ancient, 5, 66,
 159, 164, 206, 271,
 296
 Romulus: hut of, 268;
 seeing vultures, 263
 Romulus and Remus:
 choosing site of
 Rome, 257; on coin,
 255; with Faustulus
 and Acca, 251; with
 wolf, 247, 249, 255
 rowers, 57
 Sabine women: seized,
 275; stopping bat-
 tle, 292
 sacrifice, 152, 159, 206
 sailors, 59
 school: American, 7;
 Greek, 20, 21;
 Roman, 15, 19, 80,
 103, 238
 schoolmaster, 14, 15,
 19, 20, 21, 103, 238
 Sequanians, road, 386
 servants, 51, 75, 126
 shepherd, 251, 256
 shoes, 420
 shop: for tunics and
 sandals, 43; of baker,
 129; of butcher, 39;
 of Galba, 36
 shopkeeper's sign, 67,
 68
 shopping district in
 Rome, 66
 shrine, 123
 sibyl, 265
 siege of a town, 177
 slaves, 51, 57, 75, 126
 soldiers: Carthaginian,
 210; Etruscan, 299,
 307; Gallic, 368,
 369, 370, 375, 400,
 408, 412; Greek,
 135, 144, 145, 215;
 Italian, 294, 298;
 Roman, 171, 175,
 180, 185, 309, 339,
 341, 345, 351, 360,
 417, 422
 spoils of war, 181
 spoons, 54
 St. Gotthard road, 373
 standard-bearer, Gal-
 lic, 368, 369, 375
 street: in Pompeii,
 212; in Rome, 69,
 76, 84, 91
 stylus, 14, 21
 tablets, wax, 17
 Tarpeia, 281
 temple: Juno, 206;
 Olympia, 148; Par-
 thenon, 104, 105,
 107
 tongs, fire, 30
 triumph, 186, 189
 triumphal arch, at
 Orange, 432
 Trojans, 143, 236, 237
 Troy, 136, 137, 141,
 215, 220
 tutor, 20, 80, 101
 Venus, 223
 Vergil, 234
 Victory, goddess of,
 190
 villa, Roman, 23, 25,
 27, 47, 49, 52
 wall, Roman, 110
 warship, 60, 61
 wolf: gored by bull,
 214; with Romulus
 and Remus, 247,
 249, 255
 woman: Etruscan, 297;
 Roman, 70, 71, 79,
 82, 161; see also
 mistress

To avoid fine, this book should be returned on
or before the date last stamped below

10M-6.40

MAY 10 1952

Tx
475.2
C525

DATE DUE

APR 03 2007

LIBRARY, SCHOOL OF EDUCATION, STANFORD

597427

